Understanding PURE MATHEMATICS

Ismail Digital Library

A.J. Sadler D.W.S. Thorning

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{r=0}^{n} \frac{1}{2^r} = 2$$

$$\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^r} = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{32} + \frac{1}{64} +$$

OXFORD

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS
Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town Chennai
Dar es Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi Kolkata
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai Nairobi
São Paulo Shanghai Taipei Tokyo Toronto

Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press
in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 1987

First published 1987
Reprinted 1988, 1989, 1990 (twice), 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994, 1995,
1996 (twice), 1998, 1999 (twice), 2001, 2002 (twice), 2003, 2004

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Sadler, A.J.
Understanding pure mathematics.
1. Mathematics—Examinations, questions, etc.
I. Title II. Thorning, D.W.S.
510'.76 QA43

ISBN 0-19-914243-2 School Edition
ISBN 0-19-914259-9 Trade Edition

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press. Within the U.K., exceptions are allowed in respect of any fair dealing for the purpose of research or private study, or criticism or review, as permitted under the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act, 1988, or in the case of reprographic reproduction in accordance with the terms of licences issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside these terms and in other countries should be sent to the Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above.

Printed by Bell & Bain Ltd., Glasgow

Ismail Digital Library
ismailpages.wordpress.com/
ismailabdi.wordpress.com/
Unauthorized Educational Material

Contents

Introductory work
The number line 1
Inequalities 2
Basic algebraic manipulation 5
Surds 8
Quadratics 10
Trigonometric ratios of acute and obtuse angles 13
Solution of triangles 16
Three-dimensional trigonometry 22

1 Functions
Basic concepts 29
Composite functions 34
The inverse of a function 34
Ordered pairs 38
The graph of a function 39
Some further considerations 43

2 Vectors
Basic concepts 47
Position vectors and unit vectors 52
The scalar product 58
Geometrical proofs by vector methods 63
The vector equation of a straight line 65

3 Coordinate geometry I
Loci 71
Distance between two points 72
Mid-point of a line joining two points 74
Gradient of a line joining two points 77
Parallel and perpendicular lines 79
The equation $y = mx + c$ 81
Finding the cartesian equation of a straight line 87
Relationships shown as linear graphs 89
Intersection of lines 94

4 Trigonometry I
Trigonometric ratios of any angle 99
Trigonometric graphs 101
Graph sketching 106
Solving trigonometric equations 110
Pythagorean relationships 114
Secant, cosecant and cotangent 115
Compound angles 118
Circular measure 124

5 Algebra I
Indices 131
Variation 133
Elementary theory of logarithms 136
Quadratics 141
Polynomials in general 152

6 Matrices
Basic concepts 159
Transformations 163
Further considerations 170
General reflections and rotations 178

7 Permutations and combinations
Successive operations 188
Permutations 189
Combinations 198
Selections of any size from a group 203
Division into groups 204

8 Series and the binomial theorem
Arithmetic progressions 208
Geometric progressions 212
Summation of other series and proof by induction 217
The binomial theorem for a positive integral index 222
The binomial theorem for any rational index 228

9 Probability
Simple probability 235
Sum and product laws 238
Further conditional probability 246
Probability involving permutations and combinations 247

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

10 Calculus I: differentiation
The gradient of a curve 255
Differentiation of ax^n 258
Maximum, minimum and points of inflexion 262
Small changes 269
More about points of inflexion 272

11 Sketching functions I
General methods 275
Further considerations 282
Simple transformations 284
$\frac{1}{f(x)}$ 288

12 Calculus II: integration
The reverse of differentiation 293
The area under a curve 298
Volume of révolution 305
Two applications 308
Mean value of a function 312

13 Calculus III: further techniques
Function of a function 317
Integration of $f'(x)[f(x)]^n$ 320
Related rates of change 322
Parameters 325
Product rule 328
Quotient rule 329
Implicit functions 331

14 Sketching functions II
Rational functions 335
Inequalities 344

15 Trigonometry II
Sum and product formulae 351
$a \cos x \pm b \sin x$ 353
Inverse trigonometric functions 356
General solutions 361
Small angles 365
Differentiation of trigonometric functions 367
Integration of trigonometric functions 371
Differentiation of inverse trigonometric functions 374

16 Coordinate geometry II
Angle between two straight lines 380
Distance of a point from a line 382
The circle 385
The parabola 392
The ellipse and the hyperbola 396
Polar coordinates 401

17 Three-dimensional work: vectors and matrices
Three-dimensional work 409
Differentiation and integration of vectors 413
Equations of a straight line in 3-D 415
Equations of a plane 423
3×3 matrices 433
Sets of linear equations 439

18 Algebra II
Partial fractions 451
Partial fractions and series 455
Complex numbers 460

19 Exponential and logarithmic functions
Differentiating the exponential function 477
The logarithmic function 481
The exponential series 489
The logarithmic series 490

20 Calculus IV: further integration
Change of variable 496
Integration by parts 502
General methods 506
Differential equations 509

21 Numerical methods
The trapezium rule 524
Simpson's rule 525
Taylor's theorem 527
Maclaurin's theorem 528
Solution of equations 529
e^z, $\cos z$ and $\sin z$ for complex z 535

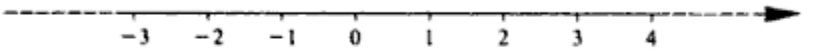
Answers 540

Index 600

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Introductory work

0.1 The number line



When we first learn to count, we use the numbers, 1, 2, 3, 4, ... These counting numbers form the set of **natural numbers** or **positive integers**, $\mathbb{Z}^+$.

$$\mathbb{Z}^+ = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, \ldots\}$$

As our use of number progresses, we need to extend this set backwards to include zero and negative numbers. This gives us the set of all integers $\mathbb{Z}$.

$$\mathbb{Z} = \{\ldots -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$$

This set of integers is sufficient for many purposes, but we soon need to introduce fractions. Any number that can be expressed in the form a/b, where a and b can take any integer value except $b = 0$, is called a **rational number**. All the integers are rational as they can be expressed in the form $a/1$. If we extend our set of integers $\mathbb{Z}$ to include all rational numbers, we have the set of rational numbers $\mathbb{Q}$.

There is still one group of numbers on our number line that is not included in the set $\mathbb{Q}$. This is the group of numbers that cannot be expressed in the form a/b for integer a and b: these are said to be the **irrational numbers**. One example of an irrational number is $\sqrt{2}$.

To prove that $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational we use the method of **proof by contradiction**, i.e. we assume that what we are trying to prove is not true and then show that this assumption leads to a contradiction.

We initially assume that $\sqrt{2}$ *can* be written as a fraction a/b in its simplest form (i.e. all cancelling carried out), where a and b are integers.

Suppose that $\sqrt{2} = \dfrac{a}{b}$ then $2 = \dfrac{a^2}{b^2}$

$$\text{or} \quad a^2 = 2b^2 \ \ldots [1]$$

This means that a^2 is even and so a must be even.

Because a is even, we can write $a = 2c$

Substituting for a in [1] gives $(2c)^2 = 2b^2$

$$4c^2 = 2b^2$$

$$\therefore \quad 2c^2 = b^2 \quad \text{and so } b \text{ must be even.}$$

Now we have a contradiction because if both a and b are even, the fraction

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

a/b was not in its simplest form. Thus $\sqrt{2}$ cannot be written in the form a/b and so $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational.

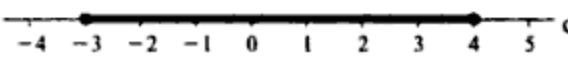
The set of rational numbers $\mathbb{Q}$ together with the set of irrational numbers form the set of **real numbers** $\mathbb{R}$ and complete the number line.

Note: If we express numbers as decimals, a rational number will either have a finite number of decimal places or will recur. An irrational number will have an infinite number of decimal places without recurring.

0.2 Inequalities

The reader should be familiar with the notation $a > b$ and $a \geqslant b$ standing for 'a is greater than b' and 'a is greater than or equal to b' and with the notation $a < b$ and $a \leqslant b$ standing for 'a is less than b' and 'a is less than or equal to b'.

If we wish to consider a section of the number line, we can define that section by using set notation and the inequality symbols.

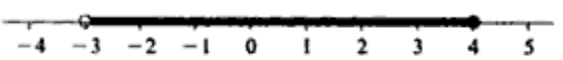
The section 

can be written

$\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 4\}$ and this is read as 'the set of all real x such that x is greater than or equal to -3 and less than or equal to 4.'
[$\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 4\}$ can also be written $\{x: x \in \mathbb{R}, -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 4\}$]

If we do not wish to include the integer -3 in our set, we would write $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -3 < x \leqslant 4\}$.

This would be illustrated as follows:



The open circle indicates that -3 is not included in the section.

If we only want to consider the integer values from -3 to $+4$, we would write this as $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}: -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 4\}$ and the set could be listed: $\{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$.

The notation $\{x: x \text{ obeys some rule}\}$ can also be used for a set with one or more elements missing. For example, the set of all real numbers except the number 1 would be written $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \neq 1\}$. In a similar way $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}: x \neq 0, x \neq 1\} = \{\ldots -5, -4, -3, -2, -1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 \ldots\}$

Note: The set $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x < a\}$ is sometimes written $\{x: x < a\}$ or simply as $x < a$. In such cases it should be assumed that the inequalities are for real x.

Inequalities can be simplified using a method similar to that used to solve equations. However, simplifying an inequality will give a range of possible values for the unknown rather than a finite number of solutions.

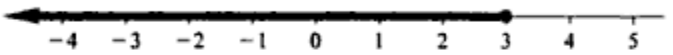
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 1

Simplify the following inequality $6x - 3 \leqslant 21 - 2x$.

$$\begin{aligned} & 6x - 3 \leqslant 21 - 2x \\ \text{Re-arranging gives}\quad & 6x + 2x \leqslant 21 + 3 \\ \therefore\quad & 8x \leqslant 24 \\ \text{so}\quad & x \leqslant 3 \end{aligned}$$

The answer may be left in this form or it can be expressed as the solution set $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \leqslant 3\}$ or diagrammatically:



One important difference between the techniques used to simplify inequalities and those used when solving equations arises when we multiply or divide the inequality by a negative number. In such cases we must reverse the inequality sign.

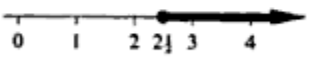
Consider the true statements $4 > 3$, $3 > -2$, $-4 < -2$. If we multiply each statement by -1 and reverse the inequality sign, we obtain the statements $-4 < -3$, $-3 < 2$, $4 > 2$ which are also true. (The reader should verify that the statements obtained by multiplying by -1 and not reversing the inequality signs are not true).

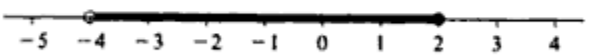
Example 2

Simplify the following inequalities and illustrate the solutions with a diagram: (a) $8 - 2x \leqslant 3$, (b) $-5 < 2x + 3 \leqslant 7$.

(a)
$$\begin{aligned} 8 - 2x &\leqslant 3 \\ -2x &\leqslant 3 - 8 \\ -2x &\leqslant -5 \\ 2x &\geqslant 5 \\ x &\geqslant 2\tfrac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned} -5 < 2x + 3 &\leqslant 7 \\ -5 < 2x + 3 \quad &\text{and} \quad 2x + 3 \leqslant 7 \\ -5 - 3 < 2x \quad & \qquad\qquad 2x \leqslant 7 - 3 \\ -8 < 2x \quad & \qquad\qquad 2x \leqslant 4 \\ -4 < x \quad &\text{and} \quad x \leqslant 2 \\ \text{i.e.}\quad -4 < x &\leqslant 2 \end{aligned}$$





The modulus sign

We write $|x|$ to mean the magnitude or modulus of x, i.e. we are only interested in the size of x and can disregard its sign.

So $|-7| = 7$; $|-3| = 3$; $|2| = 2$ etc.

This enables us to write inequalities of the type $-1 < x < 1$ as $|x| < 1$
or $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$ as $|x| \leqslant 3$ etc.

Notice that $|x| < a$ means that x must lie between $+a$ and $-a$,
i.e. $x > -a$ and $x < a$
whereas $|x| > a$ means that x must either be greater than $+a$ or less than $-a$, i.e. $x > a$ or $x < -a$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 3

Express the following as inequalities of x and illustrate the solutions with a diagram:
(a) $|2x - 3| \leqslant 7$, (b) $|3x + 1| > 8$.

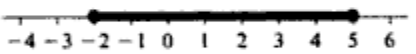
(a) $|2x - 3| \leqslant 7$

$2x - 3 \geqslant -7$ and $2x - 3 \leqslant 7$

$2x \geqslant -4$ and $2x \leqslant 10$

$x \geqslant -2$ and $x \leqslant 5$

So $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$



(b) $|3x + 1| > 8$

$3x + 1 < -8$ or $3x + 1 > 8$

$3x < -9$ or $3x > 7$

$x < -3$ or $x > 2\frac{1}{3}$

Notice that we do *not* combine the *two* ranges of part (b) in the form $-3 > x > 2\frac{1}{3}$.

Exercise A

1. State whether each of the following statements are true or false.

(a) $4 > 5$ (b) $5 < 2$ (c) $3 > 1$ (d) $2 < 5$
(e) $-3 > -2$ (f) $-3 < -2$ (g) $2 > -2$ (h) $-4 < -5$
(i) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}^+ : x \neq 2, x \neq 3\} = \{1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, \ldots\}$
(j) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : x \neq 2\} = \{\ldots -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 3, 4, \ldots\}$
(k) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -1 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\} = \{-1, 0, 1, 2\}$
(l) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -3 < x \leqslant 4\} = \{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$
(m) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -2 < x \leqslant 5\} = \{-1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$
(n) $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : -2 < x \leqslant 5\} = \{-1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$
(o) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : x \leqslant 2\} = \{x \in \mathbb{Z} : x < 3\}$
(p) $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : x \leqslant 2\} = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : x < 3\}$

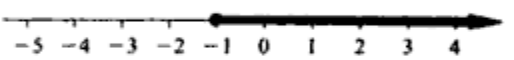
2. List the elements of the following sets:

(a) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -2 < x < 4\}$ (b) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -2 \leqslant x \leqslant 4\}$
(c) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -3 \leqslant x < 2\}$ (d) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -3 < x \leqslant 2\}$
(e) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}^+ : x < 5\}$ (f) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}^+ : x \leqslant 5\}$

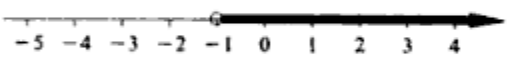
3. Give the following sets of numbers in the form
$\{x \in$ a set of numbers: x satisfies some inequality$\}$.

(a) $\{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$ (b) $\{-5, -4, -3, -2, -1\}$

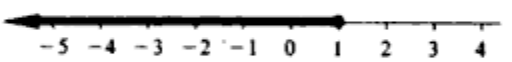
(c) $\{\ldots -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1\}$ (d)



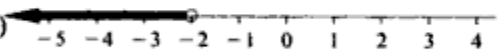
(e)



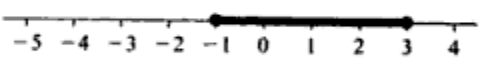
(f)



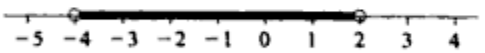
(g)



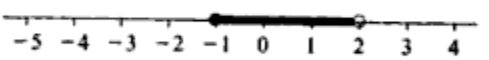
(h)



(i)



(j)



4. Simplify each of the following inequalities and draw a diagram for each solution set for $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

(a) $2x \leqslant 6$ (b) $2x + 1 < 5$ (c) $3x - 1 \geqslant 11$
(d) $4 - x < 6$ (e) $4 - 3x > 7$ (f) $2x - 4 \geqslant -1$
(g) $5x - 3 \leqslant 11 - 2x$ (h) $2x + 1 > 3x - 4$ (i) $-5 \leqslant 2x - 3 \leqslant 7$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(j) $-7 \leqslant 3x + 2 \leqslant 5$ (k) $1 < 2x + 7 < 11$ (l) $1 < 7x + 15 < 36$
(m) $4 \leqslant 2 - x < 7$ (n) $-9 < 3 - 2x \leqslant 1$

5. Find the solution sets of the following inequalities:
(a) $|x - 2| \leqslant 5$ (b) $|2x - 1| \leqslant 5$ (c) $|2x - 5| > 7$
(d) $|4x - 1| < 15$ (e) $|5x - 1| \geqslant 4$ (f) $|3x - 1| > 5$

0.3 Basic algebraic manipulation

The following examples and Exercise B are intended to revise basic algebraic processes. The ability to manipulate algebraic expressions correctly is an essential skill for advanced mathematics.

Example 4

Simplify the following:
(a) $12x + 3y - 4x$ (b) $2cd^2 - 5cd^2 + 6d^2c + 4c^2d$

(a) $12x + 3y - 4x$
$= 8x + 3y$

(b) $2cd^2 - 5cd^2 + 6d^2c + 4c^2d$
$= 3cd^2 + 4c^2d$

Example 5

Expand the following and simplify where possible:
(a) $5x(x - 7)$ (b) $14(x - 3) - 5(x - 9)$ (c) $(3x - 2)(5x + 3)$
(d) $(2x + 3)^3$ (e) $3x(x^2 + 4x - 2) - 3(x^2 - 5x)$

(a) $5x(x - 7)$
$= 5x^2 - 35x$

(b) $14(x - 3) - 5(x - 9)$
$= 14x - 42 - 5x + 45$
$= 9x + 3$

(c) $(3x - 2)(5x + 3)$
$= 15x^2 + 9x - 10x - 6$
$= 15x^2 - x - 6$

(d) $(2x + 3)^3$
$= (2x + 3)(2x + 3)^2$
$= (2x + 3)(4x^2 + 12x + 9)$
$= 8x^3 + 24x^2 + 18x + 12x^2 + 36x + 27$
$= 8x^3 + 36x^2 + 54x + 27$

(e) $3x(x^2 + 4x - 2) - 3(x^2 - 5x)$
$= 3x^3 + 12x^2 - 6x - 3x^2 + 15x$
$= 3x^3 + 9x^2 + 9x$

Example 6

Factorise the following:
(a) $12x^2 + 8xy$ (b) $x^2 + 2x - 24$ (c) $2x^2 - x - 6$ (d) $4x^3 - 9x$
(e) $3a + 6 + xa + 2x$

(a) $12x^2 + 8xy$
$= 4x(3x + 2y)$

(b) $x^2 + 2x - 24$
$= (x - 4)(x + 6)$

(c) $2x^2 - x - 6$
$= (2x + 3)(x - 2)$

(d) $4x^3 - 9x$
$= x(4x^2 - 9)$
$= x(2x - 3)(2x + 3)$

(e) $3a + 6 + xa + 2x$
$= 3(a + 2) + x(a + 2)$
$= (a + 2)(3 + x)$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 7

Divide $2x^3 - 11x + 6$ by $(x - 2)$

METHOD 1

$$\begin{array}{r|l} & 2x^2 + 4x - 3 \\ \hline x - 2 & 2x^3 \qquad - 11x + 6 \\ & \underline{2x^3 - 4x^2} \\ & \quad 4x^2 - 11x \\ & \quad \underline{4x^2 - 8x} \\ & \qquad - 3x + 6 \\ & \qquad \underline{- 3x + 6} \end{array}$$

The quotient is $2x^2 + 4x - 3$

METHOD 2

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2x^3 - 11x + 6}{x - 2} &= \frac{2x^2(x - 2) + 4x^2 - 11x + 6}{x - 2} \\ &= \frac{2x^2(x - 2)}{x - 2} + \frac{4x(x - 2) - 3x + 6}{x - 2} \\ &= \frac{2x^2(x - 2)}{x - 2} + \frac{4x(x - 2)}{x - 2} - \frac{3(x - 2)}{x - 2} \\ &= 2x^2 + 4x - 3 \end{aligned}$$

The quotient is $2x^2 + 4x - 3$

Example 8

Find the remainder when $x^2 + 3x$ is divided by $x^2 + x - 12$

METHOD 1

$$\begin{array}{r|l} & 1 \\ \hline x^2 + x - 12 & x^2 + 3x \\ & \underline{x^2 + x - 12} \\ & \quad 2x + 12 \end{array}$$

Remainder is $2x + 12$

METHOD 2

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x^2 + 3x}{x^2 + x - 12} &= \frac{1(x^2 + x - 12) + 2x + 12}{x^2 + x - 12} \\ &= 1 + \frac{2x + 12}{x^2 + x - 12} \end{aligned}$$

Remainder is $2x + 12$

Example 9

Express as single fractions:

(a) $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{(x + 3)}$ (b) $\frac{1}{(x + 3)^2} - \frac{2}{(x + 3)}$ (c) $\frac{(2x + 6)}{7} \times \frac{1}{(x^2 - 9)}$

(d) $\frac{5x^2}{(x^2 + 6x - 7)} \div \frac{x}{(x^2 - 1)}$

(a)
$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{(x + 3)} \\ &= \frac{1(x + 3) + 2(2)}{2(x + 3)} \\ &= \frac{x + 7}{2(x + 3)} \end{aligned}$$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{1}{(x + 3)^2} - \frac{2}{(x + 3)} \\ &= \frac{1 - 2(x + 3)}{(x + 3)^2} \\ &= \frac{1 - 2x - 6}{(x + 3)^2} \\ &= \frac{-2x - 5}{(x + 3)^2} \end{aligned}$$

(c)
$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{(2x + 6)}{7} \times \frac{1}{(x^2 - 9)} \\ &= \frac{2(x + 3)}{7} \times \frac{1}{(x + 3)(x - 3)} \\ &= \frac{2}{7(x - 3)} \end{aligned}$$

(d)
$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{5x^2}{(x^2 + 6x - 7)} \div \frac{x}{(x^2 - 1)} \\ &= \frac{5x^2}{(x^2 + 6x - 7)} \times \frac{(x^2 - 1)}{x} \\ &= \frac{5x^2}{(x + 7)(x - 1)} \times \frac{(x + 1)(x - 1)}{x} \\ &= \frac{5x(x + 1)}{(x + 7)} \end{aligned}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Improper algebraic fractions

When the highest power of x in the numerator is equal to or greater than the highest power of x in the denominator, the fraction is said to be **improper**. These improper fractions can be rearranged into expressions that are not improper by long division (method 1 above) or by algebraic 'juggling' (method 2 above). The following example shows these methods.

Example 10

Rearrange the following into expressions that do not involve improper algebraic fractions.

(a) $\dfrac{x^2 + 3}{x^2 - 4x + 5}$ (b) $\dfrac{x^2 + x - 4}{x + 3}$

(a) By long division

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 \\ x^2 - 4x + 5 \overline{)\, x^2 \qquad + 3} \\ \underline{x^2 - 4x + 5} \\ 4x - 2 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{x^2 + 3}{x^2 - 4x + 5} = 1 + \frac{4x - 2}{x^2 - 4x + 5}$$

By algebraic 'juggling'

$$\frac{x^2 + 3}{x^2 - 4x + 5} = \frac{1(x^2 - 4x + 5) + 4x - 2}{x^2 - 4x + 5}$$

$$= \frac{1(x^2 - 4x + 5)}{x^2 - 4x + 5} + \frac{4x - 2}{x^2 - 4x + 5}$$

$$= 1 + \frac{4x - 2}{x^2 - 4x + 5}$$

(b) By long division

$$\begin{array}{r} x - 2 \\ x + 3 \overline{)\, x^2 + x - 4} \\ \underline{x^2 + 3x} \\ -2x - 4 \\ \underline{-2x - 6} \\ 2 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{x^2 + x - 4}{x + 3} = x - 2 + \frac{2}{x + 3}$$

By algebraic 'juggling'

$$\frac{x^2 + x - 4}{x + 3} = \frac{x(x + 3) - 2(x + 3) + 2}{x + 3}$$

$$= \frac{x(x + 3)}{x + 3} - \frac{2(x + 3)}{x + 3} + \frac{2}{x + 3}$$

$$= x - 2 + \frac{2}{x + 3}$$

Exercise B

1. Simplify the following:
(a) $2x + 6y + 9x$ (b) $7x - 4x - 8$ (c) $5p^2 + 8p - 3p^2 - 3$
(d) $x^2y + 2xy^2 + 3x^2y$ (e) $15a^2 - 2ab - 7a^2$

2. Expand the following and simplify where possible:
(a) $3x(x - 4)$ (b) $3(x + 4) - 2(x - 6)$ (c) $5(x + 3) + 4(2x - 3)$
(d) $2x(y - 3) + y(3x - 4)$ (e) $(x + 3)(x - 5)$ (f) $(2x + 3)(x - 4)$
(g) $(2x - 3)^2$ (h) $(3x - 1)^3$ (i) $5x(x^2 - 3x - 4) - 2(x + 3)^2$

3. Factorise the following:
(a) $16x^2 + 24xy$ (b) $15x^2 + 10xy + 20x$ (c) $x^2 + 3x - 10$
(d) $x^2 + 5x - 14$ (e) $2x^2 - 7x - 15$ (f) $6x^2 - x - 2$
(g) $4x^2 + 4x - 15$ (h) $x^2 - 9$ (i) $16x^2 - 49y^2$
(j) $2x^3 - 18x$ (k) $ax + 3x + 2a + 6$ (l) $xa - 2xb + ya - 2yb$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. Divide:

(a) $x^3 + 2x^2 - x - 2$ by $(x - 1)$ (b) $2x^3 + 9x^2 - 4x - 21$ by $(2x - 3)$

(c) $x^4 + x^3 + 7x - 3$ by $(x^2 - x + 3)$ (d) $6x^4 + 14x^3 - 9x^2 - 7x + 3$ by $(2x^2 - 1)$

5. Find the remainder when:

(a) $3x^2 + 13x - 1$ is divided by $x^2 + 4$

(b) $x^3 + 2x^2 - 6x - 5$ is divided by $x^2 + 4x + 1$

(c) $x^4 + 2x^3 + 10x^2 + 13x + 11$ is divided by $x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$

(d) $2x^5 - x^4 - 11x^3 - 15x + 5$ is divided by $2x + 5$

6. Express as single fractions:

(a) $\frac{x}{4} + \frac{2x}{3}$ (b) $\frac{x}{5} + \frac{x-1}{3}$ (c) $\frac{2x-1}{3} - \frac{x-4}{2}$

(d) $\frac{1}{3} + \frac{2}{x+1}$ (e) $\frac{5}{2x+3} - \frac{1}{4}$ (f) $\frac{1}{(x+2)^2} - \frac{3}{(x+2)}$

(g) $\frac{3}{x} - \frac{2}{x+4}$ (h) $\frac{1}{2(x+4)} + \frac{3}{(x+4)^2} + \frac{1}{2}$ (i) $\frac{1}{2(x+4)} - \frac{3x}{(x+4)^2} + \frac{1}{2}$

(j) $\frac{4x}{3} \div \frac{2x}{7}$ (k) $\frac{2(x+4)}{5} \times \frac{1}{(x^2-16)}$ (l) $\frac{5x-20}{3x} \times \frac{1}{2x-8}$

(m) $\frac{3}{2x-8} + \frac{1}{x-4} + \frac{3}{2x}$ (n) $\frac{3}{x} - \frac{2}{x(x-1)}$ (o) $\left(\frac{2}{x+4} - \frac{3}{x}\right) \div \frac{x}{x^2-16}$

7. Using the method of long division (see Example 10), rearrange the following into expressions that do not involve improper algebraic fractions:

(a) $\frac{x^2+6x-2}{x^2+4x+1}$ (b) $\frac{2x^2+5}{x^2+1}$ (c) $\frac{5x^2+2x-11}{x^2+x-2}$ (d) $\frac{x^3-5x^2+9x-7}{x^2-2x+3}$

8. Using the method of algebraic 'juggling' (see Example 10), rearrange the following into expressions that do not involve improper algebraic fractions:

(a) $\frac{x^2+3x+3}{x^2+4}$ (b) $\frac{x+2}{x+5}$ (c) $\frac{2x^2-4x+11}{x^2-2x+8}$

(d) $\frac{4x+1}{2x+3}$ (e) $\frac{x^3+x^2+3x+5}{x^2+3}$ (f) $\frac{x^2-2x-1}{x+1}$

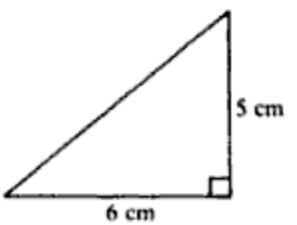
(g) $\frac{x^3+3x^2-5x-4}{x^2+2x-4}$ (h) $\frac{x^4+x^3+5x^2+10x-14}{x^2+7}$

0.4 Surds

$\sqrt{25} = 5$, $\sqrt[3]{8} = 2$ and $\sqrt{121} = 11$: these are expressions which can be evaluated exactly.

Surds are such expressions as $\sqrt{7}$, $\sqrt[3]{42}$, $\sqrt{110}$ which cannot be evaluated exactly. They are **irrational**.

Surds often arise in calculations. For example, using Pythagoras' theorem to find the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle with its other sides 5 and 6 cm:



$$\begin{aligned}(\text{hypotenuse})^2 &= 5^2 + 6^2\\ &= 25 + 36\\ \text{hypotenuse} &= \sqrt{61}\text{ cm}\end{aligned}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

This is an exact answer and it is often preferable to leave an answer in this form, rather than to give a decimal approximation such as 7·8102 ...

Expressions involving surds can often be simplified. The following rules apply:

(i) $\sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{(ab)}$ e.g. $\sqrt{5} \times \sqrt{2} = \sqrt{10}$

(ii) $\sqrt{a} \div \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)}$ e.g. $\sqrt{5} \div \sqrt{2} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{5}{2}\right)}$

(iii) $a\sqrt{c} \pm b\sqrt{c} = (a \pm b)\sqrt{c}$ e.g. $3\sqrt{2} + 4\sqrt{2} = 7\sqrt{2}$
and $3\sqrt{2} - 4\sqrt{2} = -\sqrt{2}$

It must be carefully noted that

$\sqrt{a} \pm \sqrt{b} \neq \sqrt{(a \pm b)}$ for non-zero a and b

e.g. $\sqrt{16} + \sqrt{9} \neq \sqrt{25}$, and $\sqrt{16} - \sqrt{9} \neq \sqrt{7}$.

Example 11

Simplify each of the following and hence show that all three expressions are equal:

(a) $\frac{\sqrt{18}}{3}$ (b) $3\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{8}$ (c) $\frac{\sqrt{6}}{\sqrt{3}}$

(a)
$$\frac{\sqrt{18}}{3} = \frac{\sqrt{9} \times \sqrt{2}}{3} = \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{3} = \sqrt{2}$$

(b)
$$3\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{8} = 3\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{4}\sqrt{2} = 3\sqrt{2} - 2\sqrt{2} = \sqrt{2}$$

(c)
$$\frac{\sqrt{6}}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{3}} = \sqrt{2}$$

When fractions are involved with surds, it is normal practice to eliminate the surds from the denominator; this is called rationalising the denominator (i.e. clearing it of irrational numbers.)

For expressions of the type $\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}$,

we multiply the top and bottom by $\sqrt{a}$, giving $\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \times \frac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{a}} = \frac{\sqrt{a}}{a}$

and for expressions of the type $\frac{1}{b + \sqrt{a}}$

we multiply the top and bottom by $(b - \sqrt{a})$, giving $\frac{1}{b + \sqrt{a}} = \frac{1}{b + \sqrt{a}} \times \frac{b - \sqrt{a}}{b - \sqrt{a}} = \frac{b - \sqrt{a}}{b^2 - a}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 12

Rationalise the denominators of the following fractions (a) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ (b) $\frac{10}{\sqrt{3}-1}$.

(a) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}}$
$= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$

(b) $\frac{10}{\sqrt{3}-1} = \frac{10}{(\sqrt{3}-1)} \times \frac{(\sqrt{3}+1)}{(\sqrt{3}+1)}$
$= \frac{10(\sqrt{3}+1)}{3-1}$
$= 5(\sqrt{3}+1).$

Exercise C

1. Simplify the following:
   (a) $5\sqrt{3} - 3\sqrt{3}$ (b) $\sqrt{12} + 5\sqrt{3}$ (c) $\sqrt{200} + 7\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{72}$
   (d) $6\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{12} + \sqrt{48}$ (e) $\sqrt{45} + \sqrt{20} - \sqrt{80}$ (f) $(\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{2})(\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{2})$
   (g) $(2\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{7})(2\sqrt{5} - \sqrt{7})$ (h) $(2\sqrt{3} - 3\sqrt{2})(2\sqrt{3} + 3\sqrt{2})$
2. In each of the following state the 'odd one out':
   (a) $3\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{12}, \sqrt{18}$ (b) $4\sqrt{3}, \sqrt{48}, \sqrt{12}$ (c) $\sqrt{20}, 2\sqrt{3}, \sqrt{12}$
   (d) $\sqrt{20}, 2\sqrt{5}, \sqrt{18}$ (e) $5\sqrt{2}, 2\sqrt{5}, \sqrt{50}$ (f) $\sqrt{6}, 36, \sqrt{2}\sqrt{3}$
   (g) $\sqrt{3}, \frac{3}{\sqrt{3}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ (h) $\sqrt{12}, \frac{6}{\sqrt{2}}, 3\sqrt{2}$ (i) $5\sqrt{2}, \frac{5}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{10}{\sqrt{2}}$
3. Express each of the following in the form $a + b\sqrt{c}$
   (a) $(\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{2})^2$ (b) $(2\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{3})^2$ (c) $(3\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{2})(\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{2})$
4. Rationalise the denominators of the following:
   (a) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ (b) $\frac{9}{\sqrt{3}}$ (c) $\frac{16}{3\sqrt{2}}$ (d) $\frac{1}{3-\sqrt{2}}$ (e) $\frac{5}{3-\sqrt{5}}$
   (f) $\frac{\sqrt{5}+\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{5}-\sqrt{3}}$ (g) $\frac{\sqrt{3}+2}{\sqrt{3}-2}$ (h) $\frac{2\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{2}-\sqrt{3}}$ (i) $\frac{4-3\sqrt{2}}{5-3\sqrt{2}}$

0.5 Quadratics

Equations of the type $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, $(a \neq 0)$, are called quadratic equations. There are three ways of solving such equations.

1. By factorisation

This method should only be used if $ax^2 + bx + c$ is readily factorised by inspection.

Example 13

Solve: (a) $x^2 + 2x - 24 = 0$ (b) $2x^2 - x - 6 = 0$

(a) $x^2 + 2x - 24 = 0$
$\therefore \quad (x+6)(x-4) = 0$
So, either $x + 6 = 0$
or $x - 4 = 0$
giving $x = -6$ or $x = 4$

(b) $2x^2 - x - 6 = 0$
$\therefore \quad (2x+3)(x-2) = 0$
So, either $2x + 3 = 0$
or $x - 2 = 0$
giving $x = -\frac{3}{2}$ or $x = 2$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2. By the formula $x = \dfrac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$

Example 14

Solve $x^2 + 4x - 1 = 0$.

Comparing $x^2 - 4x - 1 = 0$ with the general equation
$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, gives $a = 1$, $b = -4$ and $c = -1$.
Substituting these values in the formula

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$$

gives $$x = \frac{4 \pm \sqrt{(16 + 4)}}{2}$$

$= 2 + \sqrt{5}$ or $2 - \sqrt{5}$ (these answers are in surds)
$= 4{\cdot}24$ or $-0{\cdot}24$ (these answers are correct to 2 decimal places)

3. By completing the square

This method uses the expansion $(x + b)^2 = x^2 + 2bx + b^2$.

Notice that the last term, (b^2), is the square of half the coefficient of x, $(2b)$.

Example 15

Solve $x^2 + 3x - 1 = 0$

$$x^2 + 3x - 1 = 0$$
$$\therefore \quad x^2 + 3x = 1$$

Adding the square of half of the coefficient of x to each side of the equation

gives $$x^2 + 3x + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 = 1 + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2$$

So $$\left(x + \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{13}{4}$$

$$\therefore \quad x + \frac{3}{2} = \pm\frac{\sqrt{13}}{2} \quad \text{giving} \quad x = \frac{\sqrt{13} - 3}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{-\sqrt{13} - 3}{2}$$

or as decimals $x = 0{\cdot}30$ or $-3{\cdot}30$ (correct to 2 d.p.)

The method of completing the square, used to solve $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, can also be used to find the maximum or minimum value of the expression $ax^2 + bx + c$.
For example, consider the expression $x^2 + 3x + 4$:

$$x^2 + 3x + 4 = x^2 + 3x + (\tfrac{3}{2})^2 - (\tfrac{3}{2})^2 + 4$$
$$= (x + \tfrac{3}{2})^2 + \tfrac{7}{4}$$

Now $(x + \frac{3}{2})^2$ cannot be negative for any value of x, i.e. $(x + \frac{3}{2})^2 \geqslant 0$.
Thus $x^2 + 3x + 4$ is always positive and will have a minimum value of $\frac{7}{4}$ when $x + \frac{3}{2} = 0$, i.e. when $x = -\frac{3}{2}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 16

Find the maximum value of $5 - 2x - 4x^2$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

$$\begin{aligned} 5 - 2x - 4x^2 &= -4(x^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}x) + 5 \\ &= -4(x^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}x + \tfrac{1}{16}) + \tfrac{4}{16} + 5 \\ &= -4(x + \tfrac{1}{4})^2 + \tfrac{21}{4} \\ &= \tfrac{21}{4} - 4(x + \tfrac{1}{4})^2 \end{aligned}$$

Now $(x + \frac{1}{4})^2 \geqslant 0$.

Thus $5 - 2x - 4x^2$ has a maximum value of $\frac{21}{4}$, or $5\frac{1}{4}$, when $x = -\frac{1}{4}$.

Exercise D

1. Solve the following equations by factorisation:

(a) $x^2 - x - 12 = 0$ (b) $x^2 + 5x - 24 = 0$ (c) $x^2 + 36 = 13x$
(d) $2x^2 - x - 6 = 0$ (e) $2x^2 - 7x - 4 = 0$ (f) $3x^2 + 5x - 12 = 0$
(g) $x(x + 5) = 6$ (h) $4x^2 - 9x = -3 - x$ (i) $x(x - 1) - 2(x + 5) = 0$
(j) $x - \dfrac{24}{x} + 2 = 0$ (k) $3x - 5 = \dfrac{5x - 3}{x}$ (l) $\dfrac{x(2x - 1)}{(x + 2)} = 12$

2. Solve the following equations by using the formula $x = \dfrac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$, giving your answers correct to two decimal places:

(a) $x^2 - 3x + 1 = 0$ (b) $x^2 - x - 4 = 0$ (c) $x^2 + 7x + 5 = 0$
(d) $2x^2 + 3x - 1 = 0$ (e) $3x^2 - 6x + 2 = 0$ (f) $4x^2 - 3x - 2 = 0$

3. Solve the following equations by using the formula $x = \dfrac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$, leaving your answers in surd form:

(a) $x^2 - 3x + 1 = 0$ (b) $2x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$ (c) $3x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$

4. Solve the following equations by 'completing the square' (leave your answers in surd form):

(a) $x^2 + 6x - 1 = 0$ (b) $x^2 + 4x - 3 = 0$ (c) $x^2 + x - 1 = 0$
(d) $x^2 - x - 3 = 0$ (e) $x^2 - 3x - 5 = 0$ (f) $2x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$
(g) $3x^2 - 4x - 2 = 0$ (h) $4x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$ (i) $3x^2 - 6x - 1 = 0$

Each of the expressions given in questions **5–13** has a maximum or minimum value for $x \in \mathbb{R}$.
Find (a) which it is, maximum or minimum, (b) its value, (c) the value of x for which it occurs.

5. $x^2 + 4x - 3$ **6.** $x^2 - 6x + 1$ **7.** $3 - 2x - x^2$
8. $x^2 - 5x + 1$ **9.** $5 + 2x - x^2$ **10.** $6 - x^2 + 8x$
11. $2x^2 + 3x + 1$ **12.** $3x^2 + 2x + 2$ **13.** $1 - 5x - 2x^2$

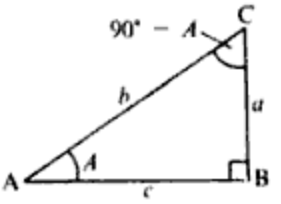
14. Use the method of 'completing the square' to show that the solutions of $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ are given by $x = \dfrac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

0.6 Trigonometric ratios of acute and obtuse angles

Acute angles

Trigonometric ratios of acute angles are usually defined by using a right-angled triangle. Denoting the sides of the triangle by a, b and c:



$$\sin A = \frac{a}{b} \qquad \cos A = \frac{c}{b} \qquad \tan A = \frac{a}{c}$$

It follows that $\dfrac{\sin A}{\cos A} = \dfrac{a}{b} \div \dfrac{c}{b} = \dfrac{a}{c} = \tan A$

Also $\sin A = \dfrac{a}{b} = \cos(90° - A)$ and $\cos A = \dfrac{c}{b} = \sin(90° - A)$

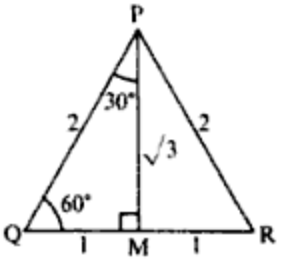
These are general results and should be remembered:

$\dfrac{\sin x}{\cos x} = \tan x$	$\sin x = \cos(90° - x)$	(i.e. $\sin x$ = cosine of complement)
	$\cos x = \sin(90° - x)$	($\cos x$ = sine of complement)

Particular angles

30° and 60°

Suppose $\triangle$PQR is equilateral, with sides 2 units and that PM is the perpendicular bisector of QR.



QM = 1 unit

Using Pythagoras' theorem $\quad MP^2 + MQ^2 = PQ^2$

or $\quad MP = \sqrt{(2^2 - 1^2)}$

So $\quad MP = \sqrt{3}$

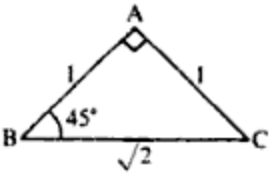
Since $\triangle$PQR is equilateral, $P\hat{Q}M = 60°$ and $Q\hat{P}M = 30°$.

From $\triangle$PQM $\quad \sin 30° = \frac{1}{2}$; $\quad \cos 30° = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$; $\quad \tan 30° = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ or $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$;

and $\quad \sin 60° = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$; $\quad \cos 60° = \frac{1}{2}$; $\quad \tan 60° = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{1} = \sqrt{3}$.

45°

Consider a right-angled triangle which is isosceles and in which the equal sides are 1 unit in length.



The equal angles will each be 45°.

Using Pythagoras' theorem $\quad BC^2 = 1^2 + 1^2$ or $BC = \sqrt{2}$.

Hence $\sin 45° = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ or $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$; $\quad \cos 45° = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$; $\quad \tan 45° = \frac{1}{1} = 1$.

Although the trigonometric ratios of 30°, 45° and 60° have all been obtained separately, some of these could have been deduced from others:

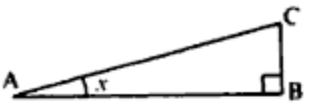
to find cos 60°, knowing sin 30°, we could say $\cos 60° = \sin(90° - 60°) = \sin 30° = \frac{1}{2}$.

to find tan 30°, knowing sin 30° and cos 30° we could say

$$\tan 30° = \frac{\sin 30°}{\cos 30°} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \quad \text{and so on.}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

0° and 90°



In the $\triangle ABC$, as the angle x decreases so does the length of the side BC. As x approaches 0°, BC approaches zero and AC approaches AB in length, i.e. as x tends to zero (written $x \to 0$), then $BC \to 0$ and $AC \to AB$,

but $\sin x = \dfrac{BC}{AC}$ and as $x \to 0$, $BC \to 0$. Thus $\sin 0° = \dfrac{0}{AC} = 0$,

also $\cos x = \dfrac{AB}{AC}$ and as $x \to 0$, $AC \to AB$. Thus $\cos 0° = \dfrac{AB}{AB} = 1$,

and $\tan x = \dfrac{BC}{AB}$ and as $x \to 0$, $BC \to 0$. Thus $\tan 0° = \dfrac{0}{AB} = 0$.

Similarly, as $x \to 0°$, so $A\hat{C}B \to 90°$. Thus, considering the trigonometric ratios of $A\hat{C}B$ as $x \to 0°$:

$\sin 90° = \dfrac{AB}{AB} = 1$, $\cos 90° = \dfrac{0}{AC} = 0$ and $\tan 90° = \dfrac{\sin 90°}{\cos 90°} = \dfrac{1}{0} = \infty$ (infinity).

These results should be memorised:

Angle	sin	cos	tan
0°	0	1	0
30°	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
45°	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	1
60°	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\sqrt{3}$
90°	1	0	∞

Example 17

Show that $\cos^2 30° + \cos 60° \sin 30° = 1$.

The left-hand side is $\cos^2 30° + \cos 60° \sin 30°$

$$= \cos 30°(\cos 30°) + \cos 60° \sin 30°$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{4} + \frac{1}{4}$$

$= 1$ as required.

Obtuse angles

Trigonometric ratios of obtuse angles cannot be defined by means of a right-angled triangle.

The sine, cosine or tangent of an obtuse angle is the sine, cosine or tangent of the **supplement** of the angle, with the appropriate sign.

If θ is an obtuse angle:

$\sin \theta = +\sin(180° - \theta)$ i.e. sine of the supplementary angle,

$\cos \theta = -\cos(180° - \theta)$ i.e. $-$cosine of the supplementary angle,

$\tan \theta = -\tan(180° - \theta)$ i.e. $-$tangent of the supplementary angle.

A full definition of the trigonometric ratios of angles of any size is to be found in section 4.1.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 18

Write each of the following as a trigonometric ratio of an acute angle
(a) sin 155°, (b) cos 140°, (c) tan 130°.

(a) $\sin 155° = +\sin(180° - 155°)$
$= +\sin 25°$
(b) $\cos 140° = -\cos(180° - 140°)$
$= -\cos 40°$
(c) $\tan 130° = -\tan(180° - 130°)$
$= -\tan 50°$

Example 19

If sin 35° = 0·5736 write down the values of (a) sin 145°, (b) cos 125°

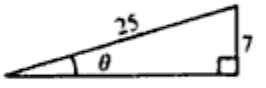
(a) $\sin 145° = +\sin(180° - 145°)$
$= +\sin 35°$
$= +0{\cdot}5736$

(b) $\cos 125° = -\cos(180° - 125°)$
$= -\cos 55°$
$= -\sin 35°$
$= -0{\cdot}5736$

Example 20

Given that $\sin\theta = \frac{7}{25}$ and that θ is an acute angle, find: (a) $\cos\theta$, (b) $\tan\theta$.

First sketch a right-angled triangle containing an angle θ and with two sides of length 7 and 25 units, such that $\sin\theta = \frac{7}{25}$.



Using Pythagoras' theorem, the third side of the triangle $= \sqrt{(25^2 - 7^2)}$
$= 24$

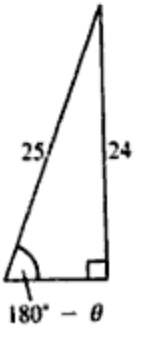
Since θ is acute, all trigonometric ratios of θ will be positive, hence

(a) $\cos\theta = \frac{24}{25}$ (b) $\tan\theta = \frac{7}{24}$.

Example 21

Given that $\sin\theta = \frac{24}{25}$ and that θ is an obtuse angle, find (a) $\cos\theta$, (b) $\tan\theta$.

As θ is obtuse, sketch a right-angled triangle containing an angle $(180° - \theta)$ and with two sides of length 24 and 25 units.
As $\sin\theta$ and $\sin(180° - \theta)$ are numerically equal, $\sin(180° - \theta) = \frac{24}{25}$.
Using Pythagoras' theorem, the third side of the triangle $= \sqrt{(25^2 - 24^2)}$
$= 7$



(a) $\cos\theta = -\cos(180° - \theta)$
$= -\frac{7}{25}$

(b) $\tan\theta = -\tan(180° - \theta)$
$= -\frac{24}{7}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise E

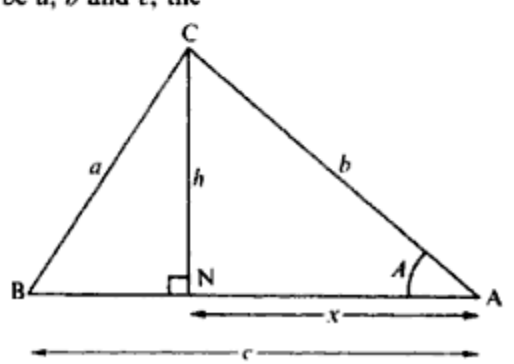
All the questions in this exercise should be answered *without* the use of a calculator or tables

1. Write each of the following as trigonometrical ratios of acute angles:
   (a) sin 130° (b) cos 130° (c) tan 130° (d) sin 140°
   (e) cos 170° (f) cos 160° (g) tan 100° (h) sin 95°
2. Write down the values of the following, leaving surds in your answers:
   (a) sin 30° (b) cos 30° (c) tan 45° (d) sin 45°
   (e) tan 60° (f) sin 90° (g) cos 90° (h) sin 150°
   (i) sin 135° (j) cos 120° (k) sin 180° (l) cos 180°
   (m) tan 135° (n) cos 150° (o) tan 120° (p) sin 120°
3. Show that: (a) $\sin^2 30° + \sin^2 45° + \sin^2 60° = \frac{3}{2}$
   (b) $\sin 60° \cos 30° + \cos 60° \sin 30° = 1$
   (c) $\sin^2 45° + \cos^2 45° = 1$
4. If sin 20° = 0·342 write down the values of:
   (a) sin 160° (b) cos 70° (c) cos 110°
5. If sin 40° = 0·643 and cos 40° = 0·766 write down the values of:
   (a) sin 50° (b) cos 50° (c) sin 140°
   (d) sin 130° (e) cos 140° (f) cos 130°
6. If $\sin A = 0{\cdot}98$ and $\cos A = 0{\cdot}2$, find the value of $\tan A$.
7. If $\sin B = 0{\cdot}954$ and $\cos B = 0{\cdot}3$, find the value of $\tan B$.
8. If $\sin \theta = \frac{3}{5}$ and θ is acute, find the value of (a) $\cos \theta$ (b) $\tan \theta$.
9. If $\sin \theta = \frac{3}{5}$ and θ is obtuse, find the value of (a) $\cos \theta$ (b) $\tan \theta$.
10. If $\sin \theta = \frac{5}{13}$ and θ is obtuse, find the value of (a) $\cos \theta$ (b) $\tan \theta$.
11. Find the value of x in each of the following, given that x is acute:
    (a) $\sin 50° = \cos x$ (b) $\cos 30° = \sin x$
    (c) $\cos (40° + x) = \sin 30°$ (d) $\sin (20° + x) = \cos 50°$
    (e) $\cos (3x - 10°) = \sin 10°$ (f) $\cos (2x + 40°) = \sin 40°$

0.7 Solution of triangles

Cosine rule

Consider △ABC in which CN is the perpendicular from C to BA (produced if necessary—see Case 2). Let the sides of the triangle be a, b and c, the angle CAB be A and AN = x, CN = h.



Case 1

Using Pythagoras' theorem

△CBN $a^2 = h^2 + (c - x)^2$

△CAN $b^2 = h^2 + x^2$

Eliminating h^2

$$a^2 = b^2 - x^2 + (c - x)^2$$

So $$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2cx$$

From △ANC $x = b \cos A$

Hence $$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Case 2

Using Pythagoras' theorem

$\triangle$CBN $a^2 = h^2 + (c + x)^2$

$\triangle$CAN $b^2 = h^2 + x^2$

Eliminating h^2

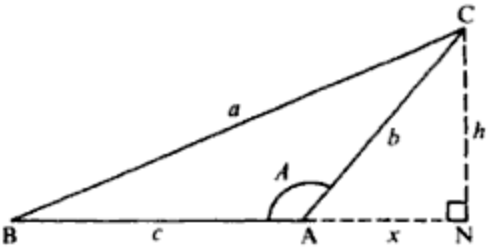
$a^2 = b^2 - x^2 + (c + x)^2$

So $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 + 2cx$

From $\triangle$ANC $x = b \cos (180° - A)$

$= -b \cos A$

Hence $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$



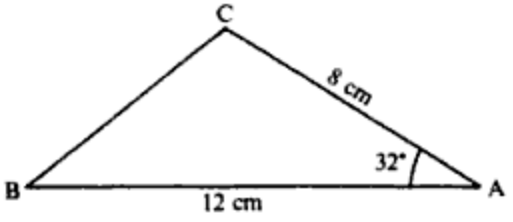
This is the **cosine rule** and it is frequently used to determine a side or angle of a given triangle.

$$\boxed{a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A}$$

Example 22

Find the length of the side BC in each of the following triangles:

(a)



By the cosine rule

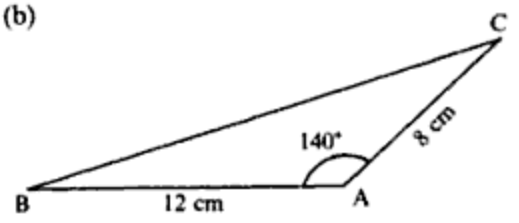
$BC^2 = 12^2 + 8^2 - 2(12)(8) \cos 32°$

$= 144 + 64 - 192(0{\cdot}8480)$

$= 208 - 162{\cdot}8$

giving $BC = 6{\cdot}72$ cm

(b)



By the cosine rule

$BC^2 = 12^2 + 8^2 - 2(12)(8) \cos 14$

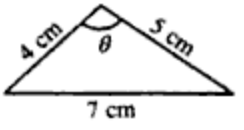
$= 144 + 64 - 192(-0{\cdot}7660)$

$= 208 + 147{\cdot}1$

giving $BC = 18{\cdot}8$ cm

Example 23

Find the angle θ in the given triangle.



By the cosine rule $7^2 = 5^2 + 4^2 - 2(4)(5) \cos \theta$

$$\cos \theta = \frac{25 + 16 - 49}{40}$$

$= -0{\cdot}2$

We now need to find the angle whose cosine is $-0{\cdot}2$. Since the cosine of the angle is negative, the angle must be obtuse.

Using a calculator, press the inverse cosine button (marked $\cos^{-1}$ or arc cos) to give

$\cos^{-1}(-0{\cdot}2) = 101{\cdot}54°$ (correct to 2 d.p.)

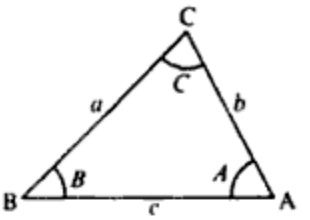
Alternatively using tables of cosines, search for 0·2 and read off the appropriate angle (78° 28′).

As θ must be obtuse $\theta = 180° - 78° 28'$

$= 101{\cdot}54°$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Sine rule



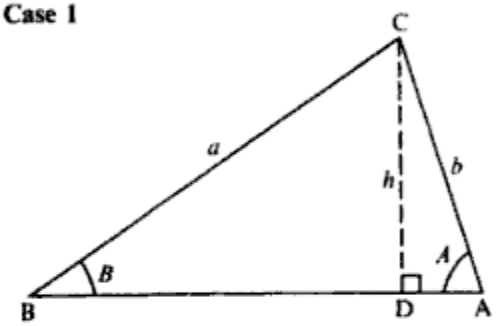
Consider the triangle ABC in which the sides are a, b and c and the angles are A, B and C.

The sine rule states that

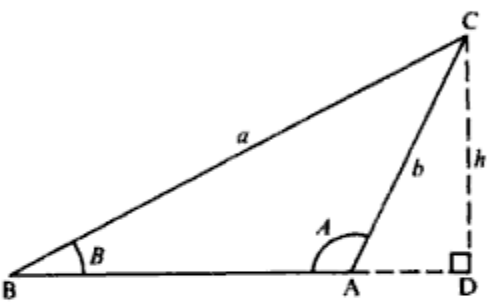
$$\boxed{\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}.}$$

Proof: Let CD be the perpendicular from C to AB (produced if necessary—see Case 2) and let CD = h.

Case 1



Case 2



From $\triangle$BCD $\quad \sin B = \dfrac{h}{a}$

or $\quad h = a \sin B \quad \ldots [1]$

From $\triangle$ACD $\quad \sin A = \dfrac{h}{b}$

or $\quad h = b \sin A \quad \ldots [2]$

From $\triangle$BCD $\quad \sin B = \dfrac{h}{a}$

or $\quad h = a \sin B \quad \ldots [1]$

From $\triangle$ACD $\quad \sin (180^\circ - A) = \dfrac{h}{b}$

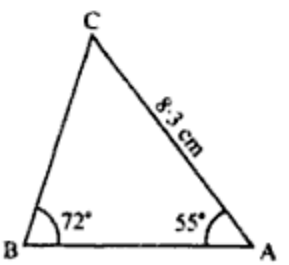
or $\quad h = b \sin (180^\circ - A)$

$= b \sin A \quad \ldots [2]$

Thus, eliminating h from equations [1] and [2] gives $a \sin B = b \sin A$ or $\dfrac{a}{\sin A} = \dfrac{b}{\sin B}$

It can similarly be proved that $\dfrac{a}{\sin A} = \dfrac{c}{\sin C}$ hence $\dfrac{a}{\sin A} = \dfrac{b}{\sin B} = \dfrac{c}{\sin C}$.

Example 24



Find the length of the side BC in the given triangle.

By the sine rule $\quad \dfrac{\text{BC}}{\sin 55^\circ} = \dfrac{8{\cdot}3}{\sin 72^\circ}$

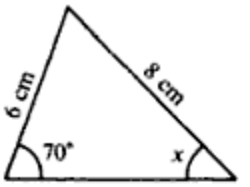
So $\quad \text{BC} = \dfrac{8{\cdot}3 \sin 55^\circ}{\sin 72^\circ}$

$\text{BC} = 7{\cdot}15$ cm.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 25

Find the angle x in the given triangle.



By the sine rule $\dfrac{8}{\sin 70^\circ} = \dfrac{6}{\sin x}$

So $\sin x = \dfrac{6 \sin 70^\circ}{8} = 0{\cdot}7048$

By calculator or tables $\sin^{-1} 0{\cdot}7048 = 44{\cdot}81^\circ$ but we must remember that $(180^\circ - 44{\cdot}81^\circ)$ would also have a sine of 0·7048, and so

$$x = 44{\cdot}81^\circ \quad \text{or} \quad 180^\circ - 44{\cdot}81^\circ$$
$$= 44{\cdot}81^\circ \quad \text{or} \quad 135{\cdot}19^\circ$$

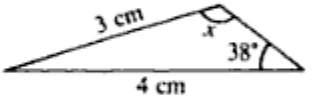
In this example the obtuse value of the angle can be discarded as it is not possible when one angle of the triangle is already known to be 70°.

Thus $x = 44{\cdot}81^\circ$

In some cases both answers will be possible.

Example 26

Find the angle x in the given triangle.

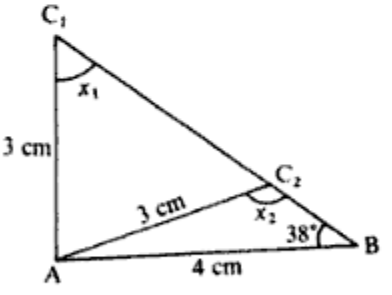


By the sine rule $\dfrac{3}{\sin 38^\circ} = \dfrac{4}{\sin x}$

So $\sin x = \dfrac{4 \sin 38^\circ}{3} = 0{\cdot}8209$

hence $x = 55{\cdot}17^\circ$ or $(180^\circ - 55{\cdot}17^\circ)$ i.e. $124{\cdot}83^\circ$

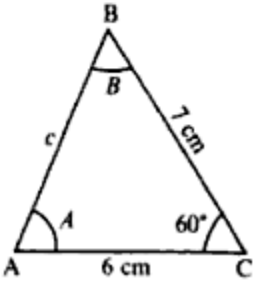
In this case both answers are possible and there are two triangles that could be drawn from the original information.
If $x_1 = 55{\cdot}17^\circ$ and $x_2 = 124{\cdot}83^\circ$, then these are triangles ABC_1 and ABC_2 as shown on the right.



Note on the solution of triangles

Suppose we had to solve the △ABC shown (i.e. find all unknown sides and angles). We would first find c, using the cosine rule, and then have a choice as to which angle, A or B, we would find next. If we use the sine rule, we should then have to decide whether or not the obtuse angle answer is applicable. It is therefore best to find the angle opposite the smaller side first (i.e. angle B) as this must be smaller than the angle opposite the larger side and will therefore be acute.

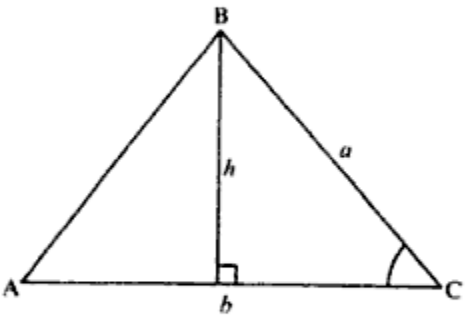
Alternatively, angle A or B could be found by using the cosine rule.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Area of a triangle

In addition to the rule: area $= \dfrac{\text{base} \times \text{perpendicular height}}{2}$ for finding the area of a triangle, there are two other useful formulae:



1 Area $= \frac{1}{2}ab \sin C$ (or $\frac{1}{2}bc \sin A$ or $\frac{1}{2}ac \sin B$).

Proof: Consider $\triangle$ABC in which h is the length of the perpendicular from B to AC.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Area} &= \tfrac{1}{2}\text{AC} \times h \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}b \times (\text{BC} \sin C) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}ab \sin C\end{aligned}$$

The other two variations of the formulae can then be obtained from this by use of the sine rule.

2 Area $= \sqrt{[s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)]}$

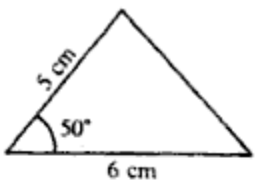
where $s = \dfrac{a+b+c}{2}$, the semi-perimeter.

This second formula was first stated by the Greek Mathematician Hero and is called Hero's formula. (The proof is not given here).

Example 27

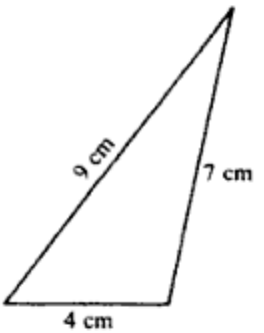
Find the areas of the given triangles:

(a)



$$\begin{aligned}\text{Area} &= \tfrac{1}{2} \times 5 \times 6 \times \sin 50^\circ \\ &= 11{\cdot}5 \text{ cm}^2\end{aligned}$$

(b)



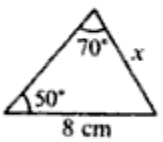
$$s = \frac{4+7+9}{2} = 10$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Area} &= \sqrt{[10(10-4)(10-7)(10-9)]} \\ &= \sqrt{180} = 13{\cdot}4 \text{ cm}^2\end{aligned}$$

Exercise F

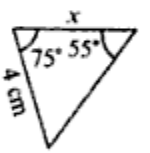
1. Find the length x in each of the following:

(a)

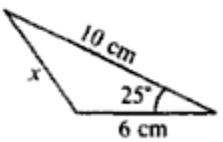


(b)

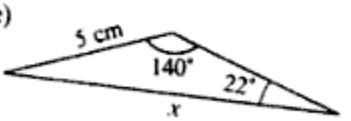
(c)



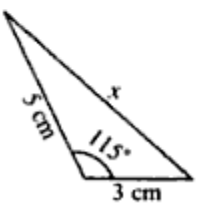
(d)



(e)



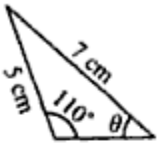
(f)



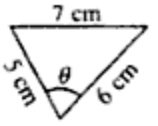
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2. Find the angle θ in each of the following:

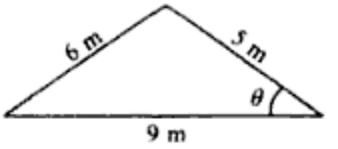
(a)



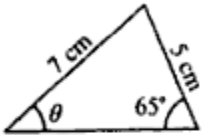
(b)



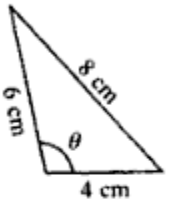
(c)



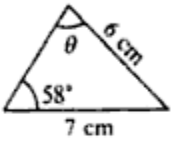
(d)



(e)

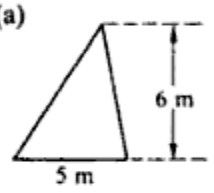


(f)

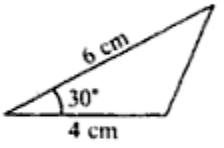


3. Find the areas of the following triangles:

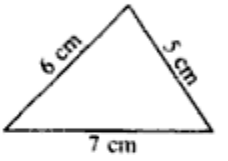
(a)



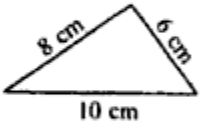
(b)



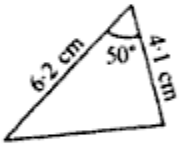
(c)



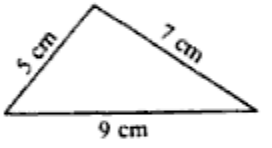
(d)



(e)



(f)



4. Solve the triangle ABC given that $\hat{A} = 66°$, $\hat{C} = 44°$ and $a = 7$ cm.

5. Solve the triangle ABC given that $\hat{A} = 45°$, $c = 5$ cm and $b = 6$ cm.

6. Solve the triangle ABC given that $\hat{C} = 50°$, $c = 8$ cm and $a = 10$ cm.

7. From a ship A, two other ships B and C, lie on bearings of 320° and 060° respectively. If B is 5 km from A and C is 3 km from A, find the distance from B to C.

8. Three points A, B and C all lie on level ground with B due south of A. The point C lies 250 m from A on a bearing N55°E and C is 400 m from B. Find the bearing of C from B to the nearest degree.

9. A ship A is 7 km away from a lighthouse L on a bearing 080° and a ship B is 5 km away from the lighthouse on a bearing 210°. Find the distance and bearing of A from B.

10. Three points A, B and C lie in a straight line on level ground with B between A and C. A vertical mast stands at A and is supported by wires attached to its top and to points on the ground. One such wire is fastened at B and another at C. The wire to C makes an angle of 40° with CA and the wire to B makes an angle of 60° with BA. If BC = 22 m, find the length of the wires and the height of the mast.

11. A gardener encloses a triangular plot of land by using an existing hedge of length 16 m for one side and fencing, of total length 20 m, for the other two sides. If the area of the plot is $24\sqrt{3}$ m² find the lengths of the sides of the triangle.

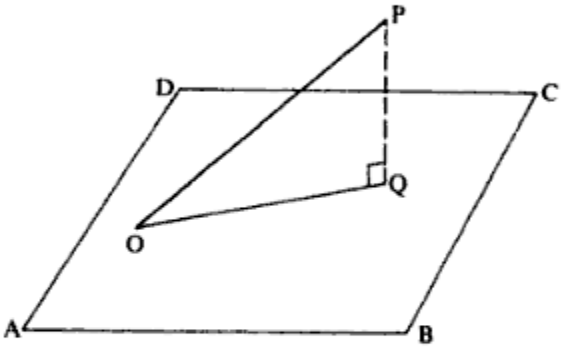
12. From a harbour H two ships A and B are situated $2x$ km due north and x km on a bearing N α E respectively (α being an acute angle). Use the cosine rule to show that the distance between the two ships is given by $x\sqrt{(5 - 4\cos\alpha)}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

0.8 Three-dimensional trigonometry

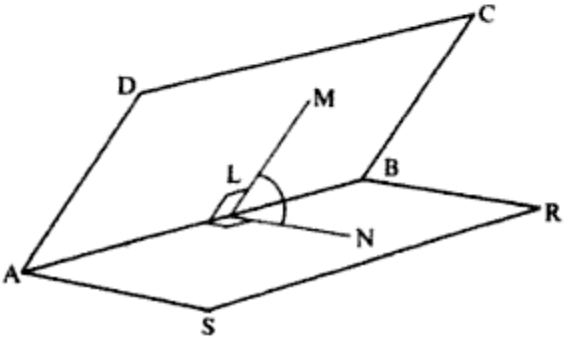
Angle between a line and a plane

Suppose a line OP meets a plane ABCD at the point O. The angle between the line OP and the plane is then defined as the angle between OP and the line which is the projection of OP on the plane ABCD. The projection of OP on the plane ABCD is OQ where PQ is perpendicular to the plane ABCD. Hence the required angle is $P\hat{O}Q$.



Angle between two planes

Suppose two planes ABCD and ABRS intersect in the line AB, as shown.
The angle between the planes is the angle between two lines, both of which are at right-angles to AB, which intersect on AB, and lie one in each plane. The required angle is then $M\hat{L}N$.



Line of greatest slope

All lines drawn on an inclined plane are not equally steep. In the diagram ABC is horizontal and parallel to OX.
The vertical distances of A, B and C above O are all equal to h.
Hence, since

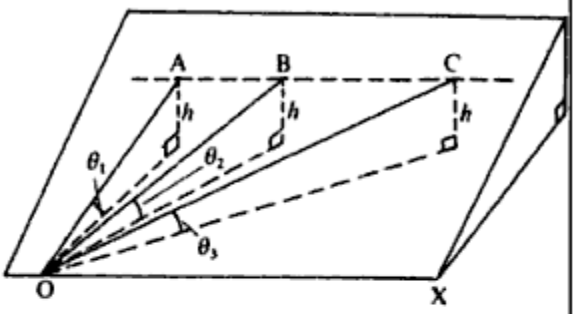
$$OA < OB < OC$$

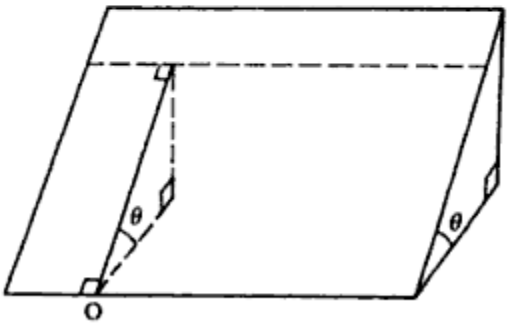
then $\frac{h}{OA} > \frac{h}{OB} > \frac{h}{OC}$

thus $\sin\theta_1 > \sin\theta_2 > \sin\theta_3$

i.e. $\theta_1 > \theta_2 > \theta_3$

The steepest line drawn on the inclined plane will be drawn from O at right-angles to the line ABC.
Since ABC is parallel to the line OX, this line of greatest slope will also be at right-angles to OX.
When we say a plane is inclined at an angle θ to the horizontal, we mean that the line of greatest slope on the plane makes an angle θ with the horizontal plane.



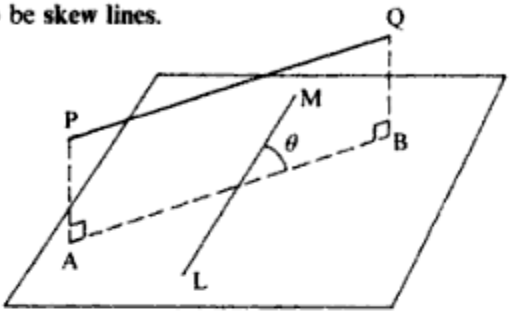


Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Angle between skew lines

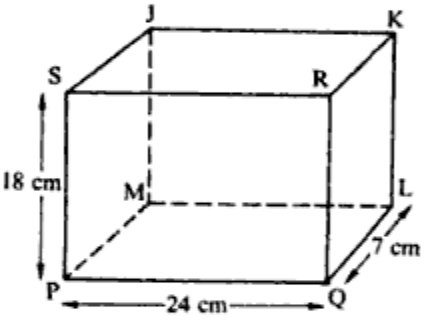
When considering a two-dimensional situation, two lines that are not parallel will intersect. However, in three dimensions two lines which are not parallel to each other will only intersect if the lines themselves are in the same plane, i.e. **coplanar**. Two lines which are not coplanar are said to be **skew lines**.

Consider the skew lines LM and PQ:
AB is a line drawn parallel to PQ so that AB and LM intersect (i.e. AB is parallel to PQ and is coplanar with LM).
The angle between the skew lines PQ and LM is then defined as the angle θ between the lines AB and LM.



Example 28

The cuboid shown has PQ = 24 cm, PS = 18 cm and QL = 7 cm. Calculate, to the nearest degree:
(a) the angle between the line SL and the plane PQLM
(b) the angle between the planes LMSR and PQRS
(c) the angle between the skew lines PK and ML.

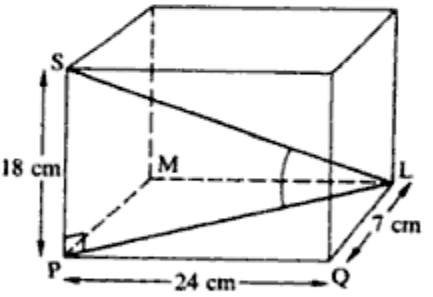


(a) PL is the projection of SL on the plane PQLM. Hence the angle between SL and the plane PQLM is the angle between SL and LP i.e. $S\hat{L}P$

$$\tan S\hat{L}P = \frac{SP}{PL}$$

$$= \frac{18}{\sqrt{(7^2 + 24^2)}}$$

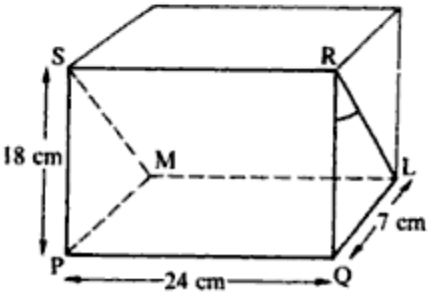
$\therefore\ S\hat{L}P = 36°$ (to nearest degree)



(b) Planes LMSR and PQRS meet in the line RS. RQ is in the plane PQRS and is perpendicular to RS, LR is in the plane LMSR and is perpendicular to RS, so the angle between the planes is $Q\hat{R}L$.

$$\tan Q\hat{R}L = \frac{7}{18}$$

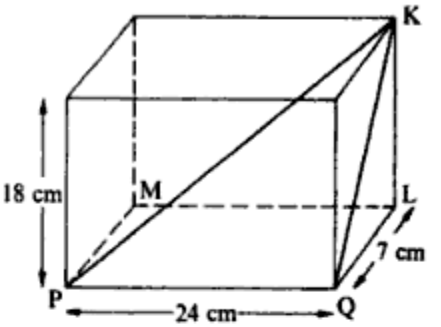
$\therefore\ Q\hat{R}L = 21°$ (to nearest degree).



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) ML is parallel to PQ, so the angle between the skew lines PK and ML equals the angle between PK and PQ i.e. $K\hat{P}Q$.

$$\tan K\hat{P}Q = \frac{KQ}{PQ}$$
$$= \frac{\sqrt{(7^2 + 18^2)}}{24}$$
$$\therefore \quad K\hat{P}Q = 39^\circ \quad \text{(to nearest degree)}$$



Example 29

A particular hillside may be considered to be a plane inclined at 15° to the horizontal. A straight path up the hillside makes an angle of 30° with the line of greatest slope. Find, to the nearest degree, the angle the path makes with the horizontal.

Let ABCD be a portion of the hillside and the path be represented by AV. AK is the projection of AV in the horizontal plane, AH is horizontal and AG is a line of greatest slope on the hillside. Let AG = a and $V\hat{A}K = \theta$.

From $\triangle AGH$ $\quad GH = a \sin 15^\circ$

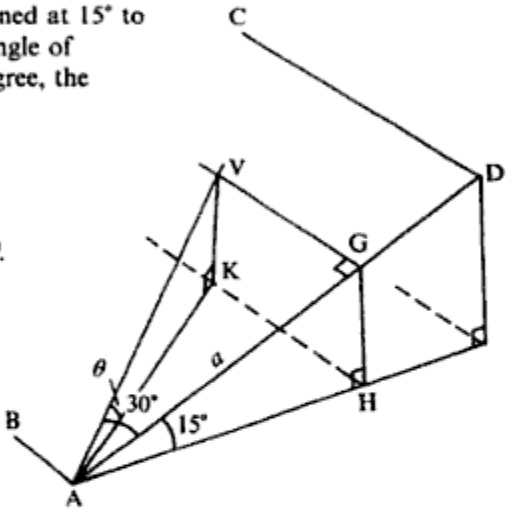
hence $\quad VK = a \sin 15^\circ$

From $\triangle AGV$ $\cos 30^\circ = \dfrac{a}{AV}$ or $AV = \dfrac{a}{\cos 30^\circ}$

In $\triangle AKV$ $\quad \sin\theta = \dfrac{VK}{AV} = a \sin 15^\circ \times \dfrac{\cos 30^\circ}{a}$

$\therefore \quad \sin\theta = \sin 15^\circ \cos 30^\circ$

giving $\quad \theta = 13^\circ$ (to nearest degree)

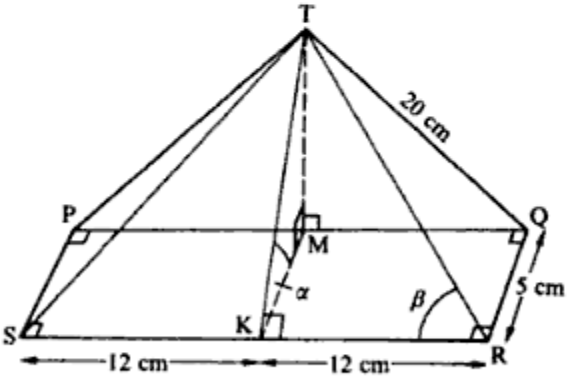


Example 30

A rectangular-based pyramid PQRST has its vertex T vertically above the mid-point M of the side PQ. If PQ = 24 cm, QR = 5 cm and TQ = 20 cm calculate, to the nearest degree:

(a) the angle between the planes RTS and PQRS,

(b) the angle between the skew lines RT and QP.



(a) Let K be the mid-point of SR. Planes RTS and PQRS meet in RS. TK lies in the plane RTS and is perpendicular to RS, MK lies in the plane PQRS and is perpendicular to RS.

The required angle is $T\hat{K}M$, which is marked α on the diagram.

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{TM}{MK} = \frac{\sqrt{(20^2 - 12^2)}}{5} = \frac{16}{5}$$

giving $\quad \alpha = 73^\circ$ (to nearest degree)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) RS is parallel to QP, so the angle between the skew lines RT and QP equals the angle between RT and RS i.e. the angle TRS, marked β in the diagram.

From $\triangle$TRK $\quad \tan\beta = \dfrac{TK}{12}$

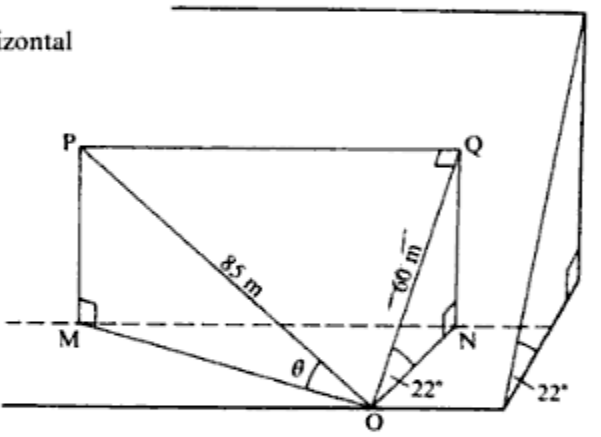
but $\quad TK = \sqrt{(5^2 + TM^2)}$ and $TM^2 = 20^2 - 12^2 = 16^2$

$\therefore \quad \tan\beta = \dfrac{\sqrt{(5^2 + 16^2)}}{12}$

giving $\quad T\hat{R}S = 54°$ (to nearest degree)

Example 31

A particular hillside may be considered to be a plane inclined at 22° to the horizontal. A man walks 60 m due north up a path which follows a line of greatest slope on the hillside. He then walks due west across the hillside to a point P. From P he follows a straight path leading back to his starting point O and the length of this path is 85 m.
Calculate the inclination of the path OP to the horizontal and the total distance the man has walked.



Let OQ be the path due north and let N and M be the feet of the perpendiculars from Q and P to the horizontal plane through the point O. Let $P\hat{O}M = \theta$.

From $\triangle$OQN $\quad QN = 60 \sin 22°$

hence $\quad PM = 60 \sin 22°$

From $\triangle$OPM $\quad \sin\theta = \dfrac{PM}{OP} = \dfrac{60 \sin 22°}{85}$

or $\quad \theta = 15{\cdot}3°$

Total distance walked $= OQ + QP + PO$

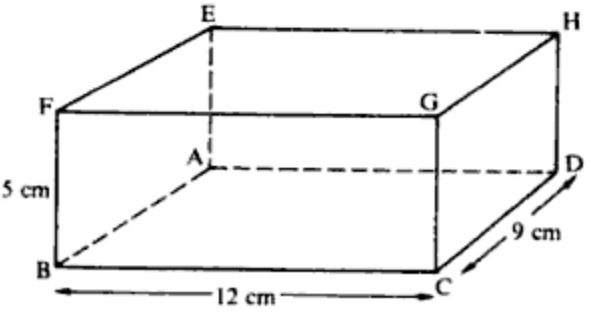
$= 60 + \sqrt{(85^2 - 60^2)} + 85$

$= 205{\cdot}2$ m

The inclination of the path OP to the horizontal is 15·3° and the man walks 205·2 m.

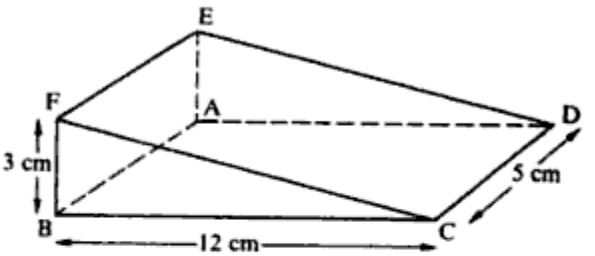
Exercise G

1. The diagram shows a cuboid ABCDEFGH with CD = 9 cm, BC = 12 cm and FB = 5 cm. Find
   (a) the angle between the line EC and the plane ABCD,
   (b) the angle between the planes EFCD and ABCD,
   (c) the angle between the skew lines EC and AD.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

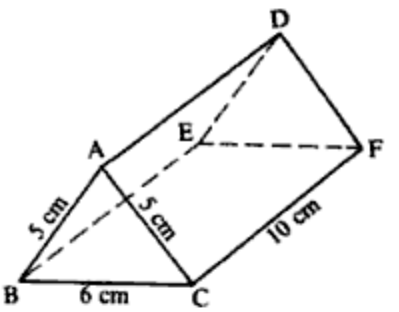
2. The diagram shows a wedge ABCDEF with ABCD a horizontal rectangle and ABFE a vertical rectangle. BC = 12 cm, CD = 5 cm and BF = 3 cm. Find
(a) the angle between the line FD and the base ABCD,
(b) the angle between the planes EFCD and ABCD,
(c) the angle between the lines BE and EC,
(d) the angle between the skew lines EC and FB.



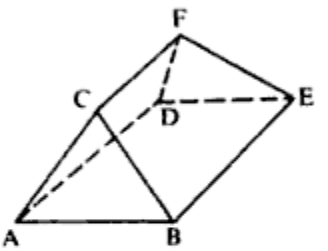
3. ABCDE is a pyramid with ABCD the square horizontal base. AB = 6 cm and AE = BE = CE = DE = 8 cm.
Find (a) the height of the pyramid,
(b) the angle between the line AE and the base,
(c) the angle between the plane EAB and the base.

4. ABC is a horizontal triangle, right-angled at B, and BCDE is a vertical rectangle. BE = 5 cm, BC = 10 cm and $E\hat{A}B = 30°$.
Find (a) $B\hat{A}C$, (b) $D\hat{A}C$, (c) $D\hat{A}E$.

5. The diagram shows a right triangular prism of length 10 cm. The rectangular base BCFE is horizontal. ABC and DEF are vertical isosceles triangles with AB = AC = 5 cm and BC = 6 cm.
Find (a) the height of AD above the base BCFE,
(b) the angle between the plane DBC and the base,
(c) the angle between the line DC and the base.



6. The figure ABCDEF shown in the diagram has equilateral triangles ABC and DEF, of side 8 cm, slanting in towards the base such that each triangle makes an angle of 60° with the rectangular base ABED.
Find (a) how much shorter CF is than BE,
(b) the angle between CB and the base to the nearest degree.



7. From the base of a vertical tower of height 30 m point A lies due south and point B lies in a direction S60°W with A and B both on the same horizontal level as the base of the tower. The top of the tower has angles of elevation of 12° from A and 15° from B. Find the distance from A to B to the nearest metre.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. A vertical mast PQ has 4 equal wires attached to its top P. The other ends of the wires are attached to points A, B, C and D on the ground, level with Q. If PA makes an angle of 60° with the ground, find the height of the mast and the angle between the plane PAB and the ground if
(a) ABCD is a square of side 6 m,
(b) ABCD is a rectangle with AB = 6 m and BC = 8 m.

9. A rectangular plot of land ABCD lies in a horizontal plane. A pole of length 3 m is held vertically at C and the top of the pole has an angle of elevation of 16° from B and 25° from D. Find the area of the plot and the elevation of the top of the pole from A (to the nearest degree).

10. VABCD is a pyramid with ABCD as the square base of side 10 m. V is situated vertically above a point P inside ABCD that is 5 m from the line AD and 3 m from the line AB. If VA = VB = 13 m find (a) the angle between the plane VAB and the base, (b) the height of the pyramid, (c) the angle between VA and the base, (d) the angle between the plane VDC and the base.

11. Points A, B and C all lie in the same horizontal plane with B on a bearing N30°W from A and C on a bearing N20°E from A. A vertical tower of height 30 m stands at B and the angle of elevation of its top, from A, is 18°. A vertical tower of height 20 m stands at C and the angle of elevation of the top of the tower from A is 20°. Find the distance from B to C to the nearest metre.

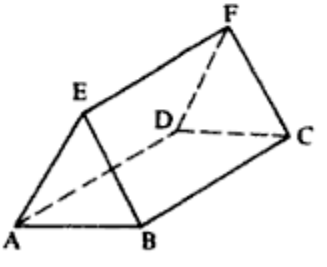
12. From an observation point at sea level, an aircraft is observed on a bearing N30°E, elevation 20° and at height 600 m. The aircraft then flies due east for 1000 m, without altering its height. What will be its bearing and angle of elevation from the observation point then? (Give answers to the nearest degree.)

13. A hillside forms a plane surface inclined at 25° to the horizontal. A straight path up the hillside makes an angle of 60° with the line of greatest slope. Find, to the nearest degree, the inclination of the path to the horizontal.

14. A road is to be constructed up a hillside which may be considered as a plane surface making an angle of 40° with the horizontal. At what angle to the line of greatest slope must the road be constructed if it is to make an angle of 20° with the horizontal? (Give your answer to the nearest degree.)

15. VABCD is a pyramid with the vertex V situated perpendicularly above the centre of the square base ABCD. If θ is the angle between the edge VA and the base, and ϕ is the angle between the plane VAB and the base, show that $\tan \phi = \sqrt{2} \tan \theta$.

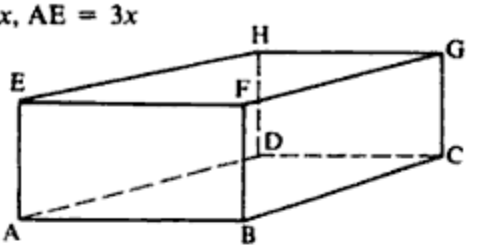
16. The diagram below shows a right triangular prism ABCDEF with the rectangular base ABCD horizontal and triangles ABE and DCF vertical. AE = EB, AB = x and BC = $x\sqrt{2}$. The angle between EFCB and the horizontal is θ and the angle between EC and the base is ϕ. Show that $3 \tan \phi = \tan \theta$.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

17. The diagram shows a cuboid ABCDEFGH with AB = $4x$, AE = $3x$ and BC = y. If the angle between the skew lines BH and AD is θ show that

$$y \sin \theta - 5x \cos \theta = 0.$$

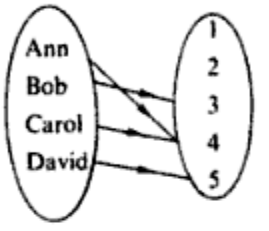


18. Two vertical masts BD and CE, each of height h, have their bases B and C on level ground with C to the east of B.
A point A lies on the same level as B and C and is due south of B. The angle of elevation of D from A is θ and angle DAE = ϕ. If the angle of elevation of E from A is α show that $\sin \alpha = \sin \theta \cos \phi$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

1
Functions

1.1 Basic concepts



Four children, Ann, Bob, Carol and David, are given a spelling test which is marked out of five; their marks for the test are shown in the arrow diagram on the right.

By choosing any one name from the set of names, we can find the mark that relates to it. Any relationship which takes one element of one set and assigns to it one and only one element of a second set is said to be a **function.**

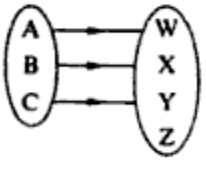
The first set is said to be the **domain** of the function and the second set is the **co-domain**. We say that each element of the first set is **mapped onto** its **image** in the second set. The set of all images will be a subset of the co-domain, and is called the **range**.

Thus in the above example.
the domain is {Ann, Bob, Carol, David}
the co-domain is {1, 2, 3, 4, 5}
the range is {3, 4, 5}

Notice that a function can map more than one element of the domain onto the same element of the range, e.g. Ann → 4 and Carol → 4. Such functions are said to be **many-to-one**. Functions for which each element of the domain is mapped onto a different element of the range are said to be **one-to-one**.

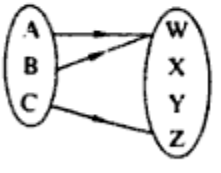
Relationships which are **one-to-many** can occur, but from our definition above, they are *not* functions. The following diagrams illustrate these facts.

one-to-one function



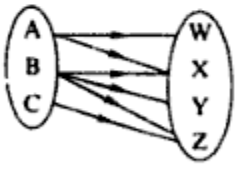
the domain is {A, B, C}
the co-domain is {W, X, Y, Z}
the range is {W, X, Y}

many-to-one function



the domain is {A, B, C}
the co-domain is {W, X, Y, Z}
the range is {W, Z}

one-to-many relationship



Because this is a one-to-many relationship, it is not a function.

If every element of the co-domain is the image of at least one element of the domain, then the function maps the domain *onto* the co-domain. Otherwise the function maps the domain *into* the co-domain.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

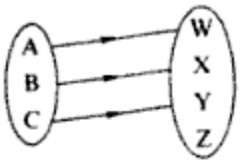


Fig. A

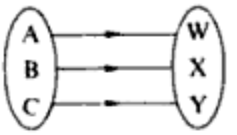


Fig. B

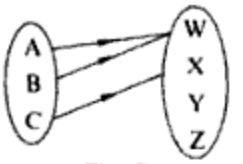


Fig. C

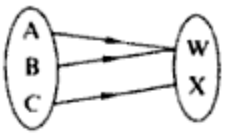


Fig. D

Figure A shows a one-to-one function mapping {A, B, C} into {W, X, Y, Z}
Figure B shows a one-to-one function mapping {A, B, C} onto {W, X, Y}
Figure C shows a many-to-one function mapping {A, B, C} into {W, X, Y, Z}
Figure D shows a many-to-one function mapping {A, B, C} onto {W, X}
For most functions which concern us, the domain will be a set of numbers.

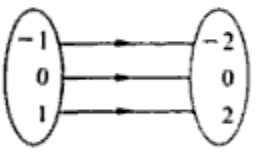
Suppose a function has the set X as the domain and is such that it doubles any element x of the domain to give the corresponding element of the range. This function would be written $f: x \to 2x$ or $f(x) = 2x$, either form being acceptable. As this function would map the number 2 onto its image, the number 4, we could write this fact as $f: 2 \to 4$ or as $f(2) = 4$.

Other letters such as g or h may be used in place of f if we wish to distinguish between functions.

Example 1

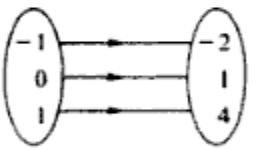
Draw arrow diagrams for the functions
(a) $f: x \to 2x$ (b) $g: x \to 3x + 1$ (c) $h: x \to x^2$
for the domain $\{-1, 0, 1\}$ and state the range of each function.

(a) $f: x \to 2x$



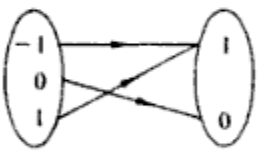
range is $\{-2, 0, 2\}$

(b) $g: x \to 3x + 1$



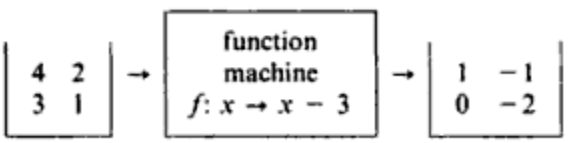
range is $\{-2, 1, 4\}$

(c) $h: x \to x^2$

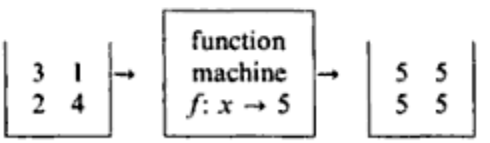


range is $\{0, 1\}$

It is sometimes helpful to think of functions as 'machines'. A box of numbers (the domain) is put into the machine. The machine then alters each number according to some rule and outputs the new numbers into a second box (the range).



This machine subtracts 3 from each number.
The domain is $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$
The range is $\{-2, -1, 0, 1\}$

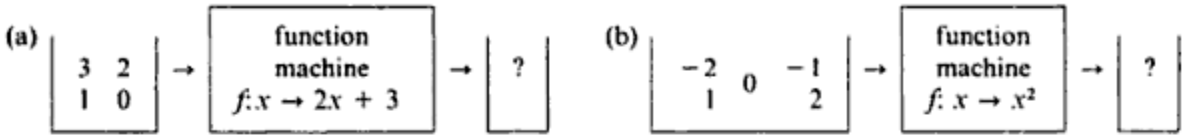


This machine changes each number to the number 5.
The domain is $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$
The range is $\{5\}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 2

State the range of each of the function machines for the domains shown.



(a) $\{0, 1, 2, 3\} \xrightarrow{x \to 2x + 3} \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$; the range is $\{3, 5, 7, 9\}$

(b) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{x \to x^2} \{4, 1, 0\}$; the range is $\{0, 1, 4\}$

Note that it is usual to state the elements of the range in ascending order of magnitude. Therefore the first element of the domain will not necessarily be mapped onto the first element of the range.

Example 3

The functions f and g are given as $f(x) = x + 3$ for $x \geqslant 0$ and $g(x) = x^2$ for $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$. State the range of each of these functions.

If $x \geqslant 0$, then $x + 3 \geqslant 3$. Thus the range of f will be $f(x) \geqslant 3$.
If $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$, then $0 \leqslant x^2 \leqslant 9$. Thus the range of g will be $0 \leqslant g(x) \leqslant 9$.

Example 4

If $f(x) = 4x - 3$ and $g(x) = x^2$ for the domain of all real x, find:
(a) $f(2)$, (b) $f(-2)$, (c) $g(-3)$, (d) the possible values of a if $f(a) = g(a)$.

(a) $f(2) = 4(2) - 3 = 5$
(b) $f(-2) = 4(-2) - 3 = -11$
(c) $g(-3) = (-3)^2 = 9$
(d) $f(a) = 4a - 3$ and $g(a) = a^2$
Thus, if $f(a) = g(a)$
we have $4a - 3 = a^2$
$0 = a^2 - 4a + 3$ giving $a = 1$ or 3

If the domain of a function is not stated, it should be assumed to be the set of all real numbers for which the function is defined.

Example 5

The following functions map an element x of the domain onto its image y, i.e. $f: x \to y$. For each of the three functions below, state (i) the domain for which the function is defined, (ii) the corresponding range of the function, (iii) whether the function is one-to-one or many-to-one.

(a) $f: x \to x + 3$ (b) $f: x \to \sqrt{x}$ (c) $f: x \to \dfrac{1}{x^2}$

(a) $f: x \to x + 3$
- (i) The function is defined for all real x, so the domain is $\mathbb{R}$.
- (ii) For this domain, the range will contain all elements of $\mathbb{R}$, so the range is $\mathbb{R}$.
- (iii) Each element of the range is obtained from only one element of the domain, so the function is one-to-one.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) $f: x \to \sqrt{x}$.

(i) The function is not defined for negative x, so the domain is $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \geqslant 0\}$.

(ii) For this domain, the range will contain all positive numbers in $\mathbb{R}$. Remember that the symbol $\sqrt{\ }$ is defined to mean the positive square root. The range is therefore $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \geqslant 0\}$.

(iii) Each element of the range is obtained from only one element of the domain, so the function is one-to-one.

(c) $f: x \to \dfrac{1}{x^2}$

(i) The function is defined for all real x except $x = 0$. We write the domain as $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \neq 0\}$.

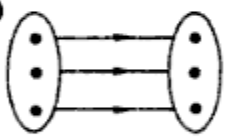
(ii) For this domain, the range will contain neither zero nor any negative numbers because x^2 (and hence $1/x^2$) will be positive. The range is therefore $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y > 0\}$.

(iii) Here the elements of the range can be obtained from more than one element of the domain, e.g. $f(3) = \frac{1}{9}$ and $f(-3) = \frac{1}{9}$, so the function is many-to-one.

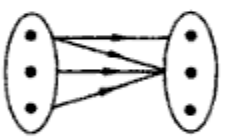
Exercise 1A

1. State which of the following arrow diagrams show functions.

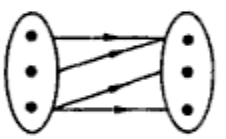
(a)



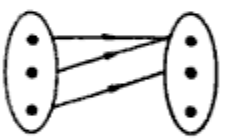
(b)



(c)

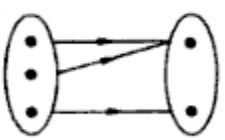


(d)

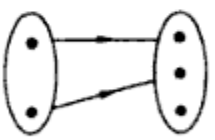


2. State which of the following arrow diagrams show: (i) a one-to-one function mapping into the co-domain, (ii) a one-to-one function mapping onto the co-domain, (iii) a many-to-one function mapping into the co-domain.

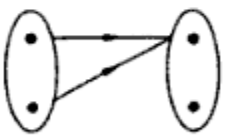
(a)



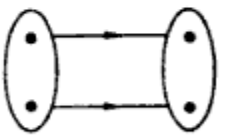
(b)



(c)

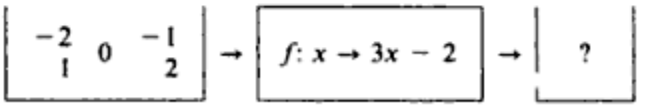


(d)

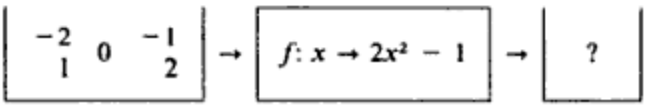


3. State the range of each of the following 'function machines' for the domains shown.

(a)



(b)



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. Draw arrow diagrams for the functions $f: x \to x + 2$, $g: x \to x^2 + 1$ and $h: x \to (x + 1)^2$ for the domain $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$ and state the range of each function for this domain.

5. Draw arrow diagrams for the functions $f: x \to |x|$, $g: x \to |x| - 1$ and $h: x \to |x - 1|$ for the domain $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$ and state the range of each function for this domain.

6. If $f(x) = 2x + 3$ find
(a) $f(2)$, (b) $f(-1)$, (c) $f(6)$, (d) the value of a if $f(a) = a$.

7. If $g(x) = x^2 - 6$ find
(a) $g(4)$, (b) $g(-4)$, (c) $g(2)$, (d) the possible values of a if $g(a) = a$.

8. If $f(x) = 2x^2$ and $g(x) = 3 - x$ find
(a) $f(3)$, (b) $f(-3)$, (c) $g(-3)$, (d) the possible values of a if $f(a) = g(a)$.

9. The function f is given by $f(x) = ax + b$. If $f(3) = 3$ and $f(4) = 5$, find a and b.

10. The function g is given by $g(x) = ax^2 - b$. If $g(2) = 5$ and $g(-1) = 2$, find the values of a and b and hence find $g(-4)$.

11. Each of the following functions maps an element x of the domain onto its image y, i.e. $f(x) = y$. Find the range of each function for the given domains and state whether the function is one-to-one or many-to-one.
(a) $f: x \to x + 3$ with domain $\{x: 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 4\}$,
(b) $f: x \to x - 2$ with domain $\{x: 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 4\}$,
(c) $f: x \to 2x$ with domain $\{x: 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 3\}$,
(d) $f: x \to 2x$ with domain $\{x: -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3\}$,
(e) $f: x \to x^2$ with domain $\{x: -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3\}$,
(f) $f: x \to \sqrt{x}$ with domain $\{x: 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 25\}$,
(g) $f: x \to |x|$ with domain $\{x: -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3\}$,
(h) $f: x \to x^2$ with domain $\mathbf{R}$,
(i) $f: x \to |x|$ with domain $\mathbf{R}$,
(j) $f: x \to \dfrac{1}{x}$ with domain $\{x: x \geqslant 1\}$,
(k) $f: x \to x^2 + 4$ with domain $\mathbf{R}$,
(l) $f: x \to \dfrac{1}{x - 1}$ with domain $\{x \in \mathbf{R}: x \neq 1\}$.

12. The following functions map an element x of the domain onto its image y, i.e. $f: x \to y$. For each function state
(i) the domain for which the function is defined,
(ii) the corresponding range of the function.

(a) $f: x \to 2x$, (b) $f: x \to |x|$, (c) $f: x \to \dfrac{1}{x}$, (d) $f: x \to \dfrac{1}{x - 3}$.

13. f and g are defined as follows: $f: x \to \begin{cases} 2x & \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 3 \\ x^2 & \text{for } 3 \leqslant x \leqslant 6 \end{cases}$

$$g: x \to \begin{cases} 3x & \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 3 \\ x^2 & \text{for } 3 \leqslant x \leqslant 6 \end{cases}$$

Explain why g is a function but f is not.

14. f and g are defined as follows: $f: x \to \begin{cases} x^2 + 2 & \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2 \\ 3x & \text{for } 2 \leqslant x \leqslant 4 \end{cases}$

$$g: x \to \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2 \\ 3x & \text{for } 2 \leqslant x \leqslant 4 \end{cases}$$

Explain why f is a function whereas g is not.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

1.2 Composite functions

Consider the functions $f(x) = 2x - 1$ and $g(x) = x^2$. Using the 'machine' analogy, suppose we input the numbers $\{1, 3, 5, 7\}$ into machine f and then take the output from this machine and put it into machine g.

3 7 1 5	→	function machine $f(x) = 2x - 1$	→	5 13 1 9	→	function machine $g(x) = x^2$	→	25 169 1 81

This combined or composite function is written $gf(x)$ or simply gf. Notice that the function f is performed first and so is written nearer to the variable x.

The set $\{1, 3, 5, 7\}$ is the domain for the composite function and $\{1, 25, 81, 169\}$ is the range.

Example 6

If $f(x) = 2x$ and $g(x) = x^2 - 1$, find the range of each of the following functions for the domain $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$
(a) $f(x)$, (b) $g(x)$, (c) $fg(x)$, (d) $gf(x)$.

(a) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{f} \{-4, -2, 0, 2, 4\}$; the range is $\{-4, -2, 0, 2, 4\}$

(b) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{g} \{3, 0, -1\}$; the range is $\{-1, 0, 3\}$

(c) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{g} \{3, 0, -1\} \xrightarrow{f} \{6, 0, -2\}$; the range is $\{-2, 0, 6\}$

(d) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{f} \{-4, -2, 0, 2, 4\} \xrightarrow{g} \{15, 3, -1\}$; the range is $\{-1, 3, 15\}$

Example 7

If $f(x) = 2x$ and $g(x) = 3x + 1$, find
(a) $f(2)$, (b) $g(3)$, (c) $fg(2)$, and express $gf(x)$ as a single function $h(x)$.

(a) $f(2) = 2(2)$
$= 4$

(b) $g(3) = 3(3) + 1$
$= 10$

(c) $g(2) = 3(2) + 1$
$= 7$;
so $fg(2) = f(7)$
$= 14$

$f(x) = 2x$, so $gf(x) = g(2x)$
$= 3(2x) + 1$
$= 6x + 1$ $\quad\therefore\quad h(x) = 6x + 1$

1.3 The inverse of a function

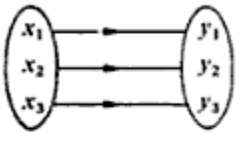
Consider a function f which maps each element x of the domain X onto its image y in the range Y,
i.e. $f: x \to y$ where $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$.
Can we find the inverse function, written f^{-1}, that has domain Y and range X, which maps y back to x?
i.e. $f^{-1}: y \to x$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

First recall the definition of a function. Any one-to-one or many-to-one relationship is a function. However, if we attempted to find the inverse of a many-to-one function, we would obtain a one-to-many relationship which is not a function. Thus, only a one-to-one function can have an inverse function.

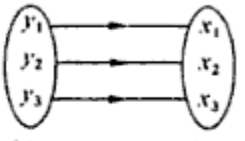
The following diagrams illustrate these points.

domain X $\xrightarrow{f}$ range Y



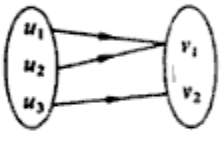
f is a one-to-one function

domain Y $\xrightarrow{f^{-1}}$ range X



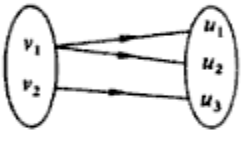
f^{-1} is a one-to-one function

domain U $\xrightarrow{g}$ range V



g is a many-to-one function

domain V $\xrightarrow{g^{-1}}$ range U



g^{-1} is one-to-many and so it is *not* a function

To find the inverse of one-to-one function, we write the separate operations of the function as a flow chart. We then reverse the flow chart, writing the inverse of each operation.

Example 8

Find the inverses of these functions.

(a) $f(x) = 2x + 3$ (b) $g(x) = 2 - x$ (c) $h(x) = \frac{1}{x} - 3$

(a) First write the function as a flow chart with input x and output $2x + 3$

$$x \rightarrow \boxed{\times 2} \rightarrow \boxed{+3} \rightarrow 2x + 3$$

Now reverse the flow chart, and write the inverse of each operation

$$\leftarrow \boxed{\div 2} \leftarrow \boxed{-3} \leftarrow$$

With input x, this will now output the inverse function.

$$\frac{x-3}{2} \leftarrow \boxed{\div 2} \leftarrow \boxed{-3} \leftarrow x$$

So the inverse function f^{-1} is $x \rightarrow \frac{x-3}{2}$

Check: $f(2) = 7$, $f^{-1}(7) = 2$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) First write the function as a flow chart.

$$x \to \boxed{\times(-1)} \to \boxed{+2} \to 2 - x$$

Now reverse the flow chart, writing the inverse of each operation.

$$\frac{x-2}{-1} \leftarrow \boxed{\div(-1)} \leftarrow \boxed{-2} \leftarrow x$$

but $\dfrac{x-2}{-1} = -x + 2 = 2 - x$

So the inverse function g^{-1}, is $x \to 2 - x$, i.e. g is its own inverse.

Check: $g(3) = -1$, $g^{-1}(-1) = 2 - (-1) = 3$.

(c) First write the function as a flow chart

$$x \to \boxed{\text{invert}} \to \boxed{-3} \to \frac{1}{x} - 3$$

Now reverse the flow chart (notice that the operation 'invert' is its own inverse)

$$\frac{1}{x+3} \leftarrow \boxed{\text{invert}} \leftarrow \boxed{+3} \leftarrow x$$

So the inverse function h^{-1} is $x \to \dfrac{1}{x+3}$

Check: $h(2) = -2\frac{1}{2}$, $h^{-1}(-2\frac{1}{2}) = \dfrac{1}{\frac{1}{2}} = 2$.

Example 9

If f: $x \to x + 1$ and g: $x \to \dfrac{3}{x}$ find in similar form:

(a) f^{-1}, (b) g^{-1}, (c) fg, (d) gg, (e) $(fg)^{-1}$.

(a) f: $x \to \boxed{+1} \to x + 1$

f^{-1}: $x - 1 \leftarrow \boxed{-1} \leftarrow x$

So f^{-1}: $x \to x - 1$

Check: f: $3 \to 4$, f^{-1}: $4 \to 3$.

(b) g: $x \to \boxed{\text{invert}} \to \boxed{\times 3} \to \dfrac{3}{x}$

g^{-1}: $\dfrac{3}{x} \leftarrow \boxed{\text{invert}} \leftarrow \boxed{\div 3} \leftarrow x$

So g^{-1}: $x \to \dfrac{3}{x}$ (i.e. g is its own inverse)

Check: g: $6 \to \frac{1}{2}$, g^{-1}: $\frac{1}{2} \to 6$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) $g: x \to \frac{3}{x}$

$f: \frac{3}{x} \to \frac{3}{x} + 1$

So $fg: x \to \frac{3}{x} + 1$

(d) $g: x \to \frac{3}{x}$

$g: \frac{3}{x} \to \frac{3}{\frac{3}{x}} = x$

So $gg: x \to x$

(e) fg: $x \to \boxed{\text{invert}} \to \boxed{\times 3} \to \boxed{+1} \to \frac{3}{x} + 1$

$(fg)^{-1}: \frac{3}{x-1} \leftarrow \boxed{\text{invert}} \leftarrow \boxed{\div 3} \leftarrow \boxed{-1} \leftarrow x$

So $(fg)^{-1}: x \to \frac{3}{x-1}$

Check: $fg: 3 \to 2$, $(fg)^{-1}: 2 \to 3$.

The reader may notice similarities between this work on inverse functions and the process of 'changing the subject of a formula' which may have been met in earlier years.

For example, in part (a) of Example 8, we found that for $f(x) = 2x + 3$ then $f^{-1}(x) = \frac{x-3}{2}$. This is similar to making x the subject of $y = 2x + 3$ as follows:

$$y = 2x + 3$$

rearranging $y - 3 = 2x$

then $x = \frac{y-3}{2}$

Inverse functions can be obtained using this technique.

Example 10

Find the inverses of the functions.

(a) $f(x) = 3x - 1$, (b) $g(x) = \frac{3}{x-1}$.

(a) If $f(x) = y$, we require $f^{-1}(y) = x$

If $y = 3x - 1$,

then $x = \frac{y+1}{3}$

So, given y, we can return to x using the expression $\frac{y+1}{3}$.

Thus $f^{-1}(x) = \frac{x+1}{3}$

(b) If $g(x) = y$, we require $g^{-1}(y) = x$

If $y = \frac{3}{x-1}$,

then $\frac{1}{y} = \frac{x-1}{3}$ or $x = \frac{3}{y} + 1$

So, given y, we can return to x using the expression $\frac{3}{y} + 1$.

Thus $g^{-1}(x) = \frac{3}{x} + 1$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Restricting domains

Although we have said that only one-to-one functions have inverses, we can consider the inverse of a many-to-one function if we restrict the function to a domain for which it is one-to-one.
For example, $f: x \to x^2$ is a many-to-one function for a domain $\mathbb{R}$, but if we restrict the domain to $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \geqslant 0\}$, the function is then one-to-one and will have an inverse.

Exercise 1B

1. If $f(x) = 5x$ and $g(x) = x^2 + 3$ find
(a) $f(3)$, (b) $g(2)$, (c) $gf(3)$, (d) $fg(2)$, (e) $gg(3)$, (f) $ff(3)$.

2. If $f(x) = 2x + 1$ and $g(x) = x^2$ find the range of each of the following functions for the domain $\{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3\}$
(a) $f(x)$, (b) $g(x)$, (c) $fg(x)$, (d) $gf(x)$.

3. If $f(x) = -x$, $g(x) = 1 - x^2$ and $h(x) = |x|$ find the range of each of the following functions for the domain $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$:
(a) fg, (b) gf, (c) gh, (d) fgh, (e) hgf.

4. If $f: x \to 3x$, $g: x \to 2x - 1$ and $h: x \to x^2$ express the following as single functions:
(a) fg, (b) gf, (c) gh, (d) hg, (e) fh, (f) fgh, (g) ghf.

5. If $f: x \to 2x$ and $g: x \to x + 4$ state which of the functions ff, fg, gf or gg corresponds to
(a) $x \to 2x + 4$, (b) $x \to x + 8$, (c) $x \to 2x + 8$.

6. If $f: x \to x^2$ and $g: x \to x + 2$ state which of the functions ff, fg, gf or gg corresponds to
(a) $x \to x + 4$, (b) $x \to x^2 + 2$, (c) $x \to x^2 + 4x + 4$.

7. If $f: x \to x + 1$ $g: x \to x^2$ and $h(x) \to \dfrac{2}{x}$ express the following in similar form
(a) fg, (b) fh, (c) gh, (d) hg, (e) hfg, (f) hgf.

8. Find the inverses of the following functions:

(a) $f: x \to 3x - 2$ (b) $f: x \to \dfrac{x}{2}$ (c) $f: x \to 5 - x$

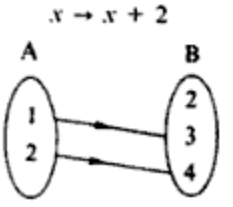
(d) $f: x \to (x + 1)^2$ (e) $f: x \to \dfrac{1}{x} + 2$ (f) $f: x \to 2 - \dfrac{1}{x}$

(g) $f: x \to \dfrac{1}{x + 2}$ (h) $f: x \to \dfrac{1}{2x - 6}$

9. If $f: x \to 2x + 3$, $g: x \to x - 2$ and $h: x \to \dfrac{2}{x}$ find in similar form
(a) fg, (b) $(fg)^{-1}$, (c) hg, (d) $(hg)^{-1}$, (e) hgf, (f) $(hgf)^{-1}$.

1.4 Ordered pairs

Consider the sets $A = \{1, 2\}$ and $B = \{2, 3, 4\}$. The diagram on the right represents function $f: x \to x + 2$ where $x \in A$ and $y \in B$.



Alternatively we could show this relationship by listing the possible values of x and y as **ordered pairs**. For the function above, the ordered pairs would be $(1, 3)$ and $(2, 4)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The **cartesian product** of the two sets A and B is written $A \times B$ and is the set of all possible ordered pairs (x, y) where $x \in A$ and $y \in B$. For the sets $A = \{1, 2\}$ and $B = \{2, 3, 4\}$, the cartesian product would be:

$$\{(1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4)\}$$

Example 11

If $A = \{2, 3\}$ and $B = \{4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}$, write down all the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in A$, $y \in B$ and x is a factor of y.

The required ordered pairs would be (2, 4), (2, 6), (2, 8), (3, 6).

Example 12

Four members of the cartesian product of two sets A and B are (2, 1), (2, 3), (4, 1) and (4, 5). If there are a total of six such ordered pairs in the cartesian product $A \times B$, find:

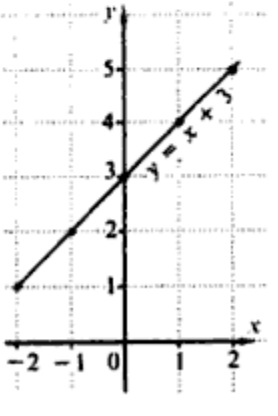
(a) the two missing members of $A \times B$,
(b) the elements of A and B,
(c) the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in A$, $y \in B$ and x is less than y.

(a) From the ordered pairs (2, 1), (2, 3), (4, 1) and (4, 5), set A must contain the elements $\{2, 4\}$ and set B must contain $\{1, 3, 5\}$. Thus the two missing members of $A \times B$ are (2, 5) and (4, 3)
(b) $A = \{2, 4\}$ and $B = \{1, 3, 5\}$
(c) The required ordered pairs are (2, 3), (2, 5), (4, 5).

1.5 The graph of a function

Consider the function $f: x \to x + 3$ which maps the domain X onto the range Y. If $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$ such that $f: x \to y$, we can write down the ordered pairs (x, y). If $X = \mathbb{R}$, then $Y = \mathbb{R}$ and there would be an infinite number of such ordered pairs (x, y). However, if we restrict the domain X to certain values, say $X = \{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$, we can then list the ordered pairs: $(-2, 1)$, $(-1, 2)$, $(0, 3)$, $(1, 4)$, and $(2, 5)$.

This set of ordered pairs can be plotted as points on a graph. If these points are joined, we obtain the graph of the function $f: x \to x + 3$ for the domain $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: |x| \leqslant 2\}$.



We say that the graph of this function has the **equation** $y = x + 3$; the ordered pair fixing each point gives the x- and y-coordinates of that point on the graph.

As the value of x varies over the whole domain, so each corresponding value of y can be obtained; x and y are called **variables** with x the **independent variable** and y the **dependent variable**.

The equation need not always be given with y as the 'subject'. For example, $y = x + 3$ can be written as $y - x = 3$, $y - x - 3 = 0$, etc.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Clearly, if the domain were the set of all real numbers $\mathbb{R}$, we could not plot the entire graph of the function. Usually we are only interested in certain values of x or in a particular section of $\mathbb{R}$ for which a graph is required.

The ordered pairs are usually written as a table of values. For the ordered pairs obtained above, the table of values would be

x	-2	-1	0	1	2
y	1	2	3	4	5

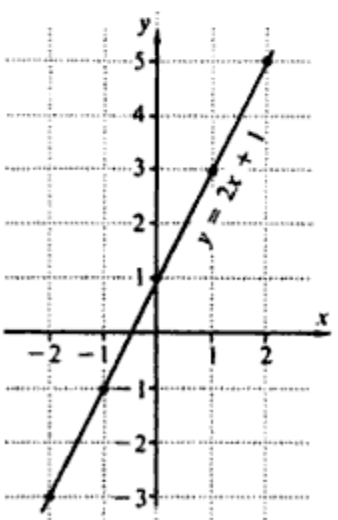
Example 13

For each of the following functions
(i) write down the equation of the function,
(ii) construct a table of values for the given domain,
(iii) plot the graph of the function for that domain.
(a) $f: x \to 2x + 1$ for $|x| \leqslant 2$, (b) $f: x \to 3$ for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$,
(c) $f: x \to x^2 + 2x - 2$ for $-4 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$.

(a) (i) The equation will be $y = 2x + 1$
(ii)

x	-2	-1	0	1	2
y	-3	-1	1	3	5

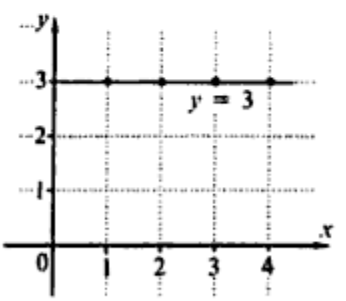
(iii)



(b) (i) The equation will be $y = 3$.
(ii) In this case y will equal 3 for every value of x.

x	0	1	2	3	4
y	3	3	3	3	3

(iii)



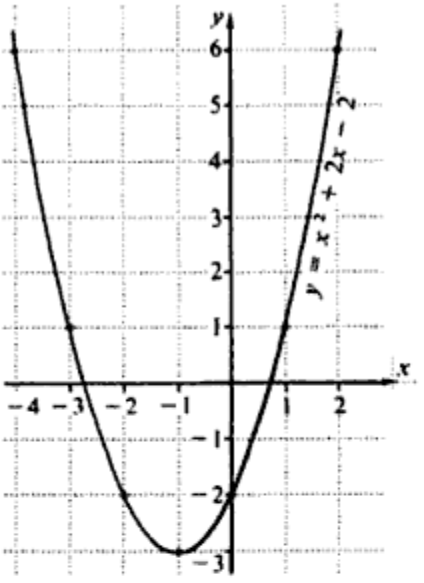
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) (i) The equation will be
$y = x^2 + 2x - 2$

(ii) In this case the equation is more complicated so we will build up each y value gradually.

x	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2
x^2	16	9	4	1	0	1	4
$+2x$	-8	-6	-4	-2	0	2	4
-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2
y	6	1	-2	-3	-2	1	6

(iii)



In some cases, the chosen points may be insufficient to draw the graph with certainty, so it will then be necessary to take extra values for x to obtain more points. In Example 13 part (c), we could have included $x = -\frac{1}{2}$ and $x = -1\frac{1}{2}$ to give two more points at the part of the graph which is difficult to draw.

Example 14

State which of the following points lie on the line $y = 2x - 3$:
$(2, 1), (-2, -1), (-1, -5)$.

For a point to lie on a particular line the coordinates of that point must satisfy the equation of that line.

Substituting $x = 2$ into $y = 2x - 3$ gives $y = 1$. $\therefore$ $(2, 1)$ does lie on the line.

Substituting $x = -2$ into $y = 2x - 3$ gives $y = -7$. $\therefore$ $(-2, -1)$ does not lie on the line.

Substituting $x = -1$ into $y = 2x - 3$ gives $y = -5$. $\therefore$ $(-1, -5)$ does lie on the line.

Thus the points $(2, 1)$ and $(-1, -5)$ lie on the line $y = 2x - 3$.

Example 15

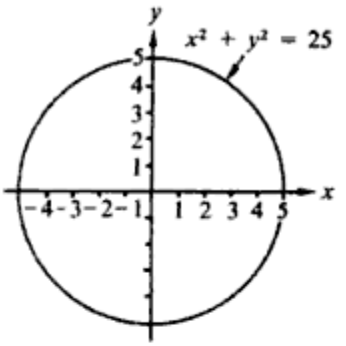
Find where the line $y = 2x - 6$ cuts (a) the x-axis (b) the y-axis.

(a) Any point on the x-axis will have a y-coordinate of zero.
Substituting $y = 0$ into $y = 2x - 6$ gives $0 = 2x - 6$
i.e. $x = 3$
$\therefore$ $y = 2x - 6$ cuts the x-axis at $(3, 0)$.

(b) Any point on the y-axis will have an x-coordinate of zero.
Substituting $x = 0$ into $y = 2x - 6$ gives $y = -6$
$\therefore$ $y = 2x - 6$ cuts the y-axis at $(0, -6)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

It is important to realise that it is possible to write equations and to draw graphs for relationships between x and y that are not functions.
The equation $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ is a relationship between x and y and the graph of all possible ordered pairs (x, y) gives a circle. However this relationship is not a function because every x value does not have one and only one associated y value, e.g. for $x = 0$, y could equal 5 or -5.



Exercise 1C

1. If A = {3, 4, 5, 6} and B = {1, 2, 3, 4}, write down all the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in$ A, $y \in$ B and x is twice y.
2. If A = {2, 3, 4}, write down all the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in$ A, $y \in$ A and x is greater than y.
3. If A = {−2, −1, 0, 1, 2} and B = {0, 1, 2, 3, 4}, write down all the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in$ A, $y \in$ B and $y = x^2$.
4. Three elements of the cartesian product A × B are (2, 3), (2, 4) and (3, 5). If there are six such ordered pairs in the cartesian product, find
   (a) the sets A and B,
   (b) the other three elements of A × B,
   (c) set C, a subset of A × B, such that C = $\{(x, y): x \in$ A, $y \in$ B and $x = y\}$.
5. If A = {1, 2, 3} and B = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6}, find the ordered pairs of set C given that C = $\{(x, y): x \in$ A, $y \in$ B and $y = 2x\}$.
6. State which of the following points lie on the line $y = 8 - 3x$, (2, 2), (−1, 5), (1, 5), (4, −4).
7. If all of the following points lie on the line $y = 2x - 6$, find the values of a, b, c, d and e: $(5, a)$, $(2, b)$, $(-2, c)$, $(d, 2)$, $(e, 8)$.
8. If the point (2, 2) lies on the line $y = ax - 4$, find the value of a.
9. If the points (2, 1) and (−2, −11) lie on the line $y = ax + b$, find the values of a and b.
10. Find where the following lines cut (i) the y-axis (ii) the x-axis.

(a) $y = x - 4$	(b) $y = 2x - 4$	(c) $y = 12 - 2x$
(d) $y = \frac{1}{2}x + 3$	(e) $y + 2x = 8$	(f) $y + 5x = 3$
(g) $2y - 5x = 12$	(h) $y = x^2 - 3x + 2$	(i) $y = x^2 + x - 6$

For each of the functions in questions **11** to **20**, (a) write down the equation of the function, (b) construct a table of values for the given domain, (c) plot the graph of the function for that domain.

11. $f: x \to x + 1$ for $|x| \leqslant 3$
12. $f: x \to x - 2$ for $|x| \leqslant 4$
13. $f: x \to 2x + 3$ for $|x| \leqslant 3$
14. $f: x \to x$ for $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

15. $f: x \to 5$ for $|x| \leqslant 3$

16. $f: x \to -2$ for $|x| \leqslant 3$

17. $f: x \to x^2 + 3x - 2$ for $-5 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$

18. $f: x \to x^2 - 2x - 4$ for $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$

19. $f: x \to 2x^2 - 4x - 5$ for $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$

20. $f: x \to 10 + x - x^2$ for $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$

1.6 Some further considerations

Odd and even functions

Any function for which $f(-x) = f(x)$ is called an **even** function.
Two examples of even functions are

$$f: x \to x^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad g: x \to |x|$$
$$\text{e.g. } f(-3) \to 9 = f(3) \qquad \text{e.g. } g(-3) \to 3 = g(3)$$

Any function for which $f(-x) = -f(x)$ is called an **odd** function.
Two examples of odd functions are

$$f: x \to x \qquad \text{and} \qquad g: x \to x^3$$
$$\text{e.g. } f(-3) \to -3 = -f(3) \qquad \text{e.g. } g(-3) \to -27 = -g(3)$$

(The words even and odd are used because the functions $f: x \to x^n$ have the property that $f(-x) = f(x)$ for even values of n and the property that $f(-x) = -f(x)$ for odd values of n).

It should be noted that most functions are neither odd nor even.

Example 16

Show that the function $f(x) = 4x^3 - x$ is an odd function.

$$\begin{aligned} f(-x) &= 4(-x)^3 - (-x) \\ &= -4x^3 + x \\ &= -(4x^3 - x) \\ &= -f(x) \end{aligned}$$

Thus $f(x) = 4x^3 - x$ is an odd function.

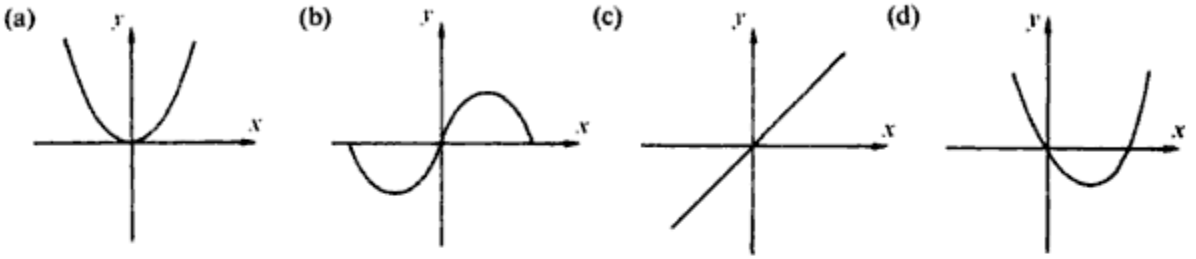
Consider the graph of an even function that maps $x \to y$, i.e. $f(x) = y$. Because the function is even, we know that $f(-x) = y$. Thus for every point (x, y) on the graph of the function, there will also be a point $(-x, y)$. The graph of an even function will therefore be symmetrical about the y-axis.

Consider the graph of an odd function that maps $x \to y$, i.e. $f(x) = y$. Because the function is odd, we know that $f(-x) = -y$. Thus for every point (x, y) on the graph of the function, there will also be a point $(-x, -y)$. The graph of an odd function will therefore be unchanged under a 180° rotation about the origin.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

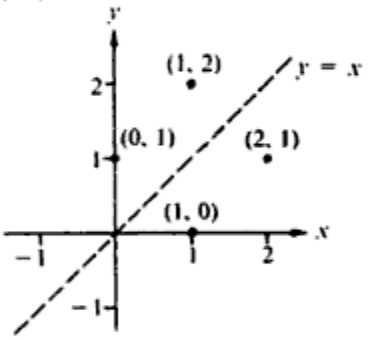
Example 17

For each of the graphs shown below, state whether they are graphs of odd functions, even functions or neither of these.



(a) The graph is symmetrical about the y-axis.
Therefore it is the graph of an even function.
(b) The graph is unchanged under a 180° rotation about the origin.
Therefore it is the graph of an odd function.
(c) The graph is unchanged under a 180° rotation about the origin.
Therefore it is the graph of an odd function.
(d) The graph is neither symmetrical about the y-axis nor is it unchanged under a 180° rotation about the origin. Therefore the graph is neither an odd nor an even function.

Graphs of inverse functions



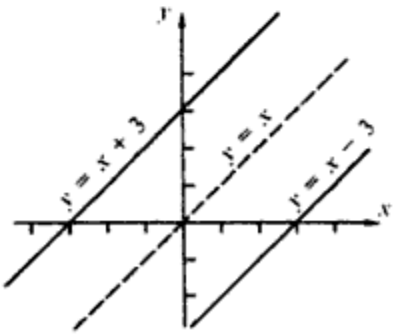
If the function f maps $x \to y$ then f^{-1} maps $y \to x$. Thus for every point (x, y) on the graph of the function f, there will exist a point (y, x) on the graph of the function f^{-1}. For example, a point (2, 1) on the graph of f will mean there is a point (1, 2) on the graph of f^{-1}. A point (1, 0) on the graph of f will mean there is a point (0, 1) on the graph of f^{-1} and so on.

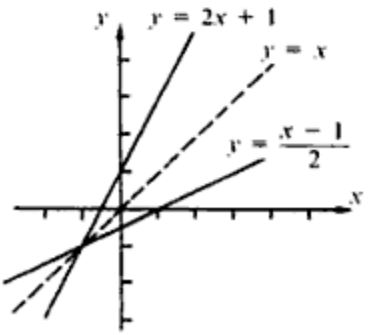
So we could obtain the graph of f^{-1} by finding the ordered pairs (x, y) for $f: x \to y$ and plotting them as (y, x). This will give the same line that we would obtain by reflecting the graph of f in the line $y = x$ as the following graphs illustrate.

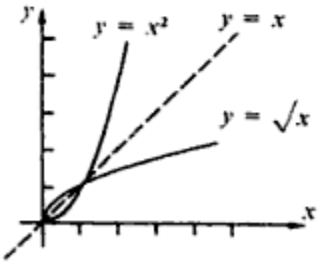
(a) $f: x \to x + 3$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$
$f^{-1}: x \to x - 3$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$

(b) $g: x \to 2x + 1$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$
$g^{-1}: x \to \dfrac{x-1}{2}$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$

(c) $h: x \to x^2$ for $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \geqslant 0\}$
$h^{-1}: x \to \sqrt{x}$ for $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \geqslant 0\}$







Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

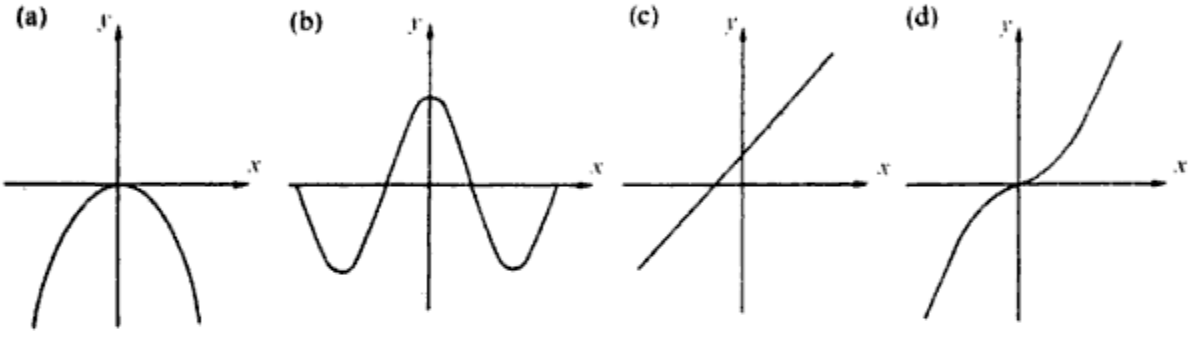
Exercise 1D

1. Show that each of the following functions are odd functions:
(a) $f(x) = 7x$, (b) $f(x) = x^3 + x$, (c) $f(x) = 2x^3 - 3x$.

2. Show that each of the following functions are even functions:
(a) $f(x) = 4x^2$, (b) $f(x) = 2 + x^2$, (c) $f(x) = 3x^2 + 2|x|$.

3. For each of the following functions, state whether they are even, odd or neither of these:
(a) $f(x) = 4 - 3x^2$, (b) $f(x) = 3x^2 + x$, (c) $f(x) = x - \frac{1}{x}$,
(d) $f(x) = x^2 + |x|$, (e) $f(x) = x^3 + |x|$.

4. For each of the following graphs, state whether they are graphs of odd functions, even functions or neither of these.



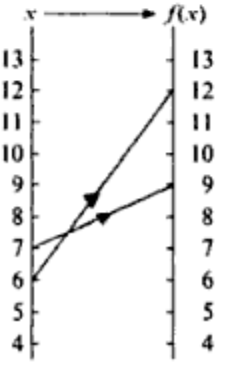
5. Find the equations of the lines obtained if each of the following lines is reflected in the line $y = x$.
(a) $y = \frac{x}{3}$, (b) $y = 4 - x$, (c) $y = 2x - 4$, (d) $y = \frac{1}{x + 2}$.

Exercise 1E Examination questions

1. Find the range of the function $f: x \to |x - 1|$ corresponding to a domain $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$. (Cambridge)

2. The function $f: x \to \frac{a}{x} + b$ is such that $f(-1) = 1\frac{1}{2}$ and $f(2) = 9$.
(i) State the value of x for which f is not defined.
(ii) Find the value of a and of b.
(iii) Evaluate $f(4)$ and $f^{-1}(4)$. (Cambridge)

3. The arrow diagram on the right represents part of the mapping $f: x \to \frac{72}{ax + b}$.
(i) Find the value of a and of b.
(ii) Find the element that under this mapping has an image of 4.
(Cambridge)



4. Given the functions $f: x \to 2x - 3$ and $g: x \to \frac{8}{x}$, find in similar form
(i) f^{-1}, (ii) ff, (iii) gg, (iv) fg, (v) $(fg)^{-1}$.
(Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

5. Express in terms of the functions $f: x \to \sqrt{x}$ and $g: x \to x + 5$,

(i) $x \to \sqrt{(x + 5)}$, (ii) $x \to x - 5$, (iii) $x \to x + 10$,
(iv) $x \to \sqrt{x} + 10$, (v) $x \to x^2 + 5$. (Cambridge)

6. Given the functions $f: x \to 2x - 5$ and $g: x \to \frac{4}{x}$, express in similar form:

(i) fg, (ii) g^2, (iii) g^{17}, ($g^2 \equiv gg$, etc.).
Express in terms of one or both of f and g,

(iv) $x \to \frac{1}{2}(x + 5)$, (v) $x \to \frac{4}{2x - 5}$, (vi) $x \to 4x - 15$. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2
Vectors

2.1 Basic concepts

Suppose an insect walks directly from a point A to a point B, 30 cm from A, and then to point C, 20 cm from B (see Figure 1). The insect has walked 50 cm altogether but it is clearly not 50 cm from its original position, i.e. AB + BC ≠ AC. However, it is true to say that, in travelling from A to B and then from B to C, the insect arrives at the same point C as it would have done had it travelled directly from A to C. The position of C, relative to A, is not changed by the route taken by the insect. We can write

$$\overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC} = \overrightarrow{AC}$$

where $\overrightarrow{AB}$ indicates that both the length and direction of AB are being considered.

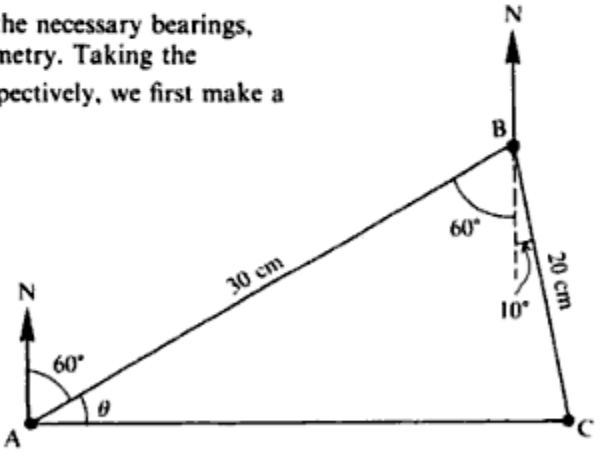
Figure 1

Quantities involving both magnitude and direction are called **vector** quantities. Quantities involving only magnitude are called **scalar** quantities.

Thus $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is the vector whose length is equal to that of the line AB and whose direction is that from A to B. The vector $\overrightarrow{BA}$ would be the same length as $\overrightarrow{AB}$ but will be in the opposite direction, i.e. $\overrightarrow{BA}$ will be in the direction from B to A. We write $|\overrightarrow{AB}|$ or simply AB for the length of the vector $\overrightarrow{AB}$.

Thus, from Figure 1, $|\overrightarrow{AB}| = 30$ cm and $|\overrightarrow{BC}| = 20$ cm or simply AB = 30 cm and BC = 20 cm.

If we wish to find the vector $\overrightarrow{AC}$ we could, given the necessary bearings, find its length and direction by the use of trigonometry. Taking the directions of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{BC}$ as N60°E and S10°E respectively, we first make a rough sketch:



By the cosine rule

$$AC^2 = 30^2 + 20^2 - 2 \times 30 \times 20 \cos 70^\circ$$

$$\therefore \quad AC = 29{\cdot}83 \text{ cm}$$

By the sine rule

$$\frac{20}{\sin\theta} = \frac{AC}{\sin 70^\circ}$$

$$\therefore \quad \sin\theta = \frac{20 \sin 70^\circ}{29{\cdot}83}$$

$$\therefore \quad \theta = 39{\cdot}05^\circ$$

Thus $\overrightarrow{AC}$ is of length 29·8 cm and direction S80·95°E

Alternatively, a solution could be obtained by making an accurate scale drawing.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Vectors may also be written using single letters written in heavy type:

The arrows on the diagram indicate the directions of the vectors. Thus
$\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$.
The length of vector $\mathbf{a}$ is written $|\mathbf{a}|$ or simply as a.

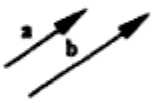
Note: Whilst text books can use heavy type to indicate vectors, this is not easy when writing by hand. The reader is advised to show these single letter vectors underlined.
Thus $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ is written as $\underline{c} = \underline{a} + \underline{b}$

Equal vectors

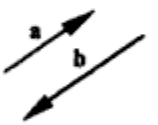
For two vectors to be equal, they must have the same magnitude and the same direction. Thus if we represent vector $\mathbf{a}$ by a line segment of a certain magnitude and direction, then any other line segment of the same magnitude and direction will also equal $\mathbf{a}$.

Parallel vectors

Two vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are parallel if one is a scalar multiple of the other, i.e. if $\mathbf{a} = \lambda\mathbf{b}$.
If λ is positive, the vectors are parallel and in the same direction: i.e. they are *like* parallel vectors.



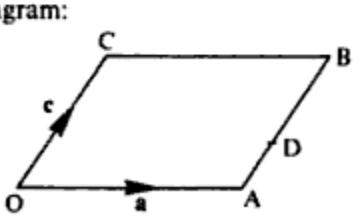
If λ is negative, the vectors are parallel and in opposite directions: i.e. they are *unlike* parallel vectors.



Example 1

In the parallelogram OABC, $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. The point D lies on AB and is such that AD:DB = 1:2. Express the following vectors in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{c}$:
(a) $\overrightarrow{CB}$ (b) $\overrightarrow{BC}$ (c) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ (d) $\overrightarrow{AD}$ (e) $\overrightarrow{OD}$ (f) $\overrightarrow{DC}$.

First draw a diagram:



(a) $\overrightarrow{CB}$ is the same length as $\overrightarrow{OA}$ and is in the same direction,

$$\therefore \quad \overrightarrow{CB} = \overrightarrow{OA}$$
$$\text{or} \quad \overrightarrow{CB} = \mathbf{a}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) $\overrightarrow{BC}$ is the same length as $\overrightarrow{CB}$ but is in the opposite direction,

$$\therefore \quad \overrightarrow{BC} = -\overrightarrow{CB}$$
$$\text{or} \quad \overrightarrow{BC} = -\mathbf{a}$$

(c) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is the same length as $\overrightarrow{OC}$ and is in the same direction,

$$\therefore \quad \overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{c}$$

(d) D is one third of the way along AB,

$$\therefore \quad \overrightarrow{AD} = \tfrac{1}{3}\overrightarrow{AB} = \tfrac{1}{3}\mathbf{c}$$

(e)
$$\overrightarrow{OD} = \overrightarrow{OA} + \overrightarrow{AD} = \mathbf{a} + \tfrac{1}{3}\mathbf{c}$$

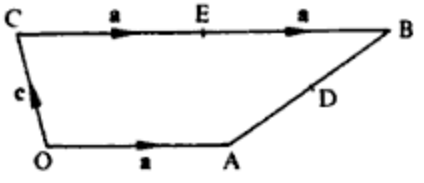
(f)
$$\overrightarrow{DC} = \overrightarrow{DB} + \overrightarrow{BC} = \tfrac{2}{3}\mathbf{c} + (-\mathbf{a}) = \tfrac{2}{3}\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{a}$$

$$\left[\text{or} \quad \overrightarrow{DC} = \overrightarrow{DA} + \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OC} = -\tfrac{1}{3}\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c} = \tfrac{2}{3}\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{a}\right]$$

Example 2

OABC is a trapezium with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$, $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$ and $\overrightarrow{CB}$ parallel to and twice as long as $\overrightarrow{OA}$. The points D and E are the mid-points of AB and CB respectively. Find the following vectors in terms of **a** and **c**:
(a) $\overrightarrow{CA}$ (b) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ (c) $\overrightarrow{ED}$.
Hence show that $\overrightarrow{CA}$ is parallel to and twice as long as $\overrightarrow{ED}$.

First draw a diagram:



(a)
$$\overrightarrow{CA} = \overrightarrow{CO} + \overrightarrow{OA} = -\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{a}$$

(b)
$$\overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OC} + \overrightarrow{CB} = -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c} + 2\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}$$

(c)
$$\overrightarrow{ED} = \overrightarrow{EB} + \overrightarrow{BD} = \overrightarrow{EB} - \tfrac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{a} - \tfrac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}) \quad \text{from (b)} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{c})$$

Now
$$\overrightarrow{ED} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{c}) = \tfrac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{a}) = \tfrac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{CA} \quad \text{or } 2\overrightarrow{ED} = \overrightarrow{CA}$$

Thus $\overrightarrow{CA}$ is parallel to and twice as long as $\overrightarrow{ED}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Non-parallel vectors

For two non-parallel vectors **a** and **b**, if $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} = \alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\mathbf{b}$ then $\lambda = \alpha$ and $\mu = \beta$

i.e. we may equate the coefficients of vector **a** appearing on one side of the equation with those of vector **a** appearing on the other side, and similarly for vector **b**.

Proof: If $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} = \alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\mathbf{b}$

then $\lambda\mathbf{a} - \alpha\mathbf{a} = \beta\mathbf{b} - \mu\mathbf{b}$

$\mathbf{a}(\lambda - \alpha) = \mathbf{b}(\beta - \mu)$ ...[1]

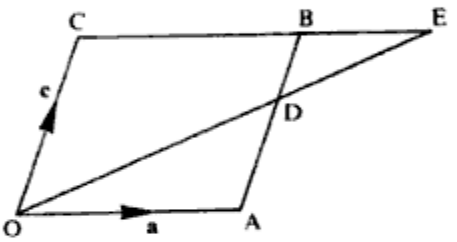
But $(\lambda - \alpha)$ and $(\beta - \mu)$ are scalars and so statement [1] means that **a** and **b** are either parallel vectors, which we know they are not,

or $\lambda - \alpha = 0$ and $\beta - \mu = 0$

i.e. $\lambda = \alpha$ and $\beta = \mu$.

Example 3

The diagram shows a parallelogram OABC with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. D is a point on AB such that AD:DB = 2:1. OD produced meets CB produced at E. $\overrightarrow{DE} = h\,\overrightarrow{OD}$ and $\overrightarrow{BE} = k\overrightarrow{CB}$.



Find (a) $\overrightarrow{BE}$ in terms of **a** and k,

(b) $\overrightarrow{DE}$ in terms of h, **a** and **c**,

(c) the values of h and k.

(a) $\overrightarrow{BE} = k\overrightarrow{CB}$
$= k\mathbf{a}$

(b) $\overrightarrow{DE} = h\overrightarrow{OD}$
$= h(\mathbf{a} + \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{c})$

(c) To determine h and k we need a vector equation containing h and k.

Now $\overrightarrow{BE} = \overrightarrow{BD} + \overrightarrow{DE}$

i.e. $k\mathbf{a} = -\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{c} + h(\mathbf{a} + \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{c})$

$\therefore$ $k\mathbf{a} = -\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{c} + h\mathbf{a} + \frac{2}{3}h\mathbf{c}$

equating coefficients of **a** gives $k = h$

equating coefficients of **c** gives $0 = -\frac{1}{3} + \frac{2}{3}h$

$\therefore$ $h = \frac{1}{2}$ and $k = \frac{1}{2}$

Exercise 2A

1. A ship is initially at a position A and travels 6 km on a bearing 055° followed by 8 km on a bearing 150° to reach a final position B. Find, by scale drawing, the distance and bearing of B from A.
2. An oil tanker travels 200 km on a bearing 160° followed by 300 km on a bearing 200°. Find, by calculation, the final distance (to the nearest km) and bearing (to the nearest degree) of the tanker from its original position.
3. A hiker leaves a position A and walks 550 m in a direction S60°W followed by 700 m in a direction N10°W. Find, by calculation, the distance that the hiker is then from A and the direction in which she must walk if she is to return directly to A.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. Four towns A, B, C and D are such that B is 50 km from A on a bearing 080°, C is 70 km from B on a bearing 120° and D is 40 km from C on a bearing 210°. Find, by scale drawing, the distance and bearing of (a) D from A, (b) A from D.

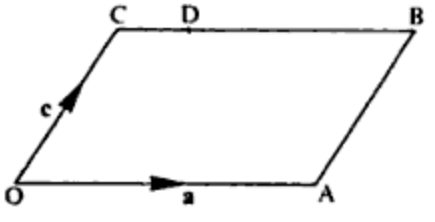
5. If $\overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD} = 3\mathbf{a}$ which of the following statements are true?
(a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is parallel to $\overrightarrow{CD}$,
(b) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is equal to $\overrightarrow{CD}$,
(c) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is three times as long as $\overrightarrow{CD}$,
(d) $\overrightarrow{CD}$ is three times as long as $\overrightarrow{AB}$.

6. State which of the following vectors are parallel to the vector $\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$.
(a) $3\mathbf{a} + 6\mathbf{b}$ (b) $3\mathbf{a}$
(c) $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ (d) $\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$
(e) $\sqrt{2}\mathbf{a} + 2\sqrt{2}\mathbf{b}$

7. State which of the following vectors are parallel to the vector $2\mathbf{a} - 3\mathbf{b}$.
(a) $\mathbf{a} + 6\mathbf{b}$ (b) $\mathbf{a} - \frac{3}{2}\mathbf{b}$
(c) $4\mathbf{a} - 6\mathbf{b}$ (d) $2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$
(e) $3\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$

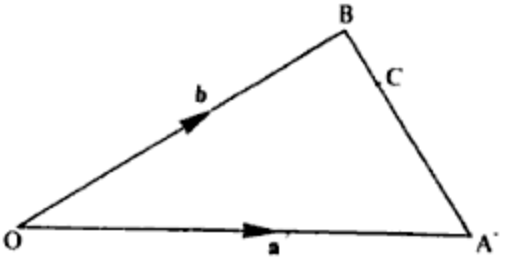
8. Find the values of the scalars h and k in the following vector statements given that $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are not parallel.
(a) $h\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{b}$
(b) $h\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}$
(c) $h\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{a} = k\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b}$
(d) $\mathbf{a}(h + 3) = \mathbf{b}(k - 1)$
(e) $h\mathbf{a} - h\mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{a} - k\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} - k\mathbf{b}$
(f) $h\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}k = \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + 3h\mathbf{b}$
(g) $k\mathbf{a} + h\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} - 2h\mathbf{b}$
(h) $2h\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} + 12\,k\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{a} - 3k\mathbf{a} + 6h\mathbf{b}$

9. The diagram shows a parallelogram OABC with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. D is a point on CB such that CD:DB = 1:3.



Express the following vectors in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{c}$.
(a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{BA}$, (c) $\overrightarrow{OB}$, (d) $\overrightarrow{OD}$, (e) $\overrightarrow{AD}$.

10. The diagram shows a triangle OAB with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = \mathbf{b}$. C is a point on AB such that AC:CB = 3:1.



Express the following vectors in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.
(a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{AC}$, (c) $\overrightarrow{CB}$, (d) $\overrightarrow{OC}$.

11. OABC is a trapezium with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$, $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$ and $\overrightarrow{CB} = 3\mathbf{a}$. D is the mid-point of AB. Express the following vectors in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{c}$.
(a) $\overrightarrow{OB}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{AB}$, (c) $\overrightarrow{OD}$, (d) $\overrightarrow{CD}$.

12. OAB is a triangle with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = \mathbf{b}$. C is a point on AB such that AC:CB = 1:2 and D is a point on OB such that OD:DB = 2:1. Express the following vectors in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.
(a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{AC}$, (c) $\overrightarrow{DC}$.

13. OABC is a parallelogram with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. D is a point on OC such that OD:DC = 1:2 and E is a point on AC such that AE:EC = 2:1. Show that OB is parallel to and three times as long as DE.

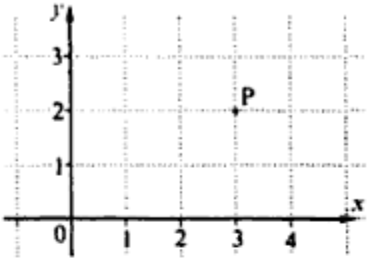
14. OABC is a parallelogram with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. D is the mid-point of CB and OD meets AC at E. If $\overrightarrow{OE} = h\overrightarrow{OD}$ and $\overrightarrow{AE} = k\overrightarrow{AC}$ find:
(a) $\overrightarrow{OE}$ in terms of h, $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{c}$,
(b) $\overrightarrow{AE}$ in terms of k, $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{c}$,
(c) the values of h and k.

15. OABC is a trapezium with $\overrightarrow{OA} = 3\mathbf{a}$, $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$ and $\overrightarrow{CB} = 2\mathbf{a}$. D is a point on AB such that AD:DB = 3:1 and OD crosses CA at E. If $\overrightarrow{AE} = h\overrightarrow{AC}$ and $\overrightarrow{OE} = k\overrightarrow{OD}$ find the values of h and k.

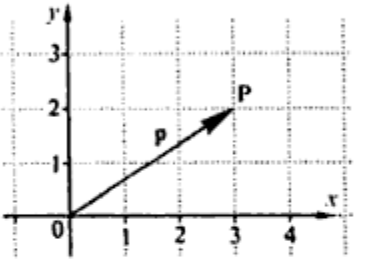
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2.2 Position vectors and unit vectors

As we saw in section 1.5, the position of any point in a plane can be stated in terms of an ordered pair (x, y), the coordinates of the point. This ordered pair gives the perpendicular distance from the point to each of the coordinate axes. The point P in the diagram has coordinates (3, 2) with respect to the origin O.



We could also define the point P by giving the distance and direction of P from the origin i.e. by stating the vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$. This vector is called the **position vector** of P.

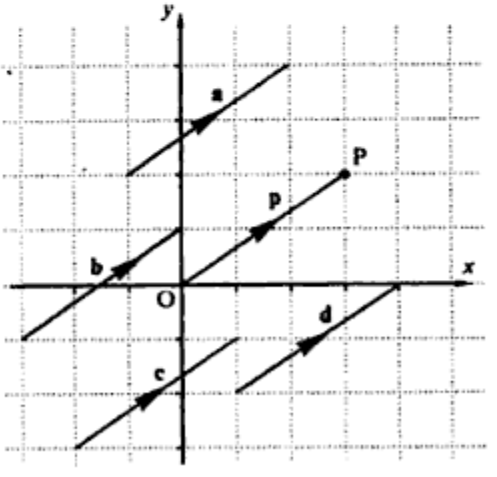


In addition to writing this position vector as $\overrightarrow{OP}$ or as a single letter, say **p**, it can also be expressed in terms of its horizontal and vertical **components**, in one of the following ways:

(i) As a column matrix, $\overrightarrow{OP} = \binom{3}{2}$

(ii) By using **unit vectors**. A unit vector is a vector of length one unit in a given direction. If we denote a horizontal unit vector by **i** and a vertical unit vector by **j** then $\overrightarrow{OP} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$.
(If a third dimension is required, we use **k** to represent a unit vector at right angles to the plane containing **i** and **j**. Chapter 17 covers three-dimensional vectors.)

If we represent the vector $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ by a line segment of the required length and direction, then any other line segment of the same length and direction will also represent the vector $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$. Thus in the diagram, **a**, **b**, **c**, **d** and **p** all equal $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$. However, with O as the origin, only **p** is the **position vector** $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ as it is the vector from O to the point P(3, 2).



Note also (from Pythagoras' theorem) that a vector $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$ has magnitude $\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

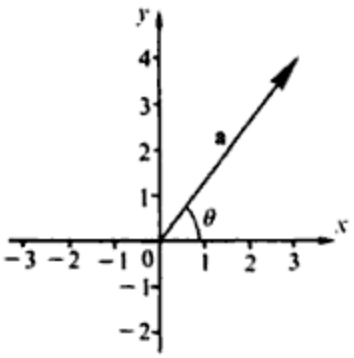
Example 4

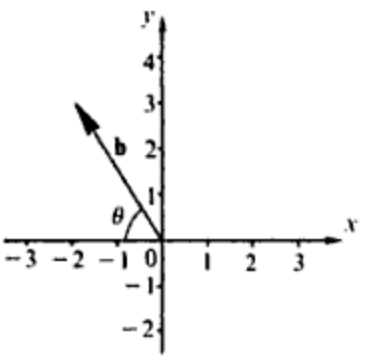
For each of the vectors shown below:

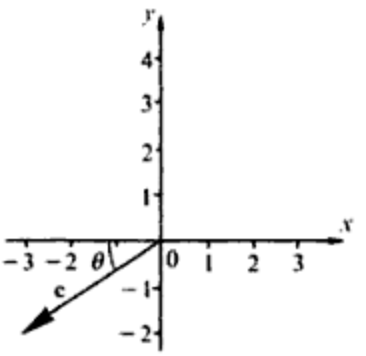
(i) express the vector in terms of **i** and **j**, where **i** is a unit vector in the Ox direction and **j** is a unit vector in the Oy direction,

(ii) find the length of each vector,

(iii) find the angle θ.







(i) $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$

(ii) $|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{(3^2 + 4^2)}$
$= 5$ units

(iii) $\tan\theta = \frac{4}{3}$
$\therefore \quad \theta = 53{\cdot}1°$

(i) $\mathbf{b} = -2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$

(ii) $|\mathbf{b}| = \sqrt{[(-2)^2 + 3^2]}$
$= \sqrt{13}$ units

(iii) $\tan\theta = \frac{3}{2}$
$\therefore \quad \theta = 56{\cdot}3°$

(i) $\mathbf{c} = -3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$

(ii) $|\mathbf{c}| = \sqrt{[(-3)^2 + (-2)^2]}$
$= \sqrt{13}$ units

(iii) $\tan\theta = \frac{2}{3}$
$\therefore \quad \theta = 33{\cdot}7°$

Example 5

Find the unit vector in the same direction as the vector $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.

$2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ is a vector of length $\sqrt{5}$ units.
Thus a vector parallel to $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and of length 1 unit will be
$\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$ or $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$

The required unit vector is $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$.

Note: Whilst we use **i** and **j** for the unit vectors in the direction of the x- and y-axes respectively, a unit vector in the direction of some vector **a** is usually written $\hat{\mathbf{a}}$.

So, $\hat{\mathbf{a}} = \frac{\mathbf{a}}{|\mathbf{a}|}$

Example 6

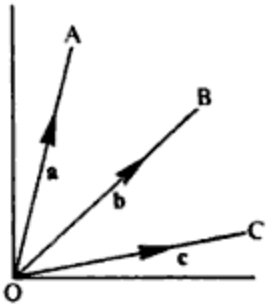
Find a vector that is of magnitude 6 units and is parallel to the vector $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

The vector $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ has magnitude $\sqrt{(1^2 + 1^2)} = \sqrt{2}$ units
Thus a vector parallel to $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ but of length 6 units will be $\frac{6}{\sqrt{2}}(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$
$= 3\sqrt{2}\mathbf{i} + 3\sqrt{2}\mathbf{j}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 7

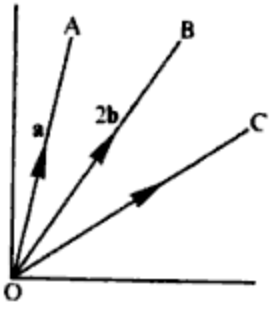
If A has position vector **a**, B has position vector **b** and C has position vector **c**, find the following vectors in terms of **a**, **b** and **c**:
(a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ (b) $\overrightarrow{BA}$ (c) $\overrightarrow{BC}$ (d) $\overrightarrow{AC}$.



First draw a sketch showing the position vectors:
(a) $\overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OB} = -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ or $\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}$
(b) $\overrightarrow{BA} = \overrightarrow{BO} + \overrightarrow{OA} = -\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}$ or $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$
(c) $\overrightarrow{BC} = \overrightarrow{BO} + \overrightarrow{OC} = -\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$ or $\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{b}$
(d) $\overrightarrow{AC} = \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OC} = -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}$ or $\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{a}$

Example 8

Point A has position vector **a**, point B has position vector **2b** and C is a point such that $\overrightarrow{AC} = 6\mathbf{b} - 3\mathbf{a}$. Show that A, B and C are collinear.



First make a rough sketch with O as this origin:

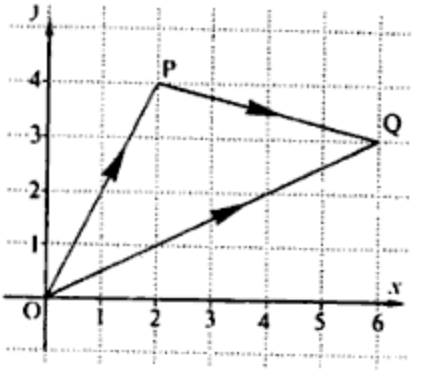
$$\begin{aligned} \overrightarrow{AB} &= \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OB} \\ &= -\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b} \\ \text{but} \quad \overrightarrow{AC} &= 6\mathbf{b} - 3\mathbf{a} \\ &= 3(-\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}) \\ &= 3\overrightarrow{AB} \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{AC}$ are parallel and, as the point A is common to both these vectors, the points A, B and C are collinear.

Addition and subtraction of vectors in component vector form

When vectors are expressed in terms of **i** and **j**, it is easy to add two or more vectors to find their combined or **resultant** vector.
From the vector diagram shown, we know that

$$\overrightarrow{OP} + \overrightarrow{PQ} = \overrightarrow{OQ} \qquad \ldots[1]$$



Taking **i** and **j** to be the unit vectors in the directions Ox and Oy respectively, we can see from the diagram that $\overrightarrow{OP} = 2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$, $\overrightarrow{PQ} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $\overrightarrow{OQ} = 6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$.
Substitution into [1] gives

$$(2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}) + (4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) = 6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$$

Thus to add vectors expressed in terms of **i** and **j**, we add the **i** components together, $2 + 4 = 6$, and the **j** components together, $4 + -1 = 3$.

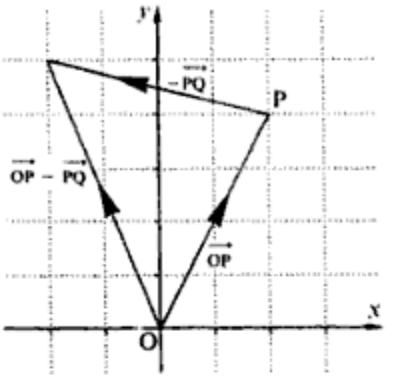
Applying a similar method for subtraction gives

$$\begin{aligned} \overrightarrow{OP} - \overrightarrow{PQ} &= (2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}) - (4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) \\ &= -2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} \end{aligned}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

To interpret $\overrightarrow{OP} - \overrightarrow{PQ}$ we can think of it as $\overrightarrow{OP} + (-\overrightarrow{PQ})$. The vector $(-\overrightarrow{PQ})$ is equal in magnitude to $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ but opposite in direction.

So, $\overrightarrow{OP} - \overrightarrow{PQ}$ means that we must add to $\overrightarrow{OP}$ a vector equal in length, but opposite in direction, to that of $\overrightarrow{PQ}$.



Similarly, multiplying a vector expressed in terms of **i** and **j** by a scalar is straightforward. If $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ then $2\mathbf{a} = 6\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}$, $3\mathbf{a} = 9\mathbf{j} + 12\mathbf{j}$, etc.

Example 9

If $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}$ find: (a) $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$, (b) $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|$, (c) $\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$, (d) $|\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}|$.

(a) $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = (3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}) + (2\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j})$
$= 5\mathbf{i} + 12\,\mathbf{j}$

(b) $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}| = |5\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j}|$
$= \sqrt{(5^2 + 12^2)} = 13$ units

(c) $\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b} = (3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}) - 2(2\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j})$
$= -\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j}$

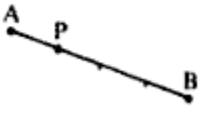
(d) $|\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}| = |-\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j}|$
$= \sqrt{[(-1)^2 + (-12^2)]} = \sqrt{145}$ units

Example 10

If a point A has position vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ and B has position vector $5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, find the position vector of the point which divides AB in the ratio $1:-3$.

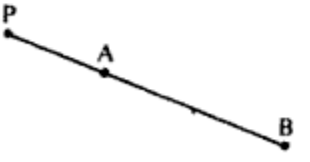
Note first that the ratio involves two numbers of different sign. This indicates that the required point divides AB *externally* rather than *internally*. The difference between these two cases is illustrated below:

Point P dividing AB internally in the ratio 1:3



In this case the vectors $\overrightarrow{AP}$ and $\overrightarrow{PB}$ are in the same direction.

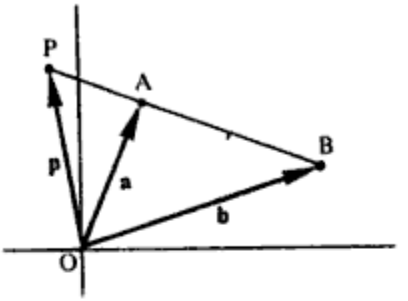
Point P dividing AB externally in the ratio 1:3. (By writing this as $1:-3$ we need not state that the division is external).



In this case the vectors $\overrightarrow{AP}$ and $\overrightarrow{PB}$ are in opposite directions. Hence the use of the minus sign in the ratio.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

To solve the given question we first draw a diagram showing the points A, B and P, position vectors **a**, **b** and **p** respectively. (Note that the diagram is an aid to calculation and need not be drawn accurately).



Now $\overrightarrow{OP} = \mathbf{p} = \overrightarrow{OA} + \overrightarrow{AP}$

$= \mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{BA}$

$= \mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a})$

$= \frac{3}{2}\mathbf{a} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{b}$

But $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$

$\therefore \quad \mathbf{p} = \frac{3}{2}(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) - \frac{1}{2}(5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$

$= -\mathbf{i} + \frac{5}{2}\mathbf{j}$

The point dividing AB in the ratio $1:-3$ has position vector $-\mathbf{i} + \frac{5}{2}\mathbf{j}$.

The general formula for the position vector of a point dividing a line in a given ratio is given by the section theorem:
The point P which divides the line AB in the ratio $\lambda:\mu$ has position vector **p** where $\mathbf{p} = \dfrac{\mu\mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}}{\lambda + \mu}$ and **a** and **b** are the position vectors of A and B respectively.

Applying this formula to example 10 gives $\mathbf{p} = \dfrac{-3(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) + 1(5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})}{1 + (-3)}$

$= -\mathbf{i} + \frac{5}{2}\mathbf{j}$ as before.

Other base vectors in two dimensions

Any vector lying in the plane of the unit vectors **i** and **j** can be expressed in the form $x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j}$. The unit vectors **i** and **j** are **base vectors** from which other **coplanar** vectors can be built up. Although it is usually convenient to use **i** and **j** as the base vectors, any pair of non-parallel coplanar vectors **a** and **b** could be used instead.
Thus for three coplanar vectors **a**, **b** and **c**, it is possible to express any one of the vectors in terms of the other two.

i.e. $\mathbf{c} = \lambda_1\mathbf{a} + \mu_1\mathbf{b}$

$\mathbf{b} = \lambda_2\mathbf{a} + \mu_2\mathbf{c}$

$\mathbf{a} = \lambda_3\mathbf{b} + \mu_3\mathbf{c}$ where λ_1, μ_1, λ_2, μ_2, λ_3 and μ_3 are suitable scalars.

Example 11

With $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix}3\\5\end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix}2\\-1\end{pmatrix}$ as base vectors, express $\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix}5\\17\end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{d} = \begin{pmatrix}3\\2\end{pmatrix}$ in the form $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b}$.

If $\mathbf{c} = \lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b}$

$$\begin{pmatrix}5\\17\end{pmatrix} = \lambda\begin{pmatrix}3\\5\end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix}2\\-1\end{pmatrix}$$

If $\mathbf{d} = \lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b}$

$$\begin{pmatrix}3\\2\end{pmatrix} = \lambda\begin{pmatrix}3\\5\end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix}2\\-1\end{pmatrix}$$

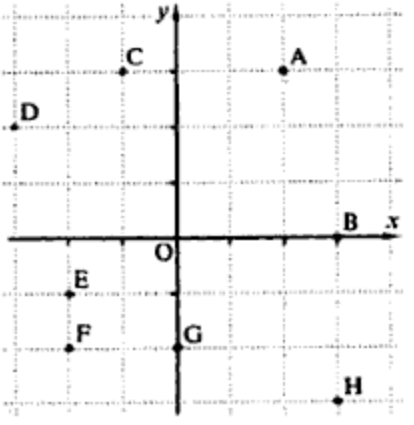
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Thus $5 = 3\lambda + 2\mu$
and $17 = 5\lambda - \mu$
Solving simultaneously gives $\lambda = 3$ and $\mu = -2$
$\therefore$ $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$

Thus $3 = 3\lambda + 2\mu$
and $2 = 5\lambda - \mu$
Solving simultaneously gives $\lambda = \frac{7}{13}$ and $\mu = \frac{9}{13}$
$\therefore$ $\mathbf{d} = \frac{7}{13}\mathbf{a} + \frac{9}{13}\mathbf{b}$

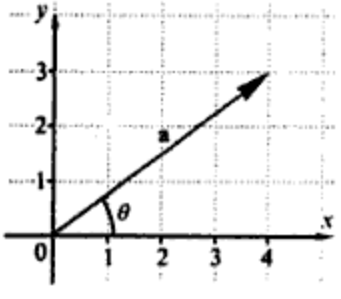
Exercise 2B

1. Taking **i** and **j** to be unit vectors in the directions Ox and Oy respectively, give the position vectors of the points A to H shown in the diagram. Each square in the grid is a unit square and O is the origin.

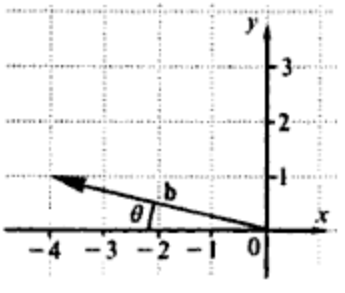


2. For each of the vectors shown below:
(i) express each vector in terms of **i** and **j** where **i** is a unit vector in the Ox direction and **j** is a unit vector in the Oy direction,
(ii) find the length of each vector, (iii) find the angle θ.

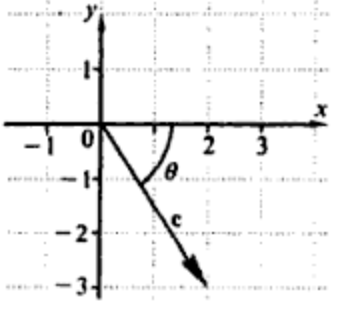
(a)



(b)



(c)



3. If $a\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}$ is parallel to $2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$, find the value of $\mathbf{a}$.
4. If $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ find $\hat{\mathbf{a}}$, a unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{a}$.
5. If $\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ find $\hat{\mathbf{b}}$, a unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{b}$.
6. Find a vector that is of magnitude 39 units and is parallel to $5\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j}$.
7. Find a vector that is of magnitude $3\sqrt{5}$ units and is parallel to $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.
8. Find a vector that is of magnitude 2 units and is parallel to $4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$.
9. If the point P has position vector $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and point Q has position vector $7\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$, find: (a) $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{QP}$.
10. If the point P has position vector $7\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ and point Q has position vector $5\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$, find: (a) $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{QP}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

11. The point P has position vector $-5\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and Q is a point such that $\overrightarrow{PQ} = 7\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$. Find the position vector of Q.

12. The point P has position vector $3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ and Q is a point such that $\overrightarrow{QP} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$. Find the position vector of Q.

13. Using $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ as base vectors, express the vectors

$\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{d} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ in the form $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b}$.

14. Given that $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, find:
(a) $|\mathbf{a}|$, (b) $|\mathbf{b}|$, (c) $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$, (d) $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|$.

15. Given that $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$, find:

(a) $\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$, (b) $|\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}|$, (c) $2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$, (d) $|2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}|$.

16. The point A has position vector $3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ and point B has position vector $10\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$. Find the position vector of the point which divides AB in the ratio 3:4.

17. The point C has position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and point D has position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

Find the position vector of the point which divides CD in the ratio $4:-3$.

18. The point K has position vector $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ and point L has position vector $\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$. Find the position vector of the point which divides KL in the ratio (a) 4:3, (b) $4:-3$.

19. The three points A, B and C have position vectors **a**, **b** and **c** respectively. If $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}$, show that A, B and C are collinear.

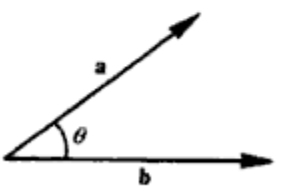
20. The three points A, B and C have position vectors $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$, $5\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ and $11\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Show that A, B and C are collinear.

21. Points A, B, C, D, E and F have position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$,

$\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively. Find which of the points C, D, E and F are collinear with A and B.

2.3 The scalar product

The scalar product of two vectors **a** and **b** is defined as the product of the magnitudes of the two vectors multiplied by the cosine of the angle between the two vectors.
Writing this scalar product as **a** . **b** it follows from the definition that

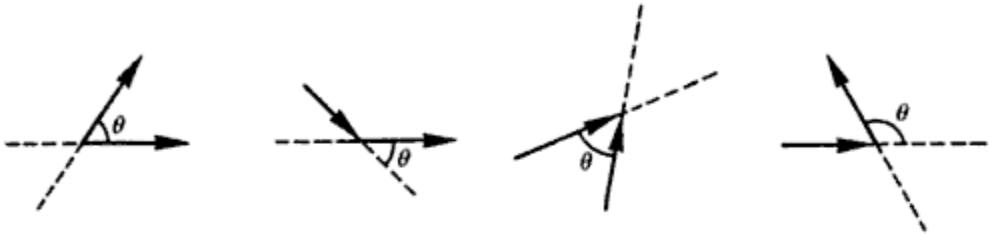


$$\boxed{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta}$$

The term **scalar** product is used because $|\mathbf{a}|$, $|\mathbf{b}|$ and $\cos\theta$ are all scalar quantities and so their product will be a scalar quantity.
We read **a** . **b** as '**a** dot **b**' and for this reason the scalar product may also be referred to as the **dot** product.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Note that the angle between two vectors always refers to the angle between the directions of the vectors when these directions are either both towards their point of intersection or both away from their point of intersection. Thus, in each of the following diagrams, θ is the angle between the two vectors.



Properties of the scalar product

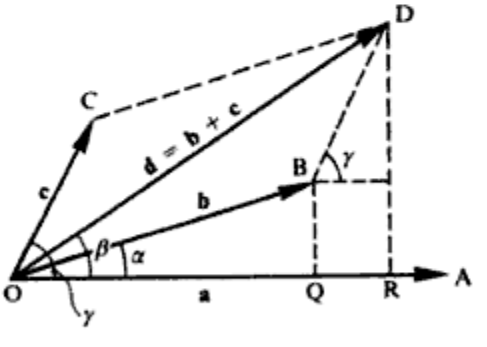
1. From the definition $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$, it follows that two perpendicular vectors will have a scalar product of zero.

2. $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{a}| \cos 0$
   $= |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{a}|$
   This is usually written $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = |\mathbf{a}|^2$, or just $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = a^2$

3. The scalar product is commutative i.e. $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}$
   Proof: $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$
   $= |\mathbf{b}||\mathbf{a}| \cos \theta = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}$

4. The scalar product is distributive over addition i.e. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$

   Proof: Consider vectors **a**, **b**, **c** and **d** with
   $\mathbf{d} = \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$
   It is clear from the diagram that OR = OQ + QR
   but OR = $|\mathbf{d}| \cos \beta$, OQ = $|\mathbf{b}| \cos \alpha$ and
   QR = $|\mathbf{c}| \cos \gamma$
   $\therefore \quad |\mathbf{d}| \cos \beta = |\mathbf{b}| \cos \alpha + |\mathbf{c}| \cos \gamma$
   $\therefore \quad |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{d}| \cos \beta = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \alpha + |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{c}| \cos \gamma$
   So $\quad \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{d} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$
   giving $\quad \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$ as required.



5. The properties for multiplication by a scalar λ are that:
   $$\lambda(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot (\lambda \mathbf{b}) = (\lambda \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b} = \lambda |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 12

$\overrightarrow{OA}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB}$ are two vectors such that $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$, $\overrightarrow{OB} = 2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ and OA is perpendicular to OB.

(a) Show that $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \frac{2}{3}b^2 - a^2$.

(b) If $\mathbf{a}$ has magnitude 4 units and $\mathbf{b}$ has magnitude 5 units, find the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

(a) If OA is perpendicular to OB then $\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB} = 0$

i.e. $(\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}) \cdot (2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) = 0$

$\therefore \quad \mathbf{a} \cdot 2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + 2\mathbf{b} \cdot 2\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$

$2a^2 - \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + 4\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} - 2b^2 = 0$

$3\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 2b^2 - 2a^2$

$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \frac{2}{3}(b^2 - a^2)$ as required.

(b) $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \frac{2}{3}(b^2 - a^2)$

$= \frac{2}{3}(25 - 16) = 6$ units

but $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$

$\therefore \quad 6 = 4 \times 5 \times \cos \theta$

giving $\theta = 72{\cdot}54°$

Thus the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is 72·5°, correct to 1 d.p.

Consider the vectors $\mathbf{a} = x_1\mathbf{i} + y_1\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = x_2\mathbf{i} + y_2\mathbf{j}$.

Now $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = (x_1\mathbf{i} + y_1\mathbf{j}) \cdot (x_2\mathbf{i} + y_2\mathbf{j})$

$= x_1x_2\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i} + x_1y_2\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j} + y_1x_2\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{i} + y_1y_2\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{j}$

But $\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{j} = 1$ and $\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{i} = 0$

Thus $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = x_1x_2 + y_1y_2$

Thus, if	$\mathbf{a} = x_1\mathbf{i} + y_1\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = x_2\mathbf{i} + y_2\mathbf{j}$
then	$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = x_1x_2 + y_1y_2$
	$= \lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert\lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert \cos \theta$ where θ is the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

This result enables us to calculate the angle between two vectors that are given in component form.

Example 13

Find the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ given that $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j}$.

Let θ be the required angle

Then $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$

but $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = (3 \times 5) + (4 \times (-12))$, $|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{(3^2 + 4^2)}$ and $|\mathbf{b}| = \sqrt{(5^2 + (-12)^2)}$

$= -33$ $\quad = 5$ $\quad = 13$

Thus $-33 = 5 \times 13 \cos \theta$

giving $\theta = 120{\cdot}51°$

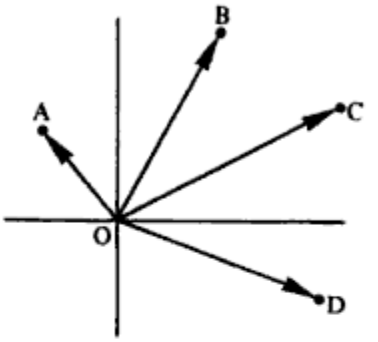
Thus the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is 120·5°, correct to 1 d.p.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 14

The points A, B, C and D have position vectors $-2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, $3\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}$, $7\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$ and $7\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Show that AC is perpendicular to BD.

First draw a rough sketch with O as the origin:



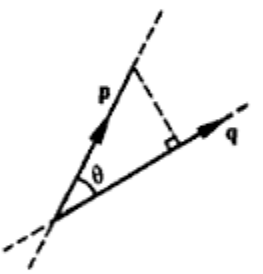
$$\begin{aligned}
\overrightarrow{AC} &= \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OC} \\
&= -(-2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}) + (7\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}) \\
&= 9\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} \\
\overrightarrow{BD} &= \overrightarrow{BO} + \overrightarrow{OD} \\
&= -(3\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}) + (7\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j}) \\
&= 4\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j} \\
\therefore \quad \overrightarrow{AC} \cdot \overrightarrow{BD} &= (9\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}) \cdot (4\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j}) \\
&= (9 \times 4) + (3 \times (-12)) \\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

Thus AC is perpendicular to BD.

Projection of one vector onto another

We have already seen that a vector can be expressed in terms of its components in the directions of x- and y-axes. The scalar product can be used to find the component of one vector in the direction of some other vector.

Suppose we wish to find the component of vector $\mathbf{p}$, in the direction of vector $\mathbf{q}$. The required component will be the projection of vector $\mathbf{p}$ onto $\mathbf{q}$ i.e. $|\mathbf{p}| \cos \theta$



$$\text{but } |\mathbf{p}| \cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q}}{|\mathbf{q}|}$$

Thus the component of $\mathbf{p}$ in the direction of $\mathbf{q}$ (or the projection of $\mathbf{p}$ onto $\mathbf{q}$) is given by $\frac{\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q}}{|\mathbf{q}|}$. This is also referred to as the **resolved** part of $\mathbf{p}$ in the direction of $\mathbf{q}$.

Example 15

Find the resolved part of vector $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$ in the direction of the vector $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Resolved part} &= |\mathbf{a}| \cos \theta \\
&= \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|} \\
&= \frac{(2 \times 1) + (5 \times 1)}{\sqrt{(1^2 + 1^2)}} \\
&= \frac{7}{\sqrt{2}} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{7\sqrt{2}}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 2C

1. If $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{c} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, find which two of these vectors are perpendicular to each other.
2. If $\mathbf{e} = -\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{f} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{g} = -3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{h} = 6\mathbf{i} - 9\mathbf{j}$, find which two of these vectors are perpendicular to each other.
3. Find the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ given that $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j}$. (Give your answer to the nearest degree.)
4. Find the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{d}$ given that $\mathbf{c} = 5\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$. (Give your answer to the nearest degree.)
5. Find the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{e}$ and $\mathbf{f}$ given that $\mathbf{e} = -\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{f} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$. (Give your answer to the nearest degree.)
6. If the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{c} = a\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ is 45° find the two possible values of a.
7. If $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ write down a relationship between x and y for each of the following cases:
   (a) $\mathbf{a}$ is of magnitude 5 units,
   (b) $\mathbf{a}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{b}$,
   (c) $\mathbf{a}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{b}$,
   (d) $(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b})$ is perpendicular to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$.
8. The points A, B, C and D have position vectors $5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $-3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, $-3\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Show that AC is perpendicular to BD.
9. The points E, F and G have position vectors $2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$ and $-7\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$. Show that the triangle EFG is right-angled at F.
10. The points A, B, C and D have position vectors $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, $\mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{d}$ respectively where $\mathbf{a} = -2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = -2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 4\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j}$. If AC is perpendicular to BD, find the value of y.
11. The points A, B, C and D have position vectors $-2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $7\mathbf{j}$, $3\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$ and $x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j}$ respectively. If $|\overrightarrow{AC}| = |\overrightarrow{BD}|$ and AC is perpendicular to BD, find the two possible values of x and the corresponding values of y.
12. If $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$ find:
    (a) a unit vector parallel to $\mathbf{a}$,
    (b) a unit vector perpendicular to $\mathbf{a}$.
13. If $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ find:
    (a) a vector $\mathbf{c}$, parallel to $\mathbf{b}$ and of magnitude 10 units,
    (b) a vector $\mathbf{d}$, perpendicular to $\mathbf{b}$ and of magnitude $15\sqrt{2}$ units.
14. The points A, B and C have position vectors $4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and $-5\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Find:
    (a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{BC}$, (c) $\overrightarrow{CA}$, (d) the angles of the triangle ABC giving your answers to the nearest degree.
15. If $\overrightarrow{OA} = 2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = 3\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$ show that $\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB} = 6a^2 + 5\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} - 6b^2$.
16. If $\overrightarrow{OC} = 2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$ and $\overrightarrow{OD} = 2\mathbf{a} - 3\mathbf{b}$ show that $\overrightarrow{OC} \cdot \overrightarrow{OD} = 4a^2 - 9b^2$.
17. If $\overrightarrow{OA} = 3\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = 2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$
    (a) show that $\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB} = 6a^2 + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} - 2b^2$
    (b) find $\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB}$ given that $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

18. $\overrightarrow{OC}$ and $\overrightarrow{OD}$ are two vectors such that $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ and $\overrightarrow{OD} = 2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$. If OC is perpendicular to $\overrightarrow{OD}$ show that $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 3b^2 - 2a^2$.
If **a** has magnitude 7 units and **b** has magnitude 5 units, find the angle between **a** and **b** giving your answer to the nearest degree.

19. Find the resolved part of the vector $\mathbf{a} = 4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ in the direction of the vector $\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$.

20. Find the component of the vector $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ in the direction of the vector $\mathbf{d} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$.

21. Find the length of the projection of the vector $\mathbf{e} = 5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ onto the vector $\mathbf{f} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.

22. The vectors **a** and **b** are of equal magnitude k ($k \neq 0$) and the angle between **a** and **b** is 60°. If $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 2\mathbf{a} - 10\mathbf{b}$,
(a) show that **c** and **d** are perpendicular vectors
(b) find the magnitudes of **c** and **d** in terms of k.

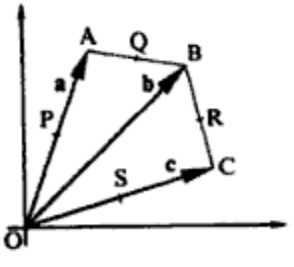
2.4 Geometrical proofs by vector methods

The vector properties covered in this chapter and the skills we have now acquired in manipulating and interpreting vector expressions can be used to prove certain geometrical facts as the following example and the questions of Exercise 2D will show.

Example 16

(The mid-points of the sides of any quadrilateral form the vertices of a parallelogram).
O is the origin and points A, B and C have position vectors **a**, **b** and **c** respectively. Points P, Q, R and S are the mid-points of OA, AB, BC and CO respectively. Find the following vectors in terms of **a**, **b** and **c**
(a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{BC}$, (c) $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, (d) $\overrightarrow{QR}$, (e) $\overrightarrow{SR}$, (f) $\overrightarrow{PS}$.
Hence show that PQRS is parallelogram.

First make a rough sketch:



(a) $\overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OB}$
$= -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$

(b) $\overrightarrow{BC} = \overrightarrow{BO} + \overrightarrow{OC}$
$= -\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$

(c) $\overrightarrow{PQ} = \overrightarrow{PA} + \overrightarrow{AQ}$
$= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})$
$= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{b}$

(d) $\overrightarrow{QR} = \overrightarrow{QB} + \overrightarrow{BR}$
$= \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) + \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})$
$= -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{c}$

(e) $\overrightarrow{SR} = \overrightarrow{SC} + \overrightarrow{CR}$
$= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{c} + \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b})$
$= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{b}$

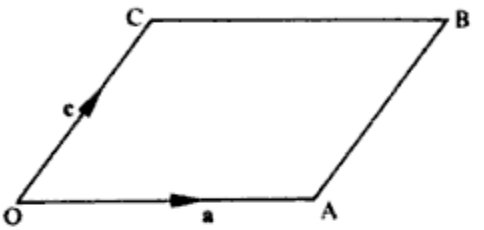
(f) $\overrightarrow{PS} = \overrightarrow{PO} + \overrightarrow{OS}$
$= -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{c}$

Parts (c), (d), (e) and (f) above show that $\overrightarrow{PQ} = \overrightarrow{SR}$ and $\overrightarrow{QR} = \overrightarrow{PS}$, i.e. the opposite sides of quadrilateral PQRS are equal and parallel. Thus PQRS is a parallelogram.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

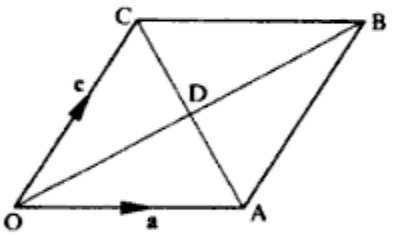
Exercise 2D

1. (The diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other).
In the diagram, OABC is a parallelogram with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$.



If G is the mid-point of AC and H is the mid-point of OB, find the following vectors in terms of **a** and **c**
(a) $\overrightarrow{OB}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{OH}$, (c) $\overrightarrow{AG}$, (d) $\overrightarrow{OG}$.
Hence show that G and H are concurrent.

2. (The diagonals of a rhombus bisect each other at right angles).
The diagram shows a parallelogram OABC with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$; AC and OB intersect at the point D such that $\overrightarrow{OD} = h\overrightarrow{OB}$ and $\overrightarrow{AD} = k\overrightarrow{AC}$.



Show that $h = k = \frac{1}{2}$.
If the parallelogram is a rhombus, i.e. $|\mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{c}|$, show that AC is perpendicular to OB. (Hint: find $\overrightarrow{AC} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB}$).

3. (The medians of a triangle intersect at a point that is two-thirds of the way along each median measured from the vertex). (Method one).
OAB is a triangle with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = \mathbf{b}$; C is the mid-point of OB, D is the mid-point of AB and E is the mid-point of OA.
(a) If F is a point on OD such that $\overrightarrow{OF} = \frac{2}{3}\overrightarrow{OD}$ find $\overrightarrow{OF}$ in terms of **a** and **b**.
(b) If G is a point on AC such that $\overrightarrow{AG} = \frac{2}{3}\overrightarrow{AC}$ find $\overrightarrow{OG}$ in terms of **a** and **b**.
(c) If H is a point on EB such that $\overrightarrow{BH} = \frac{2}{3}\overrightarrow{BE}$, find $\overrightarrow{OH}$ in terms of **a** and **b**.
(d) Hence show that F, G, and H are concurrent.

4. (The medians of a triangle intersect at a point that is two-thirds of the way along each median measured from the vertex). (Method 2).
OAB is a triangle with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = \mathbf{b}$; C is the mid-point of OB, D is the mid-point of AB and E is the mid-point of OA; OD and AC intersect at F.
If $\overrightarrow{AF} = h\overrightarrow{AC}$ and $\overrightarrow{OF} = k\overrightarrow{OD}$ show that:
(a) $h = k = \frac{2}{3}$,
(b) B, F and E are collinear with $\overrightarrow{BF} = \frac{2}{3}\overrightarrow{BE}$.

5. (Cosine rule and Pythagoras' theorem).
OAB is a triangle and θ is the angle between $\overrightarrow{OA}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB}$.
(a) By finding $\overrightarrow{AB} \cdot \overrightarrow{AB}$ show that $AB^2 = OA^2 + OB^2 - 2(OA)(OB)\cos\theta$
(b) If triangle OAB is right-angled at O show that $AB^2 = OA^2 + OB^2$

6. (If a straight line is drawn parallel to one side of a triangle, it divides the other two sides in the same ratio).
In the triangle OAB, a line is drawn parallel to AB, cutting OA at C and OB at D.
If $\overrightarrow{CD} = \lambda\overrightarrow{AB}$, $\overrightarrow{OC} = h\overrightarrow{OA}$ and $\overrightarrow{OD} = k\overrightarrow{OB}$, show that $h = k = \lambda$.

7. (The angle in a semicircle is a right angle).
AB is the diameter of a circle centre O; C is a point on the circumference of the circle.
If $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$ prove that angle $A\hat{C}B$ is a right angle.

8. (Apollonius' theorem: the sum of the squares on two sides of a triangle is equal to twice the square on half the third side plus twice the square on the median which bisects the third side).
OAB is a triangle and point C is the mid-point of AB. Show that:
(a) $4\overrightarrow{OC} \cdot \overrightarrow{OC} = OA^2 + OB^2 + 2\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB}$
(b) $4\overrightarrow{AC} \cdot \overrightarrow{AC} = OA^2 + OB^2 - 2\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB}$
(c) $2OC^2 + 2AC^2 = OA^2 + OB^2$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2.5 The vector equation of a straight line

A straight line is uniquely defined if we are given the position of one point that lies on the line and the direction of the line. In terms of vectors this means that a line is defined if we know:

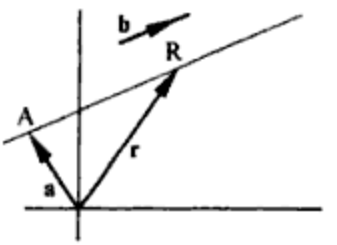
(i) a vector that is parallel to the line,

and (ii) the position vector of a point on the line.

Consider the line which passes through a point A, position vector **a**, and is parallel to a vector **b**.

To find the vector equation of this line, we consider some general point R on the line.

Suppose that R has position vector **r**.



$\overrightarrow{AR}$ is parallel to **b**. Thus $\overrightarrow{AR} = \lambda\mathbf{b}$

but $\overrightarrow{AR} = -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{r}$

$\therefore \quad -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{r} = \lambda\mathbf{b}$

or $\quad \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$

The equation $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$ is the vector equation for a line that is parallel to a vector **b** and which passes through a point with position vector **a**. The position vector **r** of *any* point lying on the line will satisfy this equation.

Example 17

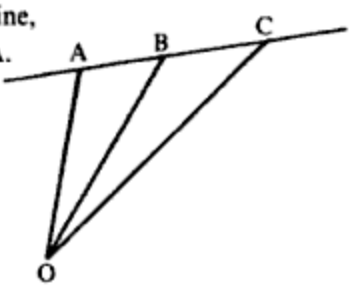
Find the vector equation of the straight line that is parallel to the vector $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and which passes through the point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$.

The vector equation is $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$ where **r** is the position vector of some general point on the line and λ is a scalar.

Example 18

Find the vector equation of the straight line that passes through the points A, B and C given that the position vectors of A, B and C are $\begin{pmatrix}-1\\1\end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix}2\\7\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}3\\9\end{pmatrix}$ respectively.

To obtain the vector equation, we need a vector that is parallel to the line, for example $\overrightarrow{BC}$, and the position vector of one point on the line, say A. Thus the vector equation of the line is



$$\mathbf{r} = \overrightarrow{OA} + \lambda\overrightarrow{BC}$$

but $\overrightarrow{OA} = \begin{pmatrix}-1\\1\end{pmatrix}$ and $\overrightarrow{BC} = -\begin{pmatrix}2\\7\end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix}3\\9\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}1\\2\end{pmatrix}$

Thus the required vector equation is $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}-1\\1\end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix}1\\2\end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

It should be noticed in Example 18 that $\mathbf{r} = \overrightarrow{OB} + \lambda\overrightarrow{BC}$, $\mathbf{r} = \overrightarrow{OC} + \lambda\overrightarrow{BA}$, $\mathbf{r} = \overrightarrow{OB} + \lambda\overrightarrow{AC}$, etc. would all have given vector equations of the line. Although each equation might appear different, each would give the position vector of any point on the line by the substitution of a suitable value for λ.

Example 19

Show that the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ lies on the line L, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$.

The position vector of any point on a line must satisfy the equation of the line.
Thus if $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ lies on L, there must exist some value of λ such that:

$$\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$$

Equating coefficients of $\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{j}$ gives $1 = 4 + \lambda$ and $2 = -1 - \lambda$ respectively.
The first of these two equations gives $\lambda = -3$ which is consistent with $2 = -1 - \lambda$.
Thus the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ does lie on the line L.

Example 20

Find the position vector of the point of intersection of the lines L_1 and L_2 given that L_1 and L_2 have vector equations $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$ and $\mathbf{r} = 6\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j})$ respectively.

If the required point has position vector $\mathbf{p}$, then this must satisfy the vector equations of both lines

i.e. $\quad \mathbf{p} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$

and $\quad \mathbf{p} = 6\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j})$

$\therefore \quad 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}) = 6\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j})$

Thus, equating coefficients: $2 + \lambda = 6 + \mu$ and $1 + 3\lambda = -1 - 4\mu$
Solving these equations simultaneously gives $\lambda = 2$ and $\mu = -2$ and hence $\mathbf{p} = 4\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$.
The given lines intersect at the point with position vector $4\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$.

Example 21

Find the vector equation of the straight line that passes through the point with position vector $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and which is perpendicular to the line $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j})$.

The given line is parallel to the vector $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$. If the required line is parallel to a vector $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$, it follows that

$$(a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}) \cdot (\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}) = 0 \quad \text{(for the 2 lines to be perpendicular)}$$

so $\quad a - 2b = 0$

hence $\quad a = 2b$

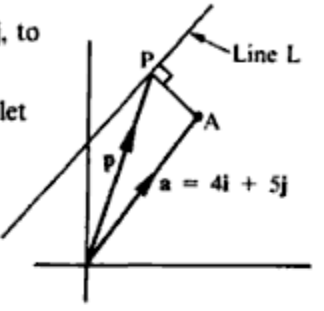
The required line will therefore be parallel to any vector of the form $b(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$.
Taking $2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ as one such vector, the required vector equation will be:

$$\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}).$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 22

Find the perpendicular distance from the point A, position vector $4\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$, to the line L, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = -3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$.



Let P be the point where the perpendicular from A meets the line L, and let P have position vector $\mathbf{p}$. (See diagram on right).
If the value of λ at P is λ_1 then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{p} &= -3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda_1(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) \\ &= (-3 + \lambda_1)\mathbf{i} + (1 + 2\lambda_1)\mathbf{j} \end{aligned}$$

but

$$\begin{aligned} \overrightarrow{AP} &= -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{p} \\ &= -(4\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}) + (-3 + \lambda_1)\mathbf{i} + (1 + 2\lambda_1)\mathbf{j} \\ &= (-7 + \lambda_1)\mathbf{i} + (-4 + 2\lambda_1)\mathbf{j} \end{aligned}$$

But $\overrightarrow{AP}$ is perpendicular to L and is therefore perpendicular to the vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$.

So $\quad [(-7 + \lambda_1)\mathbf{i} + (-4 + 2\lambda_1)\mathbf{j}] \cdot [\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}] = 0$

i.e. $\quad -7 + \lambda_1 - 8 + 4\lambda_1 = 0$

giving $\quad \lambda_1 = 3$

$\therefore \quad \overrightarrow{AP} = -4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$

and $\quad |\overrightarrow{AP}| = \sqrt{(4^2 + 2^2)} = 2\sqrt{5}$ units

The perpendicular distance from the point A to the line L is $2\sqrt{5}$ units.

Exercise 2E

1. State the vector equation of the straight line which is parallel to $2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$ and which passes through the point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.
2. State the vector equation of the straight line which passes through the point A, position vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, and which is parallel to $4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.
3. State the vector equation of the straight line which passes through the point B, position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$, and which is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.
4. State the vector equation of the straight line which is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ and which passes through the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.
5. Find the vector that is parallel to the line $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$ and is of magnitude $5\sqrt{5}$ units.
6. Find the two vectors that are perpendicular to the line $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j})$ and are of magnitude 5 units.
7. Show that the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ lies on the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$.
8. Points A, B and C have position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively.

   Find which of these points lie on the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$.
9. Points D, E and F have position vectors $5\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Find which of these points lie on the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(-\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

10. If the point A, position vector $a\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, lies on the line L, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$, find the value of a.

11. Points A and B have position vectors $3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ and $4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ respectively.
Find: (a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ in the form $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$
(b) the vector equation of the straight line that passes through A and B.

12. For each of the following pairs of lines, state whether the lines are parallel and, for those that are not, find the position vector of their point of intersection.
(a) $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$, $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$
(b) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$, $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$
(c) $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + \lambda(-\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$, $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j})$
(d) $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$, $\mathbf{r} = 5\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mu(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$

13. Show that the lines L_1, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$, and L_2, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$, are perpendicular and find the position vector of their point of intersection.

14. Find the acute angle between the lines with vector equations $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$ and $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$, giving your answer to the nearest degree.

15. The lines L_1 and L_2 have vector equations $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda(\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b})$ and $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{a} + \mu(-\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b})$ respectively. Given that the lines lie in the same plane and are not parallel, find the position vector of their point of intersection in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

16. The lines L_1 and L_2 intersect at A and the lines L_1 and L_3 intersect at B. Find $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $|\overrightarrow{AB}|$ given that L_1, L_2 and L_3 have vector equations as follows:
L_1: $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$
L_2: $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + \mu(5\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$
L_3: $\mathbf{r} = 4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \eta(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$

17. For each of the following parts, find the perpendicular distance from the given point to the given line:
(a) the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$ and the line $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$
(b) the point with position vector $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and the line $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j})$
(c) the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and the line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.

Exercise 2F Examination questions

1. (a) E is the centre of the rectangle ABCD and $\overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{a}$, $\overrightarrow{BC} = \mathbf{b}$.
Express in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ the vectors:
(i) $\overrightarrow{AC}$ (ii) $\overrightarrow{CD}$ (iii) $\overrightarrow{BD}$ (iv) $\overrightarrow{EB}$ (v) $\overrightarrow{EA}$.
(b) The position vectors of P and Q are $5\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ respectively referred to an origin $O\mathbf{i} + O\mathbf{j}$.
Calculate: (i) the position vector of P relative to Q and hence the magnitude of $\overrightarrow{PQ}$;
(ii) the magnitude of $2\overrightarrow{OP} - 4\overrightarrow{OQ}$. (S.U.J.B)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2. The position vectors of three points A, B and C relative to an origin O are $\mathbf{p}$, $3\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{p}$, and $9\mathbf{q} - 5\mathbf{p}$ respectively.
Show that the points A, B and C lie on the same straight line, and state the ratio AB:BC.
Given that OBCD is a parallelogram and that E is the point such that $\mathbf{DB} = \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{DE}$, find the position vectors of D and E relative to O.
(Cambridge)

3. Given that $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$, $\overrightarrow{OB} = \mathbf{b}$, $\overrightarrow{OP} = \frac{4}{3}\overrightarrow{OA}$ and that Q is the midpoint of AB, express $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.
PQ is produced to meet OB produced at R, so that $\overrightarrow{QR} = n\overrightarrow{PQ}$ and $\overrightarrow{BR} = k\mathbf{b}$. Express $\overrightarrow{QR}$ (i) in terms of n, $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$,
(ii) in terms of k, $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.
Hence find the value of n and of k. (Cambridge)

4. The points A, B and C have position vectors $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{c}$ respectively referred to an origin O.
(a) Given that the point X lies on AB produced so that AB:BX = 2:1, find $\mathbf{x}$, the position vector of X, in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.
(b) If Y lies on BC, between B and C so that BY:YC = 1:3, find $\mathbf{y}$, the position vector of Y, in terms of $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{c}$.
(c) Given that Z is the mid-point of AC, show that X, Y and Z are collinear.
(d) Calculate XY:YZ. (London)

5. Given that $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 22 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix}$, find:
(i) a unit vector perpendicular to $\mathbf{a}$,
(ii) the value of the constants m and n for which $m\mathbf{a} + n\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$.
Evaluate the scalar product of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ and hence find the cosine of the angle between the direction of $\mathbf{a}$ and the direction of $\mathbf{b}$. (Cambridge)

6. The position vectors of the points A and B with respect to the origin O are $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and $-\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Find the position vector of the point C such that $\overrightarrow{AC} = 2\overrightarrow{AB}$.
Calculate the angle between the vectors $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB}$. (A.E.B.)

7. The position vectors of points A, B, C relative to an origin O are $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively.
Write down the vectors representing $\overrightarrow{AB}$, $\overrightarrow{AC}$ and $\overrightarrow{BC}$.
Use vector methods to calculate: (i) $B\hat{A}C$,
(ii) $A\hat{B}C$.
State the special property of $\triangle ABC$ and deduce its area. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. (a) Show that if $(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) = 0$ then $|\mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{b}|$.
Give a geometrical example of this fact.

(b) The diagonals AC, BD of a quadrilateral ABCD bisect each other and are represented by the vectors $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ and $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Determine, *without scale drawing*, the shape of the quadrilateral ABCD. (A.E.B)

9. The position vectors of A and B relative to an origin O are $\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$ respectively where $q \neq 0$.

(a) Find an equation connecting p, q and r in each of the cases
(i) O, A, B are collinear,
(ii) $|\overrightarrow{OB}| = |\overrightarrow{AB}|$.

(b) Use the scalar product of two vectors to obtain an expression for $\cos A\hat{O}B$ in terms of p, q and r. (Cambridge)

10. Find the position vector of the point of intersection, P, of the line with equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + s\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and the line joining the points with position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the distance between P and the origin.

(A.E.B.)

11. The position vectors of the points A and B with respect to the origin O are $2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $6\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$ respectively.

(a) Find a vector equation for the line AB, and show that this line passes through the point with position vector $14\mathbf{i} + 13\mathbf{j}$.

(b) The position vector of the point C is $3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j}$. Find a vector equation for the line OC, and show that OC is at right angles to AB.

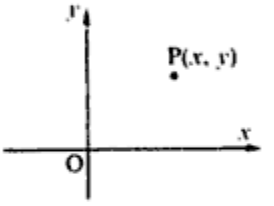
(c) Find the position vector of the point of intersection of OC and AB, and hence find the perpendicular distance from O to AB. (A.E.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3
Coordinate geometry I

Coordinate geometry is the study of the geometric properties of points, straight lines and curves using algebraic methods. From earlier work the reader is familiar with the idea of a point P in a plane being defined by stating the perpendicular distances from P to two axes. The point P has coordinates (x, y) or, in vector terms P has position vector $\overrightarrow{OP} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ or $x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j}$, where O is the origin.

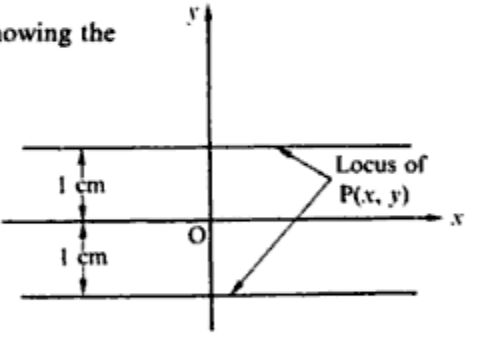
3.1 Loci



Consider the x–y plane, i.e. the plane containing the coordinate axes Ox and Oy. If P(x, y) is a point whose position is fixed by some law, then the set of all such points obeying the law is said to be the **locus** of P.

Example 1

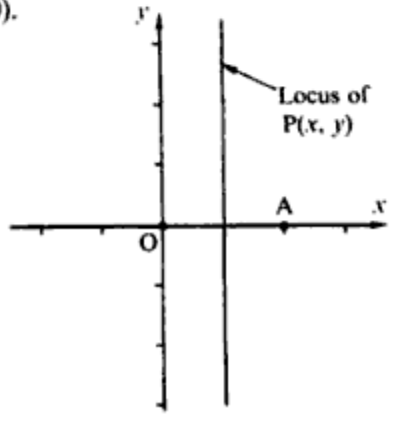
The point P(x, y) is 1 cm from the x-axis. Draw a diagram showing the locus of P.



The set of all such points P(x, y) would together form two lines, one on each side of the x-axis and 1 cm from it.

Example 2

The point P(x, y) is equidistant from the origin and the point A(2, 0). Draw a diagram showing the locus of P.

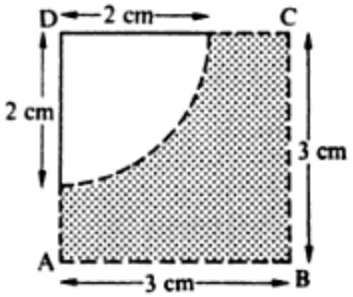


The set of all points P(x, y) that are equidistant from the origin and the point A(2, 0) would together form a line, perpendicular to the x-axis and passing through the point (1, 0). i.e. the locus is the perpendicular bisector of OA.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 3

ABCD is a square of side 3 cm. The point P(x, y) lies inside the square but is more than 2 cm from D.
Draw a diagram showing ABCD and the locus of P.



The set of all points P(x, y) will form the shaded area shown in the diagram. Notice that broken lines are used for the boundary of the area as the locus does not include these boundary lines.

Exercise 3A

1. A point P(x, y) is 2 cm from the origin O. Draw a diagram showing O and the locus of P
2. Point P(x, y) is more than 2 cm but less than 3 cm away from the origin O. Draw a diagram showing O and the locus of P.
3. A point P(x, y) is equidistant from the point A(1, 0) and B(0, 1). Draw a diagram showing A, B and the locus of P.

In questions **4** to **7**, assume that the points A, B, C and D lie in the x–y plane.

4. AB is a straight line of length 3 cm. Draw a diagram showing the line AB and the locus of the point P(x, y) given that P is a distance of 2 cm from the nearest point on AB.
5. AB is a straight line of length 4 cm and point P(x, y) is such that triangle PAB has an area of 6 cm. Explain in words the locus of P.
6. ABCD is a square of side 1 cm. P(x, y) is a point that is 2 cm from the nearest point on the perimeter of ABCD. Draw a diagram showing ABCD and the locus of P.
7. ABCD is a square of side 3 cm. P(x, y) is a point that is 1 cm from the nearest point on the perimeter of ABCD. Draw a diagram showing ABCD and the locus of P.

In the remainder of this chapter we shall obtain certain useful results regarding pairs of points and straight lines lying in the x–y plane.

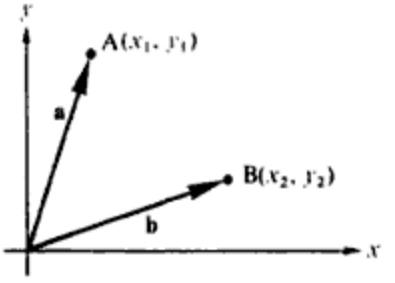
3.2 Distance between two points

The length of the line joining the point A(x_1, y_1) to B(x_2, y_2) is given by $\sqrt{[(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2]}$

Proof: If A and B have coordinates (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) respectively, it follows that

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ where } \mathbf{a} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} \text{ are the position vectors of A and B.}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material



But $\overrightarrow{AB} = -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$

$$= \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_2 - x_1 \\ y_2 - y_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, by Pythagoras' theorem,

$|AB| = \sqrt{[(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2]}$ as required.

Example 4

Find the length of the line joining P(5, 1) to Q(9, −3).

Using the above result
$$\begin{aligned} PQ^2 &= (x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 \\ &= (9 - 5)^2 + (-3 - 1)^2 \\ &= 16 + 16 \\ &= 32 \\ \therefore\ PQ &= \sqrt{32} \quad \text{or} \quad 4\sqrt{2} \end{aligned}$$

The length of PQ is $4\sqrt{2}$ units.

Example 5

The points A, B and C have coordinates (2, 1), (7, 3) and (5, k) respectively. If AB and BC are of equal length, find the possible values of k.

$$\begin{aligned} AB^2 &= (7 - 2)^2 + (3 - 1)^2 \\ &= 25 + 4 \\ &= 29 \end{aligned} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{aligned} BC^2 &= (5 - 7)^2 + (k - 3)^2 \\ &= 4 + k^2 - 6k + 9 \\ &= k^2 - 6k + 13 \end{aligned}$$

Since AB = BC then $AB^2 = BC^2$

i.e. $29 = k^2 - 6k + 13$

$0 = k^2 - 6k - 16$

giving $k = 8$ or -2

The possible values of k are 8 and −2.

Exercise 3B

1. Find the lengths of the straight lines joining each of the following pairs of points:
   (a) (1, 3) and (4, 7) (b) (1, 8) and (7, 0)
   (c) (4, 0) and (−3, 0) (d) (1, 5) and (−2, 1)
   (e) (−3, −4) and (2, 8) (f) (1, 2) and (5, 3)
   (g) (1, 1) and (2, −1) (h) (3, 3) and (5, 7)
   (i) (3, 3) and (5, −1) (j) (−1, 0) and (2, 3)
   (k) (7, −3) and (1, −1) (l) (−7, −1) and (−1, −4)
2. Find the length of the line AB where A is the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and B has position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$.
3. Find the length of the line CD where C is the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and D has position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. The three points A, B and C have coordinates (1, 0), (4, 4) and (13, 5) respectively. By how many units does the length of AC exceed the length of AB?
5. A triangle has vertices at (0, 1), (1, 6) and (5, 2). Prove that the triangle is isosceles.
6. Find the lengths of the sides of the triangle with vertices at A(1, 1), B(4, 5) and C(9, −5). Hence prove that the triangle is right-angled, and state which angle, $\hat{A}$, $\hat{B}$ or $\hat{C}$ is the right angle.
7. Find the lengths of the sides of the triangle with vertices at A(2, 7), B(4, 3) and C(10, 6). Hence prove that the triangle is right-angled, and state which angle, $\hat{A}$, $\hat{B}$ or $\hat{C}$ is the right angle.
8. The points A and B have coordinates (1, 1) and (5, −1) respectively. Find, by calculation, which one of the points C(3, 3), D(5, 4) or E(3, −2) lies on the perpendicular bisector of AB.
9. Point A has coordinates (3, 2) and point B has coordinates (9, −4). Find, by calculation, which one of the points C(4, −3), D(10, 3) or E(5, −1) does not lie on the perpendicular bisector of AB.
10. The three points O, A and B have coordinates (0, 0), (a, 7) and (8, 1) respectively. If OA and OB are of equal length, calculate the two possible values of a.
11. The three points D, E and F have coordinates (2, 2) (7, e) and (9, 3) respectively. If DE and DF are of equal length, find the two possible values of e.
12. The three points G(4, 0), H(h, 6) and I(7, 1) are such that GH is twice as long as GI. Calculate the two possible values of h.

3.3 Mid-point of a line joining two points

The mid-point of the line joining $A(x_1, y_1)$ to $B(x_2, y_2)$ has coordinates $\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$

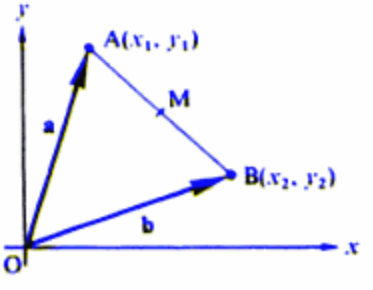
Proof: If A and B have coordinates (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) respectively, it follows that

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ where } \mathbf{a} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} \text{ are the position vectors of A and B.}$$

Let M be the mid-point of AB

$$\begin{aligned} \overrightarrow{OM} &= \overrightarrow{OA} + \tfrac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{AB} \\ &= \mathbf{a} + \tfrac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left[\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix}\right] = \left[\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2}(x_1 + x_2) \\ \frac{1}{2}(y_1 + y_2) \end{pmatrix}\right] \end{aligned}$$

Thus M has coordinates $\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$ as required.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 6

Find the coordinates of the mid-point of the straight lines joining the following pairs of points:
(a) (3, 7) and (5, 9) (b) (−2, 5) and (8, −1)

(a) Mid-point of line joining (3, 7) and (5, 9) has coordinates $\left(\frac{3+5}{2}, \frac{7+9}{2}\right)$.
Coordinates of mid-point are (4, 8).

(b) Mid-point of line joining (−2, 5) and (8, −1) has coordinates $\left(\frac{-2+8}{2}, \frac{5+(-1)}{2}\right)$.
Coordinates of mid-point are (3, 2).

Example 7

The points P(4, −3), Q(−3, 4), R(−2, 7) and S are the vertices of a parallelogram PQRS. Find (a) the coordinates of the mid-point of the diagonal PR, (b) the coordinates of S.

(a) If M is the mid-point of the line joining P(4, −3) to R(−2, 7), M has the coordinates

$$\left(\frac{4+(-2)}{2}, \frac{(-3)+7}{2}\right) = (1, 2)$$

Mid-point of PR is the point with coordinates (1, 2)

(b) Since the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other, M(1, 2) is also the mid-point of QS.
Suppose the coordinates of S are (x, y),

then $(1, 2) = \left(\frac{-3+x}{2}, \frac{4+y}{2}\right)$

i.e. $1 = \frac{-3+x}{2}$ and $2 = \frac{4+y}{2}$

$\therefore\ x = 5$ $\therefore\ y = 0.$

The coordinates of S are (5, 0).

In addition to finding the mid-point of a line joining two points it is also possible to determine the coordinates of a point dividing the line in any given ratio. This can either be done using position vectors (see example 10 page 55) or as shown below.

Example 8

Find the coordinates of the point P which divides the line joining A(3, 2) and B(5, 1) in the ratio −2:3.

(Remember that the different signs of the two numbers in the ratio implies that the point P divides AB *externally*, see page 55).

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

First sketch the situation, with the required point P having coordinates (x, y).

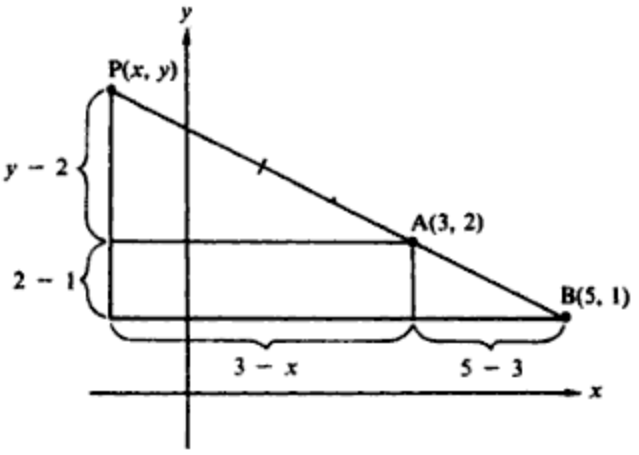
It then follows that $\dfrac{y-2}{2-1} = \dfrac{2}{1}$

giving $y = 4$

and $\dfrac{3-x}{5-3} = \dfrac{2}{1}$

giving $x = -1$

Thus the point P has coordinates $(-1, 4)$.



Exercise 3C

1. Find the coordinates of the mid-points of the straight lines joining each of the following pairs of points:
   (a) (3, 4) and (7, 10) (b) (2, 8) and (10, 4)
   (c) (0, 5) and (6, 3) (d) (4, 3) and (1, 5)
   (e) (−2, 1) and (6, 5) (f) (−3, 5) and (11, −3)
   (g) (−3, 8) and (−4, 0) (h) (−2, −1) and (5, 6)
   (i) (−3, −9) and (7, −1) (j) (−3, −9) and (−7, −1)
   (k) (−2, −6) and (−8, −5) (l) (−3, 4) and (−2, −1)
2. Find the position vector of the mid-point of the line joining two points whose position vectors are as follows:
   (a) $\begin{pmatrix}3\\5\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}1\\7\end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix}2\\-1\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}-6\\7\end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix}-2\\3\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}-4\\-1\end{pmatrix}$
   (d) $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and $4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ (e) $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $10\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ (f) $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$
3. M is the mid-point of the straight line joining point A(10, 4) to point B. If M has coordinates (7, 3), find the coordinates of B.
4. L(5, 1) is the mid-point of the straight line joining point C(p, −3) to point D(7, q). Find p and q.
5. Find the co-ordinates of the point E, if the point F(−4, 3) is the mid-point of the straight line joining E to G(−6, 10).
6. A triangle has vertices at A(2, 4), B(4, −2) and C(8, 12). L is the mid-point of AB and M is the mid-point of BC.
   Find: (a) the coordinates of point L,
   (b) the coordinates of point M,
   (c) the distance LM.
7. A triangle has vertices at A(9, 9), B(3, 2) and C(9, 4).
   Find: (a) the coordinates of M, the mid-point of BC,
   (b) the length of the median from A to M.
8. Find the lengths of the medians of the triangle that has vertices at A(0, 1), B(2, 7) and C(4, −1).
9. A(1, 1), B(6, 9), C(13, 7) and D are the vertices of the parallelogram ABCD.
   Find: (a) the coordinates of the mid-point of the diagonal AC,
   (b) the coordinates of the mid-point of the diagonal DB,
   (c) the coordinates of D.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

10. P(−1, 5), Q(8, 10), R(7, 5) and S are the vertices of the parallelogram PQRS. Calculate the coordinates of S.

11. Points A(2, 5), B(4, −1), C(0, −3) and D(−6, 3) form the quadrilateral ABCD. Points P, Q, R and S are the mid-points of AB, BC, CD and DA respectively.
(a) Find the coordinates of P, Q, R and S,
(b) prove that PQ is the same length as SR,
(c) prove that PS is the same length as QR.

12. Find the coordinates of the point that divides the line joining point K(6, 3) to point L(11, 5) in the ratio (a) 2:3, (b) −2:3.

13. Find the coordinates of the point that divides the line joining point M(2, 5) to point N(8, 9) in the ratio (a) 3:5, (b) −3:5.

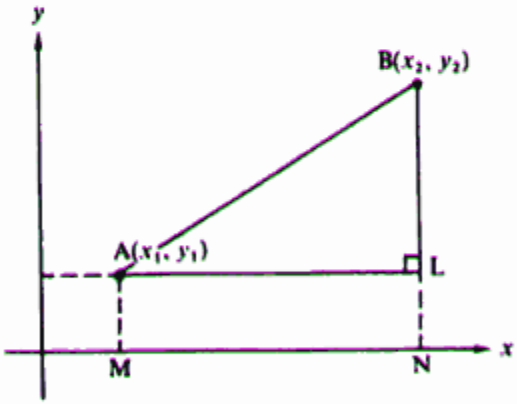
14. The points A, B, C and D have coordinates (−7, 9), (3, 4), (1, 12) and (−2, −9) respectively. Find the length of the line PQ where P divides AB in the ratio 2:3 and Q divides CD in the ratio 1:−4.

3.4 Gradient of a line joining two points

The gradient of the line joining the points $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$ is a measure of the steepness of the line AB and it is the ratio of the change in the y-coordinate to the change in the x-coordinate in going from A to B.

From the diagram

$$\frac{\text{change in } y\text{-coordinate from A to B}}{\text{change in } x\text{-coordinate from A to B}} = \frac{BL}{LA} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$



> Thus the gradient of the line joining $A(x_1, y_1)$ to $B(x_2, y_2)$ is $\dfrac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$

Note that $\dfrac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ could be written $\dfrac{y_1 - y_2}{x_1 - x_2}$ and the same answer would be obtained.
The point to notice is that the same suffix order is used in both the top and the bottom of the fraction.

Neither $\dfrac{y_2 - y_1}{x_1 - x_2}$ *nor* $\dfrac{y_1 - y_2}{x_2 - x_1}$ would give the correct answer.

Example 9

Find the gradient of the lines joining the following pairs of points:
(a) (4, 1) and (7, 3); (b) (2, −7) and (4, 3); (c) (2, 5) and (6, 1).

(a) (4, 1) and (7, 3)

$$\text{gradient} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{3 - 1}{7 - 4} = \tfrac{2}{3}$$

(b) (2, −7) and (4, 3)

$$\text{gradient} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{3 - (-7)}{4 - 2} = 5$$

(c) (2, 5) and (6, 1)

$$\text{gradient} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{1 - 5}{6 - 2} = -1$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

In (a) and (b) the gradient is found to be positive whereas in (c) the gradient is negative.
If the points are plotted, the significance of the negative gradient is seen.

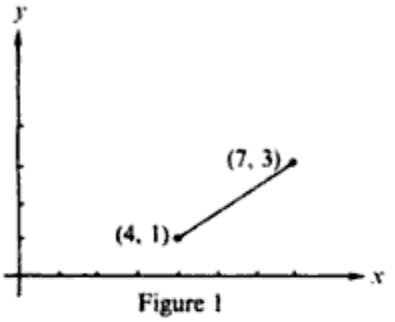


Figure 1

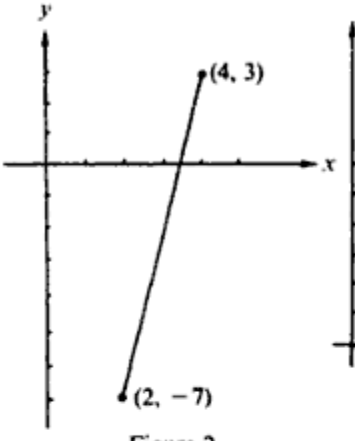


Figure 2

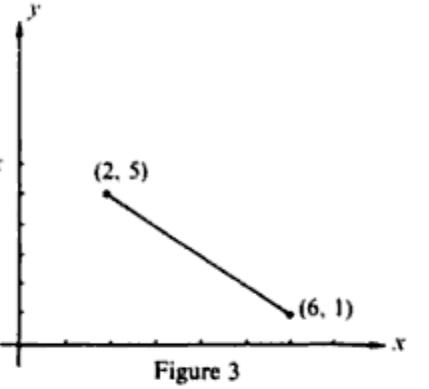


Figure 3

In figures 1 and 2, as we proceed along the line in the direction of increasing x, y also increases.
In figure 3 as we proceed along the line in the direction of increasing x, y decreases.

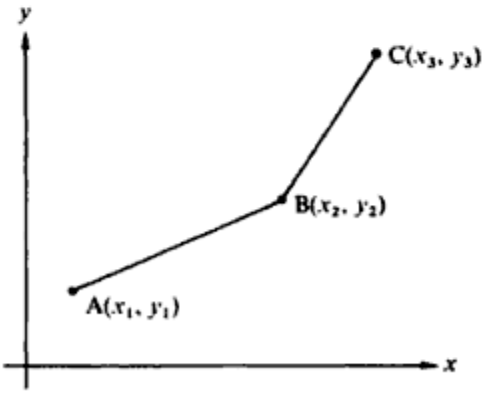
More simply: a positive gradient is associated with going 'uphill' as x increases,
and a negative gradient is associated with going 'downhill' as x increases.

Example 10

Determine whether the points A(−4, 3), B(−1, 5) and C(8, 11) are collinear.

$$\text{gradient of AB} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{5 - 3}{-1 - (-4)} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$\text{gradient of BC} = \frac{y_3 - y_2}{x_3 - x_2} = \frac{11 - 5}{8 - (-1)} = \frac{2}{3}$$



Since the gradient of AB = gradient of BC and B is a point common to the lines AB and BC, the points A, B and C are collinear.

Alternatively, vector methods could be used to show that $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is a scalar multiple of $\overrightarrow{BC}$, as in chapter 2.

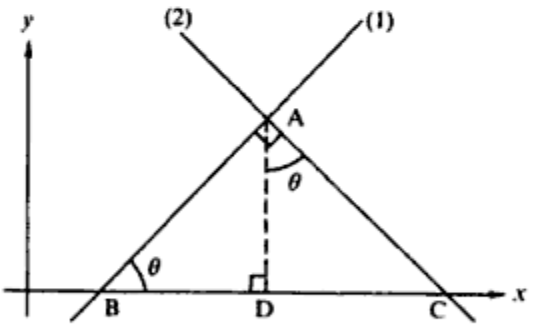
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 3D

1. Find the gradients of the straight lines joining each of the following pairs of points:
   (a) (3, 5) and (5, 9) (b) (3, 1) and (4, 8)
   (c) (3, 8) and (1, 2) (d) (2, 0) and (6, 1)
   (e) (2, 8) and (3, 4) (f) (6, 7) and (3, −2)
   (g) (3, 7) and (6, −2) (h) (2, 0) and (6, −1)
   (i) (5, −1) and (1, −3) (j) (−2, −2) and (0, 2)
   (k) (−1, −4) and (11, 4) (l) (−1, −1) and (7, −7)
2. For each of the parts (a) to (e), state whether the three given points are collinear.
   (a) (2, 3), (4, 4), (10, 7). (b) (2, 0), (3, 1), (8, 7).
   (c) (1, −3), (−1, 1), (−4, 7). (d) (2, −2), (−3, −5), (12, 4).
   (e) (5, 3), (6, 1), (10, −5).
3. If the straight line joining A(3, −5) to B(6, b) has a gradient of 4, find the value of b.
4. If the straight line joining C(c, 5) to D(−3, 2) has a gradient of $\frac{3}{4}$, find the value of c.
5. The three points A(a, −1), B(8, 1) and C(11, 2) are collinear. Find the value of a.
6. The points A(5, 2), B(1, 0), C(c, 5), D(−5, d) and E(e, −2) all lie on the same straight line. Find the values of c, d and e.

3.5 Parallel and perpendicular lines

The gradient of a line is a measure of its 'steepness'. Two parallel lines are equally steep so they will have equal gradients, but what about two perpendicular lines?



Suppose two straight lines (1) and (2) intersect at right angles at the point A and cut the x-axis at the points B and C respectively. If AD is the perpendicular from A to the x-axis and $A\hat{B}D = \theta$, it follows that $D\hat{A}C = \theta$.

Then gradient of line (1) $= \dfrac{AD}{DB} = \tan\theta$

gradient of line (2) $= -\dfrac{AD}{CD}$ (negative as 'downhill' for increasing x)

$$= \frac{-1}{CD/AD} = -\frac{1}{\tan\theta}$$

$\therefore$ gradient of line (1) × gradient of line (2) $= \tan\theta \times \left(\dfrac{-1}{\tan\theta}\right)$

$$= -1$$

> Thus, if two lines are parallel, they have equal gradients
> and if two lines are perpendicular, the product of their gradients is −1.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

This condition for perpendicular lines means that if one line has a gradient m, a perpendicular line will have gradient $-\frac{1}{m}$.

Thus, the following pairs of gradients all apply to pairs of perpendicular lines:
2 and $-\frac{1}{2}$, 3 and $-\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{2}{3}$ and $-\frac{3}{2}$, $\frac{3}{5}$ and $-\frac{5}{3}$.

Example 11

Given the points A(1, −1), B(5, 2), P(−1, 10), Q(−1, 3) and R(−9, −3), show that AB is parallel to QR and that BP is perpendicular to AB.

$$\text{gradient AB} = \frac{2-(-1)}{5-1} = \frac{3}{4} \qquad \text{gradient QR} = \frac{-3-3}{-9-(-1)} = \frac{-6}{-8} = \frac{3}{4} \qquad \text{gradient BP} = \frac{10-2}{-1-5} = \frac{8}{-6} = -\frac{4}{3}$$

Since gradient AB = gradient QR, AB and QR are parallel.
Since (gradient BP) × (gradient AB) = −1, BP is perpendicular to AB.

Example 12

The triangle P(−4, 3), Q(−1, 5), R(0, −3) is right-angled. Find which side is the hypotenuse.

$$\text{gradient PQ} = \frac{5-3}{-1-(-4)} = \frac{2}{3} \qquad \text{gradient QR} = \frac{-3-5}{0-(-1)} = -8 \qquad \text{gradient PR} = \frac{-3-3}{0-(-4)} = -\frac{3}{2}$$

(gradient PQ) × (gradient PR) = $\frac{2}{3} \times (-\frac{3}{2}) = -1$

Hence PQ is perpendicular to PR, so $Q\hat{P}R = 90°$ and QR is the hypotenuse.

Exercise 3E

1. Write down the gradient of a straight line that is perpendicular to a line of gradient:
   (a) 2 (b) 3 (c) −2 (d) $\frac{1}{2}$ (e) $-\frac{1}{2}$
   (f) $\frac{2}{3}$ (g) $\frac{3}{2}$ (h) $2\frac{1}{2}$ (i) 4 (j) $-\frac{3}{5}$
2. Using the points A(2, 4), B(8, 7), C(5, −2) and D(19, 5), prove that
   (a) AB is parallel to CD, (b) AC is perpendicular to CD.
3. The points A(6, 8), B(11, 9), C(7, −3) and D(4, 2) form the trapezium ABCD. Name the pair of sides that are parallel.
4. A triangle has vertices at A(2, 2), B(5, 7) and C(15, 1). Find the gradients of the lines AB, BC and AC. Hence show that the triangle is right-angled and state which angle, $\hat{A}$, $\hat{B}$ or $\hat{C}$ is the right angle.

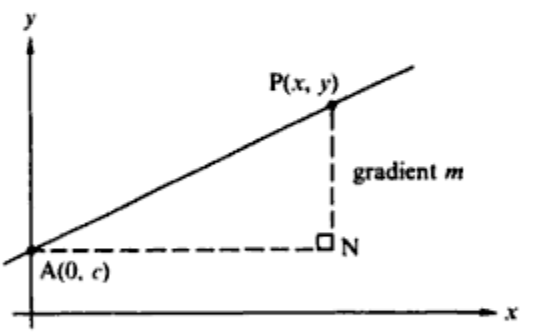
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

5. The line joining point A(a, 3) to point B(2, −3) is perpendicular to the line joining point C(10, 1) to point B. Find the value of a.
6. Points A(0, 3), B(4, 7) and C(10, 5) form the triangle ABC; L is the mid-point of AB and M is the mid-point of BC.
   Show that LM is parallel to AC.
7. A triangle has vertices at D(0, 2), E(8, 6) and F(2, f). If the triangle is right-angled at D, use gradients to find the value of f. What would your answer have been had the triangle been right-angled at F?
8. The points A(0, 2), B(8, 0) and C(5, c) form a triangle ABC, right-angled at C. By finding expressions for the gradients of AC and BC, find the two possible values of c.
9. Points A(3, 4), B(5, 0), C(−1, −3) and D(−3, 1) form a quadrilateral ABCD. Find (a) the gradients of the lines AB, BC, CD and DA,
   (b) the lengths of the lines AB and AD.
   Hence state what type of quadrilateral ABCD is.

3.6 The equation $y = mx + c$

In this chapter we have been discussing points, lines joining points and perpendicular lines, but we saw in chapter 1 that lines on a graph have equations associated with them. We now consider these equations in more detail.

Suppose the point P(x, y) is a point on the straight line which cuts the y-axis at the point A(0, c), and has gradient m.



The gradient of AP is m,

but AP has gradient $\dfrac{y - c}{x - 0}$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{y - c}{x - 0} = m$$

giving $y - c = mx$ and this is usually written $y = mx + c$.

This is the general **cartesian** equation of a straight line. The word cartesian is after René Descartes (1596–1650) the Frenchman who first developed the idea of using an ordered pair of coordinates (x, y) to specify a point in a plane relative to a pair of intersecting straight lines.

> All straight lines have equations which can be written in the form $y = mx + c$ where m is the gradient and (0, c) is the point at which the line cuts the y-axis.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 13

Find the gradient of the following straight lines, and in each case find the coordinates of the point where the line cuts the y-axis.
(a) $y = 3x + 4$ (b) $2y = 3x - 4$ (c) $x + 4y = 2$

(a) Comparing $y = mx + c$
and $y = 3x + 4$
gives $m = 3$ and $c = 4$

Gradient $= 3$ cutting y-axis at $(0, 4)$.

(b) To compare $y = mx + c$
and $2y = 3x - 4$
we write $y = \frac{3}{2}x - 2$
which gives $m = \frac{3}{2}$ and $c = -2$

Gradient $= \frac{3}{2}$ cutting y-axis at $(0, -2)$.

(c) To compare $y = mx + c$
and $x + 4y = 2$
we write $4y = 2 - x$
or $y = -\frac{1}{4}x + \frac{1}{2}$
which gives $m = -\frac{1}{4}$ and $c = \frac{1}{2}$

Gradient $= -\frac{1}{4}$ cutting y-axis at $(0, \frac{1}{2})$.

Note: Before comparing the given equation with $y = mx + c$, we must first rearrange the equation so that it is in the form $y = mx + c$. However this initial rearrangement is not necessary if we only require the coordinates of the points of intersection with the axes, as the following example shows.

Example 14

Find the point at which the line $3y - 12 = 4x$ cuts (a) the y-axis, (b) the x-axis. Hence sketch the line $3y - 12 = 4x$.

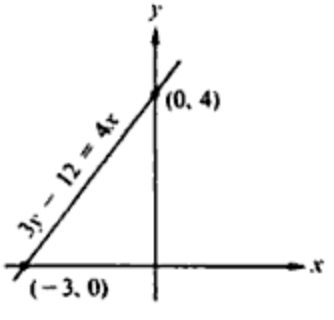
(a) Any point on the y-axis has x-coordinate equal to zero.
Substituting $x = 0$ into the equation of the line gives $3y - 12 = 0$
i.e. $y = 4$

The point on the y-axis is $(0, 4)$.

(b) Any point on the x-axis has y-coordinate equal to zero,
Substituting $y = 0$ into the equation of the line gives $-12 = 4x$
i.e. $x = -3$

The point on the x-axis is $(-3, 0)$.

To *sketch* the line, we do not need to make an accurate plot on graph paper. A sketch can be made on plain or lined paper and should show the essential characteristics of the line. For a straight line, a sketch can be made by knowing where the line cuts the axes. The sketch of $3y - 12 = 4x$ is shown on the right.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

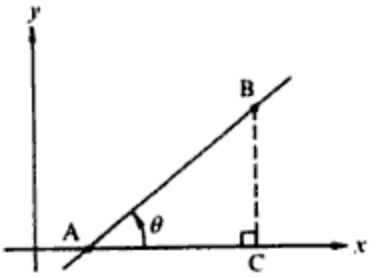
It is also possible to determine the gradient of a line knowing only the angle made with the direction of the positive x-axis.

Consider a line which cuts the x-axis at the point A. Suppose B is another point on the line; BC is drawn as shown in the diagram. Assuming the same scale is used on each axis,

the gradient of the line $= \dfrac{BC}{AC}$

$= \tan\theta$

Thus the gradient of the line is the tangent of the angle between the direction of the positive x-axis and the line, measured anticlockwise.

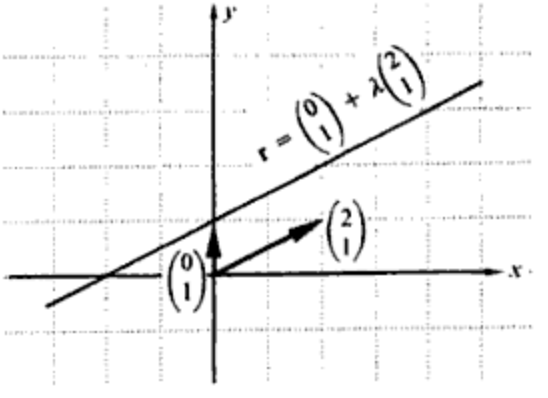


Note that by measuring the angle anticlockwise from the direction of the positive x-axis, we still obtain negative gradients for lines that are downhill for increasing x; for such lines, θ is obtuse and $\tan\theta$ is negative for $90° < \theta < 180°$.

It is important to realise that there is no conflict between the cartesian equation of a line and the idea of a vector equation of a line discussed in section 2.5. If a straight line is parallel to some vector **b** and passes through a point A having position vector **a**, the straight line has a vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$.

Consider the straight line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix}2\\1\end{pmatrix}$.

This line passes through the point having position vector $\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix}$ and is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix}2\\1\end{pmatrix}$.



To obtain the cartesian equation of this line, consider the general point P on the line having position vector $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}x\\y\end{pmatrix}$.

Thus $\quad \begin{pmatrix}x\\y\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix}2\\1\end{pmatrix}$

giving $\quad x = 0 + 2\lambda \quad \ldots [1]$

and $\quad y = 1 + \lambda \quad \ldots [2]$

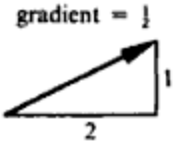
From [1] $\dfrac{x-0}{2} = \lambda$ and from [2] $\dfrac{y-1}{1} = \lambda$

Thus $\quad \dfrac{x-0}{2} = \dfrac{y-1}{1} \; (= \lambda)$.

$\therefore \quad x = 2(y-1)$

$\quad = 2y - 2 \quad$ or $\quad y = \frac{1}{2}x + 1$

Thus the line has gradient $\frac{1}{2}$ as we would expect for a line parallel to a vector $\begin{pmatrix}2\\1\end{pmatrix}$.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

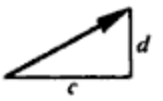
In general terms, the vector equation $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix}$ gives the

cartesian equation $\dfrac{x-a}{c} = \dfrac{y-b}{d}$ $(= \lambda)$.

rearranging gives $\qquad y = \dfrac{d}{c}x + \dfrac{(bc - ad)}{c}$

Thus the gradient of the line with vector equation $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix}$ is given

by $\dfrac{d}{c}$, again as we would expect for a line parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix}$:



Thus with the cartesian equation written in the form $\dfrac{x-a}{c} = \dfrac{y-b}{d}$ the

gradient, $\dfrac{d}{c}$, is obtained from the denominators.

Example 15

Find:

(a) the cartesian equation of the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

(b) the vector equation of the line with cartesian equation $\dfrac{x-3}{2} = \dfrac{y-1}{4}$

(c) the vector equation of the line with cartesian equation $2y = 3x - 1$.

(a) Considering the general position vector $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ gives $\quad x = 2 + \lambda$

and $\quad y = 3 - 2\lambda$

$\therefore \quad \dfrac{x-2}{1} = \dfrac{y-3}{-2} (= \lambda)$

i.e. $\quad y = -2x + 7$

(b) Letting $\dfrac{x-3}{2} = \dfrac{y-1}{4} = \lambda$ gives $\quad x = 3 + 2\lambda$

and $\quad y = 1 + 4\lambda$

i.e. $\quad \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

The vector equation of the line is $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$.

Alternatively one can simply remember that a cartesian equation of the form $\dfrac{x-a}{c} = \dfrac{y-b}{d}$ is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix}$ and passes through the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) We first rearrange $2y = 3x - 1$ into the form $\dfrac{x-a}{c} = \dfrac{y-b}{d}$ $(= \lambda)$.

If $\quad 2y = 3x - 1$

then $\quad 2y + 1 = 3x$

$$\frac{2y+1}{3} = x$$

$$\frac{y + \frac{1}{2}}{3} = \frac{x}{2} = \lambda$$

Thus $\quad x = 0 + 2\lambda$

and $\quad y = -\frac{1}{2} + 3\lambda$

Thus the vector equation of the line is $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ ... [1]

Alternatively, we could say that, as $2y = 3x - 1$ has gradient $\frac{3}{2}$, the line is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ shown on the right. Then, choosing one point on the line, say (1, 1), we obtain the vector equation

$$\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \ldots [2]$$

It is not immediately obvious the equations [1] and [2] represent the same line but each equation does give the position vector of any point on the line by a suitable choice of λ.

By writing the λ in equation [1] as $(\lambda + \frac{1}{2})$ we obtain equation [2].

$$\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} + (\lambda + \tfrac{1}{2}) \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Exercise 3F

1. Find the gradients of the following straight lines:

(a) $y = 3x + 2$ (b) $y = 5x + 4$ (c) $y = -3x + 1$

(d) $y = \frac{1}{2}x + 6$ (e) $y = -\frac{1}{3}x + 3$ (f) $y = 7 - 3x$

(g) $y = 5 + 2x$ (h) $2y = 4x + 3$ (i) $y - 2x = 4$

(j) $y - 3x + 1 = 0$ (k) $2y + 8x + 5 = 0$ (l) $2y - 3x = 7$

(m) $3x + y = 4$ (n) $\dfrac{y}{3} + \dfrac{x}{2} = 1$ (o) $\dfrac{x}{4} - \dfrac{2y}{3} = 1$

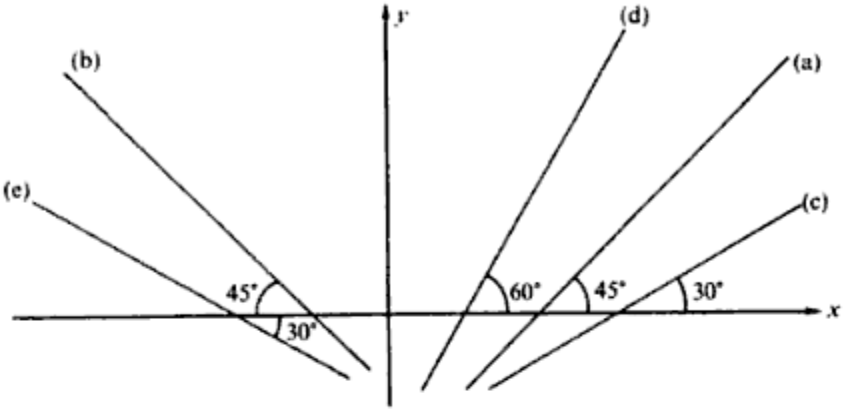
2. Find where the following straight lines cut the y-axis:

(a) $y = 2x + 3$ (b) $y - 3x = 4$

(c) $2y = 3x - 8$ (d) $3x + 4y - 12 = 0$

(e) $\dfrac{x}{3} + \dfrac{y}{2} = 1$ (f) $\dfrac{x}{4} - \dfrac{y}{3} = 1$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material



3. Find the gradients of each of the lines (a) to (e) shown on the graph. (Assume the same scale is used on each axis).
4. Find where the line $y = x - 2$ cuts: (a) the x-axis, (b) the y-axis. Hence sketch the line $y = x - 2$.
5. Find where the line $2y = 6 - 3x$ cuts: (a) the x-axis, (b) the y-axis. Hence sketch the line $2y = 6 - 3x$.
6. Which of the following lines are parallel to the line $y = 2x + 4$? (a) $y = 2x - 1$, (b) $2y = x + 3$, (c) $3y - 6x = 1$, (d) $2x + 3y = 4$.
7. Which of the following lines are perpendicular to the line $y = 2x + 4$? (a) $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 4$, (b) $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 7$, (c) $2y = 5 - x$, (d) $2y = x + 5$.
8. The line $y = ax + b$ is parallel to the line $y = 2x - 6$ and passes through the point $(-1, 7)$. Find the values of a and b.
9. The line $y = cx + d$ is perpendicular to the line $y + 2x = 4$ and cuts the line $y + x + 3 = 0$ on the y-axis. Find the values of c and d.
10. Find the cartesian equations of the lines whose vector equations are given below. Give your answers in the form $y = mx + c$.

    (a) $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

    (c) $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$ (d) $\mathbf{r} = 4\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$
11. Find the vector equations of the lines whose cartesian equations are given below:

    (a) $\dfrac{x - 2}{3} = \dfrac{y - 1}{4}$ (b) $\dfrac{x - 5}{1} = \dfrac{y + 3}{-4}$

    (c) $y = 2x + 3$ (d) $3y = 2x - 4$
12. Two straight lines L_1 and L_2 have equations $\dfrac{x - 1}{3} = \dfrac{y + 1}{-2}$ and $\dfrac{x - 4}{4} = \dfrac{y - 1}{6}$ respectively.

    (a) Express each equation in the form $y = mx + c$ and hence show that L_1 and L_2 are perpendicular.

    (b) Express each equation in the form $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$ and use the scalar product to show that L_1 and L_2 are perpendicular.

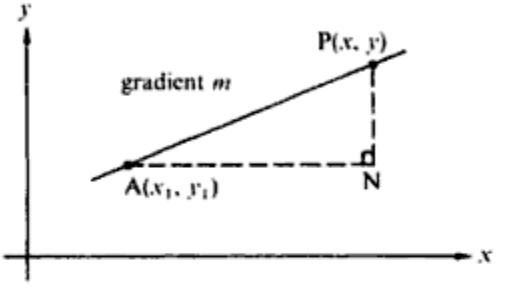
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3.7 Finding the cartesian equation of a straight line

In the last section we saw that we can find the gradient of a straight line and the value of its y-intercept from its cartesian equation.
This process can be reversed; it is possible to find the equation of a line given sufficient information about the line.

Equation of a line from its gradient m and a point (x_1, y_1) on it.

Consider a line having gradient m and passing through the point $A(x_1, y_1)$.
Suppose that $P(x, y)$ is any other point on the line.



Gradient of line $= m$

$$= \frac{PN}{NA}$$

$$= \frac{y - y_1}{x - x_1}$$

or the equation of the line is $\boxed{y - y_1 = m(x - x_1).}$

Example 16

Find the equation of the straight line that passes through $(-2, 3)$ and has gradient $\frac{4}{5}$.

Let $P(x, y)$ be any point on the line.

Use the equation $\quad y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$

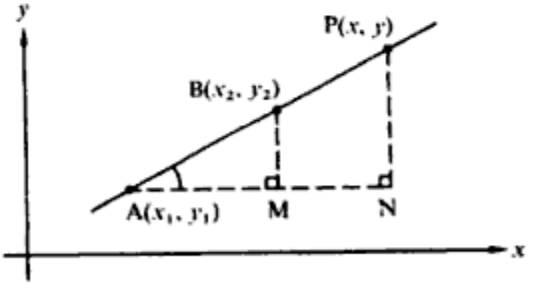
Substituting for x_1, y_1 and m gives: $\quad y - 3 = \frac{4}{5}[x - (-2)]$

$$5y - 15 = 4x + 8$$

So the required equation of the line is $\quad 5y = 4x + 23$

Equation of a line through $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$

Consider a line which passes through the points $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$ and suppose $P(x, y)$ is any other point on the line.



The gradient of AP is equal to the gradient of AB as ABP is a straight line.

$$\therefore \quad \frac{PN}{NA} = \frac{BM}{MA}$$

So $\boxed{\dfrac{y - y_1}{x - x_1} = \dfrac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}}$

This result is easily memorized as the two sides of the equation are both expressions for the gradient of the line.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 17

Find the equation of the straight line that passes through (3, −1) and (7, 2).

Let P(x, y) be any point on the line and using

$$\frac{y - y_1}{x - x_1} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

$$\frac{y - (-1)}{x - 3} = \frac{2 - (-1)}{7 - 3}$$

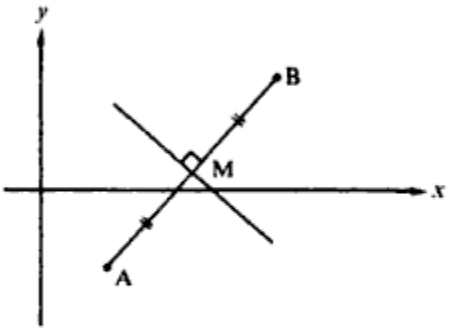
or $\quad 4(y + 1) = 3(x - 3)$

i.e. $\quad 4y = 3x - 13$ is the required equation of the line.

Example 18

Find the equation of the perpendicular bisector of the line joining the points A(2, −3) and B(6, 5).

We can find the coordinates of the mid-point of AB. The gradient of AB, and hence that of the perpendicular bisector, can also be found. Thus, knowing the gradient of the perpendicular bisector and one point on it, we can use $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$ to obtain the required equation.



Coordinates of M, the mid-point of AB are

$$\left(\frac{2 + 6}{2}, \frac{-3 + 5}{2}\right) = (4, 1)$$

$$\text{gradient of AB} = \frac{5 - (-3)}{6 - 2} = 2$$

$\therefore$ gradient of perpendicular bisector $= -\frac{1}{2}$

The required line has gradient $-\frac{1}{2}$ and passes through M(4, 1)

using $\quad y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$

$y - 1 = -\frac{1}{2}(x - 4)$

or $\quad 2y - 2 = -x + 4$

i.e. $\quad 2y = 6 - x$

The equation of the perpendicular bisector is $2y = 6 - x$.

Equation of a line given a law

As we saw in section 3.1, a locus is made up of a set of points which obey some law. We can find the equation of the locus by considering a point P(x, y) on the locus and using the law to derive an equation in x and y. This will be the equation of the locus.

Example 19

Find the equation of the locus of the points which are equidistant from A(3, −2) and B(−4, 1).

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Suppose P(x, y) is any point on the required locus.
Since P is equidistant from A and B,

$$\text{PA} = \text{PB and so PA}^2 = \text{PB}^2$$

$$\therefore \quad (x-3)^2 + (y-(-2))^2 = (x-(-4))^2 + (y-1)^2$$

$$\text{or} \quad (x-3)^2 + (y+2)^2 = (x+4)^2 + (y-1)^2$$

$$x^2 - 6x + 9 + y^2 + 4y + 4 = x^2 + 8x + 16 + y^2 - 2y + 1$$

which gives $\quad 3y = 7x + 2$

The required locus has equation $\quad 3y = 7x + 2.$

Note that this question could have been solved by finding the perpendicular bisector of AB, as in Example 18, since that is the required locus.

Exercise 3G

1. Find the equation of the straight line that:
   (a) passes through (1, 7) and has gradient 3,
   (b) passes through $(-1, -6)$ and has gradient 5,
   (c) passes through $(-1, 1)$ and has gradient 2,
   (d) passes through (4, 1) and is parallel to $2y = x - 3$,
   (e) passes through $(-2, 9)$ and is perpendicular to $2y = x - 3$.
2. Find the equation of the straight line that passes through:
   (a) (0, 4) and (3, 10) (b) (0, 7) and (7, 0)
   (c) (2, 1) and $(-2, -7)$ (d) $(6, -2)$ and (12, 1)
   (e) $(1, -2)$ and $(-1, 4)$.
3. Find the equation of the locus of the points that are equidistant from the points A(1, 1) and B(5, 3).
4. Find the equation of the locus of the points that are equidistant from the points C(2, 7) and D(8, 1).
5. If point E has coordinates (4, 1) and point F has coordinates (2, 7) find:
   (a) the coordinates of the mid-point of EF,
   (b) the gradient of EF,
   (c) the equation of the perpendicular bisector of EF.
6. Find the equation of the straight line that passes through the points L and M where L is the mid-point of the straight line joining $A(-1, 6)$ to B(5, 4) and M is the mid-point of the line joining $C(-5, -1)$ to $D(3, -1)$.
7. A triangle has vertices at A(0, 7), B(9, 4) and C(1, 0). Find:
   (a) the equation of the perpendicular from C to AB,
   (b) the equation of the straight line from A to the mid-point of BC.
8. Find the equations of the medians of the triangle with vertices at A(1, 0), B(5, 2) and C(1, 6).

3.8 Relationships shown as linear graphs

It is frequently desirable to illustrate the results of an experiment graphically. Suppose it is believed that a relationship of the form $P = aQ + b$ exists between the variable quantities P and Q where a and b are constants. By comparing $P = aQ + b$ with $y = mx + c$, we can see that plotting P on the vertical axis against Q on the horizontal axis will lead to a straight line

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

graph if the supposed relationship does exist. If experimental values are used, a close approximation to a straight line may be obtained. Furthermore, the gradient of the straight line will be a and the line will cut the vertical axis at $(0, b)$.

Other suspected relationships can be tested in a similar way. In each case, the relationship is compared with $y = mx + c$ to determine what to plot on the vertical y-axis and the horizontal x-axis. The following table shows some typical cases (a and b are constants in each case).

suspected relationship	plot on y-axis	plot on x-axis	gradient	intercept on vertical axis
$P = aQ^2 + b$	P	Q^2	a	$(0, b)$
$P = a + b\sqrt{Q}$	P	$\sqrt{Q}$	b	$(0, a)$
$P = \frac{a}{Q} + b$	P	$\frac{1}{Q}$	a	$(0, b)$
$P = aQ + bQ^2$	$\frac{P}{Q}$	Q	b	$(0, a)$

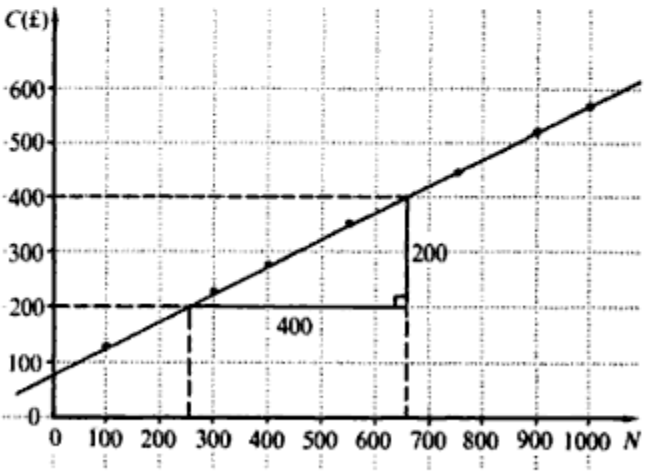
Example 20

The cost of producing various quantities of a particular article are shown in the table below.

Cost C	£125	£225	£275	£350	£450	£525	£575
Number of articles N	100	300	400	550	750	900	1000

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $C = aN + b$ exists and find the constants a and b.

If a relationship of the form $C = aN + b$ exists, plotting C against N should give a straight line graph. The gradient of the line will then be a and the intercept on the C-axis will be $(0, b)$.
The graph is shown on the right.



A straight line is obtained so the relationship is of the form $C = aN + b$
The line cuts the C-axis at 75, so $b = 75$.
By drawing a right-angled triangle, the gradient of this line is found to be $\frac{200}{400} = \frac{1}{2}$.
A relationship of the form $C = aN + b$ does exist with $a = \frac{1}{2}$ and $b = 75$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

In some cases the numbers involved may make it impractical to choose scales such that the axes, as drawn on the graph paper, intersect at the point (0, 0). In such cases the gradient can still be found as in example 20 but the intercept made with the axis is determined differently, as the next example shows.

Example 21

In an experiment, the two variables x and y were recorded and the following table obtained.

x	7	8	9	10	11	12
y	40	46	53	60	69	78

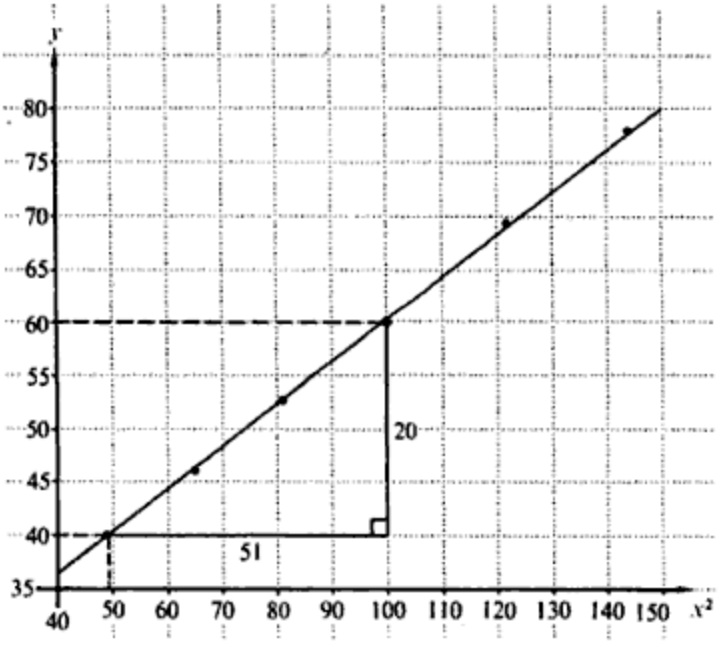
By plotting a suitable graph, show that the figures agree approximately with a relationship of the form $y = ax^2 + b$ and find the constants a and b.

Comparing $y = ax^2 + b$ with $y = mx + c$ we see that it is necessary to plot y against x^2. The table below shows values of x, y and x^2.

x	7	8	9	10	11	12
y	40	46	53	60	69	78
x^2	49	64	81	100	121	144

If a scale is chosen so that the axes cross at the origin, the scale will be unnecessarily small giving a less accurate answer.

The straight line graph below shows that the relationship is of the form $y = ax^2 + b$.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Obtain the gradient from the right-angled triangle.

gradient $= \frac{20}{51} \approx 0{\cdot}4$

Hence $a = 0{\cdot}4$

The value of b can be found by substituting any pair of values for y and x^2 together with $a = 0{\cdot}4$ in the equation, for example $y = 60$ and $x^2 = 100$.

$\therefore \quad 60 = 0{\cdot}4 \times 100 + b$

$\quad b = 60 - 40 = 20$

The relationship $y = ax^2 + b$ does exist; $a = 0{\cdot}4$, $b = 20$.

Exercise 3H

1. Some Celsius temperatures and the equivalent Fahrenheit temperatures are shown in the table below:

Celsius (C)	50	60	75	95	100	120
Fahrenheit (F)	122	140	167	203	212	248

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $F = aC + b$ exists and find the values of the constants a and b. Find the Fahrenheit temperature equivalent to
(a) 80°C, (b) 40°C, (c) −40°C.

2. The number of units of gas used in a quarter and the bill received for that quarter were noted for a number of households and the results tabulated:

Bill (B)	£26	£30	£36	£50	£74	£82
Number of units (N)	40	50	65	100	160	180

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $B = aN + b$ exists and find the values of the constants a and b. Find the quarterly bill for a household that uses 130 units in that quarter.

3. A scientific experiment was carried out to investigate how the electrical resistance of a given wire is dependent on the temperature of the wire. The resistance was measured at various temperatures and the results were tabulated:

Temperature T (°C)	17	28	32	43	47	52	62
Resistance R (ohms)	1·6	1·67	1·69	1·76	1·78	1·81	1·87

By plotting a suitable graph show that a relationship of the form $R = a + bT$ exists and find the resistance of the wire at 0°C.

4. In an experiment to test the volume-temperature law for gases, a certain mass of gas was heated under constant pressure. The volume of the gas at various temperatures was noted and the results are shown in the following table:

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Temperature T (°C)	11	19	41	52	60	86
Volume V (cm³)	104	107	115	119	122	131·5

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $V = aT + b$ exists and find approximate values for the constants a and b. Find the volume of this mass of gas when the temperature is (a) 0°C, (b) 30°C.

5. The force of wind resistance experienced by a particular car moving with velocity V was noted for various values of V and the results were tabulated:

Wind resistance R (in newtons)	26	60	122	135	180	270
Velocity V (in metres/second)	4	10	16	17	20	25

By plotting a suitable graph, show that the figures agree approximately with a relationship of the form $R = a + bV^2$ and find values for the constants a and b.
Find the wind resistance experienced by the car when moving with velocity 15 m/s.

6. In a particular experiment, the two variables x and y were noted and the results were tabulated.

x	1	1·5	2	3	4	6	8	10
y	6	5·2	4·8	4·4	4·2	4	3·9	3·84

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $y = \frac{a}{x} + b$ exists and find the values of the constants a and b.

7. An experiment involved noting the time period T of pendulums of various length l. The results were as follows:

Length l (cm)	20	30	45	50	75	100
Time Period T (secs)	0·90	1·10	1·35	1·42	1·74	2·01

It is suspected that these two quantities T and l are related by a rule of the form $T = a\sqrt{l}$ where a is a constant. Plot a suitable graph to show this to be the case.

8. In a particular experiment, the two variables x and y were noted and the results were tabulated as follows:

x	2	4	7	8	11	12
y	3	3·6	4·4	4·6	5·2	5·4

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

By plotting a suitable graph show that the figures agree approximately with a relationship of the form $y^2 = ax + b$ and find values for the constants a and b. Find the value of x when $y = 5$.

9. In a particular experiment, the two variables x and y were noted and the results were tabulated as follows.

x	1	1·5	2	4	5	6	10
y	43	23	16	9·3	8·4	8	7·4

By plotting a suitable graph, show that the figures agree approximately with a relationship of the form $y = \frac{a}{x^2} + b$ and find values for the constants a and b. Find the value of y when $x = 3$.

10. The sum of the first three even numbers is 12, of the first four even numbers is 20 and of the first seven is 56. These and other similar results are shown in the table below

The first n even numbers where n is:	3	4	7	11	12	15	20
The sum (S) of these first n even numbers	12	20	56	132	156	240	420

It is thought that S and n are related by the formula $S = an + bn^2$. By plotting a suitable graph, show that such a relationship does exist and find the values of the constants a and b. Find the sum of the first fifty even numbers.

3.9 Intersection of lines

Any point on a line has coordinates which will satisfy the equation of that line.

In order to find the point in which two lines intersect we have to find a point with coordinates which satisfy both equations. This is equivalent, from an algebraic point of view, to solving the equations of the lines simultaneously.

Example 22

Find the coordinates of the point in which the lines $x - 3y = 1$ and $2x = 5y + 3$ intersect.

Since the point of intersection satisfies both equations.

$x - 3y = 1$ i.e. $2x = 6y + 2$

and $2x = 5y + 3$ i.e. $2x = 5y + 3$

subtracting $0 = y - 1$ or $y = 1$

Substituting in one of the original equations

$x - 3 = 1$ or $x = 4$

Point of intersection is (4, 1)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

There are various methods which may be used to solve the equations simultaneously. Examples 23 and 24 demonstrate the method of substitution.

Intersection of straight line and curve

A straight line may intersect a curve at more than one point. Thus solving the equations of the line and the curve simultaneously could give more than one answer.

Example 23

The line $y - 2x + 3 = 0$ intersects the curve $y = x^2 - 2x$ at the points A and B. Find the coordinates of A and B.

The coordinates of the points of intersection satisfy both equations.

$$y - 2x + 3 = 0 \qquad \ldots [1]$$
$$y = x^2 - 2x \qquad \ldots [2]$$

Substitute for y from equation [2] into equation [1]:

$$x^2 - 2x - 2x + 3 = 0$$

or $\quad x^2 - 4x + 3 = 0$

$\therefore \quad (x - 3)(x - 1) = 0$

giving $\quad x = 3$ or 1

Substituting for x in equation [1]:

$y - 6 + 3 = 0$ or $y - 2 + 3 = 0$

i.e. $y = 3$ i.e. $y = -1$

The points of intersection are $(3, 3)$ and $(1, -1)$.

Example 24

Find the points at which the curves $y = 3x^2$ and $y = x^2 - 5x - 3$ intersect.

As before, the points of intersection are given by solving simultaneously the equations:

$$\begin{cases} y = 3x^2 & \ldots [1] \\ y = x^2 - 5x - 3 & \ldots [2] \end{cases}$$

Substituting for y from equation [1] into equation [2]

$$3x^2 = x^2 - 5x - 3$$

or $\quad 2x^2 + 5x + 3 = 0$

$\therefore \quad (2x + 3)(x + 1) = 0$

giving $\quad x = -\frac{3}{2}$ or -1

Substituting for x in equation [1]:

$$y = 3(-\tfrac{3}{2})^2 = \tfrac{27}{4} \quad \text{or} \quad y = 3(-1)^2 = 3$$

The points of intersection are $(-\frac{3}{2}, \frac{27}{4})$ and $(-1, 3)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 3I

1. Find the coordinates of the points where the following pairs of lines intersect:
   (a) $x + 2y = 2$ and $3x - 2y = 14$
   (b) $y + 2x = 5$ and $y = 3x - 5$
   (c) $y = 2x - 1$ and $y = x + 1$
   (d) $y = x + 2$ and $2y = 3x + 1$
   (e) $y = x^2$ and $y + 3x = 4$
   (f) $y = x^2 + 5x$ and $y - x = 12$
   (g) $y = x^2 - 4x + 4$ and $y = 2x - 1$
   (h) $y = x^2 + 1$ and $2y = 5x$
   (i) $y = x^2 + x - 1$ and $2y + 2 = x^2 + 6x$
   (j) $y = 4x^2 + 2x - 1$ and $y = x^2 - 3x + 1$
   (k) $y = x + 1$ and $xy = 6 - 2y$
   (l) $y = x - 3$ and $y + xy = 5$
2. (a) Find the coordinates of the point where the lines $2y - x = 2$ and $y + x = 7$ intersect.
   (b) Prove that the lines $2y - x = 2$, $y + x = 7$ and $y = 2x - 5$ are concurrent.
3. Prove that the three lines $y = 3x$, $y = x + 4$ and $y + 2x = 10$ are concurrent.
4. If the three lines $y = x + 4$, $2y + x = 2$ and $y = ax + 8$ are concurrent, find the value of a.
5. Explain why the lines $y = 2x - 3$ and $2y - 4x = 1$ do not intersect.
6. For each of the following pairs of lines, state whether they intersect or not: (a) $2y + x = 1$ and $4y = 1 - 2x$,
   (b) $x + y = 3$ and $y = x + 7$,
   (c) $y = 2x + 3$ and $2y = 5 + x$
7. Find the coordinates of the mid-point of the line AB where A and B are the points where the line $y = 2x + 4$ and the curve $y = x^2 - 4$ intersect.
8. The line $y = x + 5$ cuts the curve $y = x^2 - 3x$ at two points A and B. Find the coordinates of A and B and the length of the straight line joining these two points.
9. Find:
   (a) the equation of the straight line passing through the point (9, 4) and which is perpendicular to the line $y = 3x - 3$,
   (b) where this line cuts the line $y = 3x - 3$,
   (c) the perpendicular distance from (9, 4) to the line $y = 3x - 3$.
10. Find:
    (a) the equation of the perpendicular from (1, 8) to the line $4y = 3x + 4$,
    (b) the length of the perpendicular from (1, 8) to the line $4y = 3x + 4$.
11. The curves $y = 2x^2 - 3x$ and $y = x^2$ intersect at two points. Find the equation of the straight line joining these points.
12. Find the coordinates of the vertices of the triangle whose sides are given by the equations $y + x = 11$, $y = x - 1$ and $3y = x - 3$.
13. The line $y = ax - 1$ and the curve $y = x^2 + bx - 5$ intersect at the points P(4, -5) and Q. Find the values of a and b and the coordinates of Q.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

14. A triangle has vertices at A(0, 8), B(1, 1) and C(5, 3). Show that the triangle is isosceles and find:
(a) the equation of the straight line through A and C,
(b) the coordinates of the foot of the perpendicular from B to AC,
(c) the length of the perpendicular from B to AC.

Exercise 3J Examination questions

1. Three points have coordinates A(1, 7), B(7, 5), and C(0, −2).
Find: (i) the equation of the perpendicular bisector of AB,
(ii) the point of intersection of this perpendicular bisector and BC.
(Cambridge)

2. The perpendicular bisector of the line joining the points (1, 2) and (5, 4) meets the y-axis at the point $(0, k)$. Calculate k. (S.U.J.B.)

3. Given that the points (4, 2), (1, 6) and $(5, k)$ lie on a straight line, calculate the value of k.
The line meets the x- and y-axes at A and B, respectively. If O is the origin, calculate the lengths OA and OB, and the area of the triangle AOB.
(S.U.J.B.)

4. Three points have coordinates A(2, 9), B(4, 3) and C(2, −5). The line through C with gradient $\frac{1}{2}$ meets the line AB produced at D. Calculate
(i) the coordinates of D,
(ii) the equation of the line through D perpendicular to the line $5y - 4x = 17$.
(Cambridge)

5. Find the coordinates of the point C on the line joining the points A(−1, 2) and B(−9, 14) which divides AB internally so that $\frac{AC}{CB} = \frac{1}{3}$.
Find also the equation of the line through A which is perpendicular to AB. (London)

6. Prove, by calculation, that the triangle formed by the lines $x - 2y + 1 = 0$, $9x + 2y - 11 = 0$ and $7x + 6y - 53 = 0$ is isosceles. Calculate, to the nearest degree, the smallest angle of the triangle. (A.E.B.)

7. ABCD is a parallelogram in which the coordinates of A, B and C are (1, 2), (7, −1) and (−1, −2) respectively.
(i) Find the equations of AD and CD.
(ii) Find the coordinates of D.
(iii) Prove that $B\hat{A}C = 90°$.
(iv) Calculate the area of the parallelogram.
(v) Find the length of the perpendicular from A to BC, leaving your answer in surd form. (J.M.B.)

8. P and Q are the points of intersection of the line

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1, (a > 0, b > 0),$$

with the x- and y-axes respectively. The distance PQ is 10 and the gradient of PQ is −2. Find the value of a and of b. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9. A point P moves in such a way that its distance from the point (5, 3) is equal to twice its distance from the line $x = 2$. Find the equation of the locus of P. (J.M.B.)

10. Calculate the coordinates of the points of intersection of the straight line $x - y = 3$ and the curve $x^2 - 3xy + y^2 + 19 = 0$. (A.E.B.)

11. Calculate the coordinates of the point of intersection of

$$\frac{x}{y} + \frac{6y}{x} = 5 \text{ and } 2y = x - 2. \qquad \text{(Cambridge)}$$

12.

v	5	10	15	20	25
R	149	175	219	280	359

The table shows corresponding values of variables R and v obtained in an experiment. By drawing a suitable linear graph, show that these pairs of values may be regarded as approximations to values satisfying a relation of the form $R = a + bv^2$, where a and b are constants.

Use your graph to estimate the values of a and b, giving your answers to 2 significant figures. (London)

13. The table shows values of the variables x and y which are believed to be related by the equation $ax^2 + y^2 = b$, where a and b are constants.

x	1	2	3	4	4·5
y	2·96	2·83	2·60	2·24	1·98

Show graphically that, for these values, the equation is approximately satisfied. From your graph estimate
(i) values for a and b, (ii) the value of y when $x = 2·6$. (A.E.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4
Trigonometry 1

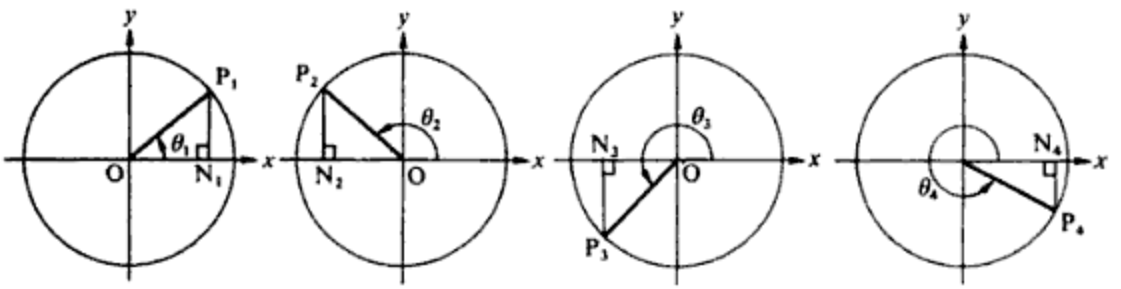
4.1 Trigonometric ratios of any angle

In section 0.6 on page 13, we obtained certain facts:

$$\frac{\sin x}{\cos x} = \tan x, \quad \sin x = \cos(90^\circ - x), \text{ etc.}$$

We also saw how to obtain $\sin x$, $\cos x$ and $\tan x$ for $0^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 180^\circ$. We must now consider the sine, cosine and tangent of angles greater than 180°.

Consider a rotating arm OP of unit length which traces out any angle θ in an **anticlockwise** direction from the line Ox.
The four positions OP_1, OP_2, OP_3 and OP_4 shown below correspond to the four angles θ_1, θ_2, θ_3 and θ_4. The x- and y-axes divide each diagram into four **quadrants**: θ_1 is in the first quadrant, θ_2 in the second, θ_3 in the third and θ_4 in the fourth. Perpendiculars are drawn from each position of P to the x-axis.



The trigonometric ratio of any angle is defined as the trigonometric ratio of the **acute** angle between the rotating arm OP and the x-axis with the appropriate sign. The appropriate sign is determined by considering the trigonometric ratio of the acute angle.

So $\quad \cos\theta_2 = \cos P_2\hat{O}N_2$ with the appropriate sign

$$= \frac{ON_2}{OP_2} = \frac{ON_2}{1} \text{ as } OP_2 \text{ is of unit length.}$$

But ON_2 is negative.

Hence $\quad \cos\theta_2 = -\cos(180^\circ - \theta_2)$.

Similarly, $\tan\theta_3 = \tan P_3\hat{O}N_3$ with the appropriate sign

$$= \frac{P_3N_3}{ON_3}$$

But ON_3 and P_3N_3 are both negative

so $\quad \tan\theta_3 = +\tan(\theta_3 - 180^\circ)$

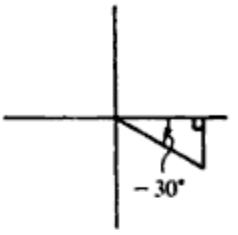
By considering the trigonometric ratios of angles in each of the four quadrants, we find that all are positive in the first quadrant, only the sine is positive in the second quadrant, only the tangent is positive in the third quadrant and only the cosine is positive in the fourth quadrant. These results are summarised in the diagram on the right.

sin > 0	all > 0
S	A
T	C
tan > 0	cos > 0

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Thus $\sin 320^\circ = -\sin 40^\circ = -0{\cdot}6428$
The result is negative because only the cosine is positive in the fourth quadrant; we use $\sin 40^\circ$ because 40° is the **acute** angle that the given angle makes with the x-axis. A calculator gives this answer directly.

Note that if the arm rotates in a clockwise direction, it is said to trace out a negative angle.



Thus $\tan(-30^\circ) = -\tan 30^\circ = -\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

The result is negative because only the cosine is positive in the fourth quadrant.

Also $\cos(-30^\circ) = +\cos 30^\circ = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

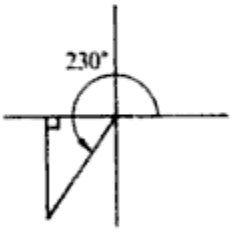
The result is positive because the cosine is positive in the fourth quadrant.

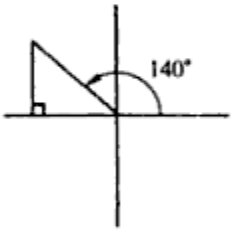
Example 1

Write each of the following as trigonometric ratios of acute angles.
(a) $\cos 230^\circ$, (b) $\sin 140^\circ$.

(a) $\cos 230^\circ$ (3rd quadrant)
$= \cos 50^\circ$ with appropriate sign
$= -\cos 50^\circ$

(b) $\sin 140^\circ$
$= \sin 40^\circ$ with appropriate sign
$= +\sin 40^\circ$





Example 2

Evaluate the following without using tables or a calculator. Leave your answers as surds.
(a) $\cos 135^\circ$, (b) $\tan 240^\circ$, (c) $\sin(-45^\circ)$, (d) $\sin 480^\circ$.

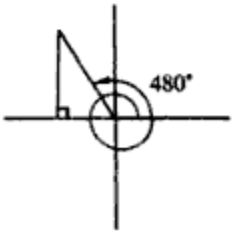
(a) $\cos 135^\circ$ (2nd quadrant) $= -\cos 45^\circ = -\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

(b) $\tan 240^\circ$ (3rd quadrant) $= +\tan 60^\circ = +\sqrt{3}$

(c) $\sin(-45^\circ)$ (4th quadrant) $= -\sin 45^\circ = -\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

(d) $\sin 480^\circ$ In this case, the rotating arm will be in the same position as for 120°.

$\sin 480^\circ = \sin 120^\circ$ (2nd quadrant) $= +\sin 60^\circ = +\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$



Note that the trigonometric ratio of any angle θ greater than 360° is the same as the trigonometric ratio of $(\theta - 360^\circ)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Maximum and minimum values of sine and cosine

The trigonometric ratios of all angles differ from the trigonometric ratios of acute angles only in sign.
From the definition of the sine and cosine:
the maximum value of $\sin\theta$ is $+1$ (when $\theta = 90°, 450° \ldots$)
and the minimum value of $\sin\theta$ is -1 (when $\theta = 270°, 630° \ldots$)
the maximum value of $\cos\theta$ is $+1$ (when $\theta = 0°, 360°, \ldots$)
and the minimum value of $\cos\theta$ is -1 (when $\theta = 180°, 540°, \ldots$)

Example 3

Write down the maximum and minimum values of each of the following and state the smallest value of θ, from 0° to 360°, for which these values occur.
(a) $1 - 2\cos\theta$, (b) $3\sin\theta - 1$.

(a) $1 - 2\cos\theta$
Note that $\cos\theta$ varies from $+1$ to -1, hence $2\cos\theta$ varies from $+2$ to -2.
Thus the maximum value of $1 - 2\cos\theta$ is $1 - -2 = 3$ and occurs when $\cos\theta = -1$, i.e. $\theta = 180°$.
The minimum value of $1 - 2\cos\theta$ is $1 - 2 = -1$ and occurs when $\cos\theta = 1$, i.e. $\theta = 0°$.

(b) $3\sin\theta - 1$
Note that $\sin\theta$ varies from $+1$ to -1, hence $3\sin\theta$ varies from $+3$ to -3.
Thus the maximum value of $3\sin\theta - 1$ is $3 - 1 = 2$ and occurs when $\sin\theta = 1$, i.e. $\theta = 90°$.
The minimum value of $3\sin\theta - 1$ is $-3 - 1 = -4$ and occurs when $\sin\theta = -1$, i.e. $\theta = 270°$.

4.2 Trigonometric graphs

Note that, for any angle θ, a single value of $\sin\theta$ (or $\cos\theta$) can be found. The same applies for $\tan\theta$ with the exception of $\theta = \pm 90°, \pm 270°, \ldots$ for which values of $\tan\theta$ are not defined.
Thus $\sin\theta$ and $\cos\theta$ are functions which are defined for all positive and negative values of θ; $\tan\theta$ is a function which is defined for all positive and negative values of θ except $\pm 90°, \pm 270°, \ldots$
It is therefore possible to construct tables of values giving ordered pairs for these functions and hence to plot their graphs. Such graphs can then be used to find solutions of trigonometric equations.

Example 4

(a) Copy and complete the following table for $y = \sin x$.

x	0°	30°	45°	60°	90°	120°	135°	150°	180°	210°	225°	240°	270°	300°	315°	330°	360°
y	0	0·5	0·71	0·87													

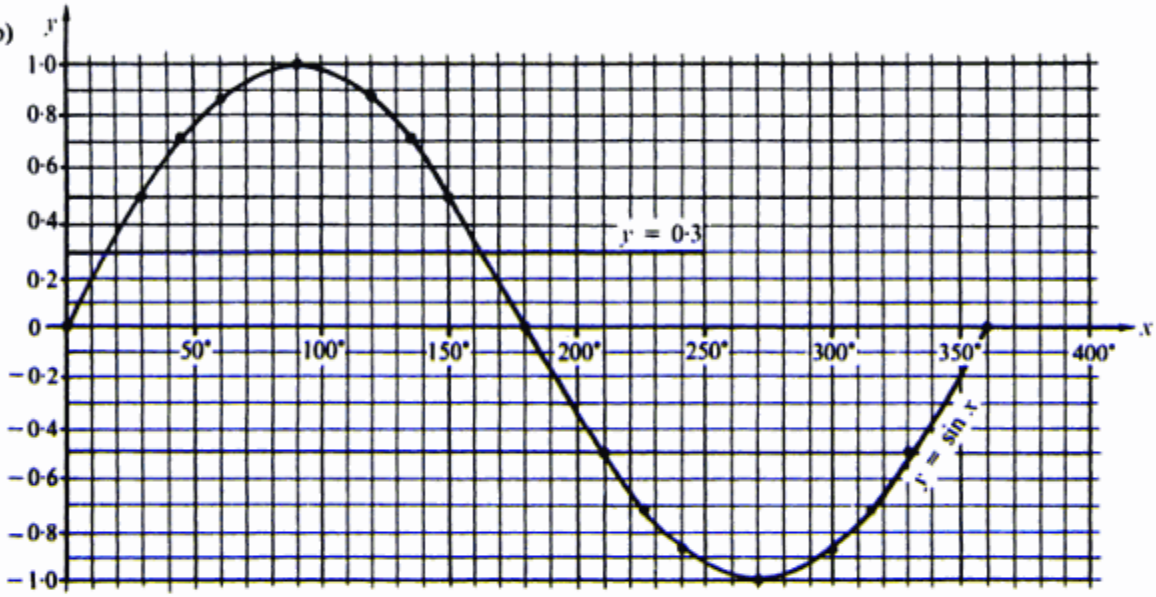
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) Plot the graph of $y = \sin x$ and use your graph to find approximate solutions to the equation $\sin x = 0{\cdot}3$, for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

(a) The completed table is as follows:

x	0°	30°	45°	60°	90°	120°	135°	150°	180°	210°	225°	240°	270°	300°	315°	330°	360°
y	0	0·5	0·71	0·87	1·0	0·87	0·71	0·5	0	−0·5	−0·71	−0·87	−1·0	−0·87	−0·71	−0·5	0

(b)



If $y = \sin x$ and $y = 0{\cdot}3$, solving these simultaneously gives the solution of the equation $\sin x = 0{\cdot}3$. We can achieve this on the graph by drawing the line $y = 0{\cdot}3$ as shown above. The points of intersection of the curve with the line give the solutions:

$$x \approx 17° \quad \text{or} \quad x \approx 163°.$$

Example 5

(a) Copy and complete the following table of values for the function $f: x \to \tan x$.

x	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°
$f(x)$	0	0·18						

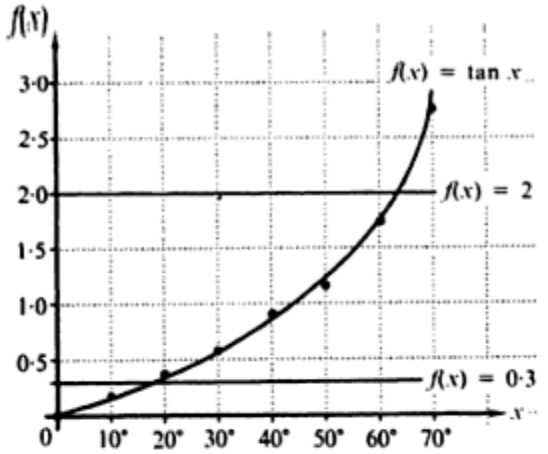
(b) Plot the graph of the function $f: x \to \tan x$ for the domain $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 70°$ and use your graph to find approximate solutions to the following equations for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 70°$
(i) $\tan x = 0{\cdot}3$, (ii) $\tan x = 2$.

(a) The completed table is as follows:

x	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°
$f(x)$	0	0·18	0·36	0·58	0·84	1·19	1·73	2·75

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b)



(i) To solve $\tan x = 0{\cdot}3$ we require the values of x for which $f(x) = 0{\cdot}3$.
From the graph, $\tan x = 0{\cdot}3$ when $x \approx 17°$.

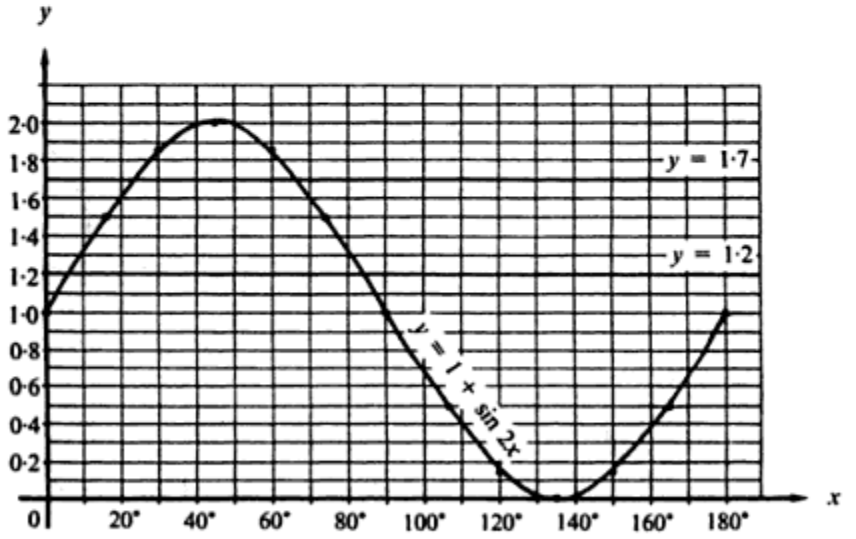
(ii) To solve $\tan x = 2$ we require the values of x for which $f(x) = 2$
From the graph, $\tan x = 2$ when $x \approx 63°$.

Example 6

(a) Plot the graph of $y = 1 + \sin 2x$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$

(b) Obtain approximate solutions from the graph to the equations
(i) $1 + \sin 2x = 1{\cdot}2$, (ii) $\sin 2x = 0{\cdot}7$, (iii) $1 + \sin 2x = \sin x$.

(a) The graph of $y = 1 + \sin 2x$ is plotted from a table of values as before.



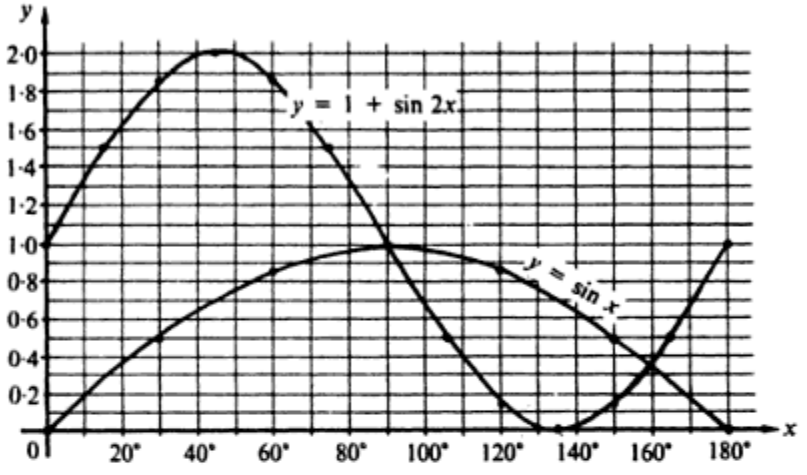
(i) To solve the equation $1 + \sin 2x = 1{\cdot}2$, we need to draw $y = 1{\cdot}2$ on the same graph and find the values of x at the points of intersection.
From the graph $x \approx 6°$ or $x \approx 84°$.

(ii) To solve the equation $\sin 2x = 0{\cdot}7$ compare it with $y = 1 + \sin 2x$ which we have drawn.
From $\sin 2x = 0{\cdot}7$, $1 + \sin 2x = 1 + 0{\cdot}7 = 1{\cdot}7$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

So the intersection of $y = 1{\cdot}7$ with $y = 1 + \sin 2x$ will give the required values of x. From the graph $x \approx 22°$ or $x \approx 68°$.

(iii) To solve $1 + \sin 2x = \sin x$, we need to draw $y = \sin x$ from a table of values. The points of intersection of these two graphs will give the required values of x.



From the graph $x = 90°$ or $x \approx 160°$.

Exercise 4A

1. State in which of the four quadrants each of the angles A to E must lie, given that
   (a) both $\sin A$ and $\cos A$ are positive,
   (b) both $\sin B$ and $\cos B$ are negative,
   (c) $\cos C$ is positive and $\sin C$ is negative,
   (d) both $\cos D$ and $\tan D$ are negative,
   (e) $\sin E$ is negative and $\tan E$ is positive.
2. Write each of the following as trigonometrical ratios of acute angles.
   (a) $\sin 160°$ (b) $\sin 220°$ (c) $\cos 310°$ (d) $\tan 200°$
   (e) $\sin 350°$ (f) $\tan 350°$ (g) $\cos 220°$ (h) $\sin(-40°)$
   (i) $\cos(-50°)$ (j) $\tan(-130°)$ (k) $\sin(-170°)$ (l) $\cos(-160°)$
   (m) $\sin 310°$ (n) $\sin 400°$ (o) $\cos 460°$ (p) $\tan 740°$
3. Without using tables or a calculator, write down the values of the following, leaving surds in your answers.
   (a) $\sin 150°$ (b) $\cos 210°$ (c) $\cos 300°$ (d) $\sin 330°$
   (e) $\tan 300°$ (f) $\tan 225°$ (g) $\sin 270°$ (h) $\cos 270°$
   (i) $\sin(-30°)$ (j) $\tan(-135°)$ (k) $\cos 390°$ (l) $\cos 570°$
4. Without the use of a calculator or tables, write down (i) the maximum value and (ii) the minimum value of each of the following functions and state the smallest value of θ, from 0° to 360°, for which these values occur.
   (a) $\sin\theta$ (b) $2\sin\theta$ (c) $3\cos\theta$ (d) $2 + \sin\theta$
   (e) $3 - \cos\theta$ (f) $3 + 2\sin\theta$ (g) $\sin 2\theta$ (h) $\cos 2\theta - 1$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

5. (a) Copy and complete the following table for $y = \cos x$. Tables or a calculator may be used where necessary, giving answers correct to two decimal places.

x	0°	30°	45°	60°	90°	120°	135°	150°	180°	210°	225°	240°	270°	300°	315°	330°	360°
y																	

(b) Plot the graph of $y = \cos x$ for x from 0° to 720° (i.e. twice the interval used in the above table) using a scale of 1 cm to 50° on the x-axis and a scale of 4 cm to 1 unit on the y-axis. Remember that $\cos 390° = \cos 30°$, etc.

6. (a) Copy and complete the following table of values for the function $f: x \to \sin 3x$. Tables or a calculator may be used where necessary, giving answers correct to two decimal places.

x	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°	80°	90°	100°	110°	120°
$f(x)$													

(b) Use a scale of 1 cm for 10° on the horizontal x-axis and a scale of 4 cm to 1 unit on the vertical y-axis, plot the graph of the function for the domain $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 120°$.

(c) From your graph, find approximate solutions to the following equations for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 120°$,
(i) $\sin 3x = 0{\cdot}6$, (ii) $\sin 3x = -0{\cdot}6$, (iii) $\sin 3x = 0{\cdot}7$.

7. (a) Copy and complete the following table of values for the function $f: x \to 1 + \cos 2x$.

x	0°	15°	30°	45°	60°	75°	90°	105°	120°	135°	150°	165°	180°
$f(x)$													

Tables or a calculator may be used where necessary, giving answers correct to two decimal places.

(b) Plot the graph of the function $f: x \to 1 + \cos 2x$ for the domain $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$ and use your graph to find approximate solutions to the following equations for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$,
(i) $1 + \cos 2x = 1{\cdot}3$, (ii) $1 + \cos 2x = 0{\cdot}8$, (iii) $\cos 2x = -0{\cdot}7$.

8. (a) Plot the graphs of $y = \cos x$ and $y = 2 \sin x$ on a single pair of axes for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

(b) Use your graph to find approximate solutions of $\cos x = 2 \sin x$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

9. (a) Plot the graphs of $y = 2 \cos x - 1$ and $y = \sin x$ on a single pair of axes for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

(b) Use your graph to find approximate solutions to the following equations for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$,
(i) $2 \cos x - 1 = -1{\cdot}5$, (ii) $2 \cos x = 0{\cdot}5$, (iii) $2 \cos x - 1 = \sin x$.

10. (a) Plot the graph of $y = 0{\cdot}5 + \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$ on a single pair of axes for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

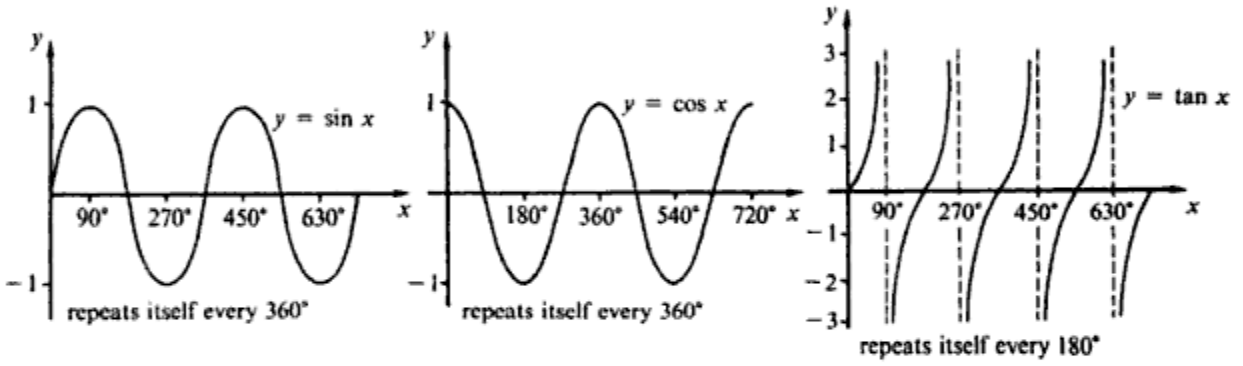
(b) Use your graph to find approximate solutions to the followings equations for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.
(i) $0{\cdot}5 + \sin x = 1{\cdot}1$, (ii) $\sin x = 0{\cdot}3$, (iii) $0{\cdot}5 + \sin x = \cos x$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4.3 Graph sketching

In the last section some graphs of trigonometric functions were plotted accurately in order to obtain solutions to trigonometric equations. However, the information required by some questions may not require us to make an accurate plot of the graphs. For example we may want to know how many solutions a particular equation has in a given interval and not be required to find the solutions themselves. In such cases a *sketch* of the graph showing its basic characteristics would be sufficient.

Sketch graphs of $y = \sin x$, $y = \cos x$ and $y = \tan x$ are shown below for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 720°$. They are not drawn on graph paper and could not be used to obtain solutions to equations with any great degree of accuracy but each sketch does show the essential features of each function.



To make sketch graphs of other trigonometric functions we build up information about the graph until sufficient is known to enable a sketch to be made. This will involve far fewer points than are required for an accurate plot of the graph.

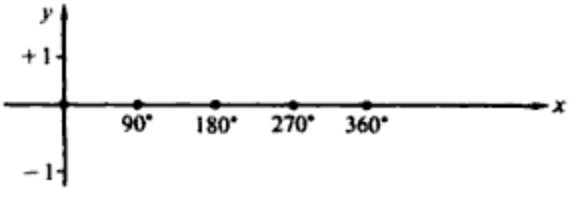
We may consider

(a) some easily determined points, for example when sketching $y = \sin x$ we can use the facts that $\sin 0° = 0$, $\sin 90° = 1$ etc.,
(b) the limits (i.e. maximum and minimum values) of the function,
(c) where the graph crosses the axes,
(d) whether the graph repeats itself over a certain interval (i.e. is periodic),
(e) whether the curve has any symmetry.

Example 7

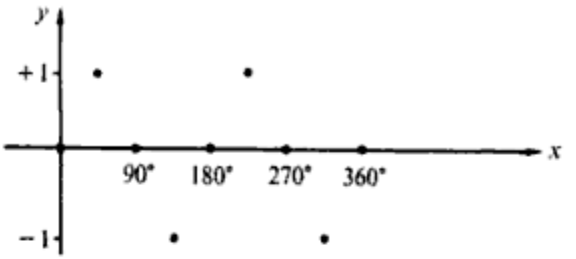
Sketch the graph of $y = \sin 2x$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

The values of y will range from $+1$ to -1. The period of the sine function is 360° so our graph should repeat itself after 180°. The values of y for $x = 0°, 90°, 180°, 270°, 360°$ are easily marked.

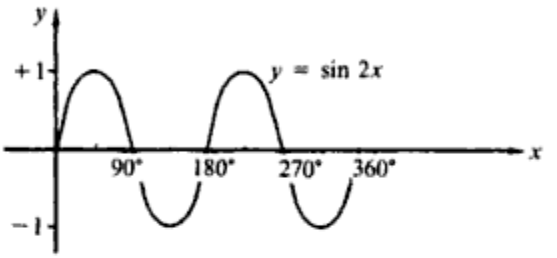


Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

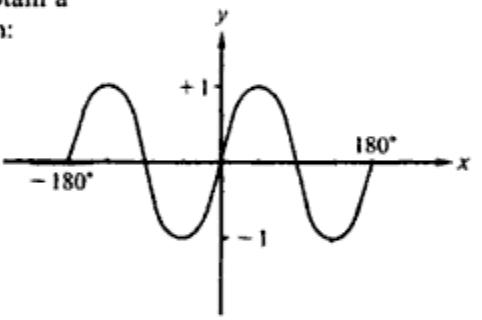
The maximum value of y occurs when
$\sin 2x = 1$
i.e. $2x = 90°, 450° \ldots$ or $x = 45°, 225° \ldots$
The minimum value of y occurs when
$\sin 2x = -1$
i.e. $2x = 270°, 630° \ldots$ or $x = 135°, 315° \ldots$



Thus the sketch can be completed:



Note that if we continue the sketch backwards to include negative angles, we would obtain a sketch for $-180° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$ as shown:

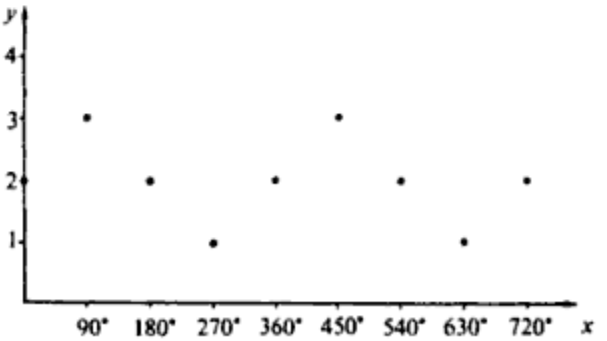


The graph of $y = \sin x$ is symmetrical under a 180° rotation about the origin as we would expect for an odd function (i.e $\sin(-x) = -\sin x$). Note that $\tan x$ is also an odd function (i.e. $\tan(-x) = -\tan x$) and so its graph would also be symmetrical under a 180° rotation about the origin. However $\cos(-x) = \cos x$ and so the cosine function is even and is therefore symmetrical for a reflection in the y-axis.

Example 8

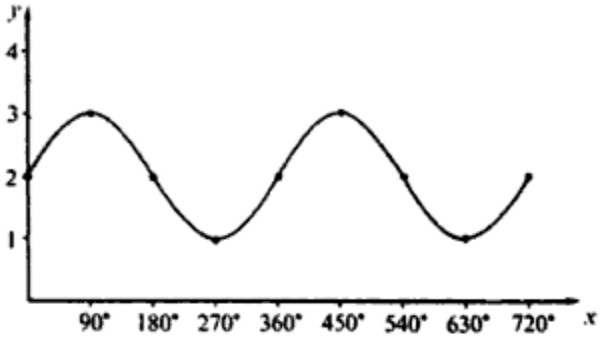
Sketch the graph of $y = 2 + \sin x$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 720°$

The values of y will range from $+3$ to $+1$, i.e. the curve does not cut the x-axis.
It crosses the y-axis when $x = 0$, i.e. $y = 2$.
Values of y for $x = 0°, 90°, 180°, \ldots$ can easily be marked.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The sketch can then be completed:

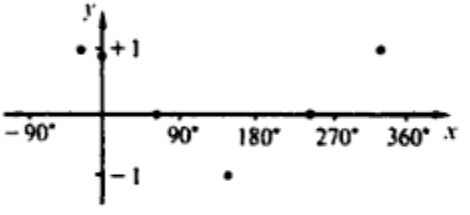


Example 9

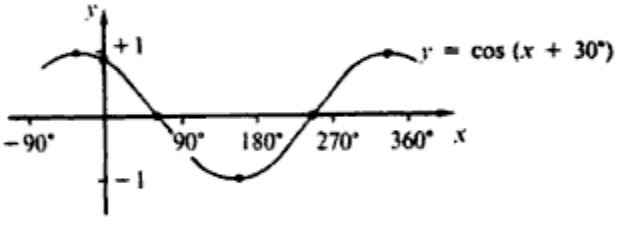
Sketch the graph of $y = \cos(x + 30°)$ for $-90° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$

The values of y will range from $+1$ to -1. The graph will repeat itself every 360°.
In this example the values $x = 90°, 180°, \ldots$ will not necessarily give convenient values for y.
Instead, consider where the graph cuts the axes.

It crosses the x-axis where $y = 0$
i.e. $x + 30° = 90°, 270°, \ldots$
or $x = 60°, 240°, \ldots$
It crosses the y-axis where $x = 0$
i.e. $y = \cos 30° = 0{\cdot}87$
Maximum value of y occurs where
$\cos(x + 30°) = 1$
i.e. $x + 30° = 0°, 360°, \ldots$
or $x = -30°, 330°, \ldots$
Minimum value of y occurs where
$\cos(x + 30°) = -1$
i.e. $x + 30° = 180°, \ldots$
$x = 150°, \ldots$



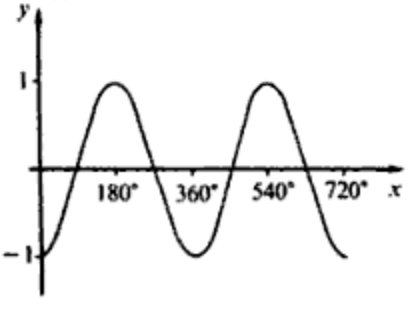
The sketch can then be completed:



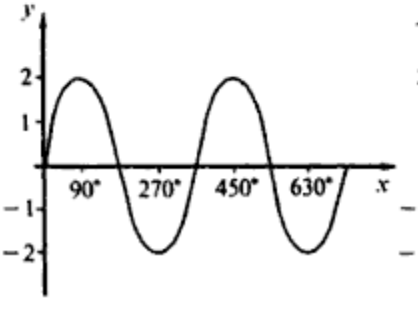
Exercise 4B

1. For each of the equations (a) to (f) listed below, state which one of the sketch graphs (i) to (vi) applies.
   (a) $y = -\tan x$, (b) $y = -\cos x$, (c) $y = 1 + \sin x$, (d) $y = 2 \sin x$,
   (e) $y = 1 - \cos x$, (f) $y = \sin \frac{1}{2}x$.

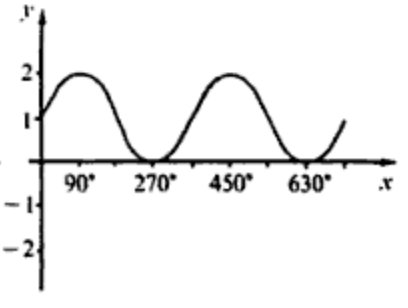
(i)



(ii)

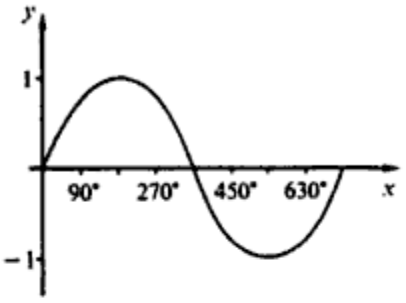


(iii)

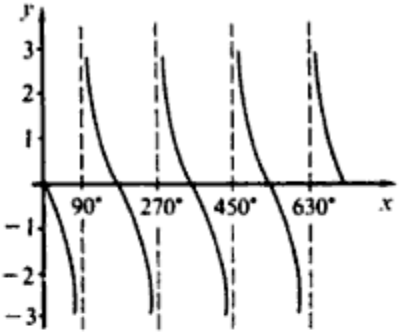


Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

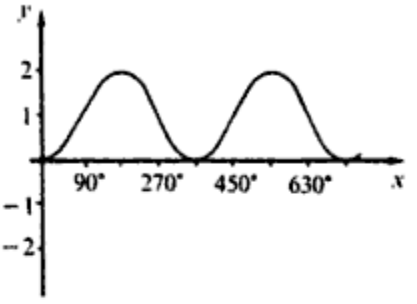
(iv)



(v)

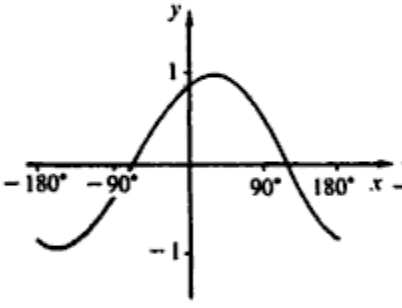


(vi)

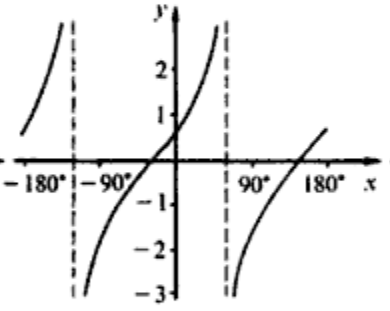


2. For each of the equations (a) to (c) listed below, state which one of the sketch graphs (i) to (iii) applies.
(a) $y = \tan(x + 30°)$, (b) $y = \sin(x - 60°)$, (c) $y = \sin(x + 60°)$.

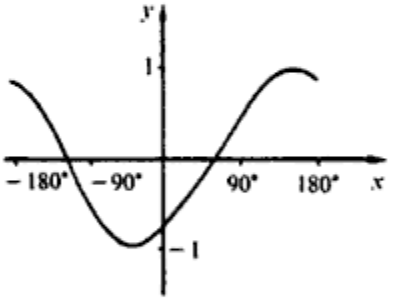
(i)



(ii)



(iii)



3. Make sketch graphs of the following for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$
(a) $y = 2\cos x$, (b) $y = 1 + \cos x$, (c) $y = \cos 2x$.

4. Make sketch graphs of the following for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 720°$
(a) $y = -\sin x$, (b) $y = 1 - \sin x$, (c) $y = 2 - \cos x$.

5. Make sketch graphs of the following for $-180° \leqslant x \leqslant +180°$
(a) $y = \sin(x + 30°)$, (b) $y = \cos(x - 60°)$, (c) $y = 1 - \sin 2x$.

6. On a single diagram sketch the graphs of $y = \cos x$ and $y = \tan x$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$. Hence state the number of solutions there are to the equation $\cos x = \tan x$ in the interval $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

7. On a single diagram sketch the graphs of $y = \cos 2x$ and $y = 2\cos x$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$. Hence state the number of solutions there are to the equation $\cos 2x = 2\cos x$ in the interval $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

8. On a single diagram sketch the graphs of $y = 1 + \sin x$ and $y = 2\cos \frac{1}{2}x$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$. Hence state the number of solutions there are to the equation $1 + \sin x = 2\cos \frac{1}{2}x$ in the interval $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

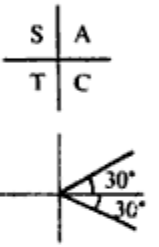
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4.4 Solving trigonometric equations

In section 4.2 the solutions of some trigonometric equations were found by graphical methods. The solutions obtained were consequently only approximate and the solutions were in the interval for which the graphs were drawn. In general there will be numerous solutions, so that in any particular question we need to be given an interval for which solutions are required, e.g. $0° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$. In some cases we may recognize the ratios as those of particular angles (0°, 30°, 45°, 60° ... etc.) but in other cases we shall need to use either a calculator or tables to solve the equations. In all cases, the solutions should be sketched in the correct quadrants and then the answers lying in the required interval given.

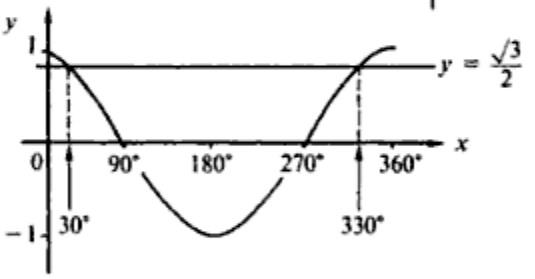
Example 10

Solve the equation $\cos x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ for values of x such that $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.



The acute angle with a cosine of $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ is 30°, so solutions will make an angle of 30° with the x-axis. The fact that the cosine is positive indicates that there are solutions in the 1st and the 4th quadrants. Thus, solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.
For the range $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$, $x = 30°$ or 330°.

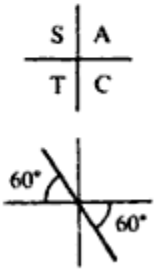
An alternative method is to sketch the graph of $y = \cos x$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$ and of $y = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$.
From the graph we see that the solutions must occur at 30° and at 360° − 30° = 330°.



In the following examples this sketch graph method will not be used.

Example 11

Solve the equation $\tan x = -\sqrt{3}$ for values of x such that $-180° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$.



We first ignore the minus sign and find the acute angle with a tangent of $\sqrt{3}$; this is 60° so solutions will make an angle of 60° with the x-axis.
Using the fact that the tangent is negative indicates that there are solutions in the 2nd and the 4th quadrants. Thus solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.
For the range $-180° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$, $x = -60°$ or 120°.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 12

Solve the following equations for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.
(a) $\cos x = 0{\cdot}2$, (b) $\sin x = -0{\cdot}2$.

(a) We require the acute angle with a cosine of 0·2. This is found either by using the inverse cosine function (written $\cos^{-1}$ or arccos) on a calculator or by using cosine tables.

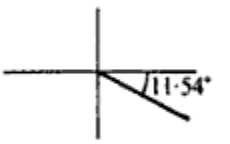
$$\cos^{-1} 0{\cdot}2 = 78{\cdot}46°$$

i.e. solutions will make an angle of 78·46° with the x-axis. Because the cosine is positive, solutions are found in the 1st and the 4th quadrants. Thus solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.
For the range $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$, $x = 78{\cdot}46°$ or $281{\cdot}54°$.

(b) There are two possible methods of solution.

METHOD 1 is similar to that used above. We first ignore the minus sign in $\sin x = -0{\cdot}2$.
From a calculator or tables $\sin^{-1} 0{\cdot}2 = 11{\cdot}54°$, i.e. solutions will make an angle of 11·54° with the x-axis. Because the sine is negative, solutions are found in the 3rd and the 4th quadrants. Thus, solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.
For the range $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$, $x = 191{\cdot}54°$ or $348{\cdot}46°$.

METHOD 2 involves finding $\sin^{-1}(-0{\cdot}2)$ directly from the calculator: $\sin^{-1}(-0{\cdot}2) = -11{\cdot}54°$ as shown on the sketch. We also know that $\sin x$ is negative in the 3rd quadrant, so giving the second solution.
For the range $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$, $x = 191{\cdot}54°$ or $348{\cdot}46°$.



Note Inverse trigonometric functions found on a calculator always give angles that are within a set interval, dependent on the function being used.

For $\sin^{-1}$ and $\tan^{-1}$ the calculator always gives the angle in the range $-90°$ to $+90°$.

For $\cos^{-1}$ the calculator always gives the angle in the range 0° to 180°.

These intervals are used because sine, cosine and tangent are one-to-one functions for these intervals and thus proper inverse functions do exist. Other solutions to an equation can then be found in the usual way using:

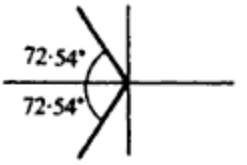
The inverse functions $\sin^{-1}$, $\cos^{-1}$ and $\tan^{-1}$ are discussed in more detail in chapter 15.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

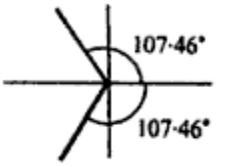
Example 13

Solve $\cos x = -0{\cdot}3$ for $-180^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 180^\circ$.

METHOD 1 First ignore the minus sign:
$\cos^{-1} 0{\cdot}3 = 72{\cdot}54^\circ$ from a calculator or tables.
Because the cosine is negative, solutions are in the 2nd and the 3rd quadrants. Thus solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.
For the range $-180^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 180^\circ$, $x = 107{\cdot}46^\circ$ or $-107{\cdot}46^\circ$.



METHOD 2
$\cos^{-1}(-0{\cdot}3) = 107{\cdot}46^\circ$ from a calculator
This is the solution in the 2nd quadrant; because the cosine is negative there is also a solution in the 3rd quadrant of $-107{\cdot}46^\circ$ as shown on the right.
For the range $-180^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 180^\circ$, $x = 107{\cdot}46^\circ$ or $-107{\cdot}46^\circ$.

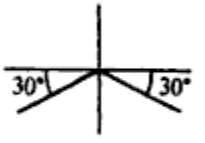


The following examples show the use of method 1 to solve more complicated equations.

Example 14

Solve $\sin(x + 10^\circ) = -0{\cdot}5$ for $0^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 360^\circ$.

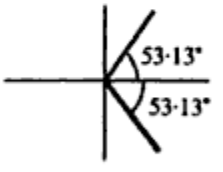
$\sin^{-1} 0{\cdot}5 = 30^\circ$ i.e. solutions will make an angle of 30° with the x-axis.
Because the sine is negative, solutions are in the 3rd and the 4th quadrants:
Thus $x + 10^\circ = 210^\circ$ or $x + 10^\circ = 330^\circ$
i.e. $x = 200^\circ$ or 320°.



Example 15

Solve $\cos 2x = 0{\cdot}6$ for $0^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 360^\circ$.

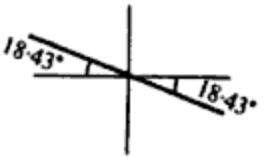
$\cos^{-1} 0{\cdot}6 = 53{\cdot}13^\circ$, i.e. solutions will make an angle of $53{\cdot}13^\circ$ with the x-axis.
Because the cosine is positive, solutions are in the 1st and the 4th quadrants:
Thus $2x = 53{\cdot}13^\circ, 306{\cdot}87^\circ, 413{\cdot}13^\circ, 666{\cdot}87^\circ$.
Notice that we must consider solutions for $2x$ from 0° to 720° as this will give solutions for x in the interval 0° to 360° as required.
i.e. $x = 26{\cdot}57^\circ, 153{\cdot}43^\circ, 206{\cdot}57^\circ, 333{\cdot}43^\circ$.



Example 16

Solve $3(\tan x + 1) = 2$ for $-180^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 180^\circ$.

Expanding $3 \tan x + 3 = 2$
i.e. $\tan x = -\frac{1}{3}$
$\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3} = 18{\cdot}43^\circ$, i.e. solutions will make an angle of $18{\cdot}43^\circ$ with the x-axis.
Because the tangent is negative, solutions are in the 2nd and the 4th quadrants:
For the range $-180^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 180^\circ$, $x = -18{\cdot}43^\circ$ or $161{\cdot}57^\circ$.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 17

Solve $\sin^2 x + \sin x \cos x = 0$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

Factorising $\sin x(\sin x + \cos x) = 0$

Thus, either $\sin x = 0$

Now $\sin^{-1} 0 = 0°$ and so solutions can be sketched:

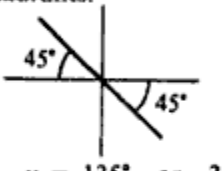
$x = 0°, 180°, 360°$

or $\sin x + \cos x = 0$

$\sin x = -\cos x$

$\tan x = -1$ (dividing by $\cos x$)

Now $\tan^{-1} 1 = 45°$ and, because the tangent is negative, solutions will occur in the 2nd and the 4th quadrants:



$x = 135°$ or $315°$

Thus for the range $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$, $x = 0°, 135°, 180°, 315°$ or $360°$.

Note: It is important that we factorise $\sin^2 x + \sin x \cos x$ in the last example and do not attempt to cancel by $\sin x$. Cancelling would lead to $\sin x = -\cos x$ and so the solutions arising from $\sin x = 0$ would be lost.

Example 18

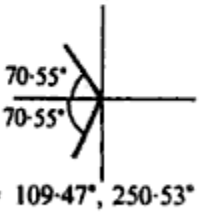
Solve $6 \cos^2 x - \cos x - 1 = 0$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$.

Factorising $(3 \cos x + 1)(2 \cos x - 1) = 0$

Thus, either $3 \cos x + 1 = 0$

$\cos x = -\frac{1}{3}$

Now $\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{3} = 70{\cdot}53°$ and, because the cosine is negative, solutions are in the 2nd and the 3rd quadrants:

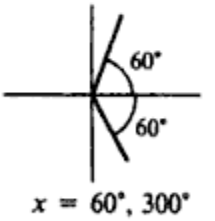


$x = 109{\cdot}47°, 250{\cdot}53°$

or $2 \cos x - 1 = 0$

$\cos x = \frac{1}{2}$

Now $\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{2} = 60°$ and, because the cosine is positive, solutions are in the 1st and 4th quadrants:



$x = 60°, 300°$

Thus for the range $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$, $x = 60°, 109{\cdot}47°, 250{\cdot}53°, 300°$.

Note: In some cases, factorising can give a bracket that does not lead to any solutions. For example, if we had to solve

$(2 \cos x - 1)(\cos x - 2) = 0$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$

either $2 \cos x - 1 = 0$

$\cos x = \frac{1}{2}$

giving $x = 60°, 300°$

or $\cos x - 2 = 0$

$\cos x = 2$

which has *no* solutions.

Thus $x = 60°$ or $300°$ are the only solutions.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 4C

1. Solve the following equations for all values of x from 0° to 360°.

(a) $\sin x = \frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\cos x = -\frac{1}{2}$ (c) $\tan x = 1$

(d) $\tan x = -1$ (e) $\sin x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (f) $\cos x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

2. Solve the following equations for all values of x from −180° to +180°.

(a) $\sin x = -\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\cos x = \frac{1}{2}$ (c) $\sin x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

(d) $\tan x = \sqrt{3}$ (e) $\cos x = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ (f) $\cos x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

Solve the following equations for all values of x from 0° to 360°.

3. $\sin x = 0{\cdot}3$ **4.** $\cos x = -0{\cdot}7$ **5.** $\tan x = -0{\cdot}75$

6. $\cos^2 x = \frac{1}{4}$ **7.** $\sin x = 2\cos x$ **8.** $2\sin x - 3\cos x = 0$

9. $\sin 2x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **10.** $\cos 2x = \frac{1}{2}$ **11.** $\sin(x + 20°) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

12. $\tan(x - 30°) = 1$ **13.** $3(\cos x - 1) = -1$

14. $\sin x(1 - 2\cos x) = 0$ **15.** $\cos x(2\sin x + \cos x) = 0$

16. $2\sin x\cos x + \sin x = 0$ **17.** $4\sin x\cos x = 3\cos x$

18. $4\cos^2 x + \cos x = 0$ **19.** $\tan x = 4\sin x$

20. $(2\sin x - 1)(\sin x + 1) = 0$ **21.** $2\sin^2 x - \sin x - 1 = 0$

22. $2\tan^2 x - \tan x - 6 = 0$ **23.** $2\tan x - \frac{1}{\tan x} = 1$

Solve the following equations for all values of x from −180° to +180°.

24. $\cos^2 x = \frac{3}{4}$ **25.** $\sin 2x = 2\cos 2x$

26. $\cos(x - 20°) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ **27.** $\cos x(\sin x - 1) = 0$

28. $3\sin^2 x = 2\sin x\cos x$ **29.** $2\cos^2 x - 5\cos x + 2 = 0$

30. (a) Factorise the expression $6\sin\theta\cos\theta + 3\cos\theta + 4\sin\theta + 2$

(b) Hence solve the equation $6\sin\theta\cos\theta + 3\cos\theta + 4\sin\theta + 2 = 0$ for $-180° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 180°$.

31. (a) Factorise the expression $3\sin\theta\cos\theta - 3\sin\theta + 2\cos\theta - 2$

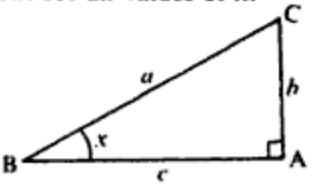
(b) Hence solve the equation $3\sin\theta\cos\theta - 3\sin\theta + 2\cos\theta = 2$ for $0° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$.

4.5 Pythagorean relationships

In section 4.4 we were concerned with the solution of trigonometric equations, i.e. we were finding the particular angles for which the equations were true.
In this section we are dealing with trigonometric **identities** which are true for all angles.

In section 0.6 we showed that $\frac{\sin x}{\cos x} = \tan x$ and this is an identity. It is true for *all* values of x.

Consider the right-angled triangle ABC.



$\sin x = \frac{b}{a}$ and $\cos x = \frac{c}{a}$

hence $\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = \frac{b^2}{a^2} + \frac{c^2}{a^2} = \frac{b^2 + c^2}{a^2}$.

But, by Pythagoras $b^2 + c^2 = a^2$, hence $\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = \frac{a^2}{a^2} = 1$.

This is an *identity* and it is true for *all* values of x.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 19

Prove the identity $(\sin\theta + \cos\theta)(1 - \sin\theta\cos\theta) = \sin^3\theta + \cos^3\theta$.

Consider the left hand side of the identity

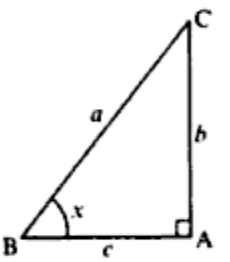
$$\begin{aligned}
\text{L.H.S.} &= (\sin\theta + \cos\theta)(1 - \sin\theta\cos\theta) \\
&= \sin\theta - \sin^2\theta\cos\theta + \cos\theta - \sin\theta\cos^2\theta \\
&= \sin\theta - (1 - \cos^2\theta)\cos\theta + \cos\theta - \sin\theta(1 - \sin^2\theta) \quad \text{using} \quad \sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1 \\
&= \sin\theta - \cos\theta + \cos^3\theta + \cos\theta - \sin\theta + \sin^3\theta \\
&= \sin^3\theta + \cos^3\theta \\
&= \text{R.H.S. of identity}
\end{aligned}$$

Note: (i) In the proof of an identity we should start from one side of the given identity and try to obtain the other side. It is usually best to start from the more complicated side of the identity and attempt to simplify it.

(ii) The sign '≡' is sometimes used for identities. Thus Example 19 could have been written:
Prove that $(\sin\theta + \cos\theta)(1 - \sin\theta\cos\theta) \equiv \sin^3\theta + \cos^3\theta$.

4.6 Secant, cosecant and cotangent

These three trigonometric ratios can be defined in terms of the sides of a right-angled triangle ABC.



$$\text{secant } x \text{ (written sec } x) = \frac{a}{c} = \frac{1}{\cos x}$$

$$\text{cosecant } x \text{ (written cosec } x) = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{1}{\sin x}$$

$$\text{cotangent } x \text{ (written cot } x) = \frac{c}{b} = \frac{1}{\tan x}$$

The reciprocal relationships with sine, cosine and tangent should be noted. It follows that the cosecant, secant and cotangent of angles greater than 90° will have the same sign as the sine, cosine and tangent of these angles respectively.

Since $\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \dfrac{1}{\sin\theta}$, the cosec will be positive in the 1st and 2nd quadrants,

$\sec\theta = \dfrac{1}{\cos\theta}$ thus the secant will be positive in the 1st and 4th quadrants,

$\cot\theta = \dfrac{1}{\tan\theta}$ thus the cotangent will be positive in the 1st and 3rd quadrants.

Example 20

Without using tables or a calculator, find the values of
(a) cosec 150°, (b) cot 240°, (c) sec 225°.

(a) $\operatorname{cosec} 150° = \dfrac{1}{\sin 150°} = +\dfrac{1}{\sin 30°} = +2$

(b) $\cot 240° = \dfrac{1}{\tan 240°} = +\dfrac{1}{\tan 60°} = +\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

(c) $\sec 225° = \dfrac{1}{\cos 225°} = -\dfrac{1}{\cos 45°} = -\sqrt{2}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

In addition to the reciprocal relationships, it also follows that:

$\sec x = \operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ - x)$ and $\cot x = \tan(90^\circ - x)$.

From the identity $\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1$, two further identities can be obtained.

(i)
$$\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1$$
divide by $\cos^2 x$
$$\frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos^2 x} + 1 = \frac{1}{\cos^2 x}$$
$$\Rightarrow \tan^2 x + 1 = \sec^2 x$$

(ii)
$$\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1$$
divide by $\sin^2 x$
$$1 + \frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin^2 x} = \frac{1}{\sin^2 x}$$
$$\Rightarrow 1 + \cot^2 x = \operatorname{cosec}^2 x$$

Thus the three pythagorean identities are

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x &= 1 \\ 1 + \tan^2 x &= \sec^2 x \\ 1 + \cot^2 x &= \operatorname{cosec}^2 x \end{aligned}}$$

Example 21

Prove the identity $\tan^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = (\sec\theta + \cos\theta)(\sec\theta - \cos\theta)$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{R.H.S.} &= (\sec\theta + \cos\theta)(\sec\theta - \cos\theta) \\ &= \sec^2\theta - \sec\theta\cos\theta + \cos\theta\sec\theta - \cos^2\theta \\ &= \sec^2\theta - \cos^2\theta \\ &= (1 + \tan^2\theta) - (1 - \sin^2\theta) \\ &= 1 + \tan^2\theta - 1 + \sin^2\theta \\ &= \tan^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = \text{L.H.S.} \end{aligned}$$

Example 22

Prove that $\cot^4\theta + \cot^2\theta \equiv \operatorname{cosec}^4\theta - \operatorname{cosec}^2\theta$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{L.H.S.} &= \cot^4\theta + \cot^2\theta \\ &= \cot^2\theta(\cot^2\theta + 1) \\ &= (\operatorname{cosec}^2\theta - 1)(\operatorname{cosec}^2\theta) \quad \text{since} \quad \operatorname{cosec}^2\theta = 1 + \cot^2\theta \\ &= \operatorname{cosec}^4\theta - \operatorname{cosec}^2\theta = \text{R.H.S.} \end{aligned}$$

Example 23

Prove the identity $\sqrt{\left(\dfrac{1 - \cos\theta}{1 + \cos\theta}\right)} = \operatorname{cosec}\theta - \cot\theta$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{L.H.S.} &= \sqrt{\left(\frac{1 - \cos\theta}{1 + \cos\theta}\right)} \\ &= \sqrt{\left[\left(\frac{1 - \cos\theta}{1 + \cos\theta}\right)\left(\frac{1 - \cos\theta}{1 - \cos\theta}\right)\right]} \\ &= \sqrt{\left[\frac{(1 - \cos\theta)^2}{(1 - \cos^2\theta)}\right]} = \sqrt{\left[\frac{(1 - \cos\theta)^2}{\sin^2\theta}\right]} \\ &= \frac{1 - \cos\theta}{\sin\theta} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sin\theta} - \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta} \\ &= \operatorname{cosec}\theta - \cot\theta = \text{R.H.S.} \end{aligned}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Equations involving sec, cosec and cot can be solved in a similar way to those involving sin, cos and tan.

Example 24

Solve the equation $4 \cos \theta - 3 \sec \theta = 2 \tan \theta$ for $-180° \leqslant \theta \leqslant +180°$.

$$4 \cos \theta - 3 \sec \theta = 2 \tan \theta$$

$$4 \cos \theta - \frac{3}{\cos \theta} = \frac{2 \sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$$

Multiplying by $\cos \theta$ gives

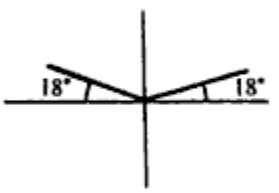
$$4 \cos^2 \theta - 3 = 2 \sin \theta$$

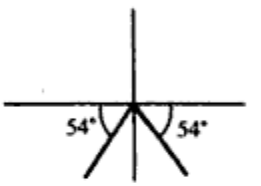
i.e. $4(1 - \sin^2 \theta) - 3 = 2 \sin \theta$ or $4 \sin^2 \theta + 2 \sin \theta - 1 = 0$

hence $\sin \theta = \dfrac{-2 \pm \sqrt{(4 + 16)}}{8}$

so $\sin \theta = 0{\cdot}3090$ or $-0{\cdot}8090$

Now $\sin^{-1}(0{\cdot}3090) = 18°$ and $\sin^{-1}(0{\cdot}8090) = 54°$





Thus for the range $-180° \leqslant \theta \leqslant +180°$, $\theta = -126°, -54°, 18°, 162°$.

Exercise 4D

1. Without the use of tables or calculator find the values of
   (a) sec 45° (b) cot 45° (c) cosec 30° (d) sec 60°
   (e) cosec 135° (f) sec 120° (g) cosec 330° (h) sec 240°
   (i) cot (−135°) (j) sec (−60°) (k) sec (−120°) (l) cosec 315°
2. Simplify the following expressions
   (a) $\sqrt{[(1 - \sin A)(1 + \sin A)]}$,
   (b) $\operatorname{cosec} \theta \tan \theta$,
   (c) $\dfrac{1}{\sec^2 \theta} + \dfrac{1}{\operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta}$,
   (d) $\cot \theta \sqrt{(1 - \cos^2 \theta)}$.
3. Prove the following identities.
   (a) $\sin \theta \tan \theta + \cos \theta = \sec \theta$, (b) $\operatorname{cosec} \theta - \sin \theta = \cot \theta \cos \theta$,
   (c) $(\sin \theta + \cos \theta)^2 + (\sin \theta - \cos \theta)^2 = 2$, (d) $(\sin \theta + \operatorname{cosec} \theta)^2 = \sin^2 \theta + \cot^2 \theta + 3$.
4. If $x = 2 \sin \theta$ and $3y = \cos \theta$ show that $x^2 + 36y^2 = 4$.
5. Eliminate θ from each of the following pairs of relationships.
   (a) $x = \sin \theta$, $y = \cos \theta$, (b) $x = 3 \sin \theta$, $y = \operatorname{cosec} \theta$,
   (c) $5x = \sin \theta$, $y = 2 \cos \theta$, (d) $x = 3 + \sin \theta$, $y = \cos \theta$,
   (e) $x = 2 + \sin \theta$, $\cos \theta = 1 + y$.
6. Solve the following equations for all values of θ from $-180°$ to $+180°$.
   (a) $4 - \sin \theta = 4 \cos^2 \theta$, (b) $\sin^2 \theta + \cos \theta + 1 = 0$,
   (c) $5 - 5 \cos \theta = 3 \sin^2 \theta$, (d) $8 \tan \theta = 3 \cos \theta$,
   (e) $\sin^2 \theta + 5 \cos^2 \theta = 3$, (f) $1 - \cos^2 \theta = -2 \sin \theta \cos \theta$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

7. Solve the following equations for all values of θ from 0° to 360°.

(a) $\sec\theta = 2$, (b) $\cot 2\theta = -\frac{1}{3}$,
(c) $3\cot\theta = \tan\theta$, (d) $2\sin\theta = -3\cot\theta$,
(e) $2\sec^2\theta - 3 + \tan\theta = 0$, (f) $2\tan\theta = 3 + 5\cot\theta$,
(g) $4\cot\theta + 15\sec\theta = 0$, (h) $\operatorname{cosec}^2\theta = 3\cot\theta - 1$,
(i) $2\tan\theta = 5\operatorname{cosec}\theta + \cot\theta$.

8. Prove the following identities.

(a) $\dfrac{\sin\theta}{1+\cos\theta} + \dfrac{1+\cos\theta}{\sin\theta} = 2\operatorname{cosec}\theta$,

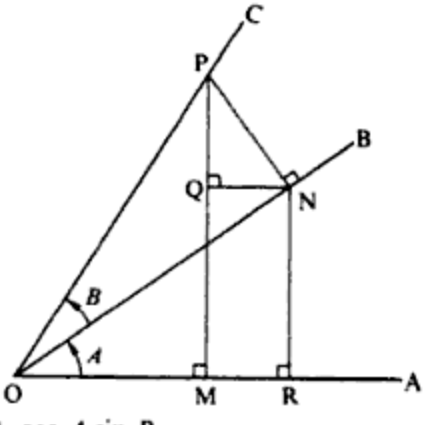
(b) $\dfrac{\operatorname{cosec}\theta}{\cot\theta + \tan\theta} = \cos\theta$,

(c) $(1 + \cot\theta - \operatorname{cosec}\theta)(1 + \tan\theta + \sec\theta) = 2$,
(d) $\cos^4\theta - \sin^4\theta + 1 = 2\cos^2\theta$,
(e) $\sec^4\theta - \sec^2\theta = \tan^4\theta + \tan^2\theta$.

9. A vertical mast CO is of height h and stands with its base, O, on level ground. Points A and B lie on the same level as O and are respectively due south and due east of the tower. From A and B the angles of elevation of the top, C, of the tower are α and β respectively. Show that the distance from A to B is given by $h\sqrt{(\cot^2\alpha + \cot^2\beta)}$.

4.7 Compound angles

Sine, cosine, tangent of $(A \pm B)$



In the diagram angles A, and then B, are described in an anticlockwise direction from the line OA.
PN is perpendicular to OB, PM and NR are perpendicular to OA, QN is perpendicular to PM.
Note that $\hat{A} = R\hat{O}N = O\hat{N}Q$
$= 90° - Q\hat{N}P = N\hat{P}Q$

$$\text{Now } \sin(A+B) = \frac{MP}{OP} = \frac{MQ + QP}{OP}$$
$$= \frac{MQ}{OP} + \frac{QP}{OP} = \frac{RN}{OP} + \frac{QP}{OP}$$
$$= \frac{RN}{ON} \times \frac{ON}{OP} + \frac{QP}{PN} \times \frac{PN}{OP} = \sin A\cos B + \cos A\sin B$$

$$\text{Similarly } \cos(A+B) = \frac{OM}{OP} = \frac{OR - RM}{OP} = \frac{OR - NQ}{OP}$$
$$= \frac{OR}{ON} \times \frac{ON}{OP} - \frac{NQ}{NP} \times \frac{NP}{OP} = \cos A\cos B - \sin A\sin B$$

By replacing B by $-B$ we obtain

$$\sin(A-B) = \sin A\cos(-B) + \cos A\sin(-B) = \sin A\cos B - \cos A\sin B$$

and $\cos(A-B) = \cos A\cos(-B) - \sin A\sin(-B) = \cos A\cos B + \sin A\sin B$

Although these results have been obtained for acute angles A and B, they are true for all values of A and B.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Since $\tan(A + B) = \dfrac{\sin(A + B)}{\cos(A + B)}$

$$= \frac{\sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B}{\cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B}$$

$$= \frac{\tan A + \tan B}{1 - \tan A \tan B} \quad \text{(obtained by dividing each term by } \cos A \cos B\text{)}$$

In a similar way

$$\tan(A - B) = \frac{\tan A - \tan B}{1 + \tan A \tan B}$$

Thus

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \sin(A \pm B) &= \sin A \cos B \pm \cos A \sin B \\ \cos(A \pm B) &= \cos A \cos B \mp \sin A \sin B \\ \tan(A \pm B) &= \frac{\tan A \pm \tan B}{1 \mp \tan A \tan B} \end{aligned}}$$

(Alternatively some of these results can be obtained by matrix methods, see page 183, question 6.)

Example 25

Evaluate the following without the use of tables or a calculator: (a) $\cos 75°$, (b) $\tan 15°$.

(a)
$$\begin{aligned} \cos 75° &= \cos(30° + 45°) \\ &= \cos 30° \cos 45° - \sin 30° \sin 45° \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \end{aligned}$$

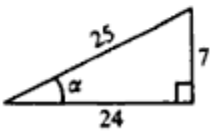
$$\Rightarrow \cos 75° = \frac{\sqrt{6} - \sqrt{2}}{4}$$

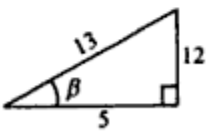
(b)
$$\begin{aligned} \tan 15° &= \tan(45° - 30°) \\ &= \frac{\tan 45° - \tan 30°}{1 + \tan 45° \tan 30°} \\ &= \frac{1 - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}}{1 + 1 \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \tan 15° = \frac{3 - \sqrt{3}}{3 + \sqrt{3}}$$

Example 26

Given that α and β are acute angles with $\sin \alpha = \frac{7}{25}$ and $\cos \beta = \frac{5}{13}$, find, without using tables or a calculator, $\sin(\alpha + \beta)$ and $\tan(\alpha + \beta)$.





Since $\sin \alpha = \frac{7}{25}$, $\cos \alpha = \frac{24}{25}$ and $\tan \alpha = \frac{7}{24}$

Thus $\sin(\alpha + \beta) = \sin \alpha \cos \beta + \cos \alpha \sin \beta$

$$= \tfrac{7}{25} \times \tfrac{5}{13} + \tfrac{24}{25} \times \tfrac{12}{13}$$

$$= \tfrac{323}{325}$$

Since $\cos \beta = \frac{5}{13}$, $\sin \beta = \frac{12}{13}$ and $\tan \beta = \frac{12}{5}$

and $\tan(\alpha + \beta) = \dfrac{\tan \alpha + \tan \beta}{1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta}$

$$= \frac{\frac{7}{24} + \frac{12}{5}}{1 - (\frac{7}{24})(\frac{12}{5})}$$

$$= \tfrac{323}{56}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 27

Solve the equation $\cos\theta\cos 20^\circ + \sin\theta\sin 20^\circ = 0{\cdot}75$ for values of θ from 0° to 360°.

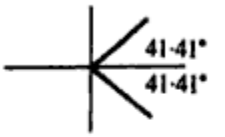
$\cos\theta\cos 20^\circ + \sin\theta\sin 20^\circ = 0{\cdot}75$

$\therefore \quad \cos(\theta + 20^\circ) = 0{\cdot}75$

Now $\quad \cos^{-1}(0{\cdot}75) = 41{\cdot}41^\circ$ and, because the cosine is positive, solutions are in the 1st and the 4th quadrants.

$\Rightarrow \quad \theta - 20^\circ = 41{\cdot}41^\circ$ or $318{\cdot}59^\circ$

i.e. $\quad \theta = 61{\cdot}41^\circ$ or $338{\cdot}59^\circ$



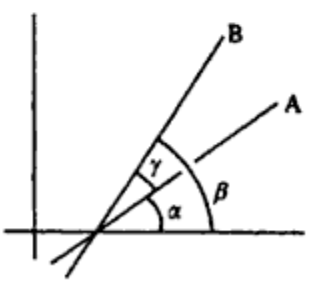
Example 28

Prove that $\cos(A + B)\cos(A - B) \equiv \cos^2 A - \sin^2 B$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{L.H.S.} &= \cos(A + B)\cos(A - B)\\
&= (\cos A\cos B - \sin A\sin B)(\cos A\cos B + \sin A\sin B)\\
&= \cos^2 A\cos^2 B + \cos A\cos B\sin A\sin B - \sin A\sin B\cos A\cos B - \sin^2 A\sin^2 B\\
&= \cos^2 A\cos^2 B - \sin^2 A\sin^2 B\\
&= \cos^2 A(1 - \sin^2 B) - (1 - \cos^2 A)(\sin^2 B)\\
&= \cos^2 A - \cos^2 A\sin^2 B - \sin^2 B + \cos^2 A\sin^2 B\\
&= \cos^2 A - \sin^2 B = \text{R.H.S.}
\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 4E

1. Evaluate (a) $\sin 50^\circ\cos 40^\circ + \cos 50^\circ\sin 40^\circ$,
   (b) $\cos 75^\circ\cos 15^\circ + \sin 75^\circ\sin 15^\circ$.
2. Simplify the following expressions
   (a) $\sin A\cos 2A + \cos A\sin 2A$, (b) $\sin 2\theta\cos\theta - \cos 2\theta\sin\theta$,
   (c) $\cos 4\theta\cos\theta - \sin 4\theta\sin\theta$, (d) $\sin\theta\sin\theta + \cos\theta\cos\theta$,
   (e) $2\cos\theta\cos\theta + 2\sin\theta\sin\theta$.
3. Without using tables or a calculator find the following, leaving surds in your answer.
   (a) $\sin(45^\circ + 30^\circ)$, (b) $\sin 15^\circ$, (c) $\tan 105^\circ$.
4. Find (i) the greatest and (ii) the least values that each of the following expressions can take and state the smallest value of θ from 0° to 360° for which these values occur.
   (a) $\sin\theta\cos 20^\circ + \cos\theta\sin 20^\circ$, (b) $\sin\theta\cos 20^\circ - \cos\theta\sin 20^\circ$,
   (d) $\cos\theta\cos 40^\circ - \sin\theta\sin 40^\circ$.
5. The diagram shows the graph of two lines A and B having gradients of $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{3}{2}$ respectively. With α, β and γ as shown in the diagram, find
   (a) $\tan\alpha$, (b) $\tan\beta$, (c) $\tan\gamma$.



6. A and B are acute angles such that $\sin A = \frac{12}{13}$ and $\cos B = \frac{4}{5}$. Without the use of tables or a calculator find the values of
   (a) $\sin(A - B)$, (b) $\tan(A - B)$.
7. C and D are both obtuse angles such that $\sin C = \frac{3}{5}$ and $\sin D = \frac{5}{13}$. Without the use of tables or a calculator, find the values of
   (a) $\sin(C + D)$, (b) $\cos(C - D)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. Solve the following equations for $0° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$.
   (a) $\sin\theta\cos 10° + \cos\theta\sin 10° = -0{\cdot}5$,
   (b) $\cos 40° \cos\theta - \sin 40° \sin\theta = 0{\cdot}4$,
   (c) $\sin(\theta + 45°) = \sqrt{2}\cos\theta$.
9. Prove the following identities.
   (a) $\sin(90° - \theta) = \cos\theta$, (b) $\sin(90° + \theta) = \cos\theta$,
   (c) $\cos(90° + \theta) = -\sin\theta$, (d) $\cos(180° - \theta) = -\cos\theta$,
   (e) $\sin(A + B) + \sin(A - B) = 2\sin A\cos B$,
   (f) $\cos(A + B) - \cos(A - B) = -2\sin A\sin B$,
   (g) $\dfrac{\sin(A + B)}{\sin(A - B)} = \dfrac{\tan A + \tan B}{\tan A - \tan B}$,
   (h) $\dfrac{\cos(A - B)}{\cos(A + B)} = \dfrac{1 + \tan A\tan B}{1 - \tan A\tan B}$,
   (i) $\sin(A + B)\sin(A - B) = \sin^2 A - \sin^2 B$,
   (j) $\dfrac{\sin(A - B)}{\cos A\cos B} + \dfrac{\sin(B - C)}{\cos B\cos C} + \dfrac{\sin(C - A)}{\cos C\cos A} = 0$,
   (k) $\cos(45° - \theta)\cos(45° - \phi) - \sin(45° - \theta)\sin(45° - \phi) = \sin(\theta + \phi)$.

Double-angle formulae

From the identity $\sin(A + B) = \sin A\cos B + \cos A\sin B$
by putting $B = A$ we obtain

$$\sin(A + A) = \sin A\cos A + \cos A\sin A$$

or

$$\boxed{\sin 2A = 2\sin A\cos A}$$

Similarly by using

$$\cos(A + B) = \cos A\cos B - \sin A\sin B$$
$$\cos(A + A) = \cos A\cos A - \sin A\sin A$$

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}\cos 2A &= \cos^2 A - \sin^2 A \\ &= 1 - 2\sin^2 A \quad (\text{putting } \cos^2 A = 1 - \sin^2 A) \\ &= 2\cos^2 A - 1 \quad (\text{putting } \sin^2 A = 1 - \cos^2 A)\end{aligned}}$$

Again using

$$\tan(A + B) = \frac{\tan A + \tan B}{1 - \tan A\tan B}$$

putting $B = A$

$$\boxed{\tan 2A = \frac{2\tan A}{1 - \tan^2 A}}$$

These results are referred to as the **double-angle formulae** because the angle on the left of the identity is double that on the right.
Thus we also have

$$\sin 8\theta = 2\sin 4\theta\cos 4\theta$$
$$\cos 6\theta = \cos^2 3\theta - \sin^2 3\theta \quad \text{etc.}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 29

Prove that (a) $\dfrac{\sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta} \equiv \tan\theta$, (b) $\operatorname{cosec} 2\theta + \cot 2\theta \equiv \cot\theta$

(a)
$$\begin{aligned}\text{L.H.S.} &= \frac{\sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta}\\ &= \frac{2\sin\theta\cos\theta}{1 + 2\cos^2\theta - 1}\\ &= \frac{2\sin\theta\cos\theta}{2\cos^2\theta}\\ &= \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}\\ &= \tan\theta = \text{R.H.S.}\end{aligned}$$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned}\text{L.H.S} &= \operatorname{cosec} 2\theta + \cot 2\theta\\ &= \frac{1}{\sin 2\theta} + \frac{\cos 2\theta}{\sin 2\theta}\\ &= \frac{1 + \cos 2\theta}{\sin 2\theta}\\ &= \frac{1 + 2\cos^2\theta - 1}{2\sin\theta\cos\theta}\\ &= \frac{2\cos^2\theta}{2\sin\theta\cos\theta} = \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}\\ &= \cot\theta = \text{R.H.S.}\end{aligned}$$

Half-angle formulae

From the above double-angle formula for the cosine, it follows that

$$\cos\theta = 2\cos^2\frac{\theta}{2} - 1$$

hence $\quad 2\cos^2\dfrac{\theta}{2} = 1 + \cos\theta$

or $$\boxed{\cos^2\frac{\theta}{2} = \tfrac{1}{2}(1 + \cos\theta)}$$

and similarly, as

$$\cos\theta = 1 - 2\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}$$

$$2\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2} = 1 - \cos\theta$$

or $$\boxed{\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2} = \tfrac{1}{2}(1 - \cos\theta)}$$

Hence, given the value of $\cos\theta$ we can find $\sin\dfrac{\theta}{2}$ and $\cos\dfrac{\theta}{2}$.

Exercise 4F

In this exercise, a calculator or tables should *not* be used for questions 1 to 9.

1. Simplify the expressions (a) $\dfrac{\sin 2A}{\cos A}$, (b) $2\tan A\cos^2 A$, (c) $2\sin^2 A + \cos 2A$.
2. If $\cos A = -\frac{3}{5}$ find $\cos 2A$.
3. Angle B is acute and $\tan B = \frac{4}{3}$. Find (a) $\sin B$ (b) $\cos B$ (c) $\sin 2B$ (d) $\cos 2B$.
4. If $\sin C = 1/\sqrt{5}$ find $\sin 2C$, $\cos 2C$ and $\tan 2C$ if (a) C is acute, (b) C is obtuse.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

5. Eliminate θ from each of the following pairs of expressions.
(a) $x + 1 = \cos 2\theta$, $y = \sin \theta$, (b) $x = \cos 2\theta$, $y = \cos \theta - 1$,
(c) $y - 3 = \cos 2\theta$, $x = 2 - \sin \theta$.

6. Angle D is acute and $\tan D = \frac{3}{4}$. Find
(a) $\sin D$, (b) $\sin 2D$, (c) $\sin (\frac{1}{2}D)$.

7. Angle E lies between $0°$ and $360°$. Find $\sin (\frac{1}{2}E)$ given that $\cos E$ is
(a) $\frac{3}{8}$, (b) $-\frac{3}{8}$.

8. (a) Obtain an expression for $\sin 3\theta$ involving powers of $\sin \theta$.
(b) If $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{4}$ find the value of $\sin 3\theta$.

9. (a) Obtain an expression for $\cos 3\theta$ involving power of $\cos \theta$.
(b) If $\sin \theta = 1/\sqrt{5}$ and θ is obtuse, find the value of $\cos 3\theta$.

10. In triangle ABC, $B\hat{A}C = \theta$ and $A\hat{B}C = 2\theta$. If $BC = x$ show that $AC = 2x \cos \theta$.

11. In triangle DEF, $E\hat{D}F = \theta$ and $D\hat{E}F = 4\theta$. If $EF = x$ show that $DF = 4x \cos \theta \cos 2\theta$.

12. The three points A, B and C all lie on horizontal ground and form a triangle right-angled at C with $B\hat{A}C = \alpha$. A point V lies vertically above B and the angle of elevation of V from A is α. If the length of AV is $2x$, show that $BC = x \sin 2\alpha$.

13. Solve the following equations for $-180° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$
(a) $\sin 2x + \sin x = 0$, (b) $\sin 2x - 2\cos^2 x = 0$,
(c) $3\cos 2x + 2 + \cos x = 0$, (d) $\sin 2x = \tan x$.

14. Solve the following equation for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$
(a) $2\sin x \cos x = \cos 2x$, (b) $3\sin 2x - \cos x = 0$,
(c) $3\sin x + \cos 2x = 2$, (d) $5 - 13\sin x = 2\cos 2x$.

15. Prove the following identities
(a) $\cos^2 A + \cos 2A = 2 - 3\sin^2 A$, (b) $\tan 2A - 2\tan 2A \sin^2 A = \sin 2A$,
(c) $\cos^4 A - \sin^4 A = \cos 2A$, (d) $\dfrac{1 - \cos 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta} = \tan^2 \theta$,
(e) $\dfrac{\sin \theta + \sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos \theta + \cos 2\theta} = \tan \theta$, (f) $\tan 3\theta = \dfrac{3\tan \theta - \tan^3 \theta}{1 - 3\tan^2 \theta}$

16. Prove the following identities
(a) $2\operatorname{cosec} 2\theta = \operatorname{cosec} \theta \sec \theta$, (b) $\tan A + \cot A = 2\operatorname{cosec} 2A$,
(c) $\dfrac{1 + \tan^2 A}{1 - \tan^2 A} = \sec 2A$, (d) $\cot 2A = \operatorname{cosec} 2A - \tan A$,
(e) $\dfrac{\sin 2\theta}{1 - \cos 2\theta} = \cot \theta$, (f) $\tan \theta - \cot \theta = -2\cot 2\theta$,
(g) $\operatorname{cosec} 2\theta + \cot 2\theta = \cot \theta$.

17. Each of the following expressions can be written in the form $a \sin 2\theta + b \cos 2\theta + c$. Find the values of a, b and c in each case.
(a) $2\cos^2 \theta + 4\sin \theta \cos \theta$, (b) $-2\sin \theta \cos \theta - 4\sin^2 \theta$,
(c) $3\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta - 6\sin \theta \cos \theta$.

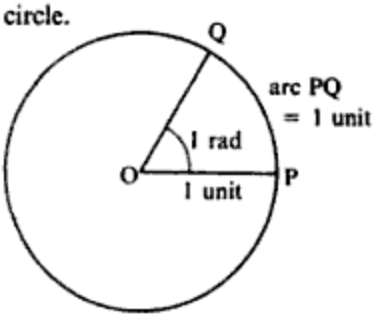
18. Prove that
(a) $\tan \dfrac{\theta}{2} = \dfrac{\sin \theta}{1 + \cos \theta}$, (b) $\sin \theta = \dfrac{2\tan (\theta/2)}{1 + \tan^2 (\theta/2)}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4.8 Circular measure

Radians

Angles are usually measured in degrees and parts of a degree. A radian is a larger unit which is often used in trigonometry. It is defined as the angle subtended at the centre of a circle by an arc equal to the radius of the circle. In the diagram, suppose that OP is of length 1 unit and that the arc PQ is also of length 1 unit, then the angle POQ is 1 radian. Since the circumference of this circle is 2π units, the angle at O subtended by the whole circumference is 2π radians.



hence 1 revolution $= 360° = 2\pi$ radians

or $\frac{1}{4}$ revolution $= 90° = \frac{\pi}{2}$ radians

As 2π radians $= 360°$

1 radian $= \frac{360°}{2\pi}$ which is approximately 57°

It is very seldom necessary, or desirable, to use this approximate result. It is better to use one of the exact relationships such as $\pi/2$ radians $= 90°$.

Example 30

Express (a) $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians in degrees, (b) 210° in radians.

(a) Since $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians $= 90°$

or π radians $= 180°$

$\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians $= \frac{5}{6} \times 180°$

$= 150°$

(b) Since $90° = \frac{\pi}{2}$ radians

$210° = \frac{\pi}{2} \times \frac{210}{90}$ radians

$= \frac{7\pi}{6}$ radians

Length of an arc, area of a sector

Suppose the circle centre O has a radius of length r and that the arc PQ subtends an angle θ rad at O.

The circumference of the circle subtends an angle of 2π rad at O.

Hence $\frac{\text{arc PQ}}{\text{circumference of circle}} = \frac{\theta}{2\pi}$

$\Rightarrow$ $\text{arc PQ} = \frac{\theta \times 2\pi r}{2\pi} = r\theta$

Thus the **length of the arc** PQ is $r\theta$.

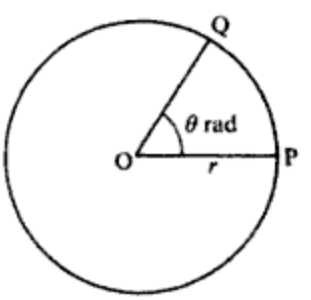
The area of a sector may be obtained in a similar way.

The sector POQ subtends an angle θ rad at O,

hence $\frac{\text{area of sector POQ}}{\text{area of circle}} = \frac{\theta}{2\pi}$

or $\text{area of sector POQ} = \pi r^2 \times \frac{\theta}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$

Thus the **area of the sector** POQ is $\frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 31

Find (a) the length of the minor arc PQ, (b) the area of the minor sector OPQ of the circle centre O, radius 6 cm, in which angle POQ = $1\frac{2}{3}$ rad.

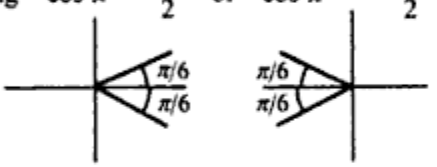
(a) arc PQ $= r\theta$
$= 6 \times \frac{5}{3}$
arc PQ $= 10$ cm

(b) Area $= \frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$
$= \frac{1}{2} \times 6^2 \times \frac{5}{3}$
Area $= 30$ cm^2

Example 32

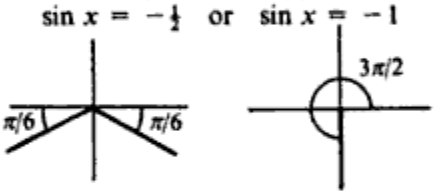
Solve the following equations for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$, leaving your answers in terms of π.
(a) $4\cos^2 x = 3$, (b) $\cos 2x = 3\sin x + 2$.

(a) $4\cos^2 x = 3$
i.e. $\cos^2 x = \frac{3}{4}$
giving $\cos x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ or $\cos x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$



giving $x = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}, \frac{7\pi}{6}$ or $\frac{11\pi}{6}$

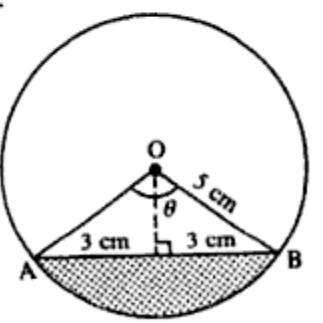
(b) $\cos 2x = 3\sin x + 2$
$\therefore\ 1 - 2\sin^2 x = 3\sin x + 2$
$0 = 2\sin^2 x + 3\sin x + 1$
$0 = (2\sin x + 1)(\sin x + 1)$
hence $\sin x = -\frac{1}{2}$ or $\sin x = -1$



giving $x = \frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{3\pi}{2}$ or $\frac{11\pi}{6}$

Example 33

A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle centre O and radius 5 cm. Angle AOB $= \theta$ rad and the length of the chord AB is 6 cm. Find θ and the area of the minor segment bounded by AB and the circle.



$\sin\frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{3}{5} = 0{\cdot}6$ (see diagram)
$\theta = 2\sin^{-1}(0{\cdot}6)$
$\therefore\ \theta = 1{\cdot}287$ rad
Area of required minor segment
$=$ area of sector AOB $-$ area $\triangle$AOB
$= \frac{1}{2}r^2\theta - \frac{1}{2}r^2\sin\theta$
$= \frac{1}{2}(25)(1{\cdot}287) - \frac{1}{2}(25)(0{\cdot}96)$
area of minor segment $= 4{\cdot}09$ cm^2

Exercise 4G

1. Express the following angles in degrees.
   (a) π rad, (b) $\pi/6$ rad, (c) $3\pi/2$ rad, (d) $2\pi/3$ rad,
   (e) $11\pi/6$ rad.
2. Express the following angles in radians, leaving π in your answers.
   (a) 360°, (b) 60°, (c) 45°, (d) 150°, (e) 90°.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. Without the use of tables or a calculator write down the values of
(a) $\sin \pi/2$, (b) $\cos 3\pi/2$, (c) $\tan \pi/4$, (d) $\cos \pi$, (e) $\sec \pi$,
(f) $\sin \pi/6$, (g) $\sin 5\pi/6$, (h) $\cos 5\pi/6$, (i) $\tan 3\pi/4$, (j) $\cos 5\pi/4$.

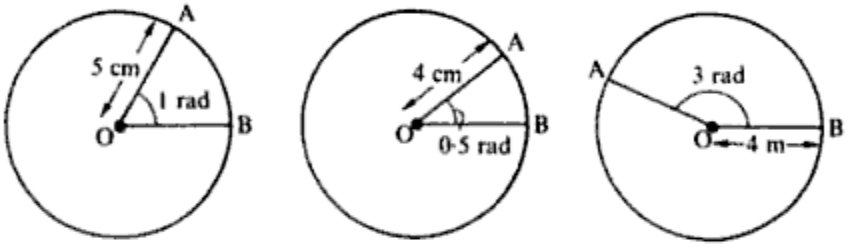
4. Express (a) 70°, (b) 250° in radians correct to two decimal places.

5. Express (a) 3 rad, (b) 2·5 rad in degrees correct to the nearest degree.

6. Using a calculator or tables find, correct to 2 decimal places, the values of (a) sin (1 rad), (b) tan (3 rad), (c) cos (2·4 rad).

7. In each of the following find (i) the length of the minor arc AB, (ii) the area of the corresponding sector OAB.

(a) (b) (c)



8. Points A and B lie on the circumference of a circle, centre O and radius 3 cm, and the minor sector OAB has an area equal to one sixth of the area of the circle. Find, leaving π in your answers,
(a) the acute angle $A\hat{O}B$ in radians,
(b) the reflex angle $A\hat{O}B$ in radians,
(c) the length of the minor arc AB,
(d) the length of the major arc AB.

9. Find the angle subtended at the centre by an arc of length 3 cm on a circle of radius 3 cm.

10. Find the area of a sector of a circle of radius 8 cm if the arc of the sector subtends an angle of 0·25 radians at the centre.

11. Find the angle subtended at the centre by an arc of length 6 cm on a circle of radius 4 cm.

12. The arc AB is of length 6 cm and subtends an angle of 0·5 radians at the centre of the circle. Find the radius of the circle.

13. Solve the following equations for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$, leaving π in your answers.
(a) $\sin x = 0{\cdot}5$ (b) $4 \sin^2 x = 3$
(c) $\tan 2x = -1$ (d) $2 \sin^2 x + \sin x = 0$
(e) $\sin^2 x - 3 \sin x + 2 = 0$ (f) $\tan^2 x - 3 \sec x + 3 = 0$

14. A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle, centre O and radius 4 cm. If the minor arc AB is of length 3 cm find the area of the corresponding sector OAB.

15. A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle centre O, radius 6 cm. Angle $A\hat{O}B = \pi/6$ radians. Find
(a) the area of the triangle AOB,
(b) the area of the minor segment bounded by the circle and the chord AB (take $\pi = 3{\cdot}14$).

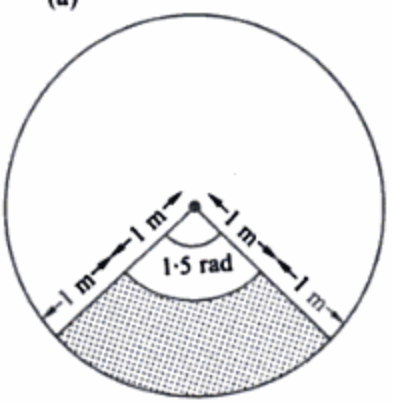
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

16. A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle centre O and radius 4 cm. If the chord AB is of length 6 cm, find (a) the angle the minor arc AB subtends at the centre (in radians correct to two decimal places), (b) the area of the corresponding sector OAB.

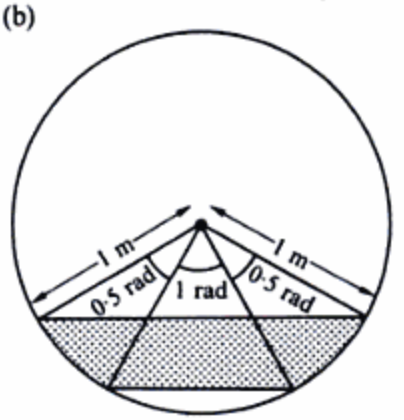
17. A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle centre O and radius r. The minor arc AB subtends an angle θ radians at O. If the area of the minor segment bounded by the chord AB and the circle is one quarter of the area of the minor sector AOB show that $4 \sin \theta = 3\theta$.

18. In each of the following diagrams find the area of the shaded regions.

(a)



(b)

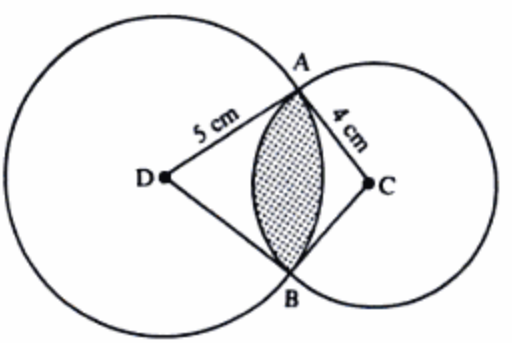


19. The diagram shows a pair of intersecting circles with centres at C and D and of radii 4 cm and 5 cm. AB is the common chord and CD = 7 cm. Find

(a) $A\hat{C}B$ in radians,

(b) $A\hat{D}B$ in radians,

(c) the shaded area.



20. (a) Copy and complete the following table for $y = 2 \cos x$ for x from O to π radians.

x in radians	0	$\pi/6$ (0·524)	$\pi/4$ (0·785)	$\pi/3$ (1·047)	$\pi/2$ (1·571)	$2\pi/3$ (2·094)	$3\pi/4$ (2·356)	$5\pi/6$ (2·618)	π (3·142)
y	2	1·73	1·41						

(b) Plot the graph of $y = 2 \cos x$ for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$ using a scale of 4 cm for 1 radian on the x-axis and 4 cm for 1 unit on the y-axis.

(c) By drawing any additional lines necessary on this graph find approximate solutions to the following equations in the interval $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$.

(i) $2 \cos x = x - 2$ (ii) $4 \cos x = x$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

21. (a) Copy and complete the table below for $y = 4 \sin x$ using the values of x shown.

x in radians	0	$\pi/6$ (0·524)	$\pi/4$ (0·785)	$\pi/3$ (1·047)	$\pi/2$ (1·571)	$2\pi/3$ (2·094)	$3\pi/4$ (2·356)	$5\pi/6$ (2·618)	π (3·142)
y	0		2·83	3·46					

(b) Plot the lines $y = 4 \sin x$ and $y = x$ on a single graph using a scale of 4 cm to 1 radian on the x-axis and 4 cm to 1 unit on the y-axis.

(c) From your graph write down an approximate solution to the equation $4 \sin x = x$ in the interval $0 < x \leqslant \pi$.

(d) By plotting a graph of $y = 4 \sin x$ and $y = x$ in the interval $2{\cdot}4 \leqslant x \leqslant 2{\cdot}6$, obtain a more accurate solution to the equation $4 \sin x = x$ in this interval.

Exercise 4H Examination questions

1. Sketch on separate diagrams for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 360°$
(i) $y = 3 \cos x$, (ii) $y = \cos 2x$, (iii) $y = \cos (x - 30°)$.
(Cambridge)

2. Solve, for $-180° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$, the following equations
(a) $3 \tan x - 2 = 0$,
(b) $3 \tan x - 2 \cos x = 0$. (A.E.B.)

3. Find all values of θ between 0° and 360° for which

$$2 \sin \theta + 8 \cos^2 \theta = 5,$$

giving your answers correct to the nearest 0·1° where necessary.
(Cambridge)

4. (a) A, B and C are the angles of a triangle such that $\cos A = \frac{3}{5}$ and $\cos B = \frac{5}{13}$. Without using tables or a calculator find the value of (i) $\tan 2A$, (ii) $\cos (A + B)$, (iii) $\cos C$.
(b) Prove the identity $\dfrac{\sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta} = \tan \theta$. (Cambridge)

5. The angle A lies between 90° and 180°, and $\sin^2 A = 8/9$. Calculate, without using tables or calculator, the value of
(a) $\cos A$, (b) $\sin 2A$, (c) $\cos 2A$, (d) $\cos \frac{1}{2}A$. (A.E.B.)

6. Find all the angles between 0° and 360° which satisfy the equations
(i) $(1 + 2 \sin x) \cos 2x = 0$,
(ii) $\sin y = 3 \cos (y - 30°)$. (Cambridge)

7. Find all the angles between 0° and 360° which satisfy the equations
(i) $2 \tan x = 1 + 3 \cot x$,
(ii) $5 \sin y \cos y = 2$. (Cambridge)

8. (a) If $x = \sin^2 2\theta$ and $y = \cos \theta$, eliminate θ and hence express x in terms of y.
(b) Solve the equation

$$2 \sec^2 \theta + \tan \theta - 3 = 0$$

for values of θ in the range $0° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 180°$. (S.U.J.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9. (a) A and B are acute angles such that $\sin A = \frac{3}{5}$ and $\tan B = \frac{3}{4}$. Without using tables or calculators, find the value of (i) $\sin (A + B)$, (ii) $\cos (A + B)$, leaving your answers in surd form.
Hence state, with a brief reason, whether angle $A + B$ is acute or obtuse.

(b) Show that, for all values of θ,

$$\frac{\cot^2 \theta}{1 + \cot^2 \theta} = \cos^2 \theta.$$

Hence, or otherwise, find the solutions in the range $-180° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 180°$ of the equation

$$\frac{\cot^2 \theta}{1 + \cot^2 \theta} = 2 \cos 2\theta.$$ (J.M.B.)

10. Prove the identities:

(i) $\tan (45 + A)° \tan (45 - A)° \equiv 1$;

(ii) $\sin B° + \sin (B + 120)° + \sin (B + 240)° \equiv 0$;

(iii) $\dfrac{1 - \cos 2C}{1 + \cos 2C} \equiv \tan^2 C$. (Oxford)

11. Express $8 \cos^4 \theta$ in the form

$$a \cos 4\theta + b \cos 2\theta + c,$$

giving the numerical values of the constants a, b and c. (Cambridge)

12. (i) Calculate the values of x lying between 0° and 360° which satisfy the equation,

$$\tan (x + 35°) = -0{\cdot}404.$$

(ii) Show that $\dfrac{\sin \theta}{1 - \cos \theta} + \dfrac{\sin \theta}{1 + \cos \theta} = 2 \operatorname{cosec} \theta$.

Hence, or otherwise, find all the values of θ lying between 0° and 360° which satisfy the equation,

$$\frac{\sin \theta}{1 - \cos \theta} + \frac{\sin \theta}{1 + \cos \theta} = 3{\cdot}76.$$

(iii) Simplify the expression $f(\theta) = \dfrac{\tan \theta}{1 - \tan \theta} - \dfrac{\cot \theta}{1 - \cot \theta}$.

Find all the values of α between 0° and 360° such that $f(\theta) \equiv \tan (\theta + \alpha)$. (Oxford)

13. (i) Prove the identities

$$\cos^4 x - \sin^4 x \equiv \cos 2x,$$

and

$$\tan 3x - \tan x \equiv 2 \sin x \sec 3x.$$

(ii) If A, B and C are the angles of a triangle, prove that:

$$\cos A + \cos (B + C) \equiv 0.$$

Hence prove that

$$\cos A + \cos (B - C) \equiv 2 \sin B \sin C.$$ (Oxford)

14. Sketch on the same diagram the curves $y = |\sin x|$ and $y = \cos 2x$ for the interval $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$, labelling each curve clearly.
State the number of solutions, in this interval, of the equation

$$|\sin x| = \cos 2x.$$ (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

15. Solve the following equations for values of x between 0 and 2π, giving your answer in radians in terms of π,

(a) $\sec x = -2$,

(b) $\sin x - \sqrt{3} \cos x = 0$,

(c) $2 \sin x \cos x + 1 = 0$. (A.E.B.)

16. A chord PQ of a circle, radius 5 cm, subtends an angle of 2 radians at the centre of the circle. Taking π to be 3·14, calculate, correct to one decimal place,

(i) the length of the **major** arc PQ,

(ii) the area enclosed by the chord PQ and the **minor** arc PQ.

(Cambridge)

17. (a) Solve the equation $2 \tan \theta - 4 \cot \theta = \operatorname{cosec} \theta$, giving answers in radians in the range $-\pi < \theta < \pi$.

(b) Prove that the area of the minor segment cut off by a chord subtending an angle of θ radians at the centre of a circle of radius r is $\frac{1}{2}r^2(\theta - \sin \theta)$. A chord which subtends an angle α at the centre of a circle divides the area of the circle into 2 segments in the ratio 1:5. Prove that $\sin \alpha = \alpha - \pi/3$.

Plot the graphs of $y = \sin \alpha$ and $y = \alpha - \pi/3$ for values of α between 0 and π using the same axes. Hence find the value of α.

(S.U.J.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

5
Algebra I

5.1 Indices

The reader will know that, using indices, $(a \times a)$ can be written as a^2, $(a \times a \times a)$ can be written as a^3 and so on.
The following particular cases show how expressions involving indices can be simplified.

(i) $a^3 \times a^2 = (a \times a \times a) \times (a \times a) = a^5$

(ii) $a^4 \div a^3 = \dfrac{a \times a \times a \times a}{a \times a \times a} = a^1 = a$

(iii) $(a^3)^2 = (a \times a \times a) \times (a \times a \times a) = a^6$

The three basic rules which include the above particular cases are:
$a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$; $a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$; $(a^m)^n = a^{mn}$.
By applying these rules it is possible to interpret other expressions involving indices.

Negative indices

Since $a^5 \div a^2 = \dfrac{a^5}{a^2} = a^{5-2} = a^3$ and $a^5 \times a^{-2} = a^{5-2} = a^3$, it follows that $a^{-2} = \dfrac{1}{a^2}$

In general, $a^{-m} = \dfrac{1}{a^m}$

Fractional indices

Since $a^{1/2} \times a^{1/2} = a^{1/2+1/2} = a^1$, it follows that $a^{1/2} = \sqrt{a}$.
Similarly from $a^{1/3} \times a^{1/3} \times a^{1/3} = a^{1/3+1/3+1/3} = a^1$, it follows that $a^{1/3} = \sqrt[3]{a}$, i.e. the cube root of a.
Also $(a^{3/5}) = (a^{1/5})^3 = (\sqrt[5]{a})^3$ or $\sqrt[5]{(a^3)}$.
In general $a^{m/n} = \sqrt[n]{(a^m)} = (\sqrt[n]{a})^m$.
In all cases, $\sqrt{a}$ or $a^{1/2}$ should be taken to mean the *positive* root of a and similarly for $\sqrt[4]{a}$ or $a^{1/4}$, etc.

Zero index

Since $a^m \times a^0 = a^{m+0} = a^m$, it follows that $a^0 = 1$.
Thus we have:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}, \quad (a^m)^n = a^{mn}, \quad a^{m/n} = \sqrt[n]{a^m} = (\sqrt[n]{a})^m, \\ a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}, \quad a^{-m} = \dfrac{1}{a^m}, \quad a^0 = 1. \end{array}}$$

In certain cases it is possible to evaluate numerical expressions involving indices as the following example shows.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 1

Simplify each of the following:
(a) 5^3 (b) 13^0 (c) 11^{-2} (d) $8^{2/3}$ (e) $(3\frac{1}{16})^{1/2}$ (f) $16^{-3/4}$.

(a) $5^3 = 5 \times 5 \times 5 = 125$

(b) $13^0 = 1$

(c) $11^{-2} = \frac{1}{11^2} = \frac{1}{121}$

(d) $8^{2/3} = (2)^2 = 4$

(e) $(3\frac{1}{16})^{1/2} = (\frac{49}{16})^{1/2} = \frac{7}{4}$

(f) $16^{-3/4} = \frac{1}{16^{3/4}} = \frac{1}{2^3} = \frac{1}{8}$

Example 2

Simplify the following:
(a) $x^7 \times x^3$ (b) $x^8 \div x^5$ (c) $x^5 \times x^{-3}$ (d) $(x^5)^3$ (e) $8x^4 \div 2x^6$

(a) $x^7 \times x^3 = x^{7+3} = x^{10}$

(b) $x^8 \div x^5 = x^{8-5} = x^3$

(c) $x^5 \times x^{-3} = x^{5-3} = x^2$

(d) $(x^5)^3 = x^{5\times 3} = x^{15}$

(e) $8x^4 \div 2x^6 = \frac{8x^4}{2x^6} = \frac{4}{x^2}$

Example 3

Find the value of x in each of the following equations:
(a) $5^x = \frac{1}{125}$ (b) $\frac{3^x \times 3^5}{3^7} = 27$ (c) $(2^x)^3 = 64$

(a) $5^x = \frac{1}{125} = \frac{1}{5^3}$
$5^x = 5^{-3}$
$\therefore \quad x = -3$

(b) $\frac{3^x \times 3^5}{3^7} = 27$
$3^{x+5-7} = 3^3$
$3^{x-2} = 3^3$
$\therefore \quad x = 5$

(c) $(2^x)^3 = 64$
$2^{3x} = 2^6$
$3x = 6$
$\therefore \quad x = 2$

Exercise 5A

Without using a calculator evaluate the following

1. 3^3	**2.** 2^7	**3.** $4^2 + 3^2$	**4.** $(4 + 3)^2$	**5.** 6^0
6. 8^0	**7.** $4^{1/2}$	**8.** $16^{1/2}$	**9.** $144^{1/2}$	**10.** $27^{1/3}$
11. $8^{1/3}$	**12.** $16^{3/2}$	**13.** 5^{-2}	**14.** 7^{-1}	**15.** 10^{-2}
16. $8^{-1/3}$	**17.** 2^{-3}	**18.** $16^{-1/4}$	**19.** $27^{2/3}$	**20.** $64^{-2/3}$
21. 9^{-2}	**22.** $16^{-3/2}$	**23.** $(-8)^{2/3}$	**24.** $(-8)^{-2/3}$	**25.** $(\frac{1}{4})^2$
26. $(\frac{2}{3})^2$	**27.** $(\frac{3}{4})^0$	**28.** $(1\frac{1}{4})^2$	**29.** $(2\frac{1}{2})^2$	**30.** $(\frac{9}{16})^{1/2}$
31. $(1\frac{7}{9})^{1/2}$	**32.** $(2\frac{1}{4})^{-1/2}$	**33.** $(6\frac{1}{4})^{3/2}$	**34.** $(2\frac{1}{4})^{-3/2}$	**35.** $(3\frac{3}{8})^{-2/3}$

Express each of the following in the form 2^x

36. $2^2 \times 2^4$	**37.** $2^7 \div 2^3$	**38.** $2^8 \div 2^2$	**39.** $2^7 \times 2^4$
40. $\frac{2^3 \times 2^4}{2^5}$	**41.** $\frac{2^2 \times 2^4}{2^3}$	**42.** $4 \times \frac{2^9}{2^4}$	**43.** $\frac{32 \times 2^4}{2^2 \times 2}$

Simplify each of the following expressions

44. $x^3 \times x^4$ **45.** $(x^2)^3$ **46.** $3x^2 \times 6x^4$ **47.** $6x^2y \times 4x$ **48.** $\frac{6x^4}{2x^2}$

49. $(15x^5) \div (3x^2)$ **50.** $x^4 \times x^{-2}$ **51.** $5x^4y \times 6y^2$ **52.** $3x^3y \times 4y^2x$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Express each of the following in the form a^x

53. $\frac{1}{a}$ **54.** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}$ **55.** $\frac{a^2}{a^3}$ **56.** $a^2 \times a^3$ **57.** $\frac{a}{\sqrt{a}}$

58. $\frac{\sqrt{a}}{a}$ **59.** $(a^2)^3$ **60.** $(\sqrt{a})^3$ **61.** $\sqrt{a} \times a^3$ **62.** $\frac{a^3 \times \sqrt{a}}{a}$

Find the value of x in each of the following

63. $2^x = 64$ **64.** $2^x = 1$ **65.** $2^x = 0{\cdot}5$

66. $2^x = 0{\cdot}25$ **67.** $3^x = \frac{1}{9}$ **68.** $2^4 \times 2^7 = 2^x$

69. $\frac{3^5 \times 3^7}{3^9} = 3^x$ **70.** $\frac{3^6 \times 3^4}{3^2} = 3^x$ **71.** $\frac{2^{15}}{2^7 \times 16} = 2^x$

72. $2^x \times 2^8 = 2^{11}$ **73.** $5^7 \times 5^x = 5^5$ **74.** $7^8 \div 7^x = 49$

75. $\frac{6^5 \times 6^x}{36} = 6^9$ **76.** $\frac{5^7 \times 5^4}{5^x} = 25$

5.2 Variation

Consider the situation of a person buying a number of copies of a book. As the number of copies bought *increases* then the total cost of buying the books *increases*. We say that the total cost (C) is directly proportional to the number of books (N) bought, or that C varies directly with N. This may be written

$$C \propto N \quad \text{or} \quad C = kN \quad \text{for some constant } k.$$

Now consider the situation of a number of cats eating a given quantity of cat food. In this case, as the number of cats *increases*, so the time for which the cat food lasts *decreases*. We say that the time (T) is inversely proportional to the number of cats (N) or that T varies inversely with N.
This may be written

$$T \propto \frac{1}{N} \quad \text{or} \quad T = \frac{k}{N} \text{ for some constant } k.$$

Note that in cases of direct variation we can omit the word 'direct' and simply say C varies with N.

Example 4

Given that y is inversely proportional to the square of x and that when $x = 1{\cdot}5$, $y = 8$, find
(a) a formula giving y in terms of x, (b) the value of y when $x = 2\sqrt{3}$.

(a) y is inversely proportional to the square of x

$\therefore \quad y \propto \frac{1}{x^2}$ or $y = \frac{k}{x^2}$

but $\quad y = 8$ when $x = 1{\cdot}5$,

$\therefore \quad 8 = \frac{k}{(1{\cdot}5)^2}$ which gives $k = 18$.

$\therefore \quad y = \frac{18}{x^2}$ is the required formula.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) Since $y = \dfrac{18}{x^2}$,

when $x = 2\sqrt{3}$, $y = \dfrac{18}{(2\sqrt{3})^2}$

$\therefore \quad y = 1{\cdot}5$ when $x = 2\sqrt{3}$.

Joint variation

In relationships such as $y = kx$ and $y = \dfrac{k}{x}$, where k is a constant, the variable y is a function of only one variable x. However, in some relationships and formulae a variable may be dependent on two or more other variables. For example, in the formula for the curved surface area of a cone, $A = \pi rl$, and A is dependent *jointly* on r, the base radius, and l the slant height of the cone.

Example 5

Given that y varies jointly with x and with the square root of z, and that $y = 2$ when $x = \frac{1}{8}$ and $z = \frac{1}{4}$, find (a) a formula giving y in terms of x and z, (b) the value of y when $x = \frac{3}{8}$ and $z = \frac{1}{6}$.

(a) y varies jointly with x and with the square root of z

$\therefore \quad y \propto x\sqrt{z}$

or $\quad y = kx\sqrt{z}$

but $\quad y = 2$ when $x = \frac{1}{8}$ and $z = \frac{1}{4}$,

$\therefore \quad 2 = k \times \frac{1}{8} \times \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}}$ giving $k = 32$

$\therefore \quad y = 32x\sqrt{z}$

(b) Using $\quad y = 32x\sqrt{z}$

If $\quad x = \frac{3}{8}$ and $z = \frac{1}{6}$, $y = 32 \times \frac{3}{8} \times \sqrt{\frac{1}{6}}$

or $\quad y = 4$

The required formula is $y = 32x\sqrt{z}$ and $y = 4$ when $x = \frac{3}{8}$ and $z = \frac{1}{6}$.

Note that in this example it was stated that y varies jointly with x and with the square root of z, but usually the word 'jointly' can be omitted without any loss of clarity. Thus we can say 'y varies with x and with the square root of z'.

Partial variation

In relationships of the type $y = k_1x + k_2z$, y is said to vary *partly* with x and *partly* with z. The difference between this type of variation and joint variation should be carefully noted.

Example 6

y varies partly with the square root of x and partly with the square of z. Given that $y = 11$ when $x = 9$ and $z = 2$, and that $y = 23$ when $x = 25$ and $z = 4$, find (a) a formula giving y in terms of x and z, (b) the value of x when $y = 30$ and $z = 6$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(a) $y = k_1\sqrt{x} + k_2z^2$

but $y = 11$ when $x = 9$ and $z = 2$,

$\therefore$ $11 = k_1\sqrt{9} + k_2(2)^2$

i.e. $11 = 3k_1 + 4k_2$ ... [1]

and $y = 23$ when $x = 25$ and $z = 4$,

$\therefore$ $23 = k_1\sqrt{25} + k_2(4)^2$

i.e. $23 = 5k_1 + 16k_2$ ... [2]

Solving equations [1] and [2] simultaneously gives

$k_1 = 3, k_2 = \frac{1}{2}$

thus $y = 3\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{2}z^2$

(b) using $y = 3\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{2}z^2$, with $y = 30$ and $z = 6$,

$30 = 3\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{2}(6)^2$

$\therefore$ $\sqrt{x} = 4$

i.e. $x = 16$

The formula is $y = 3\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{2}z^2$ and $x = 16$ when $y = 30$ and $z = 6$.

Exercise 5B

1. Using k (or k_1 and k_2) as constants express each of the following statements as equations
   (a) y varies directly with x,
   (b) y is directly proportional to the cube of x,
   (c) y varies directly with the cube root of x,
   (d) y is inversely proportional to x,
   (e) y varies inversely with the square root of x,
   (f) y varies jointly with x and with the square of z,
   (g) y varies with the square of x and inversely with z,
   (h) y varies with w, x and inversely with z,
   (i) y varies partly with x and partly with z,
   (j) y varies partly with the square of x and partly with z,
   (k) The variation of y is in two parts, one part varies directly with the square root of x and the other varies inversely with the square of z.
2. Given that y is inversely proportional to the square of x and that $y = 1{\cdot}25$ when $x = 2$ find
   (a) a formula giving y in terms of x, (b) the value of y when $x = \frac{1}{4}$.
3. If y varies partly with x and partly with z^2, and $y = 2$ when $x = 4$ and $z = 2$, and $y = 43$ when $x = 2$ and $z = 4$, find
   (a) a formula giving y in terms of x and z, (b) the value of x when $z = \frac{1}{2}$ and $y = -\frac{1}{2}$.
4. For a given spring, the extension x varies directly with the magnitude of the applied force F. If $x = 0{\cdot}3$ metres when $F = 5$ newtons find F as a function of x and hence find x when $F = 8$ newtons.
5. The time period T of a simple pendulum varies directly with the square root of the length (l) of the pendulum. If $T = 1{\cdot}2$ s when $l = 0{\cdot}36$ m find T as a function of l and hence find l when $T = 1$ second.
6. For a constant mass moving in a circular path of radius r the force F, acting towards the centre of the circle, varies directly with the square of the speed v and inversely with the radius of the path. If $F = 240$ newtons when $v = 4$ m/s and $r = 0{\cdot}1$ m express F in terms of v and r and hence find F when $r = 0{\cdot}5$ m and $v = 2$ m/s.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

7. The quarterly telephone charge C is made up of two parts; the first part is a constant and the second part varies directly as the number of units used, u. If the charge is £33 for a quarter in which 400 units are used and £26 for a quarter in which 260 units are used, find C as a function of u and find the charge for a quarter in which 450 units are used.
8. The velocity v of sound waves through metal varies directly with the square root of the modulus of elasticity E of the metal, and inversely with the square root of ρ, the density of the material. For steel $E = 1{\cdot}95 \times 10^{11}$ N/m², $\rho = 7800$ kg/m³ and the velocity of sound through steel is 5000 m/s. Find v in terms of E and ρ and find the velocity of sound in aluminium for which $E = 7{\cdot}436 \times 10^{10}$ N/m² and $\rho = 2750$ kg/m³.

5.3 Elementary theory of logarithms

Given any two positive numbers a and b, there exists a third number c such that $a^c = b$.
The number c is said to be the logarithm of b to the base a and we write $\log_a b = c$.
Thus $a^c = b \Leftrightarrow \log_a b = c$.
The logarithm of x to the base a is the power to which a must be raised to give x.
If $p = \log_a x$ and $q = \log_a y$ then $a^p = x$ and $a^q = y$.

Thus $xy = a^{(p+q)}$ i.e. $\log_a(xy) = p + q \Rightarrow$ $\boxed{\log_a(xy) = \log_a x + \log_a y}$

$\frac{x}{y} = a^{(p-q)}$ i.e. $\log_a\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = p - q \Rightarrow$ $\boxed{\log_a\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = \log_a x - \log_a y}$

$x^n = a^{pn}$ i.e. $\log_a x^n = pn \Rightarrow$ $\boxed{\log_a x^n = n \log_a x}$

If $r = \log_a a$ then $a^r = a$, i.e. $r = 1 \Rightarrow$ $\boxed{\log_a a = 1}$

Example 7

(a) Find x if $\log_x 125 = 3$. (b) Evaluate $\log_3 81$.
(c) Express $7 \log_a 2 - 3 \log_a 12 + 5 \log_a 3$ as a single logarithm.

(a) $\log_x 125 = 3$
$\therefore \quad x^3 = 125$
$= 5^3$
$\therefore \quad x = 5$

(b) let $\log_3 81 = a$
$\therefore \quad 3^a = 81$
$= 3^4$
$\therefore \quad a = 4$

(c) $7 \log_a 2 - 3 \log_a 12 + 5 \log_a 3$
$= \log_a 2^7 - \log_a 12^3 + \log_a 3^5$
$= \log_a\left(\frac{2^7 \times 3^5}{12^3}\right)$
$= \log_a 18$

Common logarithms

If the base of the logarithm of x is 10, we refer to this as a common logarithm and we write this as $\log_{10} x$. Frequently the base is omitted and we write this as $\log x$. If the base is other than 10 then clearly it is essential that the base is named.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Natural logarithms

We shall see in later chapters that a very important set of logarithms are those to the base e, where e is a constant rather like π. Correct to 5 decimal places, e = 2·718 28. These logarithms, to the base e, are referred to as natural logarithms and it is usual to write $\log_e x$ as $\ln x$.

Inverse of logarithmic function

For every positive real number x we can find a unique value y given by $y = \log_a x$.
Thus $f(x) = \log_a x$ is a one-to-one function with domain $\mathbb{R}^+$.
The inverse function of $f: x \to \log_a x$ is the function which maps $\log_a x$ on to x.
This inverse function can be determined by the method shown on page 37, chapter 1.
For the function $f(x) = \log_a x$, let $y = \log_a x$
then $x = a^y$.
Thus, given y, we can return to x using the expression a^y.
The inverse function $f^{-1}(x)$ is $f^{-1}(x) = a^x$.
From section 1.6 on page 44, we would expect the graph of $y = a^x$ to be the reflection of $y = \log_a x$ in the line $y = x$, and question 11 of Exercise 5C verifies this fact.

Example 8

Use your calculator to find, correct to 2 decimal places, the value of x if
(a) $\log 31 = x$, (b) $\log x = 1{\cdot}6$, (c) $\ln x = -0{\cdot}25$.

(a) Using the log function on the calculator, $x = 1{\cdot}49$

(b) $\log x = 1{\cdot}6$
$\therefore\ 10^{1{\cdot}6} = x$
i.e. $x = 39{\cdot}81$

(c) $\ln x = -0{\cdot}25$
$\therefore\ e^{-0{\cdot}25} = x$
i.e. $x = 0{\cdot}78$

Change of base

It is possible to express the logarithm of a to the base b in terms of logarithms to some other base c.

Suppose $y = \log_b a$
then $a = b^y$
$\therefore$ $\log_c a = \log_c b^y$ by taking $\log_c$ of both sides
$= y \log_c b$

$$\therefore \quad y = \frac{\log_c a}{\log_c b} \qquad \boxed{\text{i.e. } \log_b a = \frac{\log_c a}{\log_c b}}$$

putting $c = a$ gives $\log_b a = \dfrac{\log_a a}{\log_a b}$ $\qquad \boxed{\text{i.e. } \log_b a = \dfrac{1}{\log_a b}}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The technique of taking the logarithm of both sides of an equation can be useful when solving equations involving x as a power.

Example 9

Solve, giving your answers correct to 3 decimal places, (a) $3^{x+1} = 15$, (b) $(0{\cdot}8)^{2x} = 0{\cdot}45$.

(a)
$$3^{x+1} = 15$$
$$\therefore \quad \log 3^{x+1} = \log 15$$
$$\therefore \quad (x+1)\log 3 = \log 15$$
$$\therefore \quad x+1 = \frac{\log 15}{\log 3}$$
$$x = \frac{\log 15}{\log 3} - 1$$
$$\text{or} \quad x = 1{\cdot}465$$

(b)
$$(0{\cdot}8)^{2x} = 0{\cdot}45$$
$$\therefore \quad \log(0{\cdot}8)^{2x} = \log 0{\cdot}45$$
$$\therefore \quad 2x\log(0{\cdot}8) = \log 0{\cdot}45$$
$$\therefore \quad 2x = \frac{\log 0{\cdot}45}{\log 0{\cdot}8}$$
$$= 3{\cdot}5784$$
$$\text{or} \quad x = 1{\cdot}789$$

Example 10

Solve for x the equations (a) $5^{2x+1} + 4 = 21 \times 5^x$, (b) $\log_3 x + \log_x 9 = 3$.

(a)
$$5^{2x+1} + 4 = 21 \times 5^x$$
$$\text{or} \quad 5 \times 5^{2x} - 21 \times 5^x + 4 = 0$$
letting $y = 5^x$,
$$5y^2 - 21y + 4 = 0$$
$$(5y - 1)(y - 4) = 0$$
$$y = \tfrac{1}{5} \quad \text{or} \quad y = 4$$
$$\therefore \quad 5^x = \tfrac{1}{5} \quad \text{or} \quad 5^x = 4$$
$$= 5^{-1} \qquad x\log 5 = \log 4$$
$$\text{i.e.} \quad x = -1 \quad \text{or} \quad x = \frac{\log 4}{\log 5} = 0{\cdot}86$$

(b)
$$\log_3 x + \log_x 9 = 3$$
$$\log_3 x + \frac{\log_3 9}{\log_3 x} = 3$$
$$(\log_3 x)^2 + 2 = 3\log_3 x$$
letting $y = \log_3 x$,
$$y^2 - 3y + 2 = 0$$
$$(y - 1)(y - 2) = 0$$
$$y = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad y = 2$$
$$\therefore \quad \log_3 x = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad \log_3 x = 2$$
$$\text{i.e.} \quad x = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad x = 9$$

Straight line graphs

We know that if y is plotted against x for the equation $y = mx + c$, m and c constant, a straight line is obtained. The gradient of this line is m and it cuts the y-axis at $y = c$.

If we consider the relationship

$$y = ax^n \quad (a, n \text{ constant})$$
$$\text{then} \quad \log y = \log(ax^n) = \log a + \log x^n$$
$$\therefore \quad \log y = n\log x + \log a$$

Since this is of the form $Y = mX + C$, where $\log y = Y$, $\log x = X$, then by plotting values of $\log y$ against $\log x$ we shall obtain a straight line graph. In this way we can verify the existence of such a relationship and, by measuring the gradient and the Y-intercept of the straight line graph, we can obtain approximate values of the constants n and $\log a$.

Similarly, suppose a relationship of the form $y = ab^x$ is believed to exist,

$$\text{then} \quad \log y = \log(ab^x) = \log a + x\log b$$
$$\text{i.e.} \quad \log y = x\log b + \log a$$

which is again of the form $Y = mx + C$. Plotting $\log y$ against x will again produce a straight line graph if the relationship does in fact exist. The

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

gradient will, in this case, be log b and the line will cut the Y-axis at $Y = \log_b a$.

This is of course the same technique as was seen in section 3.8 page 89 but now, with our knowledge of logarithms, more involved relationships involving two variables can be tested by seeing whether a straight line results when suitably chosen expressions are plotted against each other.

Exercise 5C

1. Write each of the following statements in the form $a^x = y$.
(a) $\log_m c = d$ (b) $\log_b p = q$ (c) $\log s = t$ (d) $\ln z = r$

2. Find the value of x in each of the following
(a) $\log_2 8 = x$ (b) $\log_3 81 = x$ (c) $\log_x 216 = 3$
(d) $\log_x 16 = 0{\cdot}5$ (e) $\log x = -2$ (f) $\log_4 x = 5\frac{1}{2}$
(g) $\log_8 16 = x$ (h) $\log_9 27 = x$ (i) $-\log_{16} x = 0{\cdot}75$

3. Evaluate the following
(a) $\log_2 32$ (b) $\log_6 36$ (c) $\log_5 625$ (d) $\log_2(\frac{1}{2})$
(e) $\log_2(\frac{1}{4})$ (f) $\log_a 1$ (g) $\log_a a$ (h) $\log_8 2$
(i) $\log_8(\frac{1}{2})$ (j) $\log_{27} 3$ (k) $\log_8 4$ (l) $\log_{27}(\frac{1}{9})$

4. Express the following in terms of log a, log b and log c.
(a) $\log(abc)$ (b) $\log(a^2bc)$ (c) $\log(a^3b^2c)$ (d) $\log(a\sqrt{b})$
(e) $\log\left(\frac{ab}{c}\right)$ (f) $\log\left(\frac{a^2}{bc^3}\right)$ (g) $\log\left(\frac{1}{ab}\right)$ (h) $\log\left(a\sqrt{\left(\frac{b}{c^3}\right)}\right)$
(i) $\log(10ab^2)$ (j) $\log\left(\frac{\sqrt{(10a)}}{b^2}\right)$

5. Express as a single logarithm
(a) $2\log_a 5 + \log_a 4 - \log_a 10$ (b) $2\log_a 3 - \log_a 15 + \log_a 5$
(c) $\log_a 12 - (\frac{1}{2}\log_a 9 + \frac{1}{3}\log_a 8)$ (d) $2\log_a(\frac{1}{2}) + 3\log_a 4 - \log_a(\frac{4}{3})$

6. Express each of the following in the form $\log_a[f(x)]$
(a) $2\log_a x$ (b) $\log_a x + \log_a(x + 3)$
(c) $\log_a(x + 1) - \log_a 2$ (d) $\log_a(x^2 - 1) - \log_a(x + 1)$
(e) $2\log_a x - \log_a x(x + 1)$ (f) $3\log_a x + \log_a(x + 1)$
(g) $4\log_a x - \log_a(x^2 + x^3)$ (h) $\frac{5}{2}\log_a x + \log_a(x + 1) - \log_a\sqrt{x}$

7. Find the value of x in each of the following
(a) $3\log_2 4 = x$ (b) $2\log_4 8 = x$ (c) $4\log_x 2 = 0{\cdot}5$

8. Use your calculator to find x correct to 2 decimal places
(a) $\log 23 = x$ (b) $\ln 23 = x$ (c) $\log x = 0{\cdot}32$
(d) $\log x = 1{\cdot}4$ (e) $\log x = -0{\cdot}65$ (f) $\ln x = 3{\cdot}1$
(g) $\ln x = 0{\cdot}13$ (h) $\ln x = -0{\cdot}45$

9. Given that $\log 2 = 0{\cdot}3$ show that $\log 5 = 0{\cdot}7$. Using these values find the values of the following:
(a) $\log(2{\cdot}5)$ (b) $\log 4$ (c) $\log 25$ (d) $\log 32$
(e) $\log(0{\cdot}5)$ (f) $\log_2 5$ (g) $\log_5 10$

10. Given that $\ln 5 = 1{\cdot}6$ and $\ln 11 = 2{\cdot}4$ find the values of:
(a) $\ln 625$ (b) $\ln 55$ (c) $\ln(2{\cdot}2)$ (d) $\ln 275$
(e) $\ln(0{\cdot}2)$ (f) $\ln(0{\cdot}04)$ (g) $\log_5 11$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

11. (a) Without the use of a calculator copy and complete the following table of values for $y = 2^x$.

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2
y						

(b) Copy and complete the following table of values for $y = \log_2 x$. (Use a calculator and give values correct to 2 decimal places where necessary.)

x	0·2	0·4	0·6	0·8	1	2	3	4
y								

(c) Plot the graphs of $y = 2^x$ and $y = \log_2 x$ on the same set of axes, using a scale of 2 cm to 1 unit on each axis.

12. Show that $\log_a b \times \log_b a = 1$ and hence evaluate
(a) $\log_3 8 \times \log_2 9$, (b) $\log_5 64 \times 2 \log_4 25$, (c) $\log_{10} 8 \times \log_2 1000$.

13. Given that $\log 2 = 0{\cdot}3$, $\log 3 = 0{\cdot}48$ and $\log 17 = 1{\cdot}23$ evaluate
(a) $\log_2 3$, (b) $\log_2 17$.

14. Show graphically that the following figures support the belief that a relationship of the form $y = ak^x$ exists and use your graph to find approximate values for the constants a and k.

x	1	2	3	4	6	8	10
y	3·5	4·9	6·9	9·6	18·8	36·9	72·3

15. Show graphically that the following figures support the belief that a relationship of the form $y = ak^{x^2}$ exists and use your graph to find approximate values for the constants a and k.

x	0·5	1	1·5	2	2·5	3
y	3·6	13·8	129·6	2981	$1{\cdot}679 \times 10^5$	$2{\cdot}318 \times 10^7$

16. Show graphically that the following figures support the belief that a relationship of the form $y = ax^k$ exists and use your graph to find approximate values for the constants a and k.

x	5	8	12	14	20	30
y	22·4	45·3	83·1	104·8	178·9	328·6

17. Show graphically that the following figures support the belief that a relationship of the form $y = a(2 + x)^k$ exists and use your graph to find approximate values for the constants a and k.

x	1	3	8	10	15	20	24
y	5·2	6·7	9·5	10·4	12·4	14·1	15·3

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

18. Using the ln or log function on a calculator solve the following equations giving answers correct to 3 significant figures.

(a) $2^x = 5$ (b) $3^x = 17$ (c) $5^x = 10$
(d) $4^x = 12$ (e) $3^x = 365$ (f) $3^{x+1} = 2^x$
(g) $4^{x+1} = 3^{2-x}$ (h) $5^{x-1} = 2^{3x-1}$ (i) $6^{3x+1} = 7^{2-x}$

19. Solve the following equations (for parts (d) and (e) you will need to use a calculator and should give your answers correct to 3 significant figures).

(a) $2^{2x} - 3 \times 2^x - 4 = 0$ (b) $4^{2x} + 4^{x+2} - 80 = 0$
(c) $3^{2x+1} + 3 = 10 \times 3^x$ (d) $4^{2x} - 4^{x+2} = 80$
(e) $2^{2x+1} - 7 \times 2^x + 6 = 0$ (f) $1 + \log_2 x = \dfrac{12}{\log_2 x}$

20. Solve the following logarithmic equations

(a) $\log_a x + \log_a 4 - \log_a 5 = \log_a 12$ (b) $\log_4 x - \log_4 7 = \frac{1}{2}$
(c) $\log_9 x + \log_9 x^2 + \log_9 x^3 + \log_9 x^4 = 5$ (d) $\log_9 4 + \log_3 x = 3$
(e) $\log_2 x - \log_8 x = 4$ (f) $\log_5 x + 2\log_x 5 = 3$

21. Solve the following simultaneous equations

(a) $2\log_x y = 1$, $xy = 64$ (b) $6\log_3 x + 6\log_{27} y = 7$, $4\log_9 x + 4\log_3 y = 9$ (c) $y\log_2 8 = x$, $2^x + 8^y = 8192$

(d) $\log x - \log 2 = 2\log y$, $x - 5y + 2 = 0$ (e) $5^{x+2} + 7^{y+1} = 3468$, $7^y = 5^x - 76$ (f) $\log_2 x + 2\log_4 y = 4$, $x + 12y = 52$

(g) $\ln 6 + \ln(x - 3) = 2\ln y$, $2y - x = 3$ (h) $2 + \log_2(2x + 1) = 2\log_2 y$, $x = 22 - y$

5.4 Quadratics

Sketching

Example 11

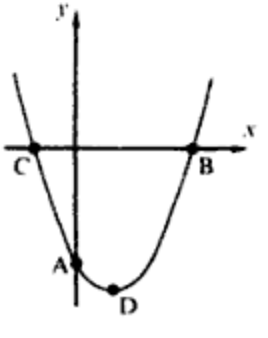
For the curve $y = x^2 - 2x - 3$, find (a) where the curve cuts the y-axis, (b) where the curve cuts the x-axis, (c) the coordinates of any maximum or minimum points, and (d) hence sketch the curve.

(a) On the y-axis, $x = 0$,
$\therefore \quad y = 0 - 0 - 3 = -3$
The curve cuts the y-axis at the point A(0, −3).

(b) On the x-axis, $y = 0$,
$\therefore \quad 0 = x^2 - 2x - 3$
$= (x - 3)(x + 1)$
giving $\quad x = +3$ or $x = -1$
The curve cuts the x-axis at the points B(3, 0) and C(−1, 0).

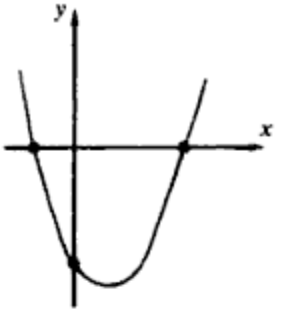
(c) Since $y = x^2 - 2x - 3$
$= (x - 1)^2 - 4$, (by completing the square, see page 11).
when $x = 1$, the value of y is a minimum of -4.
There is a minimum point at D(1, −4).

(d) Knowing the coordinates of the points A, B, C and D a sketch of the curve can now be made.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Note Frequently a satisfactory sketch of a curve can be made without having the coordinates of any maximum or minimum points. In Example 11 we could have made a reasonable sketch without having the coordinates of the point D.
Chapter 11 deals more fully with the techniques of sketching curves.



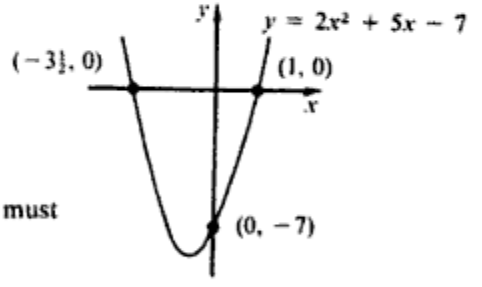
Inequalities

From the introductory chapter, we are familiar with simplifying inequalities of the form $-9 < 2x - 3 \leqslant 7$, to give a range of possible values for x, in this case $-3 < x \leqslant 5$.
The following examples show that it is also possible to find a range of values for x when we are given a quadratic inequality. These ranges can be found by sketching (Example 12), by examining the signs of the factors (Example 13), or by completing the square (Example 14).

Example 12

Find, by sketching, the range (or ranges) of values that x can take if $2x^2 + 5x - 7 \leqslant 0$.

Let $y = 2x^2 + 5x - 7$
$= (2x + 7)(x - 1)$
Graph of $y = 2x^2 + 5x - 7$ cuts y-axis at $(0, -7)$ and cuts x-axis at $(-3\frac{1}{2}, 0)$, $(1, 0)$.
From this information a sketch can be made.



Thus for $y \leqslant 0$, i.e. for the curve to be 'below' the x-axis, we must have $-3\frac{1}{2} \leqslant x \leqslant 1$.

Example 13

By examining the signs of the factors of the expression, find the range of values x can take for the following inequalities to be true:
(a) $x^2 + 3x - 18 \geqslant 0$, (b) $x^2 - x - 8 \leqslant 4$.

In this method we use the fact that $y = (x - a)(x - b)$ will change sign when its graph crosses the x-axis, i.e. when $x = a$ and $x = b$.

(a) $x^2 + 3x - 18 \geqslant 0$
i.e. $(x + 6)(x - 3) \geqslant 0$
$y = (x + 6)(x - 3)$ cuts the x-axis at $x = -6$ and at $x = 3$. Construct a table showing the signs of $(x + 6)(x - 3)$ on either side of these values.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

x	$x < -6$	$-6 < x < 3$	$x > 3$
$x + 6$	$-$ve	$+$ve	$+$ve
$x - 3$	$-$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve
$(x - 3)(x + 6)$	$+$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve

Thus for $(x + 6)(x - 3) \geqslant 0$ (i.e. not $-$ve)

$$x \leqslant -6 \text{ or } x \geqslant 3.$$

(b)
$$x^2 - x - 8 \leqslant 4$$
$$x^2 - x - 12 \leqslant 0$$
i.e. $(x - 4)(x + 3) \leqslant 0$

$y = (x - 4)(x + 3)$ cuts the x-axis at $x = 4$ and at $x = -3$, and y will change sign at $x = 4$ and at $x = -3$. The table shows the sign of y on either side of these values.

x	$x < -3$	$-3 < x < 4$	$x > 4$
$x - 4$	$-$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve
$x + 3$	$-$ve	$+$ve	$+$ve
$(x - 4)(x + 3)$	$+$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve

Thus for $(x - 4)(x + 3) \leqslant 0$ (i.e. not $+$ve)

$$-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$$

Alternatively, the required ranges could be obtained as follows:-

(a) $(x + 6)(x - 3) \geqslant 0 \Rightarrow \left.\begin{array}{l}\text{either } x + 6 \geqslant 0 \text{ and } x - 3 \geqslant 0 \Rightarrow x \geqslant 3 \\ \text{or } \quad x + 6 \leqslant 0 \text{ and } x - 3 \leqslant 0 \Rightarrow x \leqslant -6\end{array}\right\} \Rightarrow x \leqslant -6 \text{ or } x \geqslant 3.$

(b) $(x - 4)(x + 3) \leqslant 0 \Rightarrow \left.\begin{array}{l}\text{either } x - 4 \geqslant 0 \text{ and } x + 3 \leqslant 0 \Rightarrow \text{no solution} \\ \text{or } \quad x - 4 \leqslant 0 \text{ and } x + 3 \geqslant 0 \Rightarrow -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 4\end{array}\right\} \Rightarrow -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 4.$

Example 14

Find the range of values x can take for the following inequalities to be true:
(a) $x^2 + 2x + 3 \geqslant 0$, (b) $x^2 - 3x - 5 \geqslant 0$.

(a)
$$x^2 + 2x + 3 \geqslant 0$$
$$\therefore \quad x^2 + 2x + 1 - 1 + 3 \geqslant 0$$
$$\therefore \quad (x + 1)^2 + 2 \geqslant 0$$
But this is true for all real x.
$\therefore$ $x^2 + 2x + 3 \geqslant 0$ for all real x.

(b)
$$x^2 - 3x - 5 \geqslant 0$$
$$\therefore \quad x^2 - 3x + \frac{9}{4} - \frac{9}{4} - 5 \geqslant 0$$
$$\therefore \quad \left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 - \frac{29}{4} \geqslant 0$$
$$\therefore \quad \left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 \geqslant \frac{29}{4}$$
$$\therefore \quad x - \frac{3}{2} \leqslant \frac{-\sqrt{29}}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad x - \frac{3}{2} \geqslant \frac{\sqrt{29}}{2}$$
$$\text{i.e.} \quad x \leqslant \frac{3 - \sqrt{29}}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad x \geqslant \frac{3 + \sqrt{29}}{2}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 5D

Quadratic sketches

1. For the graph of $y = x^2 - 5x + 4$ find the coordinates of
(a) the point where the line cuts the y-axis,
(b) the points where the line cuts the x-axis,
(c) any maximum or minimum points.
Hence make a sketch of $y = x^2 - 5x + 4$.

2. For the graph of $y = 4 + 3x - x^2$ find the coordinates of
(a) the point where the line cuts the y-axis,
(b) the points where the line cuts the x-axis,
(c) any maximum or minimum points.
Hence make a sketch of $y = 4 + 3x - x^2$.

3. For the graph of $y = -4x^2 - 12x - 5$ find the coordinates of
(a) the point where the line cuts the y-axis,
(b) the points where the line cuts the x-axis,
(c) any maximum or minimum points.
Hence make a sketch of $y = -4x^2 - 12x - 5$.

Each of the statements in questions **4, 5** and **6** refer to the graph of $y = a(x - b)(x - c)$. Find the values of a, b and c in each case ($b \geqslant c$).

4. The curve cuts the x-axis at (1, 0) and at (2, 0) and the y-axis at (0, 4).

5. The curve cuts the x-axis at (−2, 0) and at (3, 0) and the y-axis at (0, −9).

6. The curve *touches* the x-axis at (2, 0) and cuts the y-axis at (0, 12).

Quadratic inequalities

7. Use sketching to determine the range (or ranges) of values x can take for each of the following inequalities.
(a) $(x - 5)(x + 3) \geqslant 0$ (b) $x^2 - 8x + 15 \leqslant 0$
(c) $x^2 - 4x - 5 \geqslant 0$ (d) $2x^2 - 5x - 3 \geqslant 0$
(e) $3x^2 - 19x + 6 \leqslant 0$ (f) $5 - 3x - 2x^2 \geqslant 0$

8. By examining the signs of the factors of the expressions, find the range (or ranges) of values that x can take in each of the following inequalities.
(a) $x^2 + 5x - 6 \leqslant 0$ (b) $x^2 + 7x + 12 \geqslant 0$
(c) $x^2 - 12x + 35 < 0$ (d) $3x^2 - 22x + 35 \geqslant 0$
(e) $6x^2 - x > 15$ (f) $1 + x - 6x^2 \geqslant 0$

9. For each of the following inequalities use the method of completing the square to find the range (or ranges) of values that x can take.
(a) $x^2 + 4x + 1 \geqslant 0$ (b) $x^2 - 5x + 3 \leqslant 0$ (c) $x^2 - 4x + 5 \geqslant 0$
(d) $2x^2 - 3x \leqslant 1$ (e) $2x^2 - 3x \geqslant -2$ (f) $3x^2 \geqslant 2 - 2x$

10. Show that $x^2 + x + 1$ is positive for all real x [hint: use 'completing the square'].

11. Show that $3x^2 + 4x + 2$ is positive for all real x [hint: use 'completing the square'].

12. Use the method of completing the square to find the range of values k can take if $x^2 + 4x + k - 1$ is positive for all real x.

13. Use the method of completing the square to find the range of values k can take if $x^2 + 2kx + 2k + 3$ is positive for all real x.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

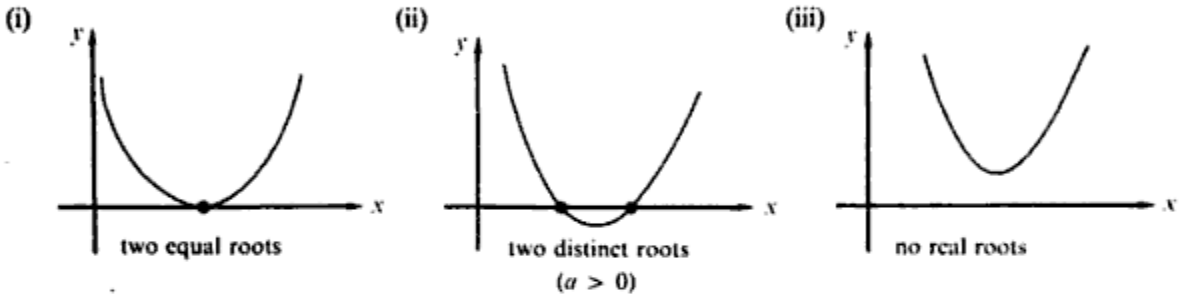
The discriminant

On page 11, the formula $x = \dfrac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$ was used to solve a quadratic equation. The formula applies to the general quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$. The value of the expression $(b^2 - 4ac)$ will determine the nature of the roots of the equation, and it is called the **discriminant** of the equation.

If the discriminant is zero, i.e. $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, the roots of the equation are $x = \dfrac{-b}{2a}$, $x = \dfrac{-b}{2a}$.

If the discriminant is positive, i.e. $b^2 - 4ac > 0$, the roots are unequal and $x = \dfrac{-b + \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$ or $x = \dfrac{-b - \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$

If the discriminant is negative, i.e. $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, there are no real roots of the equation.



The three diagrams of the curve $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ $(a > 0)$ show the three possible cases.

In (i) the curve *touches* the x-axis, i.e. for $y = 0$ there are two equal values of x,

In (ii) the curve cuts the x-axis, i.e. for $y = 0$ there are two real distinct values of x,

In (iii) the curve does not cut the x-axis, i.e. for $y = 0$ there is no real value of x.

Similar diagrams exist for the curve $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ $(a < 0)$. The value of the discriminant will again determine the nature of the roots of the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$.

Example 15

Find the discriminant and state whether the equation will have two real distinct roots, no real roots or a repeated root in each of the following cases.
(a) $3x^2 - 5x + 2 = 0$, (b) $4x^2 - 28x + 49 = 0$, (c) $5x^2 - 7x + 3 = 0$.

(a) Comparing $3x^2 - 5x + 2 = 0$
with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, gives $a = 3$, $b = -5$, $c = 2$.

The discriminant is $b^2 - 4ac$
$= (-5)^2 - 4(3)2$
$= +1$

Since $b^2 - 4ac > 0$ the equation will have 2 real distinct roots.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) Comparing $4x^2 - 28x + 49 = 0$
with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, gives $a = 4$, $b = -28$, $c = 49$.

The discriminant is $b^2 - 4ac$
$= (-28)^2 - 4(4)49$
$= 784 - 784$
$= 0$

Since $b^2 - 4ac = 0$ the equation will have two equal roots, i.e. a repeated root.

(c) Comparing $5x^2 - 7x + 3 = 0$
with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, gives $a = 5$, $b = -7$, $c = 3$.

The discriminant is $b^2 - 4ac$
$= (-7)^2 - 4(5)3$
$= 49 - 60$
$= -11$

Since $b^2 - 4ac < 0$ the equation has no real roots.

Example 16

Find the range of values β can take for the quadratic expression $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta$ to be positive for all real values of x.

The discriminant of $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta$ is $16\beta^2 - 4\beta$.
The graph of $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta$ will not cut the x-axis if $16\beta^2 - 4\beta < 0$
i.e. $4\beta(4\beta - 1) < 0$

β	$\beta < 0$	$0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$	$\beta > \frac{1}{4}$
4β	−ve	+ve	+ve
$4\beta - 1$	−ve	−ve	+ve
$4\beta(4\beta - 1)$	+ve	−ve	+ve

From the table $4\beta(4\beta - 1) < 0$ if $0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$.
Thus $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta$ is always positive or always negative for $0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$.
If $x = 0$, $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta = \beta$ which is positive for $0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$.
Thus the required range is $0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$.
Alternatively, this example could have been answered by the method of completing the square.

Example 17

Find the range, or ranges, of values K can take for $Kx^2 - 4x + 5 - K = 0$ to have two real distinct roots.

The solution to this question needs care since for $K = 0$, the given equation is not a quadratic. This special case is considered separately in the working below.

Comparing $Kx^2 - 4x + 5 - K = 0$
with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ gives $a = K$, $b = -4$ and $c = (5 - K)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

If $K \neq 0$, for 2 real distinct roots

$$16 - 4K(5 - K) > 0$$

i.e. $K^2 - 5K + 4 > 0$

or $(K - 1)(K - 4) > 0$

K	$K < 1$	$1 < K < 4$	$K > 4$
$K - 1$	$-$ve	$+$ve	$+$ve
$K - 4$	$-$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve
$(K - 1)(K - 4)$	$+$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve

$\therefore$ $K < 1, K > 4$.

If $K = 0$,

$-4x + 5 = 0$

$\therefore$ $x = 1\frac{1}{4}$

i.e. only one solution.

Thus $K = 0$ does not give two real distinct roots.

The required ranges are $K < 1$ except $K = 0$ and $K > 4$.

Example 18

Find the range, or ranges, of values K can take for $Kx^2 - 2xK - 3K - 12 = 0$ to have real roots.

(Note: The phrase 'has real roots' should be taken to mean 'has either two real distinct roots or a repeated root'.)

Comparing $Kx^2 - 2xK - 3K - 12 = 0$

with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ gives $a = K$, $b = -2K$ and $c = (-3K - 12)$.

If $K \neq 0$, for one or two real roots,

$$4K^2 - 4K(-3K - 12) \geqslant 0$$

i.e. $K(K + 3) \geqslant 0$

K	$K < -3$	$-3 < K < 0$	$K > 0$
K	$-$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve
$K + 3$	$-$ve	$+$ve	$+$ve
$K(K + 3)$	$+$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve

$\therefore$ $K \leqslant -3, K \geqslant 0$.

If $K = 0$

$-12 = 0$ which is impossible.

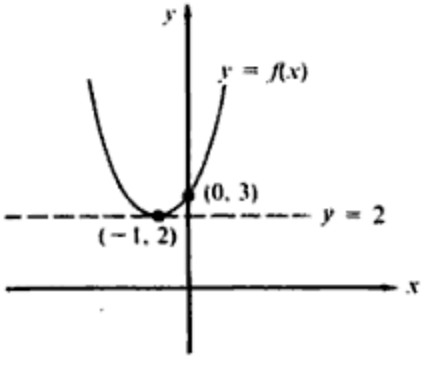
$\therefore$ $K \neq 0$.

The required ranges are $K \leqslant -3$ and $K > 0$.

The range of a quadratic

The graph of the quadratic function $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 3$, is shown in the diagram. From this we can see that for the domain $x \in \mathbb{R}$ the function can only take values $\geqslant 2$, i.e. for real x the range of $f(x)$ is $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \geqslant 2\}$.

Using the discriminant this range can be determined without having to make a sketch of the function.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 19

Find the range of the function $f(x) = x^2 + 6x - 1$ for the domain $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

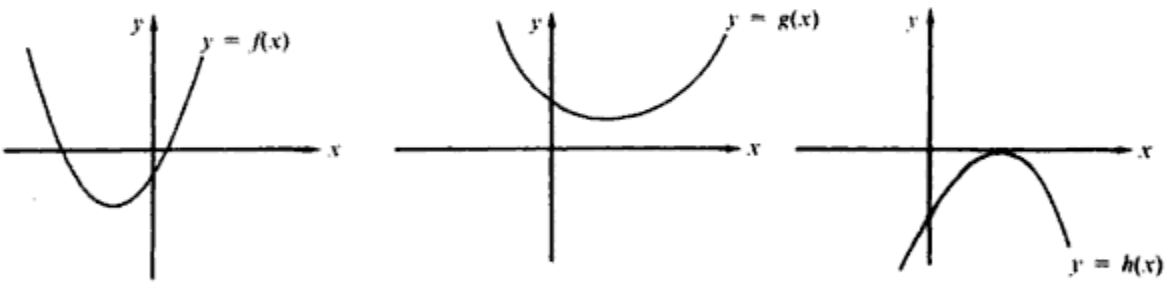
Let $y = x^2 + 6x - 1$
then $0 = x^2 + 6x - 1 - y$
Comparing with $0 = ax^2 + bx + c$ gives $a = 1, b = 6, c = -(1 + y)$.
For real x $b^2 - 4ac \geqslant 0$
i.e. $36 + 4 \times 1 \times (1 + y) \geqslant 0$
giving $y \geqslant -10$
Thus for real x the function $f(x) = x^2 + 6x - 1$ has range $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \geqslant -10\}$.
Alternatively, this range could have been determined by completing the square:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= x^2 + 6x - 1 \\ &= x^2 + 6x + 9 - 9 - 1 \\ &= (x + 3)^2 - 10 \end{aligned}$$

Now $(x + 3)^2 \geqslant 0$,
$\therefore f(x) \geqslant -10$, i.e. for real x, $f(x)$ has range $\{y \in \mathbb{R} : y \geqslant -10\}$.

Exercise 5E

1. The graphs of the quadratic functions $y = f(x)$, $y = g(x)$ and $y = h(x)$ are shown below,



State which of the equations $f(x) = 0$, $g(x) = 0$ and $h(x) = 0$ will have (a) no real roots, (b) two real distinct roots, (c) a repeated root. If all of the functions are of the form $ax^2 + bx + c$, find for which of them (d) $a > 0$, (e) $a < 0$.

2. Each of the following quadratic equations are in the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ (or can be expressed in that form). In each case find the value of $b^2 - 4ac$ and hence state whether the equation will have two real distinct roots, no real roots or a repeated root.
(a) $x^2 + 11x - 2 = 0$ (b) $x^2 - 3x + 3 = 0$ (c) $x^2 + 7x - 2 = 0$
(d) $9x^2 + 6x + 1 = 0$ (e) $3x^2 - 11x + 7 = 0$ (f) $2x^2 + 5x + 4 = 0$
(g) $4x^2 - 12x + 9 = 0$ (h) $7x^2 + 11x + 5 = 0$ (i) $7x^2 - 11x - 5 = 0$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. Find the range of each of the following functions for the domain $x \in \mathbb{R}$.
   (a) $f(x) = x^2 + 4x - 2$
   (b) $f(x) = x^2 + 3x + 5$
   (c) $f(x) = 5 - 2x - x^2$
   (d) $f(x) = 2x^2 - 8x + 3$
   (e) $f(x) = 5x - 1 - 2x^2$
4. If $ax^2 - 8x + 2 = 0$ has a repeated root find the value of a.
5. If $2x^2 + bx + 50 = 0$ has a repeated root find the possible values of b.
6. Find the range(s) of values b can take for $9x^2 + bx + 4 = 0$ to have two real distinct roots.
7. Find the range(s) of values k can take for $x^2 + (k + 1)x + 1 = 0$ to have real roots.
8. Find the range(s) of values k can take for $2x^2 + (3 - k)x + k + 3 = 0$ to have two real distinct roots.
9. Find the range(s) of values k can take for
   (a) $kx^2 + 4x + 3 + k = 0$ to have real roots.
   (b) $kx^2 + 3x + k - 4 = 0$ to have two real distinct roots.
   (c) $kx^2 + 2x + 1 - k = 0$ to have two real distinct roots.
   (d) $kx^2 + 3x(1 - k) + 3 = 0$ to have real roots.
   (e) $kx^2 + k = 8x - 2xk$ to have two real distinct roots.
   (f) $kx^2 + 1 = 4kx - 3k$ to have real roots.
10. Use the discriminant to find the range of values that β can take if $x^2 + 5\beta x + \beta$ is positive for all real x.
11. Prove that $y = x - 3$ is a tangent to the curve $y = x^2 - 5x + 6$ and find the coordinates of the point of contact.
12. Prove that $y = 4x - 9$ is a tangent to $y = 4x(x - 2)$ and find the coordinates of the point of contact.
13. For each part of this question, state which of the following statements apply: (i) the straight line is a tangent to the curve, (ii) the straight line cuts the curve in two distinct points, (iii) the straight line neither cuts nor touches the curve.
   (a) Curve: $y = 3x^2 - 4x - 2$
   Straight line: $y = x - 3$
   (b) Curve: $y = 7x(x - 1)$
   Straight line: $y + 2x + 1 = 0$
   (c) Curve: $y = 9x^2 - 3x + 10$
   Straight line: $y = 3(x + 3)$
   (d) Curve: $y = (3x - 4)(x + 1)$
   Straight line: $y + 10x + 11 = 0$.

Sum and product of the roots of a quadratic equation

If α and β are the roots of the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ then

$$(x - \alpha)(x - \beta) = 0$$

i.e. $x^2 - x(\alpha + \beta) + \alpha\beta = 0$

Comparing this equation with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0 \left(\text{i.e. } x^2 + \frac{bx}{a} + \frac{c}{a} = 0\right)$

we see that $\alpha + \beta = \frac{-b}{a}$, $\alpha\beta = \frac{c}{a}$.

We can therefore state that if α and β are the roots of the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$,

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \alpha + \beta (\text{the sum of the roots}) &= \frac{-b}{a} \\ \alpha\beta (\text{the product of the roots}) &= \frac{c}{a} \end{aligned}}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

We can use our knowledge of the value of $(\alpha + \beta)$ and $\alpha\beta$ to find the values of other symmetrical expressions in α and β. An expression is symmetrical in α and β if writing α for β and β for α leaves the expression unchanged.

Example 20

If α and β are the roots of the equation $x^2 - x - 3 = 0$, state the values of $(\alpha + \beta)$ and $(\alpha\beta)$ and find the values of
(a) $\alpha^2 + \beta^2$, (b) $(\alpha - \beta)^2$, (c) $\alpha^3 + \beta^3$.

Comparing $x^2 - x - 3 = 0$ with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ gives
$a = 1, b = -1, c = -3$.

$$\text{Hence} \quad \alpha + \beta = \frac{-b}{a} = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha\beta = \frac{c}{a} = -3$$

(a)
$$\begin{aligned} &\alpha^2 + \beta^2 \\ &= (\alpha + \beta)^2 - 2\alpha\beta \\ &= 1^2 - 2(-3) \\ &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned} &(\alpha - \beta)^2 \\ &= \alpha^2 - 2\alpha\beta + \beta^2 \\ &= (\alpha + \beta)^2 - 2\alpha\beta - 2\alpha\beta \\ &= 1^2 - 4(-3) \\ &= 13 \end{aligned}$$

(c)
$$\begin{aligned} &\alpha^3 + \beta^3 \\ &= (\alpha + \beta)^3 - 3\alpha^2\beta - 3\alpha\beta^2 \\ &= (\alpha + \beta)^3 - 3\alpha\beta(\alpha + \beta) \\ &= 1^3 - 3(-3)(1) \\ &= 10 \end{aligned}$$

Example 21

If α and β are the roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - 3x - 5 = 0$, find the quadratic equation that has roots of

(a) $\alpha - 3, \beta - 3$ (b) $\dfrac{1}{\alpha + 1}, \dfrac{1}{\beta + 1}$ (c) $\dfrac{1}{\alpha^2}, \dfrac{1}{\beta^2}$.

If α and β are the roots of $x^2 - 3x - 5 = 0$ then $\alpha + \beta = 3$ and $\alpha\beta = -5$.
In each case the method will be to find the sum and the product of the required roots and hence to write down the required equation.

(a)
$$\begin{aligned} \text{sum of new roots} &= \alpha - 3 + \beta - 3 \\ &= \alpha + \beta - 6 \\ &= 3 - 6 \\ &= -3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{product of new roots} &= (\alpha - 3)(\beta - 3) \\ &= \alpha\beta - 3(\alpha + \beta) + 9 \\ &= -5 - 3(3) + 9 \\ &= -5 \end{aligned}$$

Thus in the required equation
$\dfrac{-b}{a} = -3$ and $\dfrac{c}{a} = -5$.

With $a = 1$, $b = 3$ and $c = -5$,
the required equation is
$x^2 + 3x - 5 = 0$.

(b)
$$\begin{aligned} \text{sum of new roots} &= \frac{1}{\alpha + 1} + \frac{1}{\beta + 1} \\ &= \frac{\beta + 1 + \alpha + 1}{(\alpha + 1)(\beta + 1)} \\ &= \frac{(\alpha + \beta) + 2}{\alpha\beta + \beta + \alpha + 1} \\ &= -5 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{product of new roots} &= \left(\frac{1}{\alpha + 1}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\beta + 1}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{\alpha\beta + \alpha + \beta + 1} \\ &= \frac{1}{-5 + 3 + 1} \\ &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

Hence the required equation is
$x^2 + 5x - 1 = 0$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) sum of new roots $= \dfrac{1}{\alpha^2} + \dfrac{1}{\beta^2}$ product of new roots $= \dfrac{1}{\alpha^2\beta^2}$

$$= \frac{\beta^2 + \alpha^2}{\alpha^2\beta^2} \qquad = \frac{1}{25}$$

$$= \frac{(\alpha + \beta)^2 - 2\alpha\beta}{\alpha^2\beta^2}$$

$$= \frac{19}{25}$$

Hence the required equation is $x^2 - \dfrac{19}{25}x + \dfrac{1}{25} = 0$ or $25x^2 - 19x + 1 = 0$.

Note that, although from any quadratic equation we can write down the sum and the product of the roots of that equation, these two results will not of themselves help us to find the roots of the equation.

If α and β are the roots of the equation $x^2 - 7x + 9 = 0$, then $\alpha + \beta = 7$ and $\alpha\beta = 9$.
Solving these two equations simultaneously:
$\alpha = 7 - \beta$ hence $(7 - \beta)\beta = 9$
or $7\beta - \beta^2 = 9$ i.e. $\beta^2 - 7\beta + 9 = 0$ which is the original equation.
However, if some additional information about the roots is available, it is possible to solve the equation by this means as Example 22 shows.

Example 22

Find the roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - 6x + k = 0$ given that one root is three times the other and that k is a constant. Find also the value of k.

Let the roots of the equation be α and 3α.
Then from the equation $x^2 - 6x + k = 0$,

$$\alpha + 3\alpha = 6 \qquad \ldots [1]$$

and

$$\alpha(3\alpha) = k \qquad \ldots [2]$$

From [1], $\alpha = 1\frac{1}{2}$ and therefore $3\alpha = 4\frac{1}{2}$.
From [2], $k = 3\alpha^2 = 3(\frac{3}{2})^2 = \frac{27}{4}$.
The roots of the equation are 1·5 and 4·5 and the constant $k = 6{\cdot}75$.

Exercise 5F

1. State (i) the sum and (ii) the product of the roots of each of the following quadratics:
   (a) $x^2 + 9x + 4 = 0$ (b) $x^2 - 2x - 5 = 0$
   (c) $x^2 - 7x + 2 = 0$ (d) $x^2 - 9x - 3 = 0$
   (e) $2x^2 - 7x + 1 = 0$ (f) $7x^2 + x - 1 = 0$
   (g) $3x^2 + 10x - 2 = 0$ (h) $5x^2 + 10x + 1 = 0$
2. In each part of this question, you are given the sum and product of the roots of a quadratic. In each case, find the quadratic equation in the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ with a, b and c taking integer values.

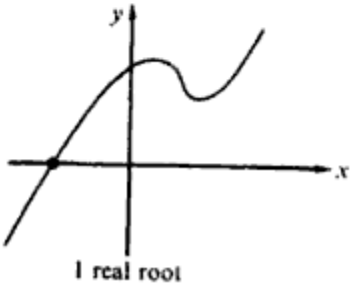
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)
Sum	-3	6	7	$-\frac{2}{3}$	$-\frac{5}{2}$	$-\frac{3}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{4}$	$-1\frac{2}{3}$
Product	-1	-4	-5	$-\frac{7}{3}$	-2	-5	$-\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{5}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

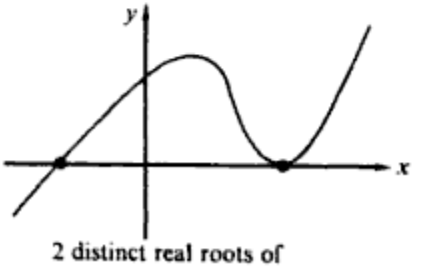
3. If α and β are the roots of the equation $x^2 + 11x + 2 = 0$ find the values of
   (a) $\alpha\beta$ (b) $\alpha + \beta$
   (c) $(\alpha + \beta)^2$ (d) $\alpha^2 + \beta^2$
   (e) $3 - \alpha - \beta$ (f) $\alpha^2\beta + \alpha\beta^2$
4. If α and β are the roots of the equation $2x^2 - 5x + 1 = 0$ find the values of
   (a) $\alpha\beta$ (b) $\alpha + \beta$
   (c) $\alpha^2 + 3\alpha\beta + \beta^2$ (d) $\alpha^2 - 3\alpha\beta + \beta^2$
   (e) $\alpha^3\beta + \alpha\beta^3$ (f) $\frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{1}{\alpha}$.
5. If α and β are the roots of the equation $6x^2 + 2x - 3 = 0$ find the values of
   (a) $\frac{\alpha}{\beta} + \frac{\beta}{\alpha}$ (b) $\frac{1}{\beta^2} + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}$
   (c) $\dfrac{2\beta}{1 + \frac{\beta}{\alpha}}$ (d) $\frac{1}{\alpha\beta} - \frac{1}{\beta} - \frac{1}{\alpha}$
   (e) $\alpha^3 + \beta^3$ (f) $\frac{1}{\alpha^3} + \frac{1}{\beta^3}$
6. If the roots of $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ differ by 3 show that $b^2 = 9a^2 + 4ac$
7. If α and β are roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - 4x + 2 = 0$ find the quadratic equation that has roots of:
   (a) $\alpha + 2, \beta + 2$ (b) $\frac{1}{\alpha}, \frac{1}{\beta}$
   (c) α^2, β^2 (d) $\alpha^2\beta, \beta^2\alpha$
   (e) α^3, β^3 (f) $\frac{1}{\alpha^2}, \frac{1}{\beta^2}$
   (g) $(\alpha + 2\beta), (\beta + 2\alpha)$
   (h) $\frac{\alpha}{\beta}, \frac{\beta}{\alpha}$
8. Find the roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - x + k = 0$ and the value of the constant k given that one root of the equation is twice the other.
9. Find the roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - 3x + k = 0$ and the value of the constant k given that one root of the equation exceeds the other by 2.
10. (a) Find the restrictions on k if the equation $kx^2 + 4x + k - 3 = 0$ has real roots.
    (b) If these roots are of opposite sign find the restrictions on k now.
11. (a) Find the restrictions on k if the equation $kx^2 + (k - 3)x + 1 = 0$ has real roots.
    (b) If these real roots are distinct and are both positive, find the restriction on k now.

5.5 Polynomials in general

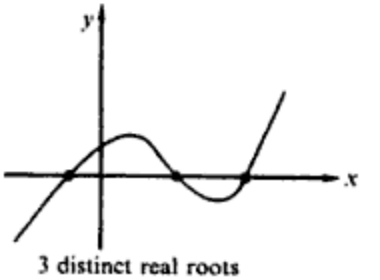
If $f(x) = ax^n + bx^{n-1} + cx^{n-2} + \ldots + k$, $a \neq 0$, then $f(x)$ is said to be a polynomial of degree (or order) n in the variable x.
If we consider the equation $f(x) = 0$ this will have up to n real roots.
In particular, if $f(x)$ is a cubic function $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ then the equation $f(x) = 0$ can have up to three real roots. The number of real roots will depend upon the values of a, b, c and d.
The diagrams show the various possibilities for the number of roots of $f(x) = 0$, for $a > 0$.



1 real root



2 distinct real roots of which one is repeated



3 distinct real roots

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Remainder theorem

If the function $f(x)$, a polynomial in x, is divided by $(x - a)$ until the remainder does not contain x, i.e. it is a constant, then the remainder is equal to $f(a)$.

Proof:

Suppose that when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x - a)$ the quotient is $g(x)$ and the remainder is k, then $f(x) \equiv (x - a) \times g(x) + k$

Substituting $x = a$ in both sides of this identity

$$f(a) = 0 \times g(a) + k$$

$$\text{or} \quad f(a) = k$$

So the remainder when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x - a)$ is equal to $f(a)$.

By a similar argument, when $f(x)$ is divided by $(cx - a)$ the remainder is $f\left(\frac{a}{c}\right)$.

Example 23

Find the remainder when $8x^3 - 4x^2 + 6x + 7$ is divided by
(a) $x - 1$, (b) $2x + 1$.

(a) $f(x) = 8x^3 - 4x^2 + 6x + 7$
Using the remainder theorem, when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x - 1)$, the remainder is $f(1)$.
$f(1) = 8(1) - 4(1) + 6(1) + 7$
$= +17$
The remainder is $+17$.

(b) $f(x) = 8x^3 - 4x^2 + 6x + 7$
Using the remainder theorem, when $f(x)$ is divided by $(2x + 1)$ the remainder is $f(-\frac{1}{2})$.
$f(-\frac{1}{2}) = 8(-\frac{1}{2})^3 - 4(-\frac{1}{2})^2 + 6(-\frac{1}{2}) + 7$
$= -1 - 1 - 3 + 7 = +2$
The remainder is $+2$.

Factor theorem

As a direct deduction from the remainder theorem, we can say that for a polynomial $f(x)$, if $f(a) = 0$, then the remainder when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x - a)$ is zero, i.e. $(x - a)$ is a factor of $f(x)$.

This result is known as the factor theorem and can be used to factorise a polynomial.

Example 24

Factorise the expression $x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8$ and hence calculate the ranges of values of x for which $2x + 8 > 5x^2 - x^3$.

Let $f(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8$

then $f(1) = 1 - 5 + 2 + 8$
$= 6 \qquad \therefore \ (x - 1)$ is not a factor

$f(-1) = -1 - 5 - 2 + 8$
$= 0 \qquad \therefore \ (x + 1)$ is a factor

Other factors can either be found by further use of the factor theorem or by long division.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

factor theorem:

$f(2) = 8 - 20 + 4 + 8$

$\quad = 0 \quad \therefore \quad (x - 2)$ is a factor.

Noticing that if

$f(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8$

$\quad = (x + 1)(x - 2)(x - p)$,

then p must equal 4 so that $(+1)(-2)(-p)$ gives the constant term, 8.

long division:

$$\begin{array}{r|l} & x^2 - 6x + 8 \\ \hline x + 1 & x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 \\ & \underline{x^3 + x^2} \\ & \quad - 6x^2 + 2x \\ & \quad \underline{- 6x^2 - 6x} \\ & \qquad\qquad + 8x + 8 \\ & \qquad\qquad \underline{\underline{+ 8x + 8}} \end{array}$$

and $x^2 - 6x + 8 = (x - 2)(x - 4)$

Thus $x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 = (x + 1)(x - 2)(x - 4)$

For $2x + 8 > 5x^2 - x^3$ we can consider

$x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 > 0$

or $(x + 1)(x - 2)(x - 4) > 0$

As before, consider the signs of these three factors for ranges of values of x:

x	$x < -1$	$-1 < x < 2$	$2 < x < 4$	$x > 4$
$x + 1$	−ve	+ve	+ve	+ve
$x - 2$	−ve	−ve	+ve	+ve
$x - 4$	−ve	−ve	−ve	+ve
$(x + 1)(x - 2)(x - 4)$	−ve	+ve	−ve	+ve

Thus $2x + 8 > 5x^2 - x^3$ if $-1 < x < 2$ or if $x > 4$.

Notes Consider the cubic $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$. For $a = 1$, when searching for values of x for which $f(x) = 0$, we can restrict our attention to those numbers that are factors of d. Thus, in the last example we know immediately that $f(3) \neq 0$ because $(x - p)(x - q)(x - 3)$ will not give 8 as the constant term.

For $a \neq 1$, the process is not as easy and so, having found one factor, it is advisable to use long division to find any others.

Relationships between roots and coefficients

We have already seen on page 149, that if α and β are the roots of the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, then $\alpha + \beta = \dfrac{-b}{a}$ and $\alpha\beta = \dfrac{c}{a}$.

Similar relationships exist between the roots and coefficients of polynomials of order higher than two.

Suppose that α, β and γ are the roots of a cubic equation of the type $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$. By the factor theorem, since $x = \alpha$ is a root of the cubic equation $(x - \alpha)$ must be a factor and, in a similar way, so must $(x - \beta)$ and $(x - \gamma)$.

Thus $(x - \alpha)(x - \beta)(x - \gamma) = 0$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

By expanding these brackets and comparing the result with $ax^3 + bx^2 + cd + d = 0$, the following results are obtained.

$\alpha + \beta + \gamma = \frac{-b}{a}$, $\beta\gamma + \alpha\gamma + \alpha\beta = \frac{c}{a}$ and $\alpha\beta\gamma = \frac{-d}{a}$

The details of the proof are left as an exercise for the reader: see question 15 of Exercise 5G.

Exercise 5G

1. Find the remainder when
   (a) $6x^3 + 7x^2 - 15x + 4$ is divided by $x - 1$,
   (b) $2x^3 - 3x^2 + 5x + 3$ is divided by $x + 1$,
   (c) $x^3 - 7x^2 + 6x + 1$ is divided by $x - 3$,
   (d) $5 + 6x + 7x^2 - x^3$ is divided by $x + 2$,
   (e) $x^4 - 3x^3 + 2x^2 + 5$ is divided by $x - 1$,
   (f) $8x^3 - 10x^2 + 7x + 3$ is divided by $2x - 1$,
   (g) $9x^3 + 4$ is divided by $3x + 2$.
2. Factorise the following expressions
   (a) $x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x + 6$ (b) $2x^3 + 7x^2 - 7x - 12$
   (c) $2x^3 + 3x^2 - 17x + 12$ (d) $6x^3 - 5x^2 - 17x + 6$
   (e) $2x^4 + 7x^3 - 17x^2 - 7x + 15$ (f) $6x^4 + 31x^3 + 57x^2 + 44x + 12$
3. Factorise the expression $x^3 - 3x^2 - 4x + 12$. Hence calculate the ranges of values of x for which $x^3 - 3x^2 > 4x - 12$.
4. Factorise the expression $6x^3 - 7x^2 - x + 2$. Hence calculate the ranges of values of x for which $2 - x < 7x^2 - 6x^3$.
5. The remainder obtained when $2x^3 + ax^2 - 6x + 1$ is divided by $(x + 2)$ is twice the remainder obtained when the same expression is divided by $(x - 1)$. Find the value of a.
6. The remainder obtained when $3x^3 - 6x^2 + ax - 1$ is divided by $(x + 1)$ is equal to the remainder obtained when the same expression is divided by $(x - 3)$. Find the value of a.
7. Given that $(x + 2)$ is a factor of $2x^3 + 6x^2 + bx - 5$ find the remainder when the expression is divided by $(2x - 1)$.
8. The expression $3x^3 + 2x^2 - bx + a$ is divisible by $(x - 1)$ but leaves a remainder of 10 when divided by $(x + 1)$. Find the values of a and b.
9. The expression $b + ax - 4x^2 + 8x^3$ gives a remainder of -19 when divided by $(x + 1)$ and a remainder of 2 when divided by $(2x - 1)$. Find the values of a and b.
10. The expression $6x^3 - 23x^2 + ax + b$ gives a remainder of 11 when divided by $(x - 3)$ and a remainder of -21 when divided by $(x + 1)$. Find the values of a and b and hence factorise the expression.
11. If $x^2 + bx + c$ and $x^2 + dx + e$ have a common factor of $(x - p)$ show that $p = \frac{e - c}{b - d}$.
12. Find the coordinates of the points where the curve $y = x^3 + 6x^2 + 11x + 6$ cuts
    (a) the y-axis, (b) the x-axis.
    Hence make a sketch of the curve and state the ranges of values x can take for $x^3 + 6x^2 + 11x + 6 \leqslant 0$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

13. Find the coordinates of the points where the curve $y = x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8$ cuts (a) the y-axis, (b) the x-axis.
Hence make a sketch of the curve and state the ranges of values x can take for $x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 > 0$.

14. Factorise the cubic expression $2x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x + 12$.
Give the coordinates of the point where $y = 2x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x + 12$
(a) cuts the y-axis, (b) cuts the x-axis, (c) touches the x-axis.
Hence sketch the curve $y = 2x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x + 12$ and state the range of values x can take for $2x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x + 12 < 0$.

15. If α, β and γ are the three roots of the cubic $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$ prove that

$$\alpha + \beta + \gamma = \frac{-b}{a}, \quad \alpha\beta + \beta\gamma + \alpha\gamma = \frac{c}{a}, \quad \alpha\beta\gamma = \frac{-d}{a}.$$

16. If α, β and γ are the three roots of the cubic $x^3 - 2x^2 - 4x + 5 = 0$ use the results of question 15 to find the values of:

(a) $\alpha + \beta + \gamma$ (b) $\alpha\beta\gamma$

(c) $\alpha^2\beta\gamma + \alpha\beta^2\gamma + \alpha\beta\gamma^2$ (d) $\frac{1}{\alpha} + \frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{1}{\gamma}$

(e) $(\alpha + 1)(\beta + 1)(\gamma + 1)$ (f) $\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2$

17. If α, β and γ are the three roots of the cubic $2x^3 + 5x^2 - 4x - 10 = 0$ use the results of question 15 to find the values of

(a) $\frac{1}{\alpha\beta\gamma}$ (b) $\frac{1}{\alpha} + \frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{1}{\gamma}$ (c) $\frac{1}{\alpha\beta} + \frac{1}{\beta\gamma} + \frac{1}{\alpha\gamma}$

Hence find the cubic equation having roots of $\frac{1}{\alpha}$, $\frac{1}{\beta}$ and $\frac{1}{\gamma}$.

Exercise 5H Examination questions

1. If $5^x \cdot 25^{2y} = 1$ and $3^{5x} \cdot 9^y = \frac{1}{3}$ calculate the value of x and of y. (Cambridge)

2. A variable R is directly proportional to the square of P and inversely proportional to L, where P and L are two other variables. Given that $R = 2$ when $P = 3$ and $L = 18$, determine R when $P = 5$ and $L = 50$. (S.U.J.B.)

3. A variable, r, is inversely proportional to the square of another variable, t. Given that $r = \frac{3}{4}$ when $t = 2$, find the positive value of t when $r = \frac{1}{3}$. (S.U.J.B.)

4. Find the values of p, q, r if
(i) $\log_3 81 = p$, (ii) $\log_q 64 = 2$, (iii) $\log_2 r = -4$. (S.U.J.B.)

5. Use the substitution $y = 2^x$ to solve for x the equation

$$2^{2x+1} - 2^{x+1} + 1 = 2^x.$$

(A.E.B.)

6. Find the value of x for which

$$2^{3x+1} = 3^{x+2},$$

giving three significant figures in your answer. (Cambridge)

7. Solve the equation

$$e^{\ln x} + \ln e^x = 8.$$

(London)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. (i) Simplify:

(a) $\log x^2 - \log xy$, (b) $\log z + \log \frac{1}{z}$,

(c) $\dfrac{\log x^3 - \log x}{\log x^2 - \log x}$, (d) $\log(\log y^2) - \log(\log y)$.

(ii) Solve the equation $(4{\cdot}381)^{2x-5} = (8{\cdot}032)^x$. (Oxford)

9. The variables x and y satisfy a law of the form $x^n y = k$, where n and k are constants. Measured values of x and y are given in the table below.

x	1·2	1·6	2·0	2·6	3·5	4·5
y	11·0	6·31	3·98	2·36	1·32	0·79

By plotting a suitable straight-line graph, estimate the values of n and k. Use your graph to estimate the value of y when $x = 3$. (A.E.B.)

10. The charge q coulombs on a capacitor is given by the formula

$$q = 3{\cdot}16 \times 2{\cdot}72^{-4{\cdot}32t},$$

where t is the time in seconds.

Calculate

(i) q when $t = 0$; (ii) q when $t = 0{\cdot}2$; (iii) t when $q = 1{\cdot}58$.

At time $t = T$, q takes the value Q.

Prove that, when q takes the value $\frac{1}{2}Q$, $t = T + \dfrac{\log 2}{4{\cdot}32 \times \log 2{\cdot}72}$.

(Oxford)

11. Given that $\log_2 x + 2\log_4 y = 4$, show that $xy = 16$. Hence solve for x and y the simultaneous equations

$$\log_{10}(x + y) = 1,$$
$$\log_2 x + 2\log_4 y = 4.$$

(A.E.B.)

12. Establish the formula $\log_y x = \dfrac{1}{\log_x y}$.

Solve the simultaneous equations

$\log_x y + 2\log_y x = 3$,

$\log_9 y + \log_9 x = 3$. (J.M.B.)

13. (a) Find the range of values of a for which

$$(2 - 3a)x^2 + (4 - a)x + 2 = 0$$

has no real roots.

(b) Find the values of k for which the line $y = x + k$ is a tangent to the curve $x^2 + xy + 2 = 0$. (Cambridge)

14. If α^2 and β^2 are the roots of $x^2 - 21x + 4 = 0$ and α and β are both positive, find:

(i) $\alpha\beta$; (ii) $\alpha + \beta$; (iii) the equation with roots $\dfrac{1}{\alpha^2}$ and $\dfrac{1}{\beta^2}$. (S.U.J.B)

15. Given that α and β are the roots of the equation $x^2 - bx + c = 0$,

(a) show that $(\alpha^2 + 1)(\beta^2 + 1) = (c - 1)^2 + b^2$,

(b) find, in terms of b and c, a quadratic equation whose roots are

$\dfrac{\alpha}{\alpha^2 + 1}$ and $\dfrac{\beta}{\beta^2 + 1}$. (A.E.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

16. Find the real values of k for which the equation $x^2 + (k + 1)x + k^2 = 0$ has (a) real roots, (b) one root double the other. (A.E.B.)

17. The roots of the quadratic equation

$$(x + 2)^2 - 2kx = 0,$$

where k is a non-zero real constant, are denoted by α and β. Obtain a quadratic equation whose roots are α^2 and β^2. Find a quadratic equation whose roots are $\sqrt{\gamma}$ and $\sqrt{\delta}$, where γ and δ are the roots of

$$x^2 - 28x + 16 = 0.$$

(London)

18. The cubic polynomial $6x^3 + 7x^2 + ax + b$ has a remainder of 72 when divided by $(x - 2)$ and is exactly divisible by $(x + 1)$. Calculate a and b. Show that $(2x - 1)$ is also a factor of the polynomial and obtain the third factor. (S.U.J.B.)

19. (a) The expression $6x^2 + x + 7$ leaves the same remainder when divided by $x - a$ and by $x + 2a$, where $a \neq 0$. Calculate the value of a.

(b) Given that $x^2 + px + q$ and $3x^2 + q$ have a common factor $x - b$, where p, q, and b are non-zero, show that $3p^2 + 4q = 0$.

(Cambridge)

20. Given that $f(x) \equiv 3 - 7x + 5x^2 - x^3$, show that $3 - x$ is a factor of $f(x)$. Factorize $f(x)$ completely and hence state the set of values of x for which $f(x) \leqslant 0$. (London)

21. Express the polynomial

$$f(x) = 2x^4 + x^3 - x^2 + 8x - 4$$

as the product of two linear factors and a quadratic factor $q(x)$. Prove that there are no real values of x for which $q(x) = 0$. (A.E.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

6
Matrices

6.1 Basic Concepts

Information can often be conveniently presented as an array of rows and columns.
Bus timetables, football league results and conversion tables often use this form of presentation. Such an arrangement of information is called a matrix.
The matrix on the right shows the number of televisions and videos sold in three shops in a particular month. The matrix has 2 rows and 3 columns and is said to be a 2×3 matrix, or a matrix of *order* 2×3. An $n \times m$ matrix would have n rows and m columns.

$$\begin{array}{c} \\ \text{T.V.} \\ \text{video} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccc} \text{shop 1} & \text{shop 2} & \text{shop 3} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 20 & 7 & 13 \\ 31 & 9 & 10 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

It can be useful to combine several matrices. For example, if we had the matrix that showed the numbers of T.V.'s and video's the three shops had sold in the previous month, we could add the matrices to give the numbers sold in each shop over the two-month period. It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the rules for combining matrices but the following statements, examples and exercise should serve to refresh the memory.

If matrices **A**, **B** and **C** are defined as follows:

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} i & j & k \\ l & m & n \end{pmatrix}$$

then $\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} a+e & b+f \\ c+g & d+h \end{pmatrix}$

$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} a-e & b-f \\ c-g & d-h \end{pmatrix}$

Only matrices of the same order can be added or subtracted.
Thus $\mathbf{A} \pm \mathbf{C}$ and $\mathbf{B} \pm \mathbf{C}$ cannot be determined because **A** and **B** are 2×2 matrices and **C** is a 2×3 matrix.

$$s\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} sa & sb \\ sc & sd \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{AB} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} ae+bg & af+bh \\ ce+dg & cf+dh \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{AC} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} i & j & k \\ l & m & n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} ai+bl & aj+bm & ak+bn \\ ci+dl & cj+dm & ck+dn \end{pmatrix}$$

Matrices can be multiplied together if the number of columns in the first matrix equals the number of rows in the second matrix.
Thus **AB**, **BA**, **AC** and **BC** can all be found but **CB** and **CA** cannot.
Matrices that can be multiplied together are said to be *conformable* for multiplication.

The *transpose* of a matrix **A** is written $\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}$ and is found by interchanging the rows and columns.

Thus $\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}} = \begin{pmatrix} a & c \\ b & d \end{pmatrix}$; $\mathbf{B}^{\mathrm{T}} = \begin{pmatrix} e & g \\ f & h \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{C}^{\mathrm{T}} = \begin{pmatrix} i & l \\ j & m \\ k & n \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2 × 2 matrices

The *determinant* of a 2 × 2 matrix is obtained as follows:

If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ then det $\mathbf{A}\left(\text{or } |\mathbf{A}| \text{ or } \begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix}\right) = ad - bc$.

Two particular 2 × 2 matrices are **Z**, the zero or null matrix $= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

and **I**, the identity matrix $= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

Note that for any 2 × 2 matrix **A**, $\mathbf{A} \pm \mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{IA} = \mathbf{AI} = \mathbf{A}$.
The *inverse* of a matrix **A** is written $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ and is such that
$\mathbf{AA}^{-1} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}$, the identity matrix.

If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ then $\mathbf{A}^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{ad - bc}\begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix}$ or $\begin{pmatrix} d/\det \mathbf{A} & -b/\det \mathbf{A} \\ -c/\det \mathbf{A} & a/\det \mathbf{A} \end{pmatrix}$

i.e. to determine the inverse of a matrix **A**, interchange the elements of the leading diagonal of **A**, change the signs of the elements of the other diagonal and divide by the determinant of the matrix.

Note If the determinant of a matrix is zero, the inverse cannot be determined because 1/0 is meaningless. Any 2 × 2 matrix with determinant zero is called a *singular* matrix as it has no inverse.

Example 1

If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$ find, where they exist,

(a) **A** + **B**, (b) **BC**, (c) **BA**, (d) **AB**, (e) **CB**, (f) $\mathbf{B}^{\mathrm{T}}$, (g) det **B**,
(h) $\mathbf{B}^{-1}$, (i) the 2 × 2 matrix **D** such that **BD** = **C**.

(a) **A** and **B** are not of the same order and so **A** + **B** cannot be determined.

(b) $\mathbf{BC} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 13 + 36 & 2 + 12 \\ 0 - 27 & 0 - 9 \end{pmatrix}$

$= \begin{pmatrix} 49 & 14 \\ -27 & -9 \end{pmatrix}$

(c) $\mathbf{BA} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 + 4 \\ 0 - 3 \end{pmatrix}$

$= \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

(d) $\mathbf{AB} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ which cannot be determined.

(e) $\mathbf{CB} = \begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 13 + 0 & -52 + 6 \\ -9 + 0 & 36 - 9 \end{pmatrix}$

$= \begin{pmatrix} 13 & -46 \\ -9 & 27 \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(f) $\mathbf{B}^{\mathrm{T}} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

(g) $\det \mathbf{B} = (1 \times 3) - (0 \times -4)$
$= 3$

(h) $\mathbf{B}^{-1} = \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ or $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1\frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix}$

(i) We require $\mathbf{D}$ such that $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}(\mathbf{D}) = \begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$

Premultiplying both sides by $\mathbf{B}^{-1}$ and remembering that $\mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{I}$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}(\mathbf{D}) = \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \qquad (\mathbf{D}) = \frac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -6 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus the required matrix $\mathbf{D}$ is $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

Example 2

Solve the simultaneous equations $\quad 4x - y = 1$
$\quad -2x + 3y = 12$ by *matrix* methods.

First we must express the equations in matrix form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

Premultiplying both sides by the inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{10}\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{10}\begin{pmatrix} 15 \\ 50 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus $x = 1{\cdot}5$ and $y = 5$

Exercise 6A

1. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -3 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 \\ -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and

$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ find, where they exist,

(a) $\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$	(b) $\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}$	(c) $2\mathbf{A}$	(d) $\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{D}$
(e) $2\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}$	(f) $\mathbf{AB}$	(g) $\mathbf{BA}$	(h) $\mathbf{A}^2$
(i) $\mathbf{BC}$	(j) $\mathbf{CB}$	(k) $\mathbf{CD}$	(l) $\mathbf{DC}$
(m) $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$	(n) $\mathbf{B}^{-1}$	(o) $\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}$	(p) $\mathbf{C}^{\mathrm{T}}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2. Determine all the possible products that can be formed using any two of the following each time

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

3. Five football teams took part in a league competition in which they each played each other once in the first half of the season and again in the second half of the season. The results matrix for the first half of the season is shown below:

$$\begin{array}{l} \\ \text{Aces} \\ \text{Bruisers} \\ \text{City} \\ \text{Defenders} \\ \text{Exiles} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccc} \text{Won} & \text{Drawn} & \text{Lost} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

The results of the matches played in the second half of the season were as follows:

Bruisers 3	: Aces 4	Exiles 2	: City 2
City 1	: Bruisers 0	Defenders 1	: Aces 0
Exiles 1	: Defenders 0	Exiles 3	: Bruisers 2
Defenders 2	: City 2	City 3	: Aces 0
Exiles 1	: Aces 5	Defenders 2	: Bruisers 3

Construct a results matrix for the whole season.

If points are awarded: 3 for a win, 1 for a draw and 0 for a loss, use the points matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ to determine the league positions at the end of the season.

What would the league positions be if points were awarded: 2 for a win, 1 for a draw, 0 for a loss?

4. Find the values of x and y in each of the following matrix equations.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -5 \\ 2 & x \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 & y \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 \\ 5 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

(b) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ y \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} x \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}$

(c) $2\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$

(d) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + x\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix}$

(e) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & x \\ 5 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & y \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 & 3 \\ 13 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$

(f) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ x & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ -4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 7 \\ 3 & y \end{pmatrix}$

(g) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & x \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ y & -3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 5 \\ 2 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$

(h) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

(i) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 9 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix}$

(j) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

5. By letting $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{pmatrix}$ prove that $(\mathbf{AB})^{\mathrm{T}} = \mathbf{B}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}$ and that $(\mathbf{AB})^{-1} = \mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{A}^{-1}$.

6. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 5 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 \\ 11 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 3 \\ -5 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 7 \\ -2 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$ find the 2×2 matrices $\mathbf{X}$, $\mathbf{Y}$ and $\mathbf{Z}$ given that $\mathbf{AX} = \mathbf{B}$, $\mathbf{BY} = \mathbf{C}$ and $\mathbf{CZ} = \mathbf{D}$.

7. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ -4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ find the values of m and n given that $\mathbf{A}^2 = m\mathbf{A} + n\mathbf{I}$ where $\mathbf{I}$ is the identity matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

8. Find the possible values x can take given that $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} x^2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3x \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ 2 & x \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{AB} = \mathbf{BA}$.

9. Solve the following simultaneous equations by matrix methods.

(a) $x - y = 5$, $3x + 2y = 5$ (b) $x - 3y = 3$, $5x - 9y = 11$ (c) $x + 3y = 1$, $2x - 4y = 1$

10. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & -3 & 5 \\ -5 & -4 & 7 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ find $\mathbf{AB}$.

Hence find the values of x, y and z satisfying the three equations

$$\begin{aligned} -4x - 3y + 5z &= 3 \\ -5x - 4y + 7z &= 4 \\ x + y - z &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

6.2 Transformations

A transformation of a plane takes any point A in the plane and maps it onto one and only one image A′, also lying in the plane.

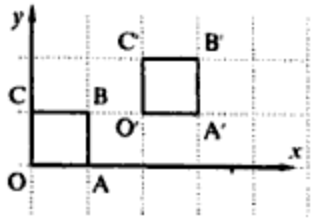
We say that the point A(x, y), position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$, has an *image* A′$(x', y')$, position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix}$, under the transformation.

The nature of certain transformations can best be seen by considering the effect the transformation has on the unit square OABC. Examples of some of the common types of transformation are shown below.

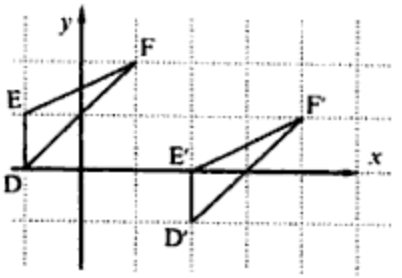
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(a) Translations

e.g. OABC → O′A′B′C′ by the translation vector $\begin{pmatrix}2\\1\end{pmatrix}$

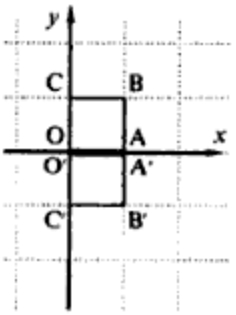


e.g. DEF → D′E′F′ by the translation vector $\begin{pmatrix}3\\-1\end{pmatrix}$



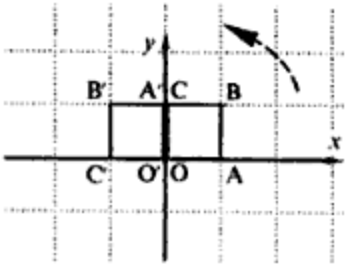
(b) Reflections

e.g. Reflection in the x-axis
OABC → O′A′B′C′



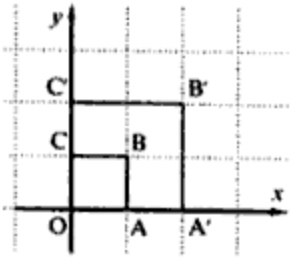
(c) Rotations

e.g. Rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the origin (or 270° clockwise about the origin)
OABC → O′A′B′C′

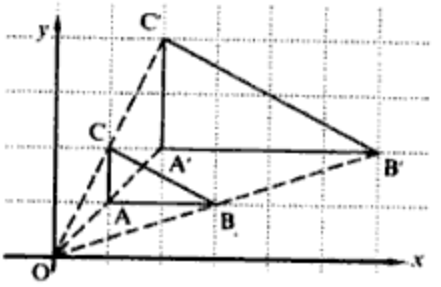


(d) Enlargements (or dilatations)

e.g. Enlargement, scale factor 2, centre (0, 0)
OABC → O′A′B′C′



e.g. Enlargement, scale factor 2, centre (0, 0)
ABC → A′B′C′

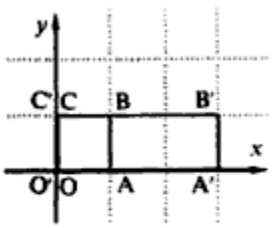


Note A transformation that reduces the size of a shape, e.g. all sides halved, would be an enlargement, scale factor $\frac{1}{2}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

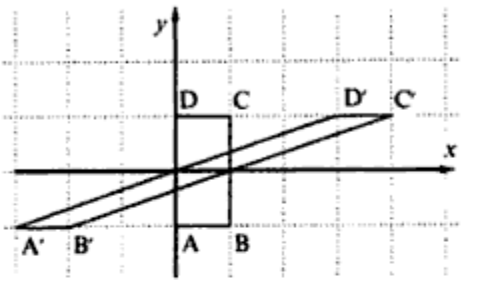
(e) Stretch in a particular direction

e.g. Stretch parallel to the x-axis, $\times 3$
OABC → O′A′B′C′



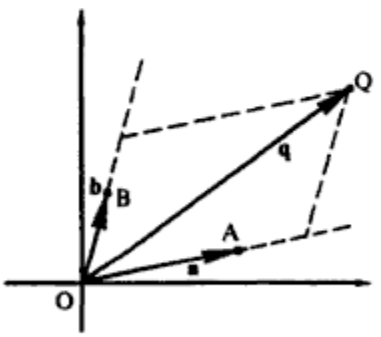
(f) Shear with some line fixed

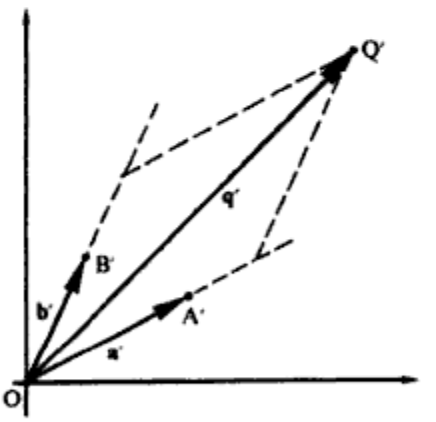
e.g. Shear with x-axis fixed and (0, 1) → (3, 1)
ABCD → A′B′C′D′



A transformation is said to be linear if any linear relationship between position vectors is conserved under the transformation, i.e. if a linear transformation maps a point A position vector **a** onto its image A′ position vector **a**′, and if $\mathbf{a} = \lambda\mathbf{p} + \mu\mathbf{q}$, it follows that $\mathbf{a}' = \lambda\mathbf{p}' + \mu\mathbf{q}'$.

For example, suppose that A and B are two points with position vectors **a** and **b** respectively and Q is a point with position vector **q** where $\mathbf{q} = \frac{3}{2}\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$. If under some linear transformation T the images A′, B′ and Q′ have position vectors **a**′, **b**′ and **q**′, then $\mathbf{q}' = \frac{3}{2}\mathbf{a}' + 2\mathbf{b}'$.





All linear transformations of the plane can be expressed as a pair of equations of the form $\begin{cases} x' = ax + by \\ y' = cx + dy \end{cases}$ or, writing this in matrix form $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$

Thus, every linear transformation of the plane has an associated 2×2 matrix.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Proof: Consider a linear transformation that maps the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix}$ onto the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix}a\\c\end{pmatrix}$, maps the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix}$ onto the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix}b\\d\end{pmatrix}$ and maps the point A with position vector $\begin{pmatrix}x\\y\end{pmatrix}$ onto A′ with position vector $\begin{pmatrix}x'\\y'\end{pmatrix}$.

Writing $\begin{pmatrix}x\\y\end{pmatrix}$ as $x\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} + y\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix}$ it follows that $\begin{pmatrix}x'\\y'\end{pmatrix} = x\begin{pmatrix}a\\c\end{pmatrix} + y\begin{pmatrix}b\\d\end{pmatrix}$

i.e. $\begin{cases}x' = xa + yb\\ y' = xc + yd\end{cases}$ or, in matrix form $\begin{pmatrix}x'\\y'\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}a & b\\c & d\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}x\\y\end{pmatrix}$ as required.

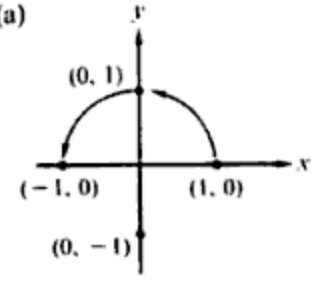
The following points should also be noted:

1. The associated 2×2 matrix can be determined by examining the images of $\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix}$.
   If $\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}a\\c\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}b\\d\end{pmatrix}$, then the transformation matrix is $\begin{pmatrix}a & b\\c & d\end{pmatrix}$.
2. Under any linear transformation, the origin (0, 0) maps onto itself.
3. Under a translation by the vector $\begin{pmatrix}r\\s\end{pmatrix}$, the transformation equations are $\begin{cases}x' = x + r\\ y' = y + s\end{cases}$.
   Thus a translation is *not* a linear transformation.

Example 3

Find the matrices corresponding to each of the following linear transformations,
(a) a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the origin, (b) a reflection in the x-axis.

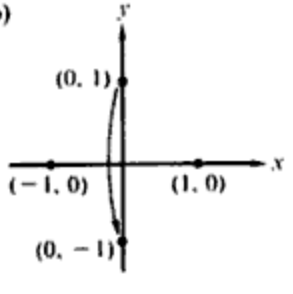
(a)



Under this transformation $\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}-1\\0\end{pmatrix}$

Thus the required matrix is $\begin{pmatrix}0 & -1\\1 & 0\end{pmatrix}$

(b)



Under this transformation $\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}0\\-1\end{pmatrix}$

Thus the required matrix is $\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\0 & -1\end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 4

A linear transformation **T** has matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$. Find (a) the image of the point (2, 3) under **T**, (b) the coordinates of the point having an image of (7, 2) under **T**.

If (x', y') is the image of (x, y) then $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$

(a) In this case $(x, y) = (2, 3)$ $\quad \therefore \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus (1, 5) is the image of the point (2, 3) under **T**.

(b) In this case $(x', y') = (7, 2)$ $\quad \therefore \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$

Premultiplying both sides of this equation by the inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$:

$$\tfrac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\tfrac{1}{3}\begin{pmatrix} 9 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \quad x = 3 \quad \text{and} \quad y = -1$$

Thus (3, −1) is the point having an image of (7, 2) under **T**.

Example 5

Find the 2 × 2 matrix that will transform the point (1, 2) to (3, 3) and the point (−1, 1) to (−3, 3).

Let the matrix be $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$

Thus $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

$\therefore$ $a + 2b = 3$ ... [1] $\qquad -a + b = -3$ ... [3]

$c + 2d = 3$ ... [2] $\qquad -c + d = 3$ ... [4]

Solving [1] and [3] simultaneously gives $a = 3$, $b = 0$.
Solving [2] and [4] simultaneously gives $c = -1$, $d = 2$.

The required matrix is $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

The following facts regarding transformation matrices should also be noted:

1. If a matrix **T** transforms some shape ABC to its image A′B′C′, then the inverse matrix $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ maps A′B′C′ back onto ABC.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2. If matrix **T** corresponds to a certain linear transformation, then det **T** gives the scale factor for any change of area under the transformation, i.e. if **T** transforms ABC → A′B′C′ and det **T** = t, then area A′B′C′ = $|t|$ × area ABC.
   Thus any matrix with a determinant equal to 1 leaves the area of a shape unchanged. What happens if the determinant is zero, i.e. a singular matrix?

   Consider the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and the images of various points, say (1, 3) (2, 5) and (−3, 1).

   $$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 14 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 24 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

   Notice that all the images lie on the line $y = 2x$.
   To show that all points are mapped onto this line, we consider the general point (x, y).

   $$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x + 2y \\ 2x + 4y \end{pmatrix}$$

   $$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x + 2y \\ 2(x + 2y) \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{i.e. all image points lie on the line } y = 2x.$$

   Thus a singular matrix maps all points in the plane onto a line.
3. If matrix **P** transforms (x, y) to (x', y') and matrix **Q** transforms (x', y') to (x'', y''), then the single matrix equivalent to **P** followed by **Q** [i.e. the matrix that will transform $(x, y) \to (x'', y'')$ direct] is given by **QP**.

   Proof: $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{P}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} x'' \\ y'' \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{Q}\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix}$

   $$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} x'' \\ y'' \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{QP}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{as required.}$$

Exercise 6B

1. The points A(3, 2), B(−1, 4), C(2, 5) and D(1, −1) are transformed to A′, B′, C′, and D′ by the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 1 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the coordinates of A′, B′, C′, and D′.
2. Under a certain transformation the image (x', y') of a point (x, y) is obtained by the rule:

   $$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

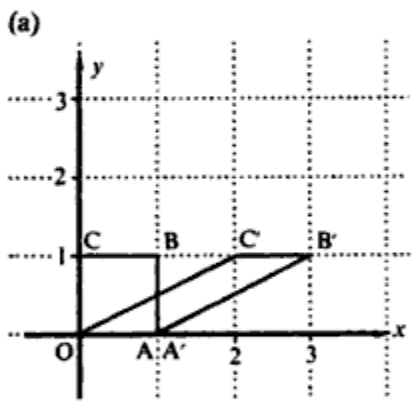
   Find (a) the image of the point (2, 1), (b) the image of the point (−1, 3), (c) the point with an image of (1, −6), (d) the point with an image of (−1, 11).
3. Find the 2 × 2 transformation matrix that will map the point (−2, 3) onto (−7, 6) and (1, −1) onto (3, −1).
   Find the image of the point (−1, 3) under this linear transformation and the coordinates of the point that has an image of (6, −2).
4. The square ABCD is transformed to $A_1B_1C_1D_1$ by the transformation

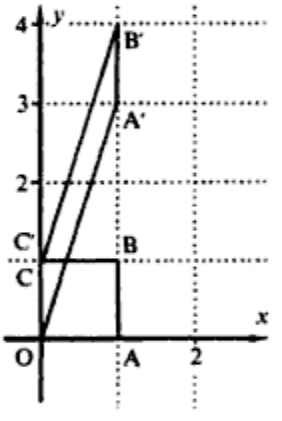
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ -3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$. If A, B, C and D have coordinates (1, 0), (3, 0), (3, 2) and (1, 2) respectively find (a) the coordinates of A_1, B_1, C_1, and D_1,
(b) the area of $A_1B_1C_1D_1$,
(c) the matrix that will transform $A_1B_1C_1D_1$ back to ABCD.

5. Find the 2×2 transformation matrices **P**, **Q**, **R** and **S** given that
(a) matrix **P** represents a reflection in the y-axis,
(b) matrix **Q** represents a 90° clockwise rotation about the origin,
(c) matrix **R** represents a reflection in the line $y = x$,
(d) matrix **S** transforms the point $(2, -3)$ to $(4, 14)$ and the point $(1, 3)$ to $(11, -2)$.
Use your answers to (a), (b) and (c) to show that a reflection in the y-axis followed by a 90° clockwise rotation about the origin is equivalent to a reflection in the line $y = x$.

6. The linear transformations shown below are shears transforming OABC to OA′B′C′. For each transformation, write down
(i) the associated 2×2 matrix,
(ii) the equations of the transformation in the form $x' = ax + by$
$y' = cx + dy$.





7. A 1st shape is transformed to a 2nd shape by the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and a 3rd shape is obtained from the 2nd shape using the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 5 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the single matrix that would transform the 1st shape to the 3rd shape direct. If the 1st shape has an area of 5 sq. units, find the areas of the 2nd and 3rd shapes.

8. Find the matrices corresponding to the following linear transformations.
(a) 180° rotation about the origin,
(b) enlargement scale factor 3, centre (0, 0),
(c) reflection in the line $y = -x$,
(d) stretch ($\times 2$) parallel to the y-axis, x-axis fixed,
(e) shear with x-axis fixed and $(0, 1) \to (1, 1)$,
(f) shear with $y = x$ fixed and $(1, 0) \to (0, -1)$,
(g) stretch ($\times 3$) perpendicular to $y = -x$ and with $y = -x$ fixed,
(h) shear with $y = x$ fixed and $(0, 2) \to (4, 6)$,
(i) shear with $y = 2x$ fixed and $(0, 4) \to (-2, 0)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

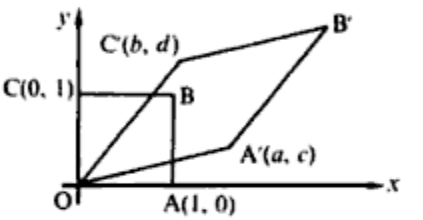
9. Give a geometrical description of the effect of each of the following transformation matrices.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (d) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (e) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

(f) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (g) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (h) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (i) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 8 \end{pmatrix}$ (j) $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 3 \\ -3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$

10. Prove that the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ -2 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points of the x–y plane onto a straight line and find the equation of that line.

11. The diagram shows the unit square OABC and, under a certain transformation, its image which is the parallelogram OA′B′C′. If A′ and C′ have coordinates (a, c) and (b, d) respectively, prove that the area of OA′B′C′ is $(ad - bc)$ sq. units.



12. A particular transformation takes any point A(x, y) and first reflects the point in the y-axis and then translates this new point by 2 units in the direction of the positive x-axis and 3 units in the direction of the positive y-axis to give the image point A′(x', y'). Represent this transformation in the form

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & * \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} * \\ * \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{aligned} x' &= ax + by + c \\ y' &= dx + ey + f \end{aligned}$

13. A certain transformation maps a point A(x, y) onto its image A′(x', y') according to the rule:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 3 \\ -2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Find (a) the image of the point $(2, -1)$,
(b) the point with an image of $(-7, 6)$,
(c) the coordinates of the point that is mapped onto itself by the transformation.

6.3 Further considerations

Invariant points

If a transformation maps some point A(x, y) onto itself, then A is said to be an *invariant point* of the transformation.

Example 6

Find any invariant points of the transformations given by

(a) $\begin{aligned} x' &= 2y - 3 \\ y' &= x + 1 \end{aligned}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(a) If A(x, y) is an invariant point, then $x = 2y - 3$
and $y = x + 1$
Solving simultaneously gives $x = 1$ and $y = 2$

Thus the point (1, 2) is invariant under the transformation $\begin{cases} x' = 2y - 3 \\ y' = x + 1 \end{cases}$

(b) If A(x, y) is an invariant point, then $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

i.e. $x = 2x - y + 3$
and $y = 3x + 4y - 3$
Solving simultaneously gives $x = -1$ and $y = 2$

Thus the point $(-1, 2)$ is invariant under the transformation $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

Transformation of a line

A linear transformation will map the straight line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$ onto the straight line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a}' + \lambda\mathbf{b}'$, i.e. any point lying on $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$ will be transformed to a point on the image line $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a}' + \lambda\mathbf{b}'$.
All parallel lines will have image lines that are parallel.
Any line that maps onto itself is said to be an **invariant line** of the transformation. It is important to realise that any line which is invariant under a certain transformation need not necessarily be made up of points that are invariant under the transformation. For example, under a stretch parallel to the x-axis, the x-axis itself is an invariant line (as indeed is any line of the form $y = c$). However on the x-axis, only the point (0, 0) is an invariant point under this transformation.

Example 7

All points on the line $y = 2x - 3$ are transformed by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the equation of the image line.

Any point on the line $y = 2x - 3$ will have coordinates of the form $(k, 2k - 3)$

Thus $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ 2k - 3 \end{pmatrix}$

$= \begin{pmatrix} 2k + 2k - 3 \\ 3k - 2k + 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4k - 3 \\ k + 3 \end{pmatrix}$

i.e. $x' = 4k - 3$ and $y' = k + 3$
Eliminating k from these two equations gives $4y' = x' + 15$. Thus all images (x', y') lie on the line $4y = x + 15$.
The line $4y = x + 15$ is the image of $y = 2x - 3$ under the transformation $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$
Alternatively we could take two points on the line $y = 2x - 3$, find the

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

images of these points under the transformation and then find the equation of the straight line passing through these two image points. The reader should verify that this method does again give the answer $4y = x + 15$.

Example 8

All points on the line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ are transformed by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the equation of the image line.

Now $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$ will map onto $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a}' + \lambda\mathbf{b}'$

In this case $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

thus $\mathbf{a}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ $\quad \mathbf{b}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

Thus the image line will have vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

Example 9

Prove that the line $y = 2x - 1$ is mapped onto itself under the transformation $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

Any point on the line $y = 2x - 1$ has coordinates of the form $(k, 2k - 1)$

Thus $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ 2k - 1 \end{pmatrix}$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 3k - 2k + 1 \\ 4k - 2k + 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} k + 1 \\ 2k + 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

i.e. $\quad x' = k + 1$ and $y' = 2k + 1$

Eliminating k from these two equations gives $y' = 2x' - 1$. Thus any image point (x', y') lies on the line $y = 2x - 1$, i.e. $y = 2x - 1$ is mapped onto itself as required.

Example 10

Show that the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points on the line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ onto a single point and find the position vector of this point.

$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$ will map onto $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a}' + \lambda\mathbf{b}'$

In this case $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

thus $\mathbf{a}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ $\qquad \mathbf{b}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

$= \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ $\qquad = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$

Thus $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ maps onto $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$

$= \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

The matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points on the line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ onto a single point, position vector $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

Example 11

Find the equations of any lines that pass through the origin and map onto themselves under the transformation whose matrix is $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$.

Any straight line passing through the origin has an equation of the form $y = mx$ and any point on the line will have coordinates of the form (k, mk).

Thus $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ mk \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3k + 2mk \\ 3k + 4mk \end{pmatrix}$

Now if $y = mx$ maps onto itself then the point $(3k + 2mk, 3k + 4mk)$ must also lie on $y = mx$.

i.e. $3k + 4mk = m(3k + 2mk)$

giving $3 + 4m = 3m + 2m^2$

$0 = 2m^2 - m - 3$

$0 = (2m - 3)(m + 1)$

$\therefore \quad m = \frac{3}{2}$ or -1.

Thus the required lines are $y = \frac{3}{2}x$ and $y = -x$.

Check: $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ \frac{3}{2}k \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6k \\ 9k \end{pmatrix}$ which lies on $y = \frac{3}{2}x$

$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ -k \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} k \\ -k \end{pmatrix}$ which lies on $y = -x$

Example 12

Find the equations of any straight lines that are invariant under the transformation

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 3 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Any straight line will be of the form $y = mx + c$ and any point on the line will have coordinates of the form $(k, mk + c)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Thus $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 3 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ mk + c \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6k + 3mk + 3c + 4 \\ 4k - 2mk - 2c - 1 \end{pmatrix}$

Now if $y = mx + c$ is invariant, then this point (x', y') must also lie on $y = mx + c$.

i.e. $\quad 4k - 2mk - 2c - 1 = m(-6k + 3mk + 3c + 4) + c$

giving $\quad k(4 + 4m - 3m^2) = 3mc + 4m + 3c + 1 \qquad \ldots [1]$

This equation must be true for all values of k (i.e. equation [1] is an identity in k).

Thus $4 + 4m - 3m^2 = 0$ and $3mc + 4m + 3c + 1 = 0 \qquad \ldots [2]$

i.e. $\quad 3m^2 - 4m - 4 = 0$

giving $\quad m = -\frac{2}{3}$ or 2

From [2], if $m = -\frac{2}{3}$, $c = \frac{5}{3}$ and if $m = 2$, $c = -1$.

This gives the required lines as $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{5}{3}$ and $y = 2x - 1$.

However we must check this solution:

checking $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{5}{3}$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 3 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ -\frac{2}{3}k + \frac{5}{3} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -8k + 9 \\ \frac{16}{3}k - \frac{13}{3} \end{pmatrix} \text{ which lies on } y = -\tfrac{2}{3}x + \tfrac{5}{3}.$$

Thus $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{5}{3}$ is invariant under the transformation

checking $y = 2x - 1$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 3 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ 2k - 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus all points on the line $y = 2x - 1$ are mapped onto the point $(1, 1)$ and so $y = 2x - 1$ is *not* an invariant line

The line $3y + 2x = 5$ is the only invariant line under the transformation.

Note: The above method will not detect invariant lines of the form $x = c$, a constant (i.e. lines parallel to the y-axis). Such invariant lines may exist if the 2×2 matrix involved has a zero in the 'top right' position. The existence of such invariant lines must then be tested for:

e.g. $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2x + 6 \\ 4x + y + 2 \end{pmatrix}$

For all values of y the x-coordinate will be unchanged by this transformation if $x = -2x + 6$ i.e. $x = 2$.

Thus $x = 2$ would be an invariant line for the transformation.

Eigenvectors and eigenvalues

Example 11 considered invariant lines that passed through the origin. Now under any linear transformation, the origin itself is an invariant point. If point A lies on an invariant line passing through the origin, then its image A′ must also lie on this line. The position vectors OA and OA′ may be of different magnitudes but *will* be in the same, or exactly opposite directions,

i.e. if $\overrightarrow{OA} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ and $\overrightarrow{OA'} = \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix}$

it follows that $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \lambda\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ for λ a positive or negative constant.

The vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ is called an *eigenvector* for the transformation and λ the corresponding *eigenvalue*.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Now for the transformation with matrix $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$, we know that $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$.

Thus if values of x, y and λ can be found such that $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \lambda\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$, then $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ is an eigenvector for the transformation, λ is the associated eigenvalue and the point (x, y) lies on an invariant line passing through the origin.

Furthermore if $\lambda = 1$, then $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ and the invariant line consists of invariant points.

Example 13 below is similar to example 11 but the method of solution uses the idea of eigenvectors and eigenvalues.

Example 13

Find the equations of any lines passing through the origin that are mapped onto themselves by the transformation defined by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

If $A(x, y)$ lies on a line that passes through the origin and that maps onto itself, then the vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ will be an eigenvector. Thus $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \lambda\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$

i.e. $\quad 4x + y = \lambda x$ giving $(4 - \lambda)x = -y$

and $\quad 3x + 2y = \lambda y$ giving $3x = (\lambda - 2)y$

dividing: $\dfrac{4 - \lambda}{3} = \dfrac{-1}{\lambda - 2}$

thus $0 = (\lambda - 1)(\lambda - 5)$

and $\lambda = 1$ or 5

With $\lambda = 1$, $4x + y = \lambda x$ becomes $3x + y = 0$

With $\lambda = 5$, $4x + y = \lambda x$ becomes $y = x$

Thus any point with position vector given by the eigenvector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ must lie on $3x + y = 0$ or $y = x$, and so these are the required lines.

Notice that the eigenvectors are not unique. In the last example, *any* point lying on the line $3x + y = 0$ will have a position vector that is an eigenvector with eigenvalue 1,

e.g. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ are all eigenvectors with eigenvalue 1:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} = 1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix} = 1\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = 1\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Similarly $(1, 1)$, $(3, 3)$ and $(-2, -2)$ all lie on $y = x$ and so the position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$ are all eigenvectors with eigenvalue 5:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = 5\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = 5\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = 5\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 6C

1. Find any invariant points of the transformations given by

(a) $x' = 3y + 2$, $y' = 2x - y + 4$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

(c) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 4 \\ 2 & -5 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

2. Two transformations **P** and **T** transform the point (x, y) to its image (x', y') according to the following rules:

$\mathbf{P}\begin{cases} x' = 3x + y \\ y' = x - 1 \end{cases}$ $\mathbf{T}\begin{cases} x' = 2x - y - 3 \\ y' = 1 - x \end{cases}$

Express the transformations **P**, **T**, **PT** and **TP** in the form

$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & * \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} * \\ * \end{pmatrix}$

Find any invariant points under the transformation

(a) **P**, (b) **T**, (c) **PT**, (d) **TP**.

3. Find the equations of the image lines formed when the lines $y = 2x + 1$ and $3y = 2x - 1$ are transformed using the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$.

4. Find the equation of the image line produced by translating all of the points on the line $y = 3x - 1$ by the vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.

5. Find vector equations of the image lines formed when the lines $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ are transformed using the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$.

6. Find the 2×2 transformation matrix **T** that maps $(3, -1)$ onto $(13, -7)$ and $(-1, 3)$ onto $(1, 5)$. Find the equations of the lines obtained when **T** is applied to $y = x$, $y + 2x = 3$ and $y = 2x + 3$.

7. The transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ transforms a line L to the line $y = 2x + 3$. Find the equation of L.

8. Find the vector equation of the line which, when transformed by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, has an image line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

9. A transformation **T** assigns to any point (x, y) an image (x', y') according to the rule $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$.

(a) Find the equation of the image lines obtained when all points on the lines $y = 2x$ and $y = x - 3$ undergo the transformation **T**.

(b) Prove that the line $y = 3x + 1$ maps onto itself under the transformation **T**.

10. Prove that the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points on the line $y = 3x$ onto themselves.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

11. Prove that all lines of the form $y = x + a$ are mapped onto themselves under the transformation given by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$.

12. Prove that the lines $y = x + 5$ and $y + 3x = 1$ are mapped onto themselves under the transformation that maps (x, y) onto (x', y') according to the relationship $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -9 \end{pmatrix}$.

13. Show that the transformation with matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points on the line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ onto a single point and find the position vector of this point.

14. Show that the transformation with matrix $\begin{pmatrix} -4 & 2 \\ 6 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points on the line $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$ onto a single point and find the position vector of this point.

15. Prove that all points on the line $y + 3x + 2 = 0$ are mapped onto a single point under the transformation that maps (x, y) onto (x', y') according to the relationship $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and find the coordinates of this single point.

16. Find the equations of any straight lines that pass through the origin and that map onto themselves under the transformation defined by the matrix

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} -5 & 2 \\ -4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} -3 & 3 \\ 1 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} a & 1 \\ 8 & a \end{pmatrix}$

17. Find the 2×2 matrix that maps $(1, 2)$ onto $(-3, 0)$ and $(-2, -3)$ onto $(2, -1)$. For the transformation defined by this matrix, find the equations of two invariant straight lines passing through the origin. Which of these two lines is a set of invariant points under the transformation?

18. If $y = 4x$ is mapped onto itself under the transformation $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ a & -3 \end{pmatrix}$, find the value of a and the equation of the other line that passes through the origin and is mapped onto itself by the transformation.

19. Find any straight lines that are invariant under the transformation that maps (x, y) onto (x', y') according to the relationship

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -2 & 7 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -12 \end{pmatrix}$, (b) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 8 & 1 \\ 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$,

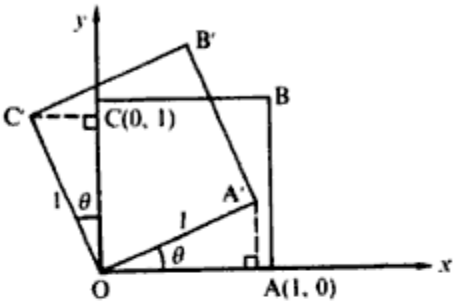
(c) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$, (d) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$,

(e) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 6 & -3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

6.4 General reflections and rotations

A general rotation about the origin



The diagram shows the unit square OABC rotated through an angle θ, anticlockwise about the origin, to its image OA'B'C'.
As we can see from the diagram

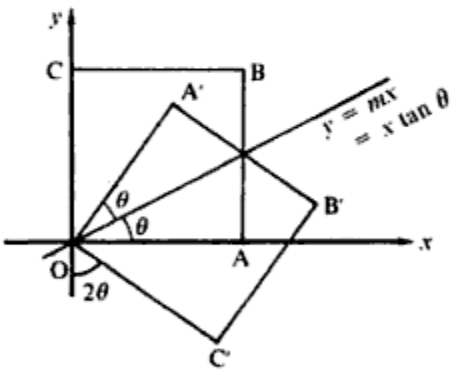
$$\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}\cos\theta\\ \sin\theta\end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}-\sin\theta\\ \cos\theta\end{pmatrix}$$

Thus the matrix representing this transformation will be $\begin{pmatrix}\cos\theta & -\sin\theta\\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta\end{pmatrix}$.

The determinant of this matrix is $\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta$, which equals 1, as we would expect for a transformation that has no effect on the area of a shape.

> Thus any rotation of the x–y plane about the origin can be represented by a matrix of the form $\begin{pmatrix}a & -b\\ b & a\end{pmatrix}$ where $a^2 + b^2 = 1$.

A general reflection in a line through the origin



The diagram shows the unit square OABC reflected in the line $y = mx$, where $m = \tan\theta$, to its image OA'B'C'.
As can be seen from the diagram

$$\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}\cos 2\theta\\ \sin 2\theta\end{pmatrix}$$

and $\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}\sin 2\theta\\ -\cos 2\theta\end{pmatrix}$.

Thus the matrix representing this transformation will be $\begin{pmatrix}\cos 2\theta & \sin 2\theta\\ \sin 2\theta & -\cos 2\theta\end{pmatrix}$

Again the determinant is as we would expect for such a transformation.

> Thus any reflection of the x–y plane in a straight line passing through the origin can be represented by a matrix of the form $\begin{pmatrix}a & b\\ b & -a\end{pmatrix}$ where $a^2 + b^2 = 1$.

Suppose now that we wish to find the matrix representation of a rotation about some point other than the origin.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 14

Find the matrix representing a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the point A (3, 5).

First take some general point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$.

We now translate the plane so that point A is moved to the origin. Thus our point $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ becomes $\begin{pmatrix} x - 3 \\ y - 5 \end{pmatrix}$.

We now rotate the plane 90° anticlockwise about the origin: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x - 3 \\ y - 5 \end{pmatrix}$

and translate the plane so that point A moves back to (3, 5): $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x - 3 \\ y - 5 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

Thus if (x, y) has image (x', y') under a 90° anticlockwise rotation about (3, 5).

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x - 3 \\ y - 5 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -y + 5 + 3 \\ x - 3 + 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -y + 8 \\ x + 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Thus a 90° anticlockwise rotation about the point (3, 5) can be defined by the equations $\begin{aligned} x' &= -y + 8 \\ y' &= x + 2 \end{aligned}$ or, in matrix form $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

Notice that this is simply a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the origin followed by a translation.

If $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ represents a rotation of angle θ about the origin, then the composite transformation of this rotation followed by a translation $\begin{pmatrix} e \\ f \end{pmatrix}$, i.e. $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} e \\ f \end{pmatrix}$, represents a rotation of angle θ about some other point.

If $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ represents a reflection in some line $y = mx$, then $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} e \\ f \end{pmatrix}$ will represent either a reflection or a glide reflection in some line parallel to $y = mx$ (as shown in the diagrams on the next page).

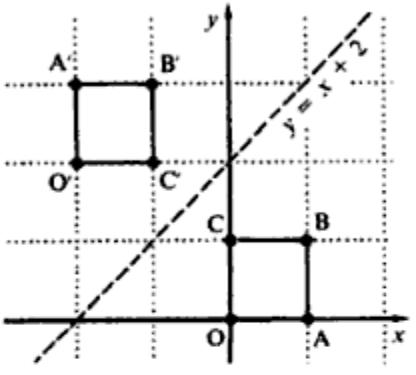
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Diagram showing the effect of

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

on the square OABC

$(0, 0) \to (-2, 2)$ $(1, 0) \to (-2, 3)$
$(1, 1) \to (-1, 3)$ $(0, 1) \to (-1, 2)$



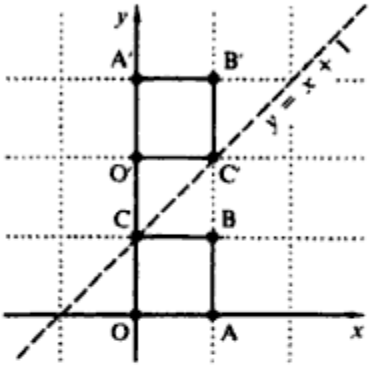
i.e. a reflection in the line $y = x + 2$.

Diagram showing the effect of

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

on the square OABC

$(0, 0) \to (0, 2)$ $(1, 0) \to (0, 3)$
$(1, 1) \to (1, 3)$ $(0, 1) \to (1, 2)$



i.e. a glide reflection along the line $y = x + 1$ with $(0, 1) \to (1, 2)$.

Example 15

Find the matrix equation representing an enlargement, scale factor 3, centre $(-1, 4)$.

First take some general point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ and let the point $(-1, 4)$ be A.

Then translate the plane so that A is moved to the origin, i.e. $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ becomes $\begin{pmatrix} x + 1 \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix}$

Now perform an enlargement, scale factor 3, centre the origin: $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x + 1 \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix}$

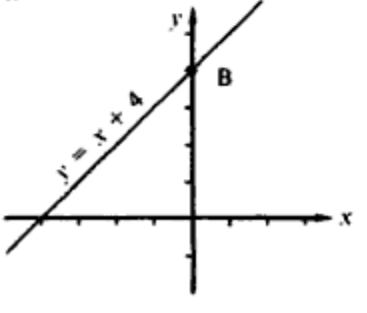
and translate the plane to move A back to $(-1, 4)$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x + 1 \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -8 \end{pmatrix}$$

Example 16

Find the matrix equation representing a reflection in the line $y = x + 4$.



METHOD 1

$y = x + 4$ cuts the y-axis at point B $(0, 4)$.
Translating B to the origin takes (x, y) to $(x, y - 4)$.

Now reflect in the line $y = x$: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix}$

and translate B back to $(0, 4)$: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$\therefore \quad \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

METHOD 2

We know that a reflection in the line $y = x + 4$ will be of the form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \text{reflection in} \\ y = x \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \text{a translation}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix}$$

Now under this reflection, any point on $y = x + 4$ must be invariant.
Considering the point (0, 4)

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} \quad \therefore \quad a = -4 \quad \text{and} \quad b = 4$$

Thus the required matrix equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

Example 17

Give a full geometric description of the transformations defined by the following equations.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

This is a rotation of 90° clockwise about the origin followed by a translation and will be equivalent to a 90° clockwise rotation about some other point (a, b).
The point (a, b) must be invariant under this rotation.

$$\therefore \quad \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

giving (a, b) as the point $(2, -5)$

(b) $x' = y + 3$
$y' = x + 5$

In matrix form this is $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

This is a reflection in the line $y = x$ followed by a translation and will be equivalent to a reflection (or glide reflection) in some line $y = x + c$. Thus $y = x + c$ will be an invariant line.

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ k + c \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} k + c + 3 \\ k + 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus $k + 5 = k + c + 3 + c$, i.e. $c = 1$.

Thus $y = x + 1$ is an invariant line with $(k, k + 1) \to (k + 4, k + 5)$ i.e. a glide reflection in the line $y = x + 1$ with (0, 1) going to (4, 5).

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 18

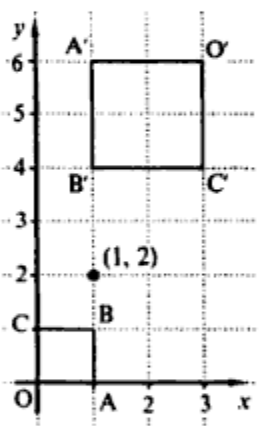
Give a geometrical description of the transformation defined by the equations $\begin{aligned} x' &= -2x + 3 \\ y' &= -2y + 6 \end{aligned}$

Writing the equations in matrix form: $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$

$$= \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{180° rotation about origin.}}\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{Enlargement (×2) centre the origin.}}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{Translation.}}$$

Now a 180° rotation followed by a translation is equivalent to a 180° rotation about some other point. Thus if we can find a point that is invariant under the transformation, this will be the centre of rotation and the centre of the enlargement. If this point is (a, b) then

$$\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{giving } a = 1 \text{ and } b = 2.$$



Thus the equations $\begin{aligned} x' &= -2x + 3 \\ y' &= -2y + 6 \end{aligned}$ represent a rotation of 180° about the point (1, 2) and an enlargement, scale factor 2, centre (1, 2).

This result is confirmed by the behaviour of the unit square OABC.

under $\begin{cases} x' = -2x + 3 \\ y' = -2y + 6 \end{cases}$ $\quad \begin{aligned} (0, 0) &\to (3, 6) \\ (1, 0) &\to (1, 6) \\ (1, 1) &\to (1, 4) \\ (0, 1) &\to (3, 4) \end{aligned}$

Exercise 6D

1. Find the matrices which represent the following linear transformations.
   (a) a rotation of 30° anticlockwise about the origin,
   (b) a rotation of 45° anticlockwise about the origin,
   (c) a rotation of 120° anticlockwise about the origin.
2. Find the matrices which represent the following linear transformations,
   (a) a reflection in the line $y = \sqrt{3}x$,
   (b) a reflection in the line $\sqrt{3}y = x$,
   (c) a reflection in the line $y = 2x$.
3. Give a geometrical description of the transformations corresponding to the following matrices

   (a) $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{5} & -\frac{4}{5} \\ \frac{4}{5} & \frac{3}{5} \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{5} & \frac{4}{5} \\ \frac{4}{5} & -\frac{3}{5} \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -4 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$
4. Find the matrix equations representing each of the following transformations,
   (a) a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the point $(-1, 4)$,
   (b) a rotation of 180° about the point $(3, -1)$,

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) an enlargement, scale factor 3, centre $(2, -1)$,
(d) a reflection in the line $y = x + 5$,
(e) a glide reflection in the line $y = x + 5$ with the point $(0, 5)$ mapped onto $(3, 8)$.

5. Find equations of the form $\begin{matrix} x' = ax + by + c \\ y' = dx + ey + f \end{matrix}$ for each of the following transformations.
(a) a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the point $(1, -1)$,
(b) an enlargement, scale factor 2, centre $(-1, 3)$,
(c) a rotation of 90° clockwise about the point $(4, -1)$,
(d) a reflection in the line $y + x = 3$,
(e) a glide reflection in the line $y + x = 3$ such that $(0, 3)$ maps onto $(3, 0)$.

6. Use the fact that a clockwise rotation of the x–y plane about the origin through an angle θ can be represented by a matrix of the form
$\begin{pmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{pmatrix}$ to obtain the standard trigonometric identities
$\sin(\theta + \alpha) = \sin\theta\cos\alpha + \cos\theta\sin\alpha$ and
$\cos(\theta + \alpha) = \cos\theta\cos\alpha - \sin\theta\sin\alpha$.

7. Give a full geometric description of the *single* transformation defined by each of the following. For part (g) give your answers as a combination of *two* transformations.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

(c) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (d) $\begin{matrix} x' = 5x - 4 \\ y' = 5y - 16 \end{matrix}$

(e) $\begin{matrix} x' = 2 - x \\ y' = -y - 3 \end{matrix}$ (f) $\begin{matrix} x' = y + 3 \\ y' = -x - 4 \end{matrix}$ (g) $\begin{matrix} x' = -3y + 8 \\ y' = 3x + 1 \end{matrix}$

8. The transformation **T** maps the point (x, y) onto (x', y') according to the equations $x' = -2y - 1$ and $y' = -2x + 4$.
(a) Find the coordinates of the point in the x–y plane that is invariant under **T**.
(b) Find the equations of the two lines that are mapped onto themselves under **T**.
(c) Give a geometric description of the effect of **T**.

Exercise 6E Examination questions

1. If $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & a & b \\ 1 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ b \end{pmatrix}$, find the values of a and b. (S.U.J.B.)

2. (a) Arrange the matrices $(2 \quad 0 \quad 3 \quad 4)$, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ so that they are conformable for multiplication and evaluate their product.

(b) Find the inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and **hence** find matrices **A** and **B** such that

(i) $\mathbf{A}\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 10 & 6 \\ 10 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$, and (ii) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 10 & 6 \\ 10 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$.

(Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. (a) Given that $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ find (i) $\mathbf{A} - 3\mathbf{I}$, (ii) $\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I}$, (iii) $\mathbf{A}^2 - 5\mathbf{A} + 6\mathbf{I}$.

(b) Evaluate all possible products of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$, where $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ with one of the matrices $\mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}, \mathbf{D}, \mathbf{E}$ where $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{D} = (3 \quad 1)$, $\mathbf{E} = (1 \quad 2 \quad 1)$.

(Cambridge)

4. (a) Find the value of k for which the simultaneous equations

$$2x - ky = 2,$$
$$3x + (k + 1)y = 4,$$

have no solution.

(b) Given that $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, evaluate $\mathbf{AB}$.

Hence solve the simultaneous equations

$$3x + y + 2z = 11,$$
$$3x + 2y + 2z = 10,$$
$$x + z = 5.$$

(Cambridge)

5. (a) By means of a matrix method solve the simultaneous equations

$$3x - 2y = -3$$
$$4x - y = 7$$

(b) Given that $\mathbf{A}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = 7\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$ and that $\begin{aligned} x &= -2p - 3q + 8r \\ y &= p + 5q - 4r, \\ z &= 3p + q - 5r \end{aligned}$ find $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$.

(Cambridge)

6. Write down

(i) the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ which represents reflection in the x-axis,
(ii) the matrix $\mathbf{B}$ which represents reflection in the line $y = x$,
(iii) the matrix $\mathbf{C}$ which represents rotation through 180° about the origin.

Using matrix methods, find

(iv) the image of the point (5, 2) after reflection in the x-axis followed by rotation through 180° about the origin,
(v) the point whose image is (6, −4) after reflection in the line $y = x$.

(Cambridge)

7. By using a diagram on graph paper, or otherwise, find the images of the points (1, 2) and (2, −1) when they are reflected in the line $y = 2x$. Use your results to find the 2×2 matrix $\mathbf{R}$ which carries out this reflection, and evaluate $\mathbf{R}^2$.

After this reflection a quarter-turn is made clockwise about the origin. Write down the matrix which represents the quarter-turn, and hence find the matrix which represents the combined transformation. (Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. Write down the matrices $\mathbf{M}_x$, $\mathbf{M}_y$ and $\mathbf{R}$ which carry out a reflection in the x-axis, a reflection in the y-axis and a half-turn about the origin respectively.

$\mathbf{T}_x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{T}_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$ are translations parallel to the coordinate axes. P is the point (a, b).

Find the coordinates of P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5 which are the images of P under the following five operations:

(i) $\mathbf{T}_x$ followed by $\mathbf{M}_x$ (ii) $\mathbf{T}_y$ followed by $\mathbf{M}_x$ (iii) $\mathbf{R}$ followed by $\mathbf{T}_x$
(iv) $\mathbf{R}$ followed by $\mathbf{M}_x$ (v) $\mathbf{M}_x$ followed by $\mathbf{M}_y$ followed by $\mathbf{R}$.

For each of the five cases find all values of a and b such that P coincides with its image. (Oxford)

9. (i) Calculate the inverse $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$ of the matrix $\mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} x & x-1 \\ y & y \end{pmatrix}$, where $y \neq 0$.

Find the values of x and y such that (a) $\mathbf{M}^{-1}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$; (b) $\mathbf{M}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$.

(ii) The lines $y = x$ and $x + y = 2$ are transformed by the transformation

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Calculate the equations of their image lines. (Oxford)

10. Find the matrix of the transformation $\mathbf{T}$ which maps $(1, 3)$ and $(2, 1)$ onto $(5, 11)$ and $(5, 7)$ respectively.

Show that the line $y + x = 0$ is mapped onto itself by $\mathbf{T}$, and find the equation of the other line through the origin that is mapped onto itself. (Cambridge)

11. Find the matrix of

(i) the transformation $\mathbf{P}$ that represents enlargement by scale factor 3,
(ii) the transformation $\mathbf{Q}$ that represents reflection in the line $y = x$,
(iii) the transformation $\mathbf{R}$ that represents an anticlockwise rotation of θ about the origin where $\tan\theta = \frac{3}{4}$.

Hence find

(iv) the matrix of the transformation $\mathbf{T}$ that represents $\mathbf{P}$ followed by $\mathbf{Q}$ followed by $\mathbf{R}$,
(v) the image of $(15, 5)$ under $\mathbf{T}$. (Cambridge)

12. The matrices $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{B}$, $\mathbf{C}$ of the single transformations A, B, C are

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

(i) Give a geometrical description of each of A, B and C.
(ii) Find the smallest values of m and n for which $\mathbf{B}^m = \mathbf{C}^n = \mathbf{I}$.
(iii) Give a geometrical description of the inverse of each transformation. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

13. A reflection **M** in the x-axis is followed by a transformation **R** which is carried out by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3} \\ \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$. Write down the matrix which carries out the reflection **M** and find the single matrix which carries out the combined operation **RM**. Show that points of the line $y = x/\sqrt{3}$ are mapped on to themselves by **RM**. Describe the transformation **R**.
Describe also the single transformation which has the same effect as **RM**.
(Oxford)

14. Let $\mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 & -9 \\ 4 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$, let $\mathbf{p} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ be the position vector of a point P, and let P′ be the point with position vector **Mp**.
Prove that the direction of $\overrightarrow{PP'}$ is constant, and find a fixed vector in this direction.

Let $\mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$ be the position vector of a point Q and let Q′ be the point with position vector **Mq**. Prove that $\overrightarrow{OQ}$ is perpendicular to $\overrightarrow{PP'}$, where O is the origin.
Calculate the tangent of the angle QOQ′. (Oxford)

15. Let $\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{4}{5} & \frac{2}{5} \\ \frac{2}{5} & \frac{1}{5} \end{pmatrix}$. Verify that $\mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P}$.

Let $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix}$ be the position vector of a point A with respect to the origin O, and let A′ be the point with position vector **Pr**.
Prove that

(i) the vector $\overrightarrow{AA'}$ is a multiple of $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$; (ii) $OA'^2 + A'A^2 = OA^2$.

Prove also that A′ lies on a line of the form $y = cx$, where c is a constant whose value is to be found. (Oxford)

16. A reflection in the line $y = x - 1$ is followed by an anticlockwise rotation of 90° about the point $(-1, 1)$. Show that the resultant transformation has an invariant line, and give the equation of this line. Describe the resultant transformation in relation to this line. (Oxford)

17. Find the invariant points of the transformation $\mathbf{T}_1$ of the plane, given by

$$x' = -2y + 1,$$
$$y' = 2x - 3,$$

and give a full geometrical description of $\mathbf{T}_1$.
Express in a similar form the transformation $\mathbf{T}_2$, which consists of a reflection in the line $x + y = 1$. Express also in a similar form the transformation $\mathbf{T}_3$, which consists of $\mathbf{T}_1$ followed by $\mathbf{T}_2$. Show that $\mathbf{T}_3$ may be expressed as a reflection in the line $x = \frac{4}{3}$ followed by an enlargement, and give the centre and scale factor of this enlargement.
(Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

18. The eigenvalues of the matrix

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \quad (b > 0, c \geqslant 0)$$

are equal. Prove that $a = d$ and $c = 0$.

If $\mathbf{T}$ maps the point $(-2, 1)$ into the point $(1, 2)$, prove that

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix},$$

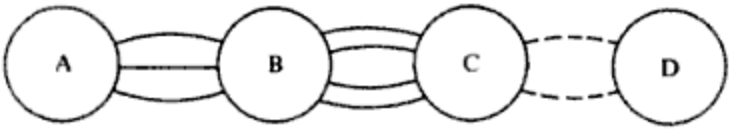
and find the image of the line $y + 2x = 0$ under $\mathbf{T}$. (Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

7
Permutations and combinations

7.1 Successive operations

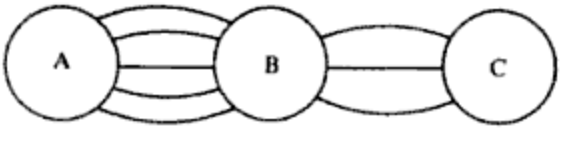
If there are 3 paths joining A to B and 4 paths joining B to C, then there are (3×4) or 12 different ways of going from A, through B, to C.



If there are 2 paths joining C to D then there are $(3 \times 4 \times 2)$ or 24 ways of going from A, through B and C, to D.
This idea can be extended indefinitely so that in general:
If there are r ways of performing one operation, s ways of performing a second operation, t ways of performing a third operation and so on,
then there are $(r \times s \times t \times \ldots)$ different ways of performing the operations in succession.
Note that this multiplication rule only applies when the operations are independent, i.e. the choice made for one operation does not affect the choice made for any of the other operations.

Example 1

There are 5 roads joining A to B and 3 roads joining B to C. Find how many different routes there are from A to C via B.



There are two operations to perform in succession:

A to B 5 ways
B to C 3 ways
Number of routes from A to C $= 5 \times 3$
$= 15$

Example 2

A man has three choices of the way in which he travels to work; he can walk, go by car or go by train. In how many different ways can he arrange

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

his travel for the 5 working days in the week?

On Monday he has 3 choices: walk, car or train.
On Tuesday he has 3 choices: walk, car or train.
Similarly on each of Wednesday, Thursday and Friday he has 3 choices.
Hence there are 5 successive operations, each of which can be performed in 3 ways.

Total number of arrangements $= 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$
$= 3^5$ (or 243) ways.

7.2 Permutations

Consider the three letters A, B and C. If these letters are written in a row, one after another, there are six different possible arrangements:

ABC ACB BAC BCA CAB CBA

Each arrangement is a possible *permutation* of the letters A, B and C and so there are six permutations altogether.

The following reasoning shows how to calculate the number of permutations without having to list them all:
The first letter to be written down can be chosen in 3 ways. The second letter can then be chosen in 2 ways and the remaining letter is written down in the third position. Thus the three operations can be performed in $(3 \times 2 \times 1)$ or 6 ways.

This can be stated in general terms as follows:
The number of ways of arranging n different things in a row is $n(n-1)(n-2) \ldots \times 2 \times 1$. A useful shorthand way of writing this expression is $n!$ (read as n factorial).

Thus $4! = 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1$, $5! = 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1$ and so on.

Example 3

Evaluate (a) $\dfrac{6!}{2 \times 4!}$, (b) $\dfrac{7!}{4! \times 2!}$.

(a) $\dfrac{6!}{2 \times 4!} = \dfrac{6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1}{(2) \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1}$
$= 15.$

(b) $\dfrac{7!}{4! \times 2!} = \dfrac{7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1}{4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 \times (2 \times 1)}$
$= 105.$

Example 4

Five children are to be seated on a bench. Find (a) how many ways the children can be seated, (b) how many arrangements are possible if the youngest child is to sit at the left-hand end of the bench.

(a) Since there are 5 children, the child to sit at the left-hand end can be chosen in 5 ways.
The child to be seated next can be chosen in 4 ways, the next child can be chosen in 3 ways, and so on.
There are 5 operations and the total number of arrangements is
$5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 5!$ or 120 ways.

• • • • •
5 4 3 2 1

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) If the youngest child is to sit at the left-hand end, this place can be filled in 1 way only.
The next child can then be chosen in 4 ways, the next in 3 ways and so on.
There are 5 operations and the total number of arrangements is

$$1 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 1 \times 4! \text{ or } 24 \text{ ways.}$$

•	•	•	•	•
1	4	3	2	1

Example 5

Three different mathematics books and five other different books are to be arranged on a bookshelf. Find (a) the number of possible arrangements of the books, (b) the number of possible arrangements if the three mathematics books must be kept together.

(a) Since there are 8 books altogether, the one to be placed at the left-hand end can be chosen in 8 ways, the next book can be chosen in 7 ways, and so on.
There are 8 operations and the total number of arrangements is

$$8 \times 7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 8! \text{ or } 40\,320 \text{ ways.}$$

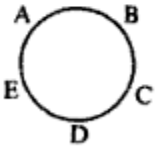
(b) Since the 3 mathematics books are to be together, consider these bound together as one book. There are now 6 books to be arranged and this can be performed in $6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6! = 720$ ways.

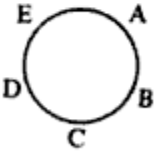
Now in each of these arrangements the 3 mathematics books are bound together; these mathematics books can be arranged in $3 \times 2 \times 1 = 3!$ ways $= 6$ ways.

Total number of arrangements $= 720 \times 6$ or 4320 ways.

Circular arrangements

In Example 4(a), we saw that five children can be arranged in a row in 5! ways. Suppose, instead, that we wished to arrange the children around a circular table. The number of possible arrangements will no longer be 5! because there is now no distinction between certain arrangements that were distinct when written in a row.
For example, A B C D E is a different arrangement from E A B C D,

but 

is not a different arrangement from 

With circular arrangements of this type, it is the relative positions of the items being arranged which is important. One item can therefore be fixed and the remaining items arranged around it. The number of arrangements of n unlike things in a circle will therefore be $(n - 1)!$ In those cases where clockwise and anticlockwise arrangements are not considered to be different, this reduces to $\frac{1}{2}(n - 1)!$ (See Example 7).

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 6

Four men Peters, Rogers, Smith and Thomas are to be seated at a circular table. In how many ways can this be done?

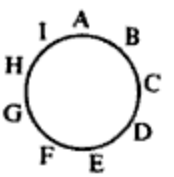
Suppose Peters is seated at some particular place.
The seat on his left can be filled in 3 ways, i.e. by Rogers, by Smith or by Thomas. The next seat on his left can then be filled in 2 ways and the remaining seat in 1 way, i.e. by the remaining man.

Total number of arrangements $= 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 3!$ or 6 ways.

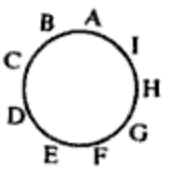
Example 7

Nine beads, all of different colours are to be arranged on a circular wire. Two arrangements are *not* considered to be different if they appear the same when the ring is turned over. How many different arrangements are possible?

When the ring is turned over, the arrangement



would appear as



When viewed from one side, these arrangements are only different in that one is a clockwise arrangement and the other is anticlockwise.
If one bead is fixed, there are $(9 - 1)!$ ways of arranging the remaining beads relative to the fixed one, i.e. 8! ways. But half of these arrangements will appear the same as the other half when the ring is turned over, because for every clockwise arrangement there is a similar anticlockwise arrangement.
Hence,

number of arrangements is $\frac{1}{2}(8!) = 20\,160$ ways.

Mutually exclusive situations

When two situations A and B are mutually exclusive then, if situation A occurs, situation B cannot occur. Likewise, if situation B occurs, situation A cannot occur.
In such cases, the number of permutations of either situation A or situation B occurring can be obtained by adding the number of permutations of situation A to the number of permutations of situation B.

Example 8

How many different four-digit numbers can be formed from the figures 3, 4, 5, 6 if each figure is used only once in each number?
How many of these numbers (a) end in a 4, (b) end in a 3, (c) end in a 3 or a 4?

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The first digit can be chosen in 4 ways, the second in 3 ways, and so on. Thus there are $4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 24$ different four-digit numbers that can be formed.

(a) The last digit can be chosen in 1 way as it must be a 4; the first digit can be chosen in 3 ways, the second in 2 ways and the third in 1 way. Thus there are $1 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6$ of the numbers that end in a 4.

(b) By reasoning similar to that used in (a), there will be $1 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6$ of the numbers that end in a 3.

(c) The numbers that end in a 3 cannot also end in a 4, so these are mutually exclusive situations. Thus $6 + 6 = 12$ of the numbers end either in a 3 or a 4.
Alternatively (c) could be solved as follows.
The last digit can be chosen in 2 ways (a 3 or a 4); the first digit can then be chosen in 3 ways, the second in 2 ways and the third in 1 way, i.e. $2 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 12$ of the numbers end in a 3 or 4.

The permutations in which a certain event A does occur will clearly be mutually exclusive with those permutations in which that event does *not* occur. Thus:

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of permutations in}\\ \text{which event A does occur}\end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix}\text{number of permutations in}\\ \text{which event A does not occur}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{number of permutations in which}\\ \text{event A either does or does not occur}\end{pmatrix}$$
$$= \begin{pmatrix}\text{total number of}\\ \text{permutations}\end{pmatrix}$$

which can be arranged thus

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of permutations in}\\ \text{which event A does not occur}\end{pmatrix} = (\text{total number of permutations}) - \begin{pmatrix}\text{number of permutations in}\\ \text{which event A does occur}\end{pmatrix}$$

Example 9

In how many ways can five people, Smith, Jones, Clark, Brown and White, be arranged around a circular table if
(a) Smith must sit next to Brown, (b) Smith must *not* sit next to Brown?

(a) Since Smith and Brown must sit next to each other, consider these two bound together as one person. There are now 4 people to seat. Fix one of these, and then the remaining 3 can be seated in $3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6$ ways relative to the one that was fixed.
In each of these arrangements, Brown and Smith are seated together in a particular way. Brown and Smith could now change seats giving another 6 ways of arranging the 5 people.
Total number of arrangements $= 2 \times 6 = 12$ ways.

(b) If Smith is not to sit next to Brown, then this situation is mutually exclusive with the situation in (a).
Hence

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of permutations in which}\\ \text{Smith does not sit next to Brown}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{total number}\\ \text{of permutations}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{number of permutations in which}\\ \text{Smith does sit next to Brown}\end{pmatrix}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Total number of arrangements of 5 people at a circular table $= (5 - 1)!$
$= 4!$

Required number of arrangements $= 4! - 12$
$= 24 - 12 = 12$

Number of arrangements in which Smith does not sit next to Brown is 12.

Exercise 7A

1. Evaluate (a) $\frac{8!}{6!}$ (b) $\frac{9!}{3 \times 5!}$ (c) $6! - 5!$ (d) $\frac{5! \times 4!}{6!}$.

2. Express the following in terms of 5!

(a) $\frac{6!}{6}$ (b) $\frac{6!}{2!}$ (c) $\frac{6!}{3!}$ (d) $4!$ (e) $6! - 5!$

(f) $2 \times 6! - 3 \times 5!$ (g) $3 \times 4! + 7 \times 4!$ (h) $7! - 6!$ (i) $\frac{8! - 6!}{3!}$

3. There are three roads joining town X to town Y; three more roads join Y to Z and two roads join Z to A. How many different routes are there from X to A passing through Y and Z?

4. In how many ways can a group of ten children be arranged in a line?

5. In how many ways can eight different books be arranged on a bookshelf?

6. The letters a, b, c and d are to be arranged in a row with each letter being used once and once only. In how many ways can this be done?

7. The front doors of five houses in a terrace are to be painted blue, brown, black, green and red. In how many different ways can the painting be done if no two doors are to be the same colour?

8. How many different four-digit numbers can be formed from the digits 5, 7, 8 and 9 if each digit is used once only in each number? If repetitions of the digits were allowed, how many arrangements would be possible?

9. With his breakfast a man sometimes has tea, sometimes coffee and sometimes fruit juice, but never more than one of these on any one day. Find the number of possible arrangements he can have in a period of 4 days if (a) he always has a drink of some sort,
(b) he may choose not to have a drink on certain days.

10. In how many different ways can the letters of the word THURSDAY be arranged?

11. The letters of the word TUESDAY are arranged in a line, each arrangement ending with the letter S. How many different arrangements are possible? How many of these arrangements also start with the letter D?

12. In how many ways can five women be seated at a circular table?

13. How many numbers greater than 50 000 can be formed using the digits 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 if each digit is used only once in each number?

14. How many numbers greater than 40 000 can be formed using the digits 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 if each digit is used only once in each number?

15. How many odd numbers greater than 60 000 can be formed using the digits 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 if each digit is used only once in each number?

16. Three boys and five girls are to be seated on a bench so that the youngest boy and the youngest girl sit next to each other. In how many ways can this be done?

17. There are nine different books on a shelf, one of which is a dictionary and one an atlas. In how many ways can the books be arranged on the shelf if the dictionary and the atlas are to be next to each other?

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

18. On a bookshelf I have a four-volume encyclopaedia and ten other books that are all different. In how many ways can the fourteen books be arranged on the shelf if the four volumes of the encyclopaedia
(a) need not be kept together,
(b) must be kept together and must be in the order 1, 2, 3, 4; (the reverse order is not acceptable),
(c) must be kept together, but not in any particular order?

19. Seven boys are to be seated on a bench so that the oldest boy and the youngest boy sit next to each other. In how many ways can the boys be seated? If, instead, the boys were seated around a circular table, with the same restriction as on the bench, how many arrangements would be possible?

20. In how many different ways can eight differently coloured beads be arranged on a ring if a particular order arranged clockwise is not considered different from the same order arranged anticlockwise?

21. In how many ways can six boys and two girls be arranged in a line if the two girls must not sit together?

22. How many even numbers greater than 40 000 can be formed using the digits 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 if each digit is used only once in each number?

23. Mr and Mrs X, Mr A, Mr B and Mr C are to be seated at a circular table. In how many ways can this be done if
(a) the married couple sit next to each other,
(b) the married couple do not sit next to each other?

24. Find the number of ways that Mr and Mrs Smith, Mr and Mrs Brown and Mr and Mrs White can be seated around a circular table.
Find in how many of these arrangements
(a) Mr and Mrs Smith sit next to each other,
(b) Mr Smith is not sitting next to Mrs Smith,
(c) Mrs Smith is sitting between Mr Brown and Mrs Brown.

25. To a meeting involving four companies, each company sends three representatives—the managing director, the chief accountant and the company secretary. In how many ways can the twelve people be arranged around a circular table if the three people from each company sit together, with the managing director between the accountant and the secretary in each case?

26. Sheila, Ann and Harvey are fifth year pupils; Sarah, Jeff and Heather are fourth year pupils; Alan, Rosemary and John are third year pupils. In how many ways can these pupils be arranged in a line if the pupils from each year are kept next to each other?

Permutations of objects selected from a group

In how many ways can we arrange two different letters chosen from the five letters A, B, C, D and E?

The first letter can be chosen in 5 ways and the second letter can be chosen in 4 ways.
Hence there are (5×4) or 20 possible arrangements and these are:

AB	AC	AD	AE	BC	BD	BE	CD	CE	DE
BA	CA	DA	EA	CB	DB	EB	DC	EC	ED

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Thus we say there are 20 possible permutations of two letters taken from five different letters.

Suppose we wish to arrange r objects chosen from n unlike objects:

The first object can be chosen in n ways, the second object can be chosen in $(n - 1)$ ways, the third object in $(n - 2)$ ways and so on until the rth item which can be chosen in $(n - r + 1)$ ways.

Thus the number of permutations of r objects chosen from n unlike objects is

$$n(n-1)(n-2)(n-3)\ldots(n-r+1)$$

$$= \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)(n-3)\ldots(n-r+1)(n-r)(n-r-1)\ldots 2 \times 1}{(n-r)(n-r-1)\ldots 2 \times 1}$$

$$= \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$$

We usually say that the number of permutations of r objects selected from n unlike objects is ${}^nP_r$ where ${}^nP_r = \dfrac{n!}{(n-r)!}$.

Thus in the case of arranging two letters chosen from the five letters A, B, C, D and E mentioned above, this gives ${}^5P_2 = \dfrac{5!}{3!}$

$= 20$ as required.

Note that we already know that there are $n!$ arrangements of n objects chosen from n objects. Thus ${}^nP_n$ must equal $n!$, i.e. $\dfrac{n!}{(n-n)!} = n!$ and we therefore define $0!$ as 1.

Example 10

Ten athletes are to take part in a race. In how many different ways can the 1st, 2nd and 3rd places be filled?

1st place can be filled in 10 ways
2nd place can be filled in 9 ways
3rd place can be filled in 8 ways

$\therefore$ number of permutations of 1st, 2nd and 3rd places $= 10 \times 9 \times 8 = 720$

or, using ${}^nP_r$
Number of permutations of three things from ten is ${}^{10}P_3 = \dfrac{10!}{7!}$

$= 720$

There are 720 ways in which the 1st, 2nd and 3rd places can be filled.

Arrangements of like and unlike things

Suppose the n unlike letters $a_1\ a_2\ a_3 \ldots b_1\ b_2 \ldots c_1\ c_2 \ldots$ are arranged in a row, then the number of possible arrangements is $n!$

If we consider these $n!$ arrangements and remove the suffixes from the letters 'a' we shall have written down the same arrangement several times, for example the arrangements

$$a_1 \ldots a_3 \ldots a_2 \ldots$$
$$a_2 \ldots a_1 \ldots a_3 \ldots$$
$$a_3 \ldots a_1 \ldots a_2 \ldots$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

will all be the same once the suffixes are removed. Indeed, we shall have repeated this particular arrangement $r!$ times where r is the number of a's. In a similar way we can consider the b's and c's.
Hence the number of arrangements of n things, p of one kind, q of another, r of another ... is $\dfrac{n!}{p!\,q!\,r!\,\ldots}$

Example 11

In how many ways can 4 red, 3 yellow and 2 green discs be arranged in a row, if discs of the same colour are indistinguishable?

There are $4 + 3 + 2 = 9$ discs

$$\therefore \quad \text{the number of arrangements} = \frac{9!}{4!\,3!\,2!} = 1260$$

The discs can be arranged in a row in 1260 ways.

Example 12

Find (a) in how many different ways the letters of the word ALGEBRA can be arranged in a row, (b) in how many of these arrangements the two A's are together, (c) in how many of the arrangements the two A's are not together.

(a) There are 7 letters including two A's

$$\therefore \quad \text{total number of arrangements} = \frac{7!}{2!} = 2520$$

(b) If the A's are kept together, there are effectively 6 letters to arrange, hence

$$\text{number of arrangements} = 6! = 720$$

(c) Number of arrangements when A's are not together $= 2520 - 720 = 1800$

Example 13

How many different arrangements are there of 3 letters chosen from the word COMBINATION?

There are 11 letters including 2 O's, 2 I's and 2 N's.
To find the total number of different arrangements we consider the possible arrangements as four mutually exclusive situations.

(i) Arrangements in which all 3 letters are different.
There are $8 \times 7 \times 6$ (or ${}^8P_3$) of these, i.e. 336.

(ii) Arrangements containing two O's and one other letter.
The other letter can be one of seven letters (C, M, B, I, N, A or T) and can appear in any of the three positions (before the two O's, between the two O's, or after the two O's),
i.e. 3×7 or 21 arrangements that have two O's and one other letter.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(iii) Arrangements containing two I's and one other letter.
By the same reasoning as in (ii) there will be 21 arrangements that have two I's and one other letter.

(iv) Arrangements containing two N's and one other letter.
Similarly there will be 21 arrangements that have two N's and one other letter.

Thus the total number of arrangements of three letters chosen from the word COMBINATION will be 336 + 21 + 21 + 21 = 399.

Exercise 7B

1. Find the number of permutations of two different letters taken from the letters A, B, C, D, E and F.
2. In how many ways can six books be arranged on a shelf when the books are selected from 10 different books?
3. How many code words, each consisting of five different letters, can be formed from the letters A, B, C, D, E, F, G and H?
4. How many three-digit numbers, with all three digits different, can be formed from the figures 7, 6, 5, 4, 3 and 2?
5. Three-digit numbers are formed from the figures 3, 5, 6 and 7. How many different numbers can be formed if
   (a) no figure is repeated in a number, (b) repetitions are allowed?
6. How many different three-digit even numbers can be formed from the figures 2, 5, 7 and 9 if repetitions (a) are not allowed, (b) are allowed?
7. How many numbers greater than 300 can be formed from the figures 4, 3, 2 and 1 if each figure can be used no more than once in each number and all the figures need not be used each time?
8. In how many different ways can a first, second and third prize be awarded to a group of 15 pupils if no pupil may win more than one prize?
9. A box contains 14 coloured discs which are identical except for their colour. There are 5 red discs, 4 green, 3 blue and 2 yellow. In how many ways can the 14 discs be arranged in a row?
10. In how many ways can the letters of the word PARALLEL be arranged in a row?
11. In how many ways can the letters of the word PHOTOGRAPH be arranged in a row? How many of these arrangements start and finish with an H?
12. (a) In how many ways can the letters of the word GEOMETRY be arranged in a row?
    (b) In how many of these arrangements are the two E's together?
    (c) In how many of these arrangements are the two E's not together?
13. How many even numbers greater than 300 can be formed from the figures 4, 3, 2 and 1 if each figure can be used no more than once in each number and all the figures do not have to be used each time?
14. In how many ways can the letters of the word BANANA be arranged in a row? In how many of these arrangements are the N's separated?
15. Ten coloured beads, 4 red, 3 blue, 1 orange, 1 white and 1 green, are to be threaded onto a circular wire. Find the number of ways in which this can be done if beads of the same colour are indistinguishable and a particular order arranged clockwise is not considered different from the same order arranged anticlockwise.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

16. Find the number of different three-letter arrangements that can be made from the letters of the word PYTHAGORAS.

17. Find the number of different three-letter arrangements that can be made from the letters of the word COMMON.

18. Find the number of different three-letter arrangements that can be made from the letters of the word ISOSCELES.
How many of these arrangements will contain
(a) no E's at all, (b) at least one E,
(c) no vowels at all, (d) at least one vowel?

19. In how many ways can the letters of the word PERMUTATION be arranged? In how many of these arrangements are
(a) the T's together, (b) the vowels together?

20. In how many ways can the letters of the word ARRANGEMENT be arranged? In how many of these arrangements are
(a) the A's together, (b) the vowels together?

21. Find the total number of permutations of four letters selected from the word PERMUTATION.

22. Find the total number of permutations of four letters selected from the word ARRANGEMENT. How many of these permutations contain two R's?

7.3 Combinations

A combination is a selection. In making a selection from a number of items, only the contents of the group selected are important, not the order in which the items are selected.
We saw on page 194 that there were 20 possible *arrangements* of two letters chosen from the letters A, B, C, D and E:

AB	AC	AD	AE	BC	BD	BE	CD	CE	DE
BA	CA	DA	EA	CB	DB	EB	DC	EC	ED

However, the number of *combinations* of two letters chosen from A, B, C, D and E is only 10 because AB and BA are the same combination, as also are AC and CA etc.

Example 15

Find the number of selections of 2 letters which can be made from the three letters a, b and c.

We can in this simple case write out the possible selections:

ab; bc; ca

There are 3 possible selections.
If, in the above example, we considered the number of permutations of the 3 letters taken 2 at a time, there would be

$$^3P_2 = \frac{3!}{(3-2)!} = 6 \text{ possible arrangements.}$$

We can see that the number of permutations, or arrangements, is twice the number of combinations, or selections, because there are 2 ways of arranging each pair of letters selected.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

For the general case, we know from page 195 that the number of arrangements of n things taken r at a time is

$$^{n}P_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}.$$

But each selection of r things can be arranged in $r!$ ways, so each selection is repeated $r!$ times in the $^{n}P_r$ arrangements, hence

$$\text{number of selections} = \frac{^{n}P_r}{r!} = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!\,r!}$$

Thus the number of possible combinations of n different objects, taken r at a time, is given by $^{n}C_r$ also written as $\binom{n}{r}$ where $^{n}C_r = \dfrac{n!}{(n-r)!\,r!}$.

Example 16

How many selections of 4 letters can be made from the 6 letters a, b, c, d, e and f?

The number of selections is $^{n}C_r$ where r is the number of things selected from a group of n. Hence for this case $n = 6$ and $r = 4$.

$$^{6}C_4 = \frac{6!}{2!\,4!} = 15$$

There are 15 selections of 4 letters which can be made from the 6 letters.

Example 17

How many different committees, each consisting of 3 boys and 2 girls, can be chosen from 7 boys and 5 girls?

Number of ways of choosing 3 boys from 7 $= {}^{7}C_3 = \dfrac{7!}{4!\,3!} = 35$

Number of ways of choosing 2 girls from 5 $= {}^{5}C_2 = \dfrac{5!}{3!\,2!} = 10$

Number of committees which can be chosen $= 35 \times 10 = 350$

Note that 35 is multiplied by 10 since the choice of the boys and the choice of the girls are independent operations.

Example 18

(a) Find the number of different selections of 4 letters that can be made from the letters of the word SPHERICAL.
(b) How many of these selections do not contain a vowel?

(a) There are 9 letters, all of which are different.

Number of selections of 4 letters $= {}^{9}C_4 = \dfrac{9!}{5!\,4!} = 126$

(b) There are 3 vowels in the word SPHERICAL.
Each selection either does or does not contain a vowel.
If the selections are not to contain vowels, the selection of 4 letters must be made from the 6 consonants.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Number of selections of 4 letters, not containing a vowel $= {}^6C_4 = \dfrac{6!}{2!\,4!}$
$= 15$

The following examples illustrate other techniques which may be used in questions involving selections.

Example 19

(a) Find the number of different selections of 3 letters that can be made from the letters of the word SUCCESSFUL.
(b) How many of these selections contain at least one vowel?

(a) There are 2 C's, 2 U's, 3 S's and 3 other different letters. We must consider all the mutually exclusive selections of 3 letters; these are:
number of selections containing 3 S's $= 1$ selection
number of selections containing 2 C's + 1 other letter $= 1 \times {}^5C_1 = 5$
number of selections containing 2 U's + 1 other letter $= 1 \times {}^5C_1 = 5$
number of selections containing 2 S's + 1 other (non S) $= 1 \times {}^5C_1 = 5$
number of selections containing 3 different letters (from 6) $= {}^6C_3 = 20$
Total number of selections of 3 letters $= 36$

(b) Without the vowels, there are 3 S's, 2 C's, 1 F and 1 L.
As in (a) 3 S's $= 1$ selection
2 C's + 1 other from 3 (S, F, L) $= 1 \times {}^3C_1 = 3$
2 S's + 1 other from 3 (C, F, L) $= 1 \times {}^3C_1 = 3$
3 different letters from 4 (S, C, F, L) $= {}^4C_3 = 4$
Number of selections without any vowels $= 11$
Hence number of selections with at least 1 vowel $= 36 - 11 = 25$

Example 20

A team of 7 players is to be chosen from a group of 12 players. One of the 7 is then to be elected as captain and another as vice-captain. In how many ways can this be done?

Number of ways of choosing 7 from 12 is ${}^{12}C_7 = \dfrac{12!}{5!\,7!}$
$= 792$

In each chosen team there are 7 ways of choosing a captain, and
there are 6 ways of choosing a vice-captain
(alternatively we say the captain and vice-captain can be elected in ${}^7P_2$ ways).
Total number of selections is $7 \times 6 \times 792 = 33\,264$.

Example 21

A group consists of 4 boys and 7 girls. In how many ways can a team of five be selected if it is to contain (a) no boys, (b) at least one member of each sex, (c) 2 boys and 3 girls, (d) at least 3 boys?

(a) No boys are selected, so the team is chosen from the 7 girls.
Number of ways of choosing 5 girls from 7 is ${}^7C_5 = \dfrac{7!}{2!\,5!}$
$= 21.$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) Considering mutually exclusive groups:

Number of selections with no boys $= 21$
Number of selections with no girls $= 0$ (as there are only 4 boys)
Total number of possible selections $= {}^{11}C_5$
$= 462$

Thus, number of selections with at least one of each sex $= 462 - 21$
$= 441.$

(c) 2 boys can be chosen from 4, in ${}^4C_2 = 6$ ways
3 girls can be chosen from 7, in ${}^7C_3 = 35$ ways
These are independent events, so
number of teams with 2 boys and 3 girls $= 6 \times 35 = 210.$

(d) If the team is to have at least 3 boys, then there must be either 3 or 4 boys.
Number of teams with 3 boys and 2 girls $= {}^4C_3 \times {}^7C_2 = 84$
Number of teams with 4 boys and 1 girl $= {}^4C_4 \times {}^7C_1 = 7$
These are mutually exclusive events, so
number of teams with at least 3 boys $= 84 + 7 = 91.$

Example 22

How many permutations are there of the letters of the word PARALLELOGRAM? In how many of these are the A's separated?

The word has 3 A's, 3 L's, 2 R's and 5 other letters.

Number of permutations of these 13 letters $= \dfrac{13!}{3!\,3!\,2!} = 86\,486\,400$

Number of permutations of the 10 letters (omitting the A's) $= \dfrac{10!}{3!\,2!}$

The A's have now to be placed in any 3 of the available 11 spaces; the order in which the three spaces are selected is not important, so this can be done in ${}^{11}C_3$ ways.

Thus, number of permutations in which A's are separated $= {}^{11}C_3 \times \dfrac{10!}{3!\,2!}$
$= 49\,896\,000.$

Exercise 7C

1. How many different teams of 7 players can be chosen from 10 girls?
2. How many selections of 4 books can be made from 9 different books?
3. A gardener has space to plant 3 trees. In how many ways can he make his selection from 5 different trees?
4. A boy can choose any 7 stamps from a set of 11 stamps. How many different selections can he make?
5. Three pupils are to be promoted from a particular form. If five pupils are under consideration for promotion, in how many ways can the group to be promoted be selected?
6. A librarian chooses 16 books from a group of 20 books that need to be rebound. In how many ways can the 16 books be selected?
7. How many different hands of three cards can be chosen from a pack of 52 cards?

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. Four boys are to be selected from a group of 10 boys. How many different groups can be selected? If instead 6 boys were chosen, how many groups could be selected?

9. From the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, ... 15, five odd numbers and three even numbers are to be selected. Find the number of different groups of eight numbers which can be chosen.

10. From a pack of 52 cards, how many different groups of 3 spades can be chosen?

11. A man decides to plant 3 shrubs and 4 trees. In how many ways can he make his selection if he has 5 shrubs and 6 trees from which to choose?

12. How many different groups can be selected from the letters a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i if each group is to include 2 vowels and 3 consonants?

13. A librarian has to make a selection of 5 newspapers and 7 magazines from the 8 newspapers and 9 magazines which are available. In how many ways can she make her selection?

14. (a) Find the number of different selections of 5 letters that can be made from the letters of the word CHEMISTRY.
(b) How many of these selections contain at least one vowel?

15. (a) Find the number of different selections of 2 letters that can be made from the letters of the word METHOD.
(b) How many of these selections contain no consonants?

16. (a) Find the number of different selections of 3 letters that can be made from the letters of the word METHOD.
(b) How many of these selections contain no vowels?

17. (a) Find the number of different selections of 2 letters that can be made from the letters of the word STATISTICS.
(b) How many of these selections contain no vowels?

18. (a) Find the number of different selections of 3 letters that can be made from the letters of the word STATISTICS.
(b) How many of these selections contain no vowels?
(c) How many of these selections contain at least one T?

19. How many different selections of 2 beads can be made from a bag containing ten beads, two of which are red and the other eight are of different colours?

20. A team of 6 players is to be selected from a group of ten with one of the six then being nominated as captain, and another as vice-captain. In how many ways can this be done?

21. A group consists of 5 boys and 8 girls. In how many ways can a team of four be chosen, if the team contains
(a) no girls, (b) no more than one girl, (c) at least two boys?

22. A team of 5 managers is to be selected from a group of ten managers—5 from company A, 3 from company B and 2 from company C. In how many ways can this be done if the team must contain at least one manager from each company?

23. In how many ways may a committee of 5 people be selected from 7 men and 3 women, if it must contain
(a) 3 men and 2 women, (b) 3 women and 2 men, (c) at least 1 woman?

24. In how many ways can a committee of 7 people be selected from 4 men and 6 women if the committee must have at least 4 women on it?

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

25. A group consists of 5 boys and 8 girls. In how many ways can a team of five be chosen if it is to contain
(a) no girls, (b) no boys,
(c) at least one boy, (d) at least one member of each sex?

26. A tennis club has to select 2 mixed double pairs from a group of 5 men and 4 women. In how many ways can this be done?

27. How many permutations are there of the letters of the word AARDVARK? In how many of these permutations are the A's separated?

28. How many permutations are there of the letters of the word VILLIFIED? In how many of these permutations are the I's separated?

29. How many permutations are there of the letters of the word NONILLION? In how many of these permutations are the N's separated?

7.4 Selections of any size from a group

The number of possible selections of any size that can be made from a group of unlike things deserves special consideration.

Example 23

How many different selections can be made from the five letters a, b, c, d, e?

First method
Number of selections of 1 letter $= {}^5C_1 = 5$
Number of selections of 2 letters $= {}^5C_2 = 10$
Number of selections of 3 letters $= {}^5C_3 = 10$
Number of selections of 4 letters $= {}^5C_4 = 5$
Number of selections of 5 letters $= {}^5C_5 = 1$
Total number of possible selections $= 5 + 10 + 10 + 5 + 1 = 31$.

With a larger number of objects to select from, the above method is tedious.

Second method
In any given selection, the letter a is either included or not included, i.e. there are 2 ways of dealing with this letter.
Similarly the letter b is either included or not included; again there are 2 ways of dealing with this letter.
Extending this to all five letters, we see there are $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$ ways of dealing with the letters, but this includes the case in which none of the letters is included, and this is not a selection.

Thus, number of selections $= 2^5 - 1$
$= 31$ as obtained in method 1.

In general there are $2^r - 1$ selections which can be made from r unlike items.

Group containing repeated items

It may be that the group from which the selections are to be made includes some repeated items. Suppose, for example that a group of letters includes 3 a's. These can be dealt with in 4 ways: either no a's, 1 a, 2 a's or 3 a's are included in a particular selection. The different letters can then be considered as before.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 24

How many different selections can be made from the letters of the word OSMOSIS?

There are 3 S's, 2 O's and 2 other different letters.
The S's can be dealt with in 4 ways.
The O's can be dealt with in 3 ways.
The M can be dealt with in 2 ways and the I can be dealt with in 2 ways.

$$\text{Total number of selections} = 4 \times 3 \times 2^2 - 1$$
$$= 47$$

7.5 Division into groups

We now consider examples in which a number of letters are divided into two or more groups of differing sizes.

Example 25

The letters a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h and i are to be divided into three groups containing 2, 3 and 4 letters respectively. In how many ways can this be done?

The 2 letters for the first group can be chosen in ${}^9C_2$ ways
The 3 letters for the second group can then be chosen in ${}^7C_3$ ways and the remaining 4 letters form the third group in 1 way

$$\text{Thus number of ways} = {}^9C_2 \times {}^7C_3 \times 1 = \frac{9!}{7!\,2!} \times \frac{7!}{4!\,3!} \times 1$$
$$= \frac{9!}{2!\,3!\,4!}$$
$$= 1260$$

In general, the number of ways of dividing $(p + q + r)$ unlike things into three groups containing p, q and r things respectively is

$$\frac{(p + q + r)!}{p!\,q!\,r!}.$$

It may be that the groups into which the things are to be divided are not of different sizes.

Example 26

Find the number of ways that 12 people can be arranged into groups if there are to be (a) 2 groups of 6 people, (b) 3 groups of 4 people.

(a) The first group of 6 people can be selected in ${}^{12}C_6$ ways, but the second group of 6 people is then automatically made up of those not in the first group. So there is only 1 way of selecting the second group.
But these ${}^{12}C_6$ ways will include the case when $a_1, a_2, a_3, \ldots a_6$ are in the first group and $a_7, a_8, \ldots a_{12}$ are in the second group and *vice versa*. So we must divide by the number of ways in which the 2 groups

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

can be permutated amongst themselves, i.e. 2!

Number of ways of dividing into two groups of 6 $= \dfrac{{}^{12}C_6 \times 1}{2!}$

$= 462$

(b) The first group of 4 people can be selected in ${}^{12}C_4$ ways.
The second group of 4 people can then be selected in ${}^{8}C_4$ ways.
The third group can then be selected in 1 way.
The 3 groups can be permutated amongst themselves in 3! ways,

thus number of ways of dividing into 3 groups $= \dfrac{{}^{12}C_4 \times {}^{8}C_4 \times 1}{3!}$

$= \dfrac{12!}{(4!)^3 \times 3!} = 5775.$

Exercise 7D

1. A group of 15 children are to be divided into three groups of 4, 5 and 6 children. In how many ways can this be done?
2. A gardener makes a selection from 7 different shrubs he is shown at a nursery. In how many ways can he make his selection?
3. How many selections can be made from the letters a, b, c, d, e, f?
4. Of 11 girls, 4 are to play tennis and 7 are to play netball. How many ways are there of forming the two groups?
5. How many ways are there of dividing 12 people into three groups containing 2 people, 7 people and 3 people?
6. For a group of 13 people, whilst 3 people are swimming, 4 will be playing tennis and 6 will be spectating. Find in how many ways the 13 people can be organised.
7. A boy has one of each of the following coins: 1p, 2p, 5p, 10p, 20p and 50p. In how many different ways can he make a contribution to a charity?
8. How many different whole numbers are factors of the number $2 \times 3 \times 5 \times 7 \times 11 \times 13$?
9. How many different selections can be made from the letters a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5, b, c, d?
10. In question 9, how many selections are possible if the suffixes are removed from the a's?
11. How many different selections can be made from the letters of the word HEELED?
12. How many different selections can be made from the letters of the word INABILITY?
13. Find how many different selections can be made from the letters of the word POSSESS.
14. Obtain a formula for the number of different selections that can be made of one or more letters taken from n letters, p of one type, q of another and the remainder being different.
15. Find the number of ways that 9 children can be divided into
    (a) a group of 5 and a group of 4 children,
    (b) three groups of 3 children.
16. Find in how many ways 11 people can be divided into three groups containing 3, 4 and 4 people.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

17. In how many ways can 15 people be divided into three groups of 5 people?

18. A group of 15 boys are to be divided into two teams of 7 and the remaining boy to act as referee. In how many ways can this be done?

19. Find how many different selections can be made from the letters of the word BANANA.

Exercise 7E Examination questions

1. How many different ways are there of selecting an executive committee of three from a general committee of eighteen members? (S.U.J.B.)

2. To mark a cub leader's retirement, ex-cubs were asked to send three photographs for inclusion in a scrapbook to be presented to the leader. How many different ways could an ex-cub who had 13 suitable photographs select 3? (S.U.J.B.)

3. When the scrapbook in question 2 was nearly complete the person compiling it had 9 photographs left but only room to include n of them. He calculated that there were 84 different ways of selecting the n from the 9. Find n, given that it is an even number. (S.U.J.B.)

4. Find how many four digit numbers can be formed from the six digits 2, 3, 5, 7, 8 and 9, without repeating any digit.
Also find how many of these numbers
(a) are less than 7000, (b) are odd. (London)

5. How many different 6 digit numbers greater than 500 000 can be formed by using the digits 1, 5, 7, 7, 7, 8? (Cambridge)

6. An athlete owns six pairs of running shoes. How many different ways are there of selecting
(a) 4 shoes from the 12; (b) 2 left shoes and 2 right shoes; (c) 2 pairs of shoes? (S.U.J.B.)

7. Seven students are eligible for selection to a delegation of four students from a school to attend a conference. Two of them will not attend together but each is prepared to attend in the absence of the other. In how many different ways can the delegation be chosen? (London)

8. Calculate the number of different 7-letter arrangements which can be made with the letters of the word MAXIMUM.
In how many of these do the 4 consonants all appear next to one another? (Cambridge)

9. How many different words of five letters can be formed from 7 different consonants and 4 different vowels if no two consonants or vowels can come together and no repetitions are allowed? How many can be formed if each letter could be repeated any number of times? (S.U.J.B.)

10. Given that a triangle can be formed by joining three non-collinear points, find the number of different triangles that can be formed using the points A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J K, L, if ABCDE and EFGHIJKL are two straight lines. (London)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

11. Find the number of different permutations of the 8 letters of the word SYLLABUS.
Find the number of different selections of 5 letters which can be made from the letters of the word SYLLABUS. (London)

12. It is given that the number of different ways in which n people can be seated at a round table is $(n - 1)!$.
Two of the n people ($n > 3$) are to be kept separate in the seating arrangement. Find the number of different ways in which this can be done. (Cambridge)

13. I have six balls, three red, one blue, one brown and one green. In how many ways can I arrange them in a line?
In how many of these arrangements will no two red balls come together? (S.U.J.B.)

14. A small holiday hotel advertises for a manager and 7 other members of staff. There are 4 applicants for the position of manager and 10 other people apply for the other jobs at the hotel. Find the number of different ways of selecting a group of people for the 8 jobs.
The hotel has 4 single rooms, 6 double rooms and 5 family rooms. For a particular week, 4 individuals book single rooms, 3 couples book double rooms and 3 families book family rooms. Given that all the rooms are available for that week, find the number of different possible arrangements of bookings amongst the rooms.
One afternoon, 12 guests organise a game requiring 2 teams of 6. Find the number of different ways of selecting the teams.
Given that the 12 guests consist of 6 adults and 6 children and that each team must contain at least 2 adults, find the number of different ways of selecting the teams. (J.M.B.)

15. (a) A book club offers a choice of 20 books of which a member chooses six. Find the number of different ways in which a member may make his choice.
Given that 12 of the 20 books on offer are novels and that the other 8 are biographies, find the number of different ways in which a member chooses 6 so that
(i) he has 3 novels and 3 biographies,
(ii) he has at least 4 biographies.

(b) A group of 6 boys and 5 girls are to be photographed together. The girls are to sit on 5 chairs placed in a row and the boys are to stand in a line behind them. Find the number of different possible arrangements.
For a second photograph, the boys and girls are to be arranged with 3 boys and 3 girls standing whilst 3 boys and 2 girls are seated on the chairs in front of them, and in each row the boys and girls are to occupy alternate places.
Find the number of different possible arrangements. (J.M.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8
Series and the binomial theorem

A set of numbers, stated in a definite order, such that each number can be obtained from the previous number according to some rule, is a **sequence**. Each number of the sequence is called a **term**.

Consider the following 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, ...
1, 4, 9, 16, 25, ...
1, 2, 4, 8, 16, ...

Each of these is a sequence.

The '...' at the end of each sequence show that each one could go on indefinitely, i.e. the sequence is **infinite**. However, if we wished to restrict our attention to a limited number of terms of a sequence, we could write 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, ... 47. The final single full stop shows that the sequence ends when the number 47 is reached. Such a sequence is said to be **finite**.

An expression for the nth term (written u_n) of a sequence is useful since any specific term of the sequence can be obtained from it. The nth term of the sequence 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, ... is n^2.

Thus, for $n = 1$ we obtain the first term, written $u_1 = 1^2 = 1$
for $n = 2$ we obtain the second term $u_2 = 2^2 = 4$
for $n = 3$ we obtain the third term $u_3 = 3^2 = 9$ etc.

The sum of the terms of a sequence is called a **series**.

Thus $3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + \ldots$
$1 + 4 + 9 + 16 + 25 + \ldots$
and $1 + 2 + 4 + 8 + 16 + \ldots$ are all examples of series.

8.1 Arithmetic progressions

Consider the series $3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + \ldots$. The first term of the series is 3 and each subsequent term is obtained by adding a constant, 2, to the previous term. We say that the terms progress arithmetically and a series of this type is called an Arithmetic Progression or A.P. In the general case, if the first term is denoted by a and the constant (called the **common difference**) is d, the general arithmetic progression would be:

$$a + (a + d) + (a + 2d) + (a + 3d) + \ldots + [a + (n - 1)d] + \ldots$$

where $[a + (n - 1)d]$ is the expression for the nth term of the series.

It should be noted that the common difference d may be negative, in which case the terms of the progression would decrease, e.g. 15, $13\frac{1}{2}$, 12, $10\frac{1}{2}$, ...

Sum of the first n terms of an A.P.

Writing the sum of the first n terms of an A.P. as S_n, it follows that

$$S_n = a + (a + d) + (a + 2d) + \ldots + [a + (n - 2)d] + [a + (n - 1)d] \quad [1]$$

Rewriting these terms in the reverse order

$$S_n = [a + (n - 1)d] + [a + (n - 2)d] \ldots + (a + d) + a \quad [2]$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Adding [1] and [2]

$$2S_n = [2a + (n-1)d] + [2a + (n-1)d] + \ldots + [2a + (n-1)d] + [2a + (n-1)d]$$
$$= n[2a + (n-1)d]$$
$$\therefore \quad S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$$

The nth term, $[a + (n-1)d]$, is the last term involved in the sum to n terms. Writing this last term as l, we can write

$S_n = \frac{n}{2}(a + l)$ as an alternative form for S_n in which $l = [a + (n-1)d]$.

Summary

For the Arithmetic Progression $a + (a + d) + (a + 2d) + (a + 3d) + \ldots$

the nth term is given by $u_n = a + (n-1)d$

the sum to n terms is given by $S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$ or $\frac{n}{2}(a + l)$

Example 1

Find u_{15} and S_8 of (a) the A.P. $2 + 5 + 8 + 11 + \ldots$ (b) the A.P. in which the first term is 37 and the common difference is -4.

(a) $a = 2 \quad d = 5 - 2 = 3$

using $u_n = a + (n-1)d$

$u_{15} = 2 + (15 - 1)3$

$= 44$

using $S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$

$S_8 = \frac{8}{2}[2(2) + (8 - 1)3]$

$= 100$

(b) $a = 37 \quad d = -4$

using $u_n = a + (n-1)d$

$u_{15} = 37 + (15 - 1)(-4)$

$= -19$

using $S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$

$S_8 = \frac{8}{2}[2(37) + (8 - 1)(-4)]$

$= 184$

Example 2

Find the sum of the Arithmetical Progression $8{\cdot}5 + 12 + 15{\cdot}5 + 19 + \ldots + 103$.

The nth term is 103 $\quad \therefore \quad a + (n-1)d = 103$

but $a = 8{\cdot}5$ and $d = 3{\cdot}5$

$\therefore \quad 8{\cdot}5 + (n-1)(3{\cdot}5) = 103$

giving $n = 28$

using $S_n = \frac{n}{2}(a + l)$

$S_{28} = \frac{28}{2}(8{\cdot}5 + 103)$

$= 1561$

or using $S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$

$S_{28} = \frac{28}{2}[2(8{\cdot}5) + (28 - 1)(3{\cdot}5)]$

$= 1561$

If sufficient information about a progression is given, it is possible to determine the first term a and the common difference d.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 3

The fifth term of an A.P. is 23 and the twelfth term is 37. Find the first term, the common difference and the sum of the first eleven terms.

$u_5 = 23$ $\qquad\qquad$ $u_{12} = 37$

$\therefore\ a + 4d = 23 \quad \ldots [1]$ $\qquad\qquad$ $\therefore\ a + 11d = 37 \quad \ldots [2]$

Solving equations [1] and [2] simultaneously gives $a = 15$ and $d = 2$.

Using $\quad S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n - 1)d]$

$$S_{11} = \frac{11}{2}[2(15) + (11 - 1)2] = 275$$

The first term is 15, the common difference is 2 and the sum of the first 11 terms is 275.

Example 4

In an A.P. $u_{10} = 3$ and $S_6 = 76{\cdot}5$; find a, d and the smallest value of n such that $S_n < 0$.

Using $\quad u_n = a + (n - 1)d$ $\qquad\qquad$ Using $\quad S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n - 1)d]$

$u_{10} = a + 9d$ $\qquad\qquad$ $S_6 = \frac{6}{2}[2a + 5d]$

Thus $\quad 3 = a + 9d$ $\qquad\qquad$ and $\quad 76{\cdot}5 = 6a + 15d$

Solving these equations simultaneously gives $a = 16{\cdot}5$ and $d = -1{\cdot}5$.

Now suppose $S_n = 0$ i.e. $\quad \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n - 1)d] = 0$

then $\quad \frac{n}{2}[33 + (n - 1)(-1{\cdot}5)] = 0$

$$\frac{n}{2}(34{\cdot}5 - 1{\cdot}5n) = 0$$

or $\quad \frac{3n}{4}(23 - n) = 0$

Thus for $S_n = 0$, either $n = 0$ (clearly not the required solution in this case)
or $n = 23$

Thus for $S_n < 0$ we require $n > 23$.

The first term is 16·5, the common difference is $-1{\cdot}5$ and the smallest value of n for which S_n is negative is 24.

Exercise 8A

1. Write down the next two terms in each of the following sequences:
   (a) $-8, -5, -2, 1, 4, 7,$ ____, ____. $\qquad$ (b) $1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36,$ ____, ____.
   (c) $0{\cdot}1, 0{\cdot}01, 0{\cdot}001, 0{\cdot}0001,$ ____, ____. $\qquad$ (d) $\frac{3}{4}, 1\frac{1}{2}, 2\frac{1}{4}, 3, 3\frac{3}{4}, 4\frac{1}{2},$ ____, ____.
2. Write down the first term and the common difference for each of the following A.P.s.
   (a) $8 + 11 + 14 + 17 + \ldots$ $\qquad$ (b) $23 + 25 + 27 + 29 + \ldots$
   (c) $19 + 16 + 13 + 10 + \ldots$ $\qquad$ (d) $13\frac{1}{2} + 15 + 16\frac{1}{2} + 18 + \ldots$
   (e) $-11{\cdot}5 - 9 - 6{\cdot}5 - 4 - \ldots$ $\qquad$ (f) $6\frac{1}{4} + 6\frac{3}{4} + 7\frac{1}{4} + 7\frac{3}{4} + \ldots$
   (g) $-8 - 7 - 6 - 5 - \ldots$ $\qquad$ (h) $6 + 3 + 0 - 3 - \ldots$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. Find the number of terms in each of the following A.P.s.
(a) $5 + 8 + 11 + 14 + \ldots + 59 + 62$.
(b) $1 + 6 + 11 + 16 + \ldots + 501 + 506$.
(c) $-193 - 189 - 185 - \ldots - 21 - 17$.
(d) $2\frac{1}{4} + 2\frac{17}{20} + 3\frac{9}{20} + \ldots + 20\frac{1}{4} + 20\frac{17}{20}$.

4. Find the 18th term of a series that has an nth term given by $(2 + 3n)$.

5. Find the 31st term of a series that has an nth term given by $\frac{1}{2}(10 + 2n)$.

6. Find the 50th term of a series that has an nth term given by $\frac{1}{2}(32 - n)$.

7. Find the 6th and 7th terms of a series that has an nth term given by $(-1)^n(2n + 1)$.

8. Find an expression for the nth term of each of the following A.P.s. and use your answer to write down the 100th term of each series.
(a) $5 + 8 + 11 + 14 + \ldots$
(b) $5 + 2 - 1 - 4 - \ldots$
(c) $12\frac{1}{2} + 16 + 19\frac{1}{2} + 23 + \ldots$

9. For each of the following A.P.s, state which is the first term to exceed 1000.
(a) $7 + 12 + 17 + 22 + 27 + \ldots$ (b) $-24 - 21{\cdot}5 - 19 - 16{\cdot}5 - 14 - \ldots$

10. For each of the following A.P.s, state which is the first term to be negative.
(a) $843 + 836 + 829 + 822 + \ldots$ (b) $56{\cdot}3 + 55{\cdot}4 + 54{\cdot}5 + 53{\cdot}6 + \ldots$

11. State the values of a and d in each of the following A.P.s, and find S_n as indicated.
(a) $2 + 6 + 10 + 14 + \ldots, S_{12}$ (b) $10 + 8 + 6 + 4 + \ldots, S_{13}$
(c) $4{\cdot}5 + 6 + 7{\cdot}5 + 9 + \ldots, S_{19}$ (d) $15 + 13 + 11 + 9 + \ldots, S_{16}$
(e) $7 + 3 - 1 - 5 - \ldots, S_{20}$ (f) $-6\frac{1}{2} - 5 - 3\frac{1}{2} - 2 - \ldots, S_{12}$
(g) $-9 - 7 - 5 - 3 - \ldots, S_{16}$

12. Find the sum of each of the following A.P.s.
(a) $2 + 4 + 6 + 8 + 10 + \ldots + 146$.
(b) $100 + 95 + 90 + 85 + 80 + \ldots - 20$.
(c) $4 + 10 + 16 + 22 + 28 + \ldots + 334$.
(d) $5\frac{1}{4} + 4\frac{1}{2} + 3\frac{3}{4} + \ldots - 3$.

13. In an A.P. $u_3 = 8$ and $u_9 = 14$; find a, d and S_{10}.

14. In an A.P. $u_3 = 7{\cdot}5$ and $u_{10} = 11$; find a, d and S_8.

15. In an A.P. $u_4 = 15$ and $u_8 = 7$; find a, d and S_{22}.

16. In an A.P. $u_3 = -4$ and $u_7 = 8$; find a, d and S_9.

17. In an A.P. $u_2 = -12$ and $S_{12} = 18$; find a, d and u_6.

18. In an A.P. $u_3 = -0{\cdot}5$ and $S_7 = 21$; find a, d and u_9.

19. In an A.P. $u_{13} = 7$ and $S_9 = 18$; find a, d and u_{20}.

20. The sum of the first ten terms of an A.P. is 120 and the sum of the first twenty terms is 840. Find the sum of the first thirty terms.

21. An A.P. has a common difference d. If the sum to twenty terms is twenty-five times the first term, find in terms of d the sum to thirty terms.

22. In an A.P. $a = -23$ and $d = 2{\cdot}5$; find the least value of n such that $S_n > 0$.

23. In an A.P. $a = -61$ and $d = 4$; find the least value of n such that $S_n > 0$.

24. An A.P. has first term 10 and common difference 0·25. Find the least number of terms the A.P. can have, given that the sum of the terms exceeds 300.

25. An A.P. has first term -5 and common difference 1·5. Find the greatest number of terms the A.P. can have, given that the sum of the terms does not exceed 450.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

26. The sum to n terms of a particular series is given by $S_n = 17n - 3n^2$.
(a) Find an expression for the sum to $(n - 1)$ terms,
(b) find an expression for the nth term of the series,
(c) show that the series is an Arithmetic Progression and find the first term and the common difference.

27. Three consecutive terms of an A.P. have a sum of 36 and a product of 1428. Find the three terms.

28. A particular A.P. has a positive common difference and is such that for any three adjacent terms, three times the sum of their squares exceeds the square of their sum by 37·5. Find the common difference.

29. Find the common difference, the nth term and the sum to n terms of the following A.P.

$$\log_e 3 + \log_e(3^2) + \log_e(3^3) + \log_e(3^4) + \ldots$$

30. Find expressions for the nth term and the sum to n terms of the A.P.

$$\log_e(ab) + \log_e(ab^2) + \log_e(ab^3) + \log_e(ab^4) + \ldots$$

8.2 Geometric progressions

Consider the series $2 + 6 + 18 + 54 + 162 + \ldots$
Each term of the series can be obtained by multiplying the previous term by 3.
In the general case, if the first term is denoted by a and the ratio of one term to the previous term is r (called the **common ratio**) the series can then be written

$$a + ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + \ldots$$

It follows that the nth term u_n is ar^{n-1}.
A series of this type is called a Geometric Series or Geometric Progression, abbreviated to G.P.
It should be noted that the common ratio r may be positive, negative and/or fractional.

Sum of the first n terms of a G.P.

Writing the sum of the first n terms of a G.P. as S_n, it follows that

$$S_n = a + ar + ar^2 + \ldots + ar^{n-2} + ar^{n-1}$$

hence $$rS_n = ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + \ldots + ar^{n-1} + ar^n$$

subtracting

$$S_n - rS_n = a - ar^n$$

or $$S_n(1 - r) = a(1 - r^n)$$

i.e. $$S_n = \frac{a(1 - r^n)}{(1 - r)}$$ and this is the formula for the sum to n terms of a G.P. with first term a and common ratio r.

If the common ratio r is greater than 1, it is more convenient to use this result in the alternative form: $S_n = \dfrac{a(r^n - 1)}{(r - 1)}$.

Example 5

Find u_5 and S_5 of (a) the G.P. $\frac{12}{25} + \frac{6}{5} + 3 + \ldots$
(b) the G.P. in which $a = 27$ and $r = \frac{2}{3}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(a) $a = \frac{12}{25}$ $\quad r = \frac{6}{5} \div \frac{12}{25}$

$= \frac{5}{2}$

using $\quad u_n = ar^{n-1}$

$u_5 = \frac{12}{25}(\frac{5}{2})^4$

$\therefore \quad u_5 = 18\frac{3}{4}$

using $\quad S_n = \dfrac{a(r^n - 1)}{(r - 1)}$

$S_5 = \frac{12}{25}\left[\dfrac{(\frac{5}{2})^5 - 1}{\frac{5}{2} - 1}\right]$

$\therefore \quad S_5 = 30{\cdot}93$

Thus $u_5 = 18\frac{3}{4}$ and $S_5 = 30{\cdot}93$.

(b) $a = 27$ $\quad r = \frac{2}{3}$

using $\quad u_n = ar^{n-1}$

$u_5 = 27(\frac{2}{3})^4$

$\therefore \quad u_5 = 5\frac{1}{3}$

using $\quad S_n = \dfrac{a(1 - r^n)}{(1 - r)}$

$S_5 = 27\left[\dfrac{1 - (\frac{2}{3})^5}{1 - \frac{2}{3}}\right]$

$\therefore \quad S_5 = 70\frac{1}{3}$

Thus $u_5 = 5\frac{1}{3}$ and $S_5 = 70\frac{1}{3}$.

Example 6

A geometric series has first term 27 and common ratio $\frac{4}{3}$. Find the least number of terms the series can have if its sum exceeds 550.

$a = 27 \quad r = \frac{4}{3}$

Now suppose that $S_n = 550$ i.e. $\quad \dfrac{a(r^n - 1)}{r - 1} = 550$

then $\quad 27\dfrac{(\frac{4}{3})^n - 1}{\frac{4}{3} - 1} = 550$

$(\frac{4}{3})^n - 1 = \frac{550}{81}$

$(\frac{4}{3})^n = \frac{631}{81}$

taking logs $\quad n \log_e(\frac{4}{3}) = \log_e(\frac{631}{81})$

hence $\quad n = \log_e(\frac{631}{81}) \div \log_e(\frac{4}{3})$

$= 7{\cdot}136$

Thus for $S_n > 550$, we require $n > 7{\cdot}136$, i.e. $n = 8$.

If sufficient information about a geometric progression is given, it is possible to determine the first term a and the common ratio r of the progression.

Example 7

In a G.P. $u_3 = 32$ and $u_6 = 4$; find a, r and the sum of the first eight terms of the G.P.

$u_3 = ar^2 = 32$ and $u_6 = ar^5 = 4$

$\therefore \quad \dfrac{ar^5}{ar^2} = \dfrac{4}{32}$ i.e. $r^3 = \dfrac{1}{8}$ giving $r = \dfrac{1}{2}$

substituting for r in u_3 gives $a = 128$

using $\quad S_n = \dfrac{a(1 - r^n)}{1 - r}$

$S_8 = 128\dfrac{(1 - (\frac{1}{2})^8}{1 - \frac{1}{2}}$

$= 255$

Thus $a = 128$, $r = \frac{1}{2}$ and the sum of the first eight terms is 255.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Arithmetic mean and geometric mean

If some number x is inserted between a pair of numbers a and b such that a, x, b are in arithmetic progression, then x is said to be the **arithmetic mean** of a and b.

It follows that $x - a = b - x$

or $x = \dfrac{a+b}{2}$.

Thus for any three consecutive terms of an A.P. the middle term is the arithmetic mean of the other two and is equal to half their sum.

If some number y is inserted between a pair of numbers p and q such that p, y, q are in geometric progression, then y is said to be the **geometric mean** of p and q.

It follows that $\dfrac{y}{p} = \dfrac{q}{y}$

or $y = \sqrt{(pq)}$

Thus for any three consecutive terms of a G.P., the middle term is the geometric mean of the other two and is equal to the square root of their product.

Example 8

For the numbers 4 and 9, find (a) the arithmetic mean, (b) the geometric mean.

(a) Arithmetic mean $= \dfrac{4+9}{2}$
$= 6\frac{1}{2}$
(i.e. 4, $6\frac{1}{2}$, 9 are in A.P.)

(b) Geometric mean $= \sqrt{(4 \times 9)}$
$= 6$
(i.e. 4, 6, 9 are in G.P.)

Sum to infinity of a G.P.

Consider the infinite geometric progression

$$18 + 1{\cdot}8 + 0{\cdot}18 + 0{\cdot}018 + 0{\cdot}0018 + 0{\cdot}00018 + \ldots$$

The first term a is 18 and the common ratio r is $\frac{1}{10}$.

For this G.P.

$$\begin{aligned} S_2 &= 19{\cdot}8 \\ S_3 &= 19{\cdot}98 \\ S_4 &= 19{\cdot}998 \\ S_5 &= 19{\cdot}999\,8 \\ S_6 &= 19{\cdot}999\,98 \\ S_7 &= 19{\cdot}999\,998 \\ S_8 &= 19{\cdot}999\,999\,8 \end{aligned}$$

Clearly the sum S_n approaches the value 20. By taking a sufficiently large value of n, we can make S_n as near to 20 as we wish, i.e. we can make $(20 - S_n)$ as small as we wish. We say that S_n tends towards a **limiting** value of 20 as n approaches infinity and this is written

$$S_n \to 20 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty \quad \text{or} \quad \lim_{n \to \infty} S_n = 20$$

Consider the general infinite G.P.

$$a + ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + ar^4 + \ldots$$

and suppose also that $-1 < r < 1$, i.e. $|r| < 1$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Now $S_n = \dfrac{a(1 - r^n)}{1 - r}$ but with $|r| < 1$, r^n will approximate to zero for large values of n, i.e. $r^n \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$.

Thus $\quad S_n \to \dfrac{a(1)}{1 - r} \quad$ as $\quad n \to \infty$

or $\quad \lim\limits_{n \to \infty} S_n = \dfrac{a}{1 - r}$

The expression $\dfrac{a}{1 - r}$ gives the **sum to infinity** of a geometric series with first term a and common ratio r. It must be remembered that S_∞ only exists for infinite geometric series in which $|r| < 1$. The terms of the series will decrease in magnitude and the series is said to be **convergent**.

When $|r| \geqslant 1$ we have various possibilities:

if $r > 1$ then, as $n \to \infty$, $r^n \to \infty$ and $S_n \to +\infty$ or $-\infty$ dependent on the sign of a,

if $r < -1$ then, as $n \to \infty$, S_n alternates between being large and positive and being large and negative,

if $r = 1$, the series becomes $a + a + a + a + \ldots$ and $S_n = na$. Hence, as $n \to \infty$, $S_n \to +\infty$ or $-\infty$ dependent on the sign of a,

if $r = -1$, the series becomes $a - a + a - a + a - \ldots$ and $S_n = 0$ for even n, and $S_n = a$ for odd n.

Any series whose sum does not approach some finite limit as $n \to \infty$ is said to be **divergent**. Thus any geometric series for which $|r| \geqslant 1$ is divergent.

Example 9

Find the sum to infinity of the geometric series $16 + 12 + 9 + \ldots$

$$a = 16, \quad r = \tfrac{12}{16} = \tfrac{3}{4}$$

Thus $|r| < 1$; hence the series is convergent and S_∞ will exist.

$$\therefore \quad S_\infty = \frac{a}{1 - r} = \frac{16}{1 - \frac{3}{4}}$$
$$= 64$$

The sum to infinity of the series is 64.

Example 10

Express the recurring decimal $0{\cdot}2\dot{3}\dot{5}$ as a fraction in its lowest terms.

$$0{\cdot}2\dot{3}\dot{5} = 0{\cdot}2353535\ldots = 0{\cdot}2 + 0{\cdot}035 + 0{\cdot}00035 + 0{\cdot}0000035 + \ldots$$
$$= 0{\cdot}2 + \text{an infinite geometric series with } a = 0{\cdot}035 \text{ and } r = \tfrac{1}{100}$$
$$= 0{\cdot}2 + S_\infty$$

using $\quad S_\infty = \dfrac{a}{1 - r}$

$$S_\infty = \frac{0{\cdot}035}{1 - \frac{1}{100}}$$
$$= \frac{35}{1000} \times \frac{100}{99} = \frac{7}{198}$$

$$\therefore \quad 0{\cdot}2\dot{3}\dot{5} = 0{\cdot}2 + \tfrac{7}{198}$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{5} + \tfrac{7}{198} = \tfrac{233}{990}.$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Summary
For the geometric series $a + ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + \ldots$
the nth term is given by $u_n = ar^{n-1}$,
the sum to n terms is given by $S_n = \dfrac{a(1 - r^n)}{1 - r}$ or $S_n = \dfrac{a(r^n - 1)}{r - 1}$,
and for $|r| < 1$ the series is convergent with $S_\infty = \dfrac{a}{1 - r}$.

Exercise 8B

1. For each of the following G.P.s, state the common ratio and the next two terms:
   (a) $4 + 20 + 100 + 500 + \ldots$
   (b) $24 + 12 + 6 + \ldots$
   (c) $45 + 15 + 5 + \ldots$
2. Using the formula $S_n = \dfrac{a(r^n - 1)}{r - 1}$, find S_{10} for the G.P. $2, 6, 18, 54, \ldots$
3. Using the formula $S_n = \dfrac{a(1 - r^n)}{1 - r}$, find S_5 and S_6 for the G.P. $18, -9, 4\frac{1}{2}, \ldots$ and hence deduce the value of u_6.
4. Using the formula $S_n = \dfrac{a(r^n - 1)}{r - 1}$, find S_7 for the G.P. in which
   (a) $a = \frac{3}{8}$ and $r = 4$, (b) $a = \frac{3}{8}$ and $r = -4$.
5. Find the value of the common ratio of the G.P. that has third term equal to 6 and eighth term equal to 1458.
6. Find the value of the common ratio of the G.P. that has second term equal to 4 and fifth term equal to $-\frac{1}{16}$.
7. In a G.P. the seventh term equals 8 and the ninth term equals 18; find the possible values of the common ratio.
8. In a G.P. the fourth term equals 6 and the eighth term equals 96; find the possible values of the common ratio and the corresponding values of the first term.
9. Find the sum of the first ten terms of a G.P. that has a sixth term of $\frac{32}{33}$ and a seventh term of $1\frac{31}{33}$.
10. Find the sum of the first seven terms of a G.P. that has an eighth term of $\frac{2}{3}$ and a fifth term of 18.
11. Find the arithmetic mean of each of the following pairs of numbers:
    (a) 8, 20 (b) $-5, -1$ (c) $-2, 10$ (d) 3, 12.
12. Find the geometric mean of each of the following pairs of numbers:
    (a) 4, 16 (b) 8, 18 (c) $1\frac{1}{4}, 5$ (d) $1\frac{3}{4}, 7$.
13. The geometric mean of two numbers a and $b (b > a)$ is equal to four-fifths of the arithmetic mean of the two numbers. If $a = 6$, find the value of b.
14. For each of the following series state whether they are convergent or divergent and, for those that are convergent, find the sum to infinity:
    (a) $1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + 13 + \ldots$ (b) $16 + 8 + 4 + 2 + 1 + \ldots$
    (c) $84 - 42 + 21 - 10\frac{1}{2} + 5\frac{1}{4} - \ldots$ (d) $125 + 25 + 5 + 1 + \ldots$
    (e) $8 + 12 + 18 + 27 + 40\frac{1}{2} + \ldots$ (f) $64 - 16 + 4 - 1 + \frac{1}{4} - \ldots$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

15. For each of the following geometric series, find the range of values of x for which the sum to infinity of the series exists:

(a) $x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + \ldots$ (b) $1 + \frac{x}{3} + \frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{x^3}{27} + \ldots$

(c) $1 + \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{x^3} + \ldots$ (d) $(x + \frac{1}{2}) + (x + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (x + \frac{1}{2})^3 + \ldots$

16. Find the sum to infinity of the G.P. having a second term of -9 and a fifth term of $\frac{1}{3}$.

17. The fourth, eighth and fourteenth terms of an A.P., common difference 0·5, are in geometric progression. Find the first term of the A.P. and the common ratio of the G.P.

18. The fourth, seventh and sixteenth terms of an A.P. are in geometric progression. If the first six terms of the A.P. have a sum of 12, find the common difference of the A.P. and the common ratio of the G.P.

19. The third, fifth and seventeenth terms of an A.P. are in geometric progression. Find the common ratio of the G.P.

20. A mathematical child negotiates a new pocket money deal with her unsuspecting father in which she receives 1p on the first day of the month, 2p on the second day, 4p on the third day, 8p on the fourth day, 16p on the fifth day, ... until the end of the month. How much would the child receive during the course of a month of 30 days? (Give your answer to the nearest million pounds.)

21. Find the common ratio of a G.P. that has a first term of 5 and a sum to infinity of 15.

22. Find the first term of a G.P. that has a common ratio of $\frac{3}{5}$ and a sum to infinity of 40.

23. Find the third term of a G.P. that has a common ratio of $-\frac{1}{4}$ and a sum to infinity of 8.

24. The sum of the first two terms of a G.P. is 9 and the sum to infinity of the G.P. is 25. If the G.P. has a positive common ratio r, find r and the first term.

25. A geometric series has first term 2 and common ratio $\frac{3}{2}$. Find the greatest number of terms the series can have without its sum exceeding 125.

26. A geometric series has first term 5 and common ratio 3. Find the least number of terms the series can have if its sum exceeds 2000.

27. Express the following recurring decimals as fractions in their lowest terms:

(a) $0{\cdot}\dot{7}$ (b) $0{\cdot}\dot{5}\dot{0}$ (c) $0{\cdot}4\dot{5}\dot{2}$ (d) $0{\cdot}\dot{3}6\dot{0}$

28. Prove that the arithmetic mean of two different positive numbers exceeds the geometric mean of the same two numbers.

8.3 Summation of other series and proof by induction

The sums of certain finite series can be proved by the method of induction. This method can only be used to prove that a *given* expression is the required sum because the method does not produce the expression itself. The following example illustrates its use.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 11

Prove that the sum of the series $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \ldots + n^2$ is $\frac{n}{6}(n + 1)(2n + 1)$.

To prove this result by induction, we proceed as follows.

(a) Show that the result is true for a particular value of n, say $n = 1$.
If $n = 1$, $1^2 = 1$ and $\frac{1}{6}(1 + 1)(2 + 1) = 1$
Hence the result is true for $n = 1$.

(b) Prove that, *if* the result is true for some general value of n, say $n = k$, it must also be true for the next value of n, i.e. $n = k + 1$.
Assume the result is true for $n = k$,

i.e. $$1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \ldots + k^2 = \frac{k}{6}(k + 1)(2k + 1)$$

From this it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \ldots + k^2 + (k + 1)^2 &= \frac{k}{6}(k + 1)(2k + 1) + (k + 1)^2 \\ &= \frac{(k + 1)}{6}[k(2k + 1) + 6(k + 1)] \\ &= \frac{(k + 1)}{6}(2k^2 + 7k + 6) \\ \therefore \quad 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \ldots + (k + 1)^2 &= \frac{(k + 1)}{6}(k + 2)(2k + 3) \\ &= \frac{n}{6}(n + 1)(2n + 1) \quad \text{with} \quad n = k + 1. \end{aligned}$$

Thus *if* the result is true for $n = k$, it must also be true for $n = k + 1$.

From (a) $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \ldots + n^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n + 1)(2n + 1)$ *is* true for $n = 1$ and using (b), if it is true for $n = 1$, it must be true for $n = 2$. Using (b) again, if it is true for $n = 2$, it must be true for $n = 3$, and so on. Hence the result is true for all positive integral values of n, i.e. for every finite number of terms.

$$\text{Thus} \quad 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \ldots + n^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n + 1)(2n + 1).$$

A more concise way of writing the series $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \ldots + n^2$ is to use the symbol Σ (a Greek letter pronounced 'sigma').

$\sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r)$ means the series with first term $f(1)$, second term $f(2)$, ... last term $f(n)$.

Thus, $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \ldots + n^2 = \sum_{r=1}^{n} r^2$ and the result proved above can then be written:

$$\sum_{r=1}^{n} r^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n + 1)(2n + 1).$$

Example 12

Write down the series $\sum_{r=5}^{10} r(r + 1)$ in full.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

For $r = 5$ $r(r + 1) = 5 \times 6 = 30$,
for $r = 6$ $r(r + 1) = 6 \times 7 = 42$ and so on to $r = 10$.

$$\text{Thus } \sum_{r=5}^{10} r(r + 1) = 5 \times 6 + 6 \times 7 + 7 \times 8 + 8 \times 9 + 9 \times 10 + 10 \times 11$$
$$= 30 + 42 + 56 + 72 + 90 + 110.$$

Example 13

Express the series $1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + 13 + \ldots + 298$ in the form $\sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r)$.

In $\sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r)$, $f(r)$ is the expression for the rth term of the series.
By inspection, $1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + 13 + \ldots + 298$ has rth term $(3r - 2)$.
Alternatively, had we not been able to state this by inspection, we could say:
$1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + \ldots$ is an arithmetic progression with $a = 1$ and $d = 3$.
Thus the rth term is $a + (r - 1)d$
$$= 1 + (r - 1)3$$
$$= 3r - 2$$
As the final term is 298, the greatest value of r in this series is that for which $3r - 2 = 298$, i.e. $r = 100$.

$$\therefore \quad 1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + 13 + \ldots + 298 = \sum_{r=1}^{100} (3r - 2).$$

Example 14

Use the method of induction to prove that $\sum_{r=1}^{n} 2^{r-1} = 2^n - 1$.

If $n = 1$ L.H.S. $= \sum_{r=1}^{1} 2^{r-1} = 2^{1-1}$ R.H.S. $= 2^1 - 1$
$= 1$ $= 1$

Thus the statement is true for $n = 1$.

Assume the statement is true for $n = k$, i.e. $\sum_{r=1}^{k} 2^{r-1} = 2^k - 1$

$$\text{then } \sum_{r=1}^{k+1} 2^{r-1} = \sum_{r=1}^{k} 2^{r-1} + 2^{k+1-1}$$
$$= 2^k - 1 + 2^k$$
$$= 2(2^k) - 1$$
$$\therefore \sum_{r=1}^{k+1} 2^{r-1} = 2^{k+1} - 1$$
$$= 2^n - 1 \quad \text{with} \quad n = k + 1$$

Thus if $\sum_{r=1}^{n} 2^{r-1} = 2^n - 1$ is true for $n = k$, it is also true for $n = k + 1$.

However it is true for $n = 1$, and so it must be true for $n = 2$ and also for $n = 3, 4, 5 \ldots$

Thus $\sum_{r=1}^{n} 2^{r-1} = 2^n - 1$ for all positive integer values of n.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The following results hold for the sigma notation:

$$\sum_{r=1}^{n} af(r) = a\sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sum_{r=1}^{n}[f(r) + g(r)] = \sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r) + \sum_{r=1}^{n} g(r)$$

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{r=1}^{n} af(r) &= af(1) + af(2) + \ldots + af(n)\\ &= a[f(1) + f(2) + \ldots + f(n)]\\ &= a\sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r)\end{aligned}$$

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{r=1}^{n}[f(r) + g(r)] &= f(1) + g(1) + \ldots f(n) + g(n)\\ &= [f(1) + \ldots f(n)] + [g(1) + \ldots g(n)]\\ &= \sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r) + \sum_{r=1}^{n} g(r)\end{aligned}$$

Example 15

(a) Using the standard result $\sum_{r=1}^{n} r^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n + 1)(2n + 1)$, obtain an expression for $\sum_{r=1}^{n} (2r^2 - 1)$, simplifying your answer as far as is possible.

(b) Use your answer for part (a) to sum the series $1 + 7 + 17 + 31 + \ldots + 799$.

(a)
$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{r=1}^{n} (2r^2 - 1) &= 2\sum_{r=1}^{n} r^2 - \sum_{r=1}^{n} 1\\ &= \frac{n}{3}(n + 1)(2n + 1) - n \qquad \left[\text{Note: } \sum_{r=1}^{n} 1 = 1 + 1 + 1 \ldots + 1 = n\right]\\ &= \frac{n}{3}[(n + 1)(2n + 1) - 3]\\ &= \frac{n}{3}(n + 2)(2n - 1)\end{aligned}$$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned}1 + 7 + 17 + 31 + \ldots + 799 &= \sum_{r=1}^{20} (2r^2 - 1) \quad \text{since } u_{20} = 799\\ &= \tfrac{20}{3}(20 + 2)(40 - 1)\\ &= 5720\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 8C

1. Write each of the following series in full:

(a) $\sum_{r=1}^{5} r$ (b) $\sum_{r=1}^{5} r^2$ (c) $\sum_{r=7}^{9} (2r - 1)$ (d) $\sum_{r=5}^{10} \frac{2520}{r}$ (e) $\sum_{r=1}^{5} (-1)^r r$ (f) $\sum_{r=1}^{5} (-1)^{r+1} r$

2. Express each of the following series in the form $\sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r)$

(a) $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + \ldots + 50$, (b) $1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + 4^3 + \ldots + 50^3$,
(c) $5 + 10 + 15 + 20 + 25 + 30$, (d) $3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + 13$,
(e) $3 - 6 + 9 - 12 + 15 - 18$, (f) $-1 + 4 - 9 + 16 - 25 + 36 - \ldots - 169$.

3. Prove each of the following statements by the method of induction.

(a) $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + \ldots + n = \frac{n}{2}(n + 1)$

(b) $1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \ldots + n^3 = \frac{n^2}{4}(n + 1)^2$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) $1 \times 3 + 2 \times 4 + 3 \times 5 + \ldots + n(n+2) = \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+7)$

(d) $\frac{1}{1 \times 2} + \frac{1}{2 \times 3} + \frac{1}{3 \times 4} + \ldots + \frac{1}{n(n+1)} = \frac{n}{n+1}$

In the remaining questions of this exercise, the following standard results may be quoted and used without proof:

$$\sum_{r=1}^{n} r = \frac{n}{2}(n+1); \quad \sum_{r=1}^{n} r^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1); \quad \sum_{r=1}^{n} r^3 = \frac{n^2}{4}(n+1)^2$$

4. Write each of the following series in the form $\sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r)$ and, using the standard results for $\sum r$, $\sum r^2$ and $\sum r^3$, evaluate each summation.

(a) $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + \ldots + 100$,
(b) $1 + 4 + 9 + 16 + 25 + \ldots + 484$,
(c) $1 + 8 + 27 + 64 + 125 + \ldots + 3375$,
(d) $1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + \ldots + 101$,
(e) $1 \times 3 + 2 \times 4 + 3 \times 5 + 4 \times 6 + \ldots + 20 \times 22$,
(f) $1 \times 1 + 2 \times 3 + 3 \times 5 + 4 \times 7 + 5 \times 9 + \ldots + 13 \times 25$.

5. Using the standard result for $\sum_{r=1}^{n} r^3$ evaluate (a) $\sum_{r=1}^{24} r^3$, (b) $\sum_{r=1}^{15} r^3$, (c) $\sum_{r=16}^{24} r^3$.

6. (a) Using the standard results for $\sum r^2$ and $\sum r$, obtain an expression for $\sum_{r=1}^{n} r(r+1)$ and simplify your answer as far as possible.

(b) Use your answer from part (a) to sum the series
$1 \times 2 + 2 \times 3 + 3 \times 4 + 4 \times 5 + \ldots + 28 \times 29$.

7. (a) Using the standard results for $\sum r^3$, $\sum r^2$ and $\sum r$, obtain an expression for $\sum_{r=1}^{n} r(r+1)(r+2)$ and simplify your answer as far as possible.

(b) Use your answer from part (a) to sum the series
$1 \times 2 \times 3 + 2 \times 3 \times 4 + 3 \times 4 \times 5 + \ldots + 20 \times 21 \times 22$.

8. (a) Using the standard results for $\sum r^2$ and $\sum r$, obtain an expression for $\sum_{r=1}^{n} (r+1)(2r+1)$ and simplify your answer as far as possible.

(b) Use your answer from part (a) to sum the series
$2 \times 3 + 3 \times 5 + 4 \times 7 + \ldots + 21 \times 41$.

9. Prove that $\sum_{r=1}^{n} r^2(r+1) = \frac{n}{12}(n+1)(n+2)(3n+1)$ by using

(a) the method of induction, (b) the standard results for $\sum r^3$ and $\sum r^2$.

10. Find expressions in terms of n for the sums of the following series, to the number of terms stated, simplifying your answers as far as is possible.

(a) $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + \ldots$ to $2n$ terms,
(b) $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + 4^2 + \ldots$ to $(n+1)$ terms,
(c) $1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + 4^3 + \ldots$ to $2n$ terms,
(d) $7 + 9 + 11 + 13 + 15 + \ldots$ to $2n$ terms,
(e) $2^3 + 4^3 + 6^3 + 8^3 + \ldots$ to n terms,
(f) $2^3 + 4^3 + 6^3 + 8^3 + \ldots$ to $2n$ terms,

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(g) $1 \times 4 + 2 \times 5 + 3 \times 6 + 4 \times 7 + \ldots$ to n terms,
(h) $1 \times 2^2 + 2 \times 3^2 + 3 \times 4^2 + 4 \times 5^2 + \ldots$ to n terms,
(i) $2 \times 1 + 4 \times 3 + 6 \times 5 + 8 \times 7 + \ldots$ to n terms,
(j) $1^2 \times 1 + 2^2 \times 3 + 3^2 \times 5 + 4^2 \times 7 + \ldots$ to n terms.

11. Using the standard result for $\sum_{r=1}^{n} r^3$ show that $\sum_{r=n+1}^{2n} r^3 = \frac{n^2}{4}(3n + 1)(5n + 3)$.

12. Prove each of the following statements by the method of induction.

(a) $\sum_{r=1}^{n} [a + (r - 1)d] = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n - 1)d]$ (b) $\sum_{r=1}^{n} ap^{r-1} = \frac{a(p^n - 1)}{p - 1}$.

13. Use the method of induction to prove that $6^n - 1$ is divisible by 5 for all positive integral values of n (Hint: show that it is true for $n = 1$ and show that, if $6^k - 1 = 5A$ where A is a positive integer, then $6^{k+1} - 1 = 5B$, where B is a positive integer).
Prove also that $8^n - 7n + 6$ is divisible by 7 for all positive integral values of n.

8.4 The binomial theorem for a positive integral index

By expanding, it can be shown that
$$(a + x)^1 = a + x$$
$$(a + x)^2 = a^2 + 2ax + x^2$$
$$(a + x)^3 = a^3 + 3a^2x + 3ax^2 + x^3$$
$$(a + x)^4 = a^4 + 4a^3x + 6a^2x^2 + 4ax^3 + a^4.$$

Extracting the coefficients of a and x we obtain Pascal's triangle:

1 1

1 2 1

1 3 3 1

1 4 6 4 1

and the next two lines would be

1 5 10 10 5 1

1 6 15 20 15 6 1

Pascal's triangle can be used to expand expressions of the type $(a + x)^n$.

Example 16

Expand $(2 - x)^5$.

Selecting from Pascal's triangle, the line that commences 1 5 ... gives:

1 5 10 10 5 1

Inserting decreasing powers of 2, from 2^5 to 2^0, and increasing powers of $(-x)$, from $(-x)^0$ to $(-x)^5$

$$\begin{aligned}(2-x)^5 &= 1 \times 2^5(-x)^0 + 5 \times 2^4(-x)^1 + 10 \times 2^3(-x)^2 + 10 \times 2^2(-x)^3 + 5 \times 2^1(-x)^4 + 1 \times 2^0(-x)^5 \\ &= 32 - 80x + 80x^2 - 40x^3 + 10x^4 - x^5\end{aligned}$$

Pascal's triangle can be used to obtain the expansion of $(a + x)^n$ for any positive integral values of n. However, for large values of n the task of obtaining the relevant line of the triangle would be tedious. Indeed, as we

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

shall see later, we may only require the first few terms of the expansion, or perhaps just one particular term and in such cases it is better to use the **binomial theorem.**

According to this theorem

$$(1+x)^n = \sum_{r=0}^{n} {}^nC_r x^r \quad \left(\text{remember that } {}^nC_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!\,r!}\right)$$

$$= {}^nC_0x^0 + {}^nC_1x^1 + {}^nC_2x^2 + {}^nC_3x^3 + \ldots + {}^nC_nx^n$$

$$\therefore \quad (1+x)^n = 1 + {}^nC_1x + {}^nC_2x^2 + {}^nC_3x^3 + \ldots + x^n$$

$$\text{or} \quad (1+x)^n = 1 + \frac{nx}{1!} + \frac{n(n-1)x^2}{2!} + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)x^3}{3!} + \ldots + x^n$$

These are two forms of the binomial expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ for positive integral values of n. The R.H.S. gives the series expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ in ascending powers of x.

Proof of the binomial expansion of $(1 + x)^n$

We know that $(1 + x)^n = \underbrace{(1 + x)(1 + x)(1 + x) \ldots (1 + x)}_{n \text{ brackets}}$

When expanding the R.H.S. the constant term is obtained by multiplying the n 1's together and it is therefore 1.

The term involving x is obtained by multiplying $(n - 1)$ 1's and one x together. The x can be chosen from any one of the n brackets, so the coefficient of x is ${}^nC_1$.

The term involving x^2 is obtained by multiplying $(n - 2)$ 1's and two x's together. The x's can be chosen from any two of the n brackets, so the coefficient of x^2 is ${}^nC_2$. We continue this process until eventually we multiply the n x's together to get x^n.

Thus $$(1 + x)^n = 1 + {}^nC_1x + {}^nC_2x^2 + \ldots + x^n$$

The binomial theorem for $(1 + x)^n$ can also be proved by using the method of induction. The proof uses the fact that ${}^nC_r + {}^nC_{r-1} = {}^{n+1}C_r$, proved below.

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^nC_r + {}^nC_{r-1} &= \frac{n!}{(n-r)!\,r!} + \frac{n!}{(n-r+1)!\,(r-1)!} \\
&= \frac{(n-r+1)\,n!}{(n-r+1)!\,r!} + \frac{n!\,r}{(n-r+1)!\,r!} \\
&= \frac{n!}{(n-r+1)!\,r!}(n-r+1+r) \\
&= \frac{(n+1)!}{(n+1-r)!\,r!} = {}^{n+1}C_r
\end{aligned}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Proof of the binomial expansion by induction

To prove $(1 + x)^n = {}^nC_0 + {}^nC_1x + {}^nC_2x^2 + {}^nC_3x^3 + \ldots + {}^nC_{n-1}x^{n-1} + {}^nC_nx^n$.

If $n = 1$, L.H.S. $= (1 + x)^1$ R.H.S. $= {}^1C_0 + {}^1C_1x$
$= 1 + x$ $= 1 + x$

Hence the result is true for $n = 1$.

Assume that the result is correct for $n = k$,

i.e. $(1+x)^k = {}^kC_0 + {}^kC_1x + {}^kC_2x^2 + {}^kC_3x^3 + \ldots + {}^kC_{k-1}x^{k-1} + {}^kC_kx^k$

then
$$\begin{aligned}(1+x)^{k+1} &= (1+x)({}^kC_0 + {}^kC_1x + {}^kC_2x^2 + {}^kC_3x^3 + \ldots + {}^kC_{k-1}x^{k-1} + {}^kC_kx^k)\\ &= {}^kC_0 + {}^kC_1x + {}^kC_2x^2 + {}^kC_3x^3 + \ldots + {}^kC_{k-1}x^{k-1} + {}^kC_kx^k +\\ &\qquad {}^kC_0x + {}^kC_1x^2 + {}^kC_2x^3 + {}^kC_3x^4 + \ldots + {}^kC_{k-1}x^k + {}^kC_kx^{k+1}\\ &= 1 + ({}^kC_1 + {}^kC_0)x + ({}^kC_2 + {}^kC_1)x^2 + ({}^kC_3 + {}^kC_2)x^3 + \ldots + ({}^kC_k + {}^kC_{k-1})x^k + {}^kC_kx^{k+1}\\ &= 1 + {}^{k+1}C_1x + {}^{k+1}C_2x^2 + {}^{k+1}C_3x^3 + \ldots + {}^{k+1}C_kx^k + x^{k+1}\\ &= 1 + {}^nC_1x + {}^nC_2x^2 + {}^nC_3x^3 + \ldots + x^n \quad \text{with} \quad n = k + 1\end{aligned}$$

Thus if the result is true for $n = k$, it is also true for $n = k + 1$. However, the result is true for $n = 1$ and is therefore true for $n = 2, 3, 4, \ldots$ and so on. Thus the binomial expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ is proved for positive integral values of n.

Using $(1 + x)^n = 1 + {}^nC_1x + {}^nC_2x^2 + {}^nC_3x^3 + \ldots + x^n$

$$\begin{aligned}(a+x)^n &= \left[a\left(1+\frac{x}{a}\right)\right]^n\\ &= a^n\left(1+\frac{x}{a}\right)^n = a^n\left[1 + {}^nC_1\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + {}^nC_2\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^2 + {}^nC_3\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^3 + \ldots + \left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^n\right]\end{aligned}$$

Thus $(a + x)^n = a^n + {}^nC_1a^{n-1}x + {}^nC_2a^{n-2}x^2 + {}^nC_3a^{n-3}x^3 + \ldots + x^n$

or $(a + x)^n = a^n + \frac{n}{1!}a^{n-1}x + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}a^{n-2}x^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!}a^{n-3}x^3 + \ldots + x^n$

This is the binomial expansion of $(a + x)^n$ for positive integral values of n.

Example 17

Use the binomial theorem to expand $(2 + 3x)^5$.

Using the binomial expansion of $(a + x)^n$ with $a = 2$, $n = 5$ and $3x$ substituted for x:

$$\begin{aligned}(2 + 3x)^5 &= 2^5 + {}^5C_12^4(3x)^1 + {}^5C_22^3(3x)^2 + {}^5C_32^2(3x)^3 + {}^5C_42^1(3x)^4 + (3x)^5\\ &= 32 + 240x + 720x^2 + 1080x^3 + 810x^4 + 243x^5\end{aligned}$$

Example 18

Use the binomial expansion to expand $(2 - x)^{10}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Using the expansion of $(a + x)^n$ with $a = 2$, $n = 10$ and $(-x)$ substituted for x:

$$(2 - x)^{10} = 2^{10} + \frac{10}{1!}2^9(-x) + \frac{10 \times 9}{2!}2^8(-x)^2 + \frac{10 \times 9 \times 8}{3!}2^7(-x)^3$$
$$+ \text{ terms of the order } x^4 \text{ and higher}$$
$$\therefore \quad (2 - x)^{10} = 1024 - 5120x + 11\,520x^2 - 15\,360x^3 \ldots \text{ is the required expansion.}$$

Example 19

Expand $(1 + x + x^2)(1 - x)^8$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3.

Using the expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ with $n = 8$ and $(-x)$ substituted for x:

$$(1 - x)^8 = 1 - 8x + 28x^2 - 56x^3 + \ldots$$
$$\therefore \quad (1 + x + x^2)(1 - x)^8 = (1 + x + x^2)(1 - 8x + 28x^2 - 56x^3 \ldots)$$

Expanding and ignoring terms of order x^4 and above gives

$$\begin{aligned}(1 + x + x^2)(1 - x)^8 &= 1 - 8x + 28x^2 - 56x^3 \ldots \\ &\quad + x - 8x^2 + 28x^3 \ldots \\ &\quad + x^2 - 8x^3 \ldots \\ \therefore \quad (1 + x + x^2)(1 - x)^8 &= 1 - 7x + 21x^2 - 36x^3 \ldots\end{aligned}$$

Example 20

Expand $(1 + x - x^2)^7$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3.

Using the expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ with $n = 7$ and $(x - x^2)$ substituted for x:

$$(1 + x - x^2)^7 = 1 + 7 \times (x - x^2) + \frac{7 \times 6}{2!}(x - x^2)^2 + \frac{7 \times 6 \times 5}{3!}(x - x^2)^3 \ldots$$

Expanding and ignoring terms of order x^4 and above gives

$$\begin{aligned}(1 + x - x^2)^7 &= 1 + 7(x - x^2) + 21(x^2 - 2x^3) + 35(x^3) \ldots \\ &= 1 + 7x + 14x^2 - 7x^3 \ldots\end{aligned}$$

Approximate values

Example 21

Expand $(2 + x)^4$ and use your expansion to find (a) $(2{\cdot}1)^4$, (b) $(1{\cdot}9)^4$.

By using the binomial theorem, or Pascal's triangle, we obtain

$$(2 + x)^4 = 16 + 32x + 24x^2 + 8x^3 + x^4$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{(a)} \quad (2{\cdot}1)^4 = (2 + 0{\cdot}1)^4 &= 16 + 32(0{\cdot}1) + 24(0{\cdot}1)^2 + 8(0{\cdot}1)^3 + (0{\cdot}1)^4 \\ &= 16 + 3{\cdot}2 + 0{\cdot}24 + 0{\cdot}008 + 0{\cdot}0001 \\ \therefore \quad (2{\cdot}1)^4 &= 19{\cdot}4481 \\ \text{(b)} \quad (1{\cdot}9)^4 = (2 - 0{\cdot}1)^4 &= 16 + 32(-0{\cdot}1) + 24(-0{\cdot}1)^2 + 8(-0{\cdot}1)^3 + (-0{\cdot}1)^4 \\ &= 13{\cdot}0321 \\ \therefore \quad (1{\cdot}9)^4 &= 13{\cdot}0321\end{aligned}$$

A similar procedure can be adopted for evaluating higher powers of numbers but this could involve a large number of terms. However, if we ensure that x is sufficiently small, the terms involving the higher powers of x will approximate to zero and can be neglected. The following example demonstrates this technique.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 22

Expand $(1 + 3x)^{10}$ in ascending powers of x, up to and including the term in x^3. Hence evaluate $(1{\cdot}003)^{10}$ correct to five places of decimals.

Using the binomial expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ with $n = 10$ and $3x$ substituted for x, we obtain

$$(1 + 3x)^{10} = 1 + 30x + 405x^2 + 3240x^3 + \ldots$$

as the required expansion.

$$\begin{aligned}(1{\cdot}003)^{10} = [1 + 3(\tfrac{1}{1000})]^{10} &\approx 1 + 30(\tfrac{1}{1000}) + 405(\tfrac{1}{1000})^2 + 3240(\tfrac{1}{1000})^3 \\ &= 1 + 0{\cdot}03 + 0{\cdot}000\,405 + 0{\cdot}000\,003\,240 \\ &= 1{\cdot}030\,41 \quad \text{correct to five decimal places.}\end{aligned}$$

Notice that to obtain an answer correct to five decimal places we need to know whether the figure in the sixth decimal place is less than 5 or not. In the last example the first four terms give a total of 1·030 408 24 which becomes 1·030 41 when corrected to 5 places of decimals. From these first four terms we can see that the terms in x^4 and higher powers will not be large enough to alter the result and so our answer is indeed correct to five decimal places.

Example 23

Use the binomial expansion of $(1 + x)^8$ to find $(1{\cdot}01)^8$ correct to five significant figures.

In this example we do not know how many terms of the expansion are required to give the necessary accuracy. In such cases, start by finding the first four terms and be prepared to find more if they are required later.

The binomial expansion gives $(1 + x)^8 = 1 + 8x + 28x^2 + 56x^3 + \ldots$

$$\begin{aligned}(1{\cdot}01)^8 = (1 + \tfrac{1}{100})^8 &= 1 + 8(\tfrac{1}{100}) + 28(\tfrac{1}{100})^2 + 56(\tfrac{1}{100})^3 + \ldots \\ &= 1 + 0{\cdot}08 + 0{\cdot}0028 + 0{\cdot}000\,056 + \ldots\end{aligned}$$

We need to know whether the sixth significant figure is less than 5 or not. As the answer is clearly between 1 and 10, the sixth significant figure will be in the fifth decimal place. The first four terms give a total of 1·082 856 which becomes 1·0829 when corrected to 5 significant figures. Clearly the terms in x^4 and higher will not alter this answer. Thus we have sufficient terms for the required accuracy and

$$\begin{aligned}(1{\cdot}01)^8 &\approx 1{\cdot}082\,856 \\ &= 1{\cdot}0829 \quad \text{correct to five significant figures.}\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 8D

1. Expand the following using Pascal's triangle:
   (a) $(3 + x)^3$, (b) $(5 + 2x)^3$, (c) $(2 + x)^4$, (d) $(2 - x)^4$,
   (e) $(2y + x)^5$, (f) $(2x - 3y)^5$, (g) $\left(x - \dfrac{1}{x}\right)^4$, (h) $\left(x - \dfrac{2}{x}\right)^5$.
2. Expand the following using the binomial theorem:
   (a) $(1 + 3x)^4$, (b) $(2x + y)^4$, (c) $(2 - 3x)^6$, (d) $\left(2x + \dfrac{3}{x}\right)^5$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. Use the binomial theorem to expand $(1 + x)^{12}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3.
4. Use the binomial theorem to expand $(a + x)^{12}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3.
5. Find the first four terms in the series expansion of $(a - 3x)^{10}$ in ascending powers of x.
6. If x is such that terms involving x^5 and higher powers can be neglected, find an approximate expansion of $\left(1 + \frac{x}{2}\right)^{20}$.
7. Expand $(2 + x)^5$ and use your expansion to find (a) $(2{\cdot}1)^5$, (b) $(1{\cdot}9)^5$.
8. Expand each of the following expressions in ascending powers of x, up to and including the term in x^3:
   (a) $(1 + 2x)(1 - x)^{10}$, (b) $(1 - 3x)(1 + x)^6$,
   (c) $(1 + x^2)(1 + 2x)^8$, (d) $(1 - x + x^2)(1 + x)^4$,
   (e) $(1 + 2x - x^2)(1 + 2x)^7$, (f) $(1 + x + x^2)(1 - 3x)^5$.
9. Expand each of the following expressions in ascending powers of x, up to and including the term in x^3:
   (a) $(1 + x + x^2)^6$, (b) $(1 + 2x - x^2)^5$, (c) $(1 - 2x + 4x^2)^8$.
10. Expand $(1 - x)^{11}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^4. Hence evaluate $(0{\cdot}98)^{11}$ correct to three places of decimals.
11. Expand $(1 + x)^{15}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3. Hence evaluate $(1{\cdot}01)^{15}$ correct to three places of decimals.
12. Expand $(1 + 2x)^{12}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^2. Hence evaluate $(1{\cdot}02)^{12}$ correct to two significant figures.
13. Expand $(2 + x)^7$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3. Hence evaluate $(2{\cdot}01)^7$ correct to six significant figures.
14. Use binomial expansions to evaluate the following to the stated degree of accuracy:
   (a) $(1{\cdot}01)^9$ correct to four decimal places,
   (b) $(0{\cdot}998)^7$ correct to seven decimal places,
   (c) $(0{\cdot}99)^{10}$ correct to four decimal places,
   (d) $(1{\cdot}99)^{10}$ correct to four significant figures.
15. When $(1 + ax)^{10}$ is expanded in ascending powers of x, the series expansion is $A + Bx + Cx^2 + 15x^3 + \ldots$; find the values of a, A, B and C.
16. When $(1 + ax)^n$ is expanded in ascending powers of x, the series expansion is $1 + 2x + \frac{15}{8}x^2 + \ldots$; find the values of n and a.
17. If x is sufficiently small to allow any terms in x^3 or higher powers of x to be neglected, show that
$$(1 + x)^7(1 + 2x)^4 \approx 1 + 15x + 101x^2.$$
   Obtain a similar approximation for $(1 + x)^7(1 - 2x)^4$, again neglecting terms in x^3 or higher powers of x.
18. If x is sufficiently small to allow any terms in x^5 or higher powers of x to be neglected, show that
$$(1 + x)^6(1 - 2x^3)^{10} \approx 1 + 6x + 15x^2 - 105x^4.$$

Particular terms of a binomial expansion

By considering the general term of a binomial expansion, a term involving a particular power of x may be found.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 24

Find the term involving x^{12} in the expansion of $(3 + 2x)^{15}$.

Using the expansion $(a + x)^n = a^n + {}^nC_1a^{n-1}x + \ldots + {}^nC_ra^{n-r}x^r + \ldots + x^n$, the general term u_{r+1} is given by ${}^nC_ra^{n-r}x^r$.
Substituting $a = 3$, $2x$ for x and $n = 15$, we have ${}^{15}C_r3^{15-r}(2x)^r$.
To find the term involving x^{12} we need $r = 12$ (i.e. the 13th term).

Thus the required term is ${}^{15}C_{12}3^3(2x)^{12} = \dfrac{15!}{12!\,3!}3^32^{12}x^{12}$

$$= \frac{15!}{12!}3^22^{11}x^{12}$$

Example 25

Find the term independent of x in the binomial expansion of $\left(3x - \dfrac{2}{x^2}\right)^{18}$.

The general term u_{r+1} in the expansion of $(a + x)^n$ is given by ${}^nC_ra^{n-r}x^r$.

Substituting $3x$ for a, $\left(\dfrac{-2}{x^2}\right)$ for x and $n = 18$, we have

$$u_{r+1} = {}^{18}C_r(3x)^{18-r}\left(\frac{-2}{x^2}\right)^r$$
$$= {}^{18}C_r3^{18-r}(-2)^rx^{18-3r}$$

This term is independent of x if $18 - 3r = 0$, i.e. $r = 6$

Thus the required term is $u_7 = {}^{18}C_63^{12}(-2)^6$
$= {}^{18}C_63^{12}2^6$

Exercise 8E

1. Find the term involving x^8 in the expansion of $(4 + x)^{12}$.
2. Find the term involving x^5 in the expansion of $(3 + 2x)^8$.
3. Find the 4th term when $(2 - x)^9$ is expanded in ascending powers of x.
4. Find the coefficient of x^3 in the expansion of (a) $(5 + 3x)^8$, (b) $(7 - 2x)^7$.
5. Find the term involving x^{10} in the expansion of $(3 + 2x^2)^7$.
6. Find the term independent of x in the expansion of each of the following:
   (a) $\left(3x + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)^{10}$, (b) $\left(2x^2 + \dfrac{4}{x}\right)^{12}$, (c) $\left(\dfrac{3}{x^2} - 2x\right)^6$, (d) $(1 + x^2)\left(2x + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)^{10}$

8.5 The binomial theorem for any rational index

It can be shown that the binomial expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ for positive integral values of n (stated on page 223) is also true for negative and/or fractional values of n. However, for these values of n the term ${}^nC_r$ is meaningless as the factorial notation has no meaning when applied to negative numbers and fractions. However, from our definition

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$^{n}C_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!\,r!} \qquad \ldots [1]$$

$$= \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\ldots(n-r+1)}{r!} \qquad \ldots [2]$$

The second form does have meaning for negative and fractional values of n.

Thus we use the notation $\binom{n}{r}$ to mean $\dfrac{n(n-1)(n-2)\ldots(n-r+1)}{r!}$

$$\text{Thus} \quad (1+x)^n = 1 + \binom{n}{1}x + \binom{n}{2}x^2 + \binom{n}{3}x^3 + \ldots$$

$$= 1 + nx + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!}x^3 + \ldots \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{R}$$

provided $-1 < x < 1$, i.e. $|x| < 1$

Note that the condition $|x| < 1$ is necessary because with n fractional or negative, the series is infinite and the condition $|x| < 1$ ensures that this infinite series converges.

Example 26

Expand $(1 + 3x)^{-5}$ in ascending powers of x stating the first four terms and the range of values of x for which the expansion is valid.

Using the expansion

$$(1+x)^n = 1 + \frac{nx}{1!} + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!}x^3 + \ldots$$

we obtain

$$(1+3x)^{-5} = 1 + \frac{(-5)}{1!}(3x) + \frac{(-5)(-6)}{2!}(3x)^2 + \frac{(-5)(-6)(-7)}{3!}(3x)^3 + \ldots$$

$$= 1 - 15x + 135x^2 - 945x^3 + \ldots$$

The expansion is valid for $|3x| < 1$, i.e. $|x| < \frac{1}{3}$.

Example 27

Expand $\dfrac{(1+2x)^2}{(2-x)}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3, and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

$\dfrac{(1+2x)^2}{(2-x)} = (1+2x)^2(2-x)^{-1}$. However, we cannot expand $(2-x)^{-1}$ in this form as the binomial expansion for negative and/or fractional n only applies to $(1+x)^n$, not $(a+x)^n$.

$$\text{However,} \quad (2-x)^{-1} = \left[2\left(1 - \frac{x}{2}\right)\right]^{-1}$$

$$= 2^{-1}\left(1 - \frac{x}{2}\right)^{-1}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left(1 - \frac{x}{2}\right)^{-1}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$\therefore \quad \frac{(1+2x)^2}{(2-x)} = (1+2x)^2 \times \frac{1}{2}\left(1-\frac{x}{2}\right)^{-1}$$

$$= (1+4x+4x^2)\frac{1}{2}\left[1+(-1)\left(-\frac{x}{2}\right)+\frac{(-1)(-2)}{2!}\left(-\frac{x}{2}\right)^2+\frac{(-1)(-2)(-3)}{3!}\left(-\frac{x}{3}\right)^3+\ldots\right]$$

$$= (1+4x+4x^2)\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{x}{4}+\frac{x^2}{8}+\frac{x^3}{16}+\ldots\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}+\frac{9x}{4}+\frac{25x^2}{8}+\frac{25x^3}{16}+\ldots$$

The expansion is valid for $\left|-\frac{x}{2}\right| < 1$ i.e. $|x| < 2$.

Example 28

Using the binomial theorem, find $\sqrt{9{\cdot}18}$ correct to five places of decimals.

$$\sqrt{9{\cdot}18} = \sqrt{9(1+0{\cdot}02)} = 3(1+\tfrac{2}{100})^{1/2}$$

The expression $(1+\frac{2}{100})^{1/2}$ can be expanded using the binomial theorem as $|\frac{2}{100}| < 1$ as required.

$$\therefore \quad \sqrt{9{\cdot}18} = 3\left[1+(\tfrac{1}{2})(\tfrac{2}{100})+\frac{(\frac{1}{2})(-\frac{1}{2})(\frac{2}{100})^2}{2!}+\frac{(\frac{1}{2})(-\frac{1}{2})(-\frac{3}{2})(\frac{2}{100})^3}{3!}+\ldots\right]$$

$$= 3 + 0{\cdot}03 - 0{\cdot}000\,15 + 0{\cdot}000\,001\,5 \quad \ldots$$

$$\sqrt{9{\cdot}18} \approx 3{\cdot}029\,85$$

If x is such that $|x| > 1$, the expression $(1+x)^n$ can be expanded by the binomial theorem using the rearrangement $(1+x)^n = x^n\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^n$ as $\left|\frac{1}{x}\right| < 1$ if $|x| > 1$.

The expansion obtained will then be in ascending powers of $\frac{1}{x}$.

Example 29

Expand $(3+x)^{-2}$ in ascending powers of $\frac{1}{x}$, stating the first four terms only and the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

$$(3+x)^{-2} = \left[x\left(\frac{3}{x}+1\right)\right]^{-2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{x^2}\left(1+\frac{3}{x}\right)^{-2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{x^2}\left[1+(-2)\left(\frac{3}{x}\right)+\frac{(-2)(-3)}{2!}\left(\frac{3}{x}\right)^2+\frac{(-2)(-3)(-4)}{3!}\left(\frac{3}{x}\right)^3+\ldots\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{x^2}\left[1-\frac{6}{x}+\frac{27}{x^2}-\frac{108}{x^3}+\ldots\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{x^2}-\frac{6}{x^3}+\frac{27}{x^4}-\frac{108}{x^5}+\ldots$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The expansion is valid for $\left|\frac{3}{x}\right| < 1$ i.e. $|x| > 3$.

Exercise 8F

1. For each of the following, state the values of x for which a binomial expansion of the given expression in ascending powers of x, is valid.

(a) $(1 + 2x)^{-3}$ (b) $(1 - 2x)^{1/2}$ (c) $\frac{1}{(1 - 2x)}$ (d) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 + \frac{1}{2}x)}}$

2. Expand each of the following in ascending powers of x, up to and including the term in x^3, and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

(a) $\frac{1}{1 + x}$ (b) $\sqrt[3]{(1 + x)}$ (c) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 + 2x)}}$ (d) $\frac{1}{(1 - 2x)^2}$

(e) $\frac{1}{(1 + 3x)^2}$ (f) $\sqrt{[(1 + 2x)^3]}$ (g) $\sqrt{(4 + x)}$ (h) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{(100 - 50x)}}$

3. Expand $\frac{1 - x}{(1 + 2x)^3}$ in ascending powers of x, up to and including the term in x^4, and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

4. When the terms in x^4 and higher powers of x are neglected, the series expansion of $\frac{2 + 3x - x^2}{(1 + 2x)^3}$ in ascending powers of x gives $a + bx + cx^2 + dx^3$. Find the values of a, b, c and d.

5. Expand the expression $(1 + x - 6x^2)^{-1}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3.

6. Expand $(1 + x)^{1/2}$ in ascending powers of x, up to and including the term in x^3, and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid. Hence calculate $\sqrt{1{\cdot}08}$ correct to four places of decimals.

7. Expand each of the following in ascending powers of $\frac{1}{x}$, stating the first 4 non-zero terms and the value of x for which the expansion is valid.

(a) $(2 - x)^{-3}$ (b) $(1 + 2x)^{-1}$ (c) $(4 - 3x)^{-2}$

8. Use binomial expansions to evaluate the following to the stated degree of accuracy:

(a) $\sqrt{0{\cdot}96}$ correct to five decimal places,
(b) $\sqrt{104}$ correct to six significant figures,
(c) $\sqrt{4{\cdot}08}$ correct to four decimal places,
(d) $\sqrt[4]{1{\cdot}08}$ correct to five places of decimals,
(e) $\sqrt[3]{8{\cdot}72}$ correct to five places of decimals.

9. Expand $\sqrt{\left(\frac{1 - x}{1 + 2x}\right)}$ in ascending powers of x, up to and including the term in x^3. State the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

10. Expand $\sqrt{\left(\frac{1 + x}{1 - x}\right)}$ in ascending powers of x, up to and including the term in x^3. State the values of x for which the expansion is valid and by substituting $x = 0{\cdot}2$, find an approximation for $\sqrt{1{\cdot}5}$.

11. When $(1 + ax)^{3/2}$ is expanded in ascending powers of x, the first four terms are $A + Bx + \frac{27}{8}x^2 + Cx^3$. Find the values of a, A, B and C.

12. When $(1 + bx)^n$ is expanded in ascending powers of x, the first three terms of the expansion are $1 - \frac{1}{3}x - \frac{27}{100}x^2$. Find the values of n and b.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 8G Examination questions

1. The sum of the first six terms of an arithmetic progression is 72 and the second term is seven times the fifth term.
   Find the first term and the common difference.
   Find the sum of the first ten terms. (A.E.B)

2. The sum of the first two terms of a geometric progression is 9, and the sum of the first four terms is 45. Calculate the two possible values of the fifth term in the progression. (A.E.B.)

3. (i) Find a number x which, when added to each of the numbers, 21, 27 and 29, produces three numbers whose squares are in arithmetic progression.
   (ii) Find a number y which, when added to each of the numbers, 21, 27 and 29, produces three numbers which are in geometric progression. (Oxford)

4. (i) The first term of an arithmetic progression is 7, the last term is 43 and the sum of the terms of the progression is 250. Find the number of terms and the common difference.
   (ii) The sum of the first and second terms of a geometric progression is 12, and the sum of the third and fourth terms is 48. Find the two possible values of the common ratio and the corresponding values of the first term. Find also the sum to ten terms of each of the series. (Oxford)

5. (i) The first term of an arithmetic progression is 2 and the common difference is 3. Find the sum to n terms of this progression.
   Find the value of n for which the sum of the progression is 610.
   Find, also, the least value of n for which the sum exceeds 1000.
   (ii) Find $S_n = \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} 3^r$.
   Find also the least value of n such that $S_n > 10\,000$. (London)

6. (a) The first three terms of an arithmetic series are $-3\frac{1}{8}$, $-1\frac{7}{8}$, $-\frac{1}{8}$. Find the sum of the first 70 terms of this series.
   (b) The first three terms of a geometric series are 2, $-\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{8}$. Find the sum to infinity of this series.
   Find also the least value of n for which the sum of the first n terms of this series differs from the sum to infinity by less than 10^{-5}. (Cambridge)

7. The population of a colony of insects increases in such a way that if it is N at the beginning of a week, then at the end of the week it is $a + bN$, where a and b are constants and $0 < b < 1$.
   Starting from the beginning of the week when the population is N, write down an expression for the population at the end of 2 weeks. Show that at the end of c consecutive weeks the population is

$$a\left(\frac{1 - b^c}{1 - b}\right) + b^c N.$$

   When $a = 2000$ and $b = 0{\cdot}2$, it is known that the population takes

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

about 4 weeks to increase from N to $2N$. Estimate a value for N from this information. (A.E.B.)

8. Prove that $\sum_{r=1}^{n} r(r+1) = \frac{1}{3}n(n+1)(n+2)$.

Evaluate $\sum_{r=1}^{20} r(r-1)$. (London)

9. (a) For all positive integral values of n, the sum of the first n terms of a series is $3n^2 + 2n$. Find the nth term in its simplest form.

(b) Show that, for all positive integral values of n, $7^n + 2^{2n+1}$ is divisible by 3.

(c) Prove, by induction or otherwise, that
$(1)(4)(7) + (2)(5)(8) + \ldots + n(n+3)(n+6)$
$= \frac{1}{4}n(n+1)(n+6)(n+7)$. (J.M.B.)

10. Expand $(2-x)^5$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^2. Use these terms to find the value of $2{\cdot}01^5$, giving your answer to three decimal places. (S.U.J.B.)

11. Find, in ascending powers of x, the first three terms in the expansion of $(2-3x)^8$. Use the expansion to find the value of $(1{\cdot}997)^8$ correct to the nearest whole number. (Cambridge)

12. Obtain the term independent of x in the expansion of $\left(2x^3 - \frac{1}{x}\right)^{20}$

You may leave the answer in terms of factorials. (S.U.J.B.)

13. Find the non-zero value of b if the coefficient of x^2 in the expansion of $(b+2x)^6$ is equal to the coefficient of x^5 in the expansion of $(2+bx)^8$. (A.E.B.)

14. The first four terms in the expansion of $(1-x)^n$ are
$1 - 6x + px^2 + qx^3$. Show that $p = 15$ and obtain the value of q. (S.U.J.B.)

15. (a) Find the first four terms in the expansion of $(1+3x)^{1/3}$ in ascending powers of x and state the range of values of x for which the expansion is valid. Use the expansion to determine $\sqrt[3]{8{\cdot}24}$ to five decimal places.

(b) The coefficient of x^2 in the expansion of $(1-2x)^n$ is 24. Calculate the two possible values of n. (S.U.J.B.)

16. Obtain the binomial expansion of $(1+2x)^{-1/2}$ in ascending powers of x as far as the term in x^3, assuming the value of x to be such that the expansion is valid. Simplify the coefficients. Hence, or otherwise, write down the first four terms in the binomial expansion of $(1-2x)^{-1/2}$.

Use your expansion to evaluate $\frac{1}{\sqrt{0{\cdot}998}}$ to 7 decimal places. (A.E.B.)

17. (a) In the expansion of $(1+ax)^n$, the first three terms are
$$1 - \tfrac{3}{2}x + \tfrac{27}{8}x^2.$$
Find n and a, and state the range of values of x for which the expansion is valid.

(b) Expand $(1+x)^{1/2}$ in ascending powers of x as far as the term in x^2, and hence find an approximation for $\sqrt{1{\cdot}08}$. Deduce that $\sqrt{12} \approx 3{\cdot}464$. (S.U.J.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

18. Find the values of the constants a and b for which the expansions, in ascending powers of x, of the two expressions $(1 + 2x)^{1/2}$ and $\dfrac{1 + ax}{1 + bx}$, up to and including the term in x^2, are the same.

With these values of a and b, use the result $(1 + 2x)^{1/2} \approx \dfrac{1 + ax}{1 + bx}$, with $x = -\frac{1}{100}$, to obtain an approximate value for $\sqrt{2}$ in the form p/q, where p and q are positive integers. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9
Probability

9.1 Simple probability

Suppose an unbiased coin is tossed. The result is equally likely to be a head as a tail. The total number of possible outcomes of a single toss is 2, i.e. a head or a tail. We say that the probability of obtaining a head is $\frac{1}{2}$, or more briefly P(head) = $\frac{1}{2}$.

The probability of a particular outcome of a trial (i.e. an attempt at something) is expressed as a fraction $\frac{a}{b}$, where a is the number of ways in which the particular outcome can occur and b is the total number of possible outcomes of the trial.

Suppose a six-sided die is thrown. There are six possible outcomes of this trial (or throw) and they are all equally likely. Only one of these outcomes is that of obtaining a three.

The probability of obtaining a three is therefore $\frac{1}{6}$. Thus P(3) = $\frac{1}{6}$.

In a similar way the probability of obtaining a number greater than 4 with one throw of a die is $\frac{2}{6}$ i.e. $\frac{1}{3}$, because there are a total of 6 possible outcomes of which two (5 and 6) satisfy our requirement.

Example 1

A six-sided die is to be thrown. Calculate the probability that the result will be (a) an odd number, (b) a number less than 3, (c) a multiple of 3.

(a) For one trial, total number of outcomes = 6
number of odd outcomes = 3 (i.e. 1, 3 or 5)
P(odd number) = $\frac{3}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$

(b) For one trial, total number of outcomes = 6
number of scores less than 3 = 2 (i.e. 1 or 2)
P(less than 3) = $\frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$

(c) For one trial, total number of outcomes = 6
number of multiples of 3 = 2 (i.e. 3 or 6)
P(multiple of 3) = $\frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$

Example 2

One card is to be drawn from a pack of 52 cards. Calculate the probability that the card will be (a) a diamond, (b) a court card, (c) a black card, (i.e. a club or a spade).

A pack of cards consists of 52 cards; 4 suits of 13 cards with each suit having 3 court cards (king, queen and jack).

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Number of possible outcomes = 52

(a) number of diamonds = 13

P(diamond) = $\frac{13}{52}$ = $\frac{1}{4}$

(b) number of court cards = 4 × 3 = 12

P(court card) = $\frac{12}{52}$ = $\frac{3}{13}$

(c) number of black cards = 26

P(black card) = $\frac{26}{52}$ = $\frac{1}{2}$

Example 3

A bag contains 8 discs of which 4 are red, 3 are blue and 1 is yellow. Calculate the probability that when one disc is drawn from the bag it will be (a) red, (b) yellow, (c) blue, (d) not blue.

There are 8 discs altogether so the total number of possible outcomes is 8.

(a) number of red discs = 4

P(red) = $\frac{4}{8}$ = $\frac{1}{2}$

(b) number of yellow discs = 1

P(yellow) = $\frac{1}{8}$

(c) number of blue discs = 3

P(blue) = $\frac{3}{8}$

(d) number of discs not blue = 5

P(not blue) = $\frac{5}{8}$

A probability of 1 means that the event is certain to occur and a probability of zero means that the event cannot occur.
In example 3, the probability of obtaining a disc that is either red, blue or yellow would be 1 because all eight discs meet the requirements i.e.

P(either red, blue or yellow) = $\frac{8}{8}$ = 1

On the other hand the probability of obtaining a green disc would be zero as there are no discs that meet this requirement i.e.

P(green) = $\frac{0}{8}$ = 0

Notice also that in example 3, P(not blue) = $\frac{5}{8}$
and P(blue) = $\frac{3}{8}$.

This is a particular illustration of the rule: If the probability of an event occurring is p, then the probability of it not occurring is $(1 - p)$.

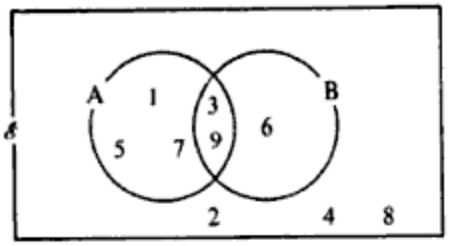
Set notation

Set notation can be useful when considering a number of different events that may occur in a given trial. Consider one number selected from the set of numbers {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9}. Considering this set as our universal set, $\mathscr{E}$, it clearly contains a number of subsets.

For example, the subset of odd numbers = {1, 3, 5, 7, 9}
the subset of multiples of three = {3, 6, 9}

If A is the event of the selected number being odd and B is the event of the selected number being a multiple of three, we can show the sets of outcomes as a Venn diagram:

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material



Using the notation $n(X)$ for the number of elements in set X, and X′ as the complement of set X, we see that

$$P(A) = \frac{n(A)}{n(\mathscr{E})} = \frac{5}{9} \quad \text{i.e. P(odd number)} = \frac{5}{9}$$

$$P(B) = \frac{n(B)}{n(\mathscr{E})} = \frac{3}{9} = \frac{1}{3} \quad \text{i.e. P(multiple of 3)} = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$P(A \cap B) = \frac{n(A \cap B)}{n(\mathscr{E})} = \frac{2}{9} \quad \text{i.e. P(odd number } \textit{and} \text{ multiple of 3)} = \frac{2}{9}$$

$$P(B') = \frac{n(B')}{n(\mathscr{E})} = \frac{6}{9} = \frac{2}{3} \quad \text{i.e. P(}\textit{not}\text{ a multiple of 3)} = \frac{2}{3}$$

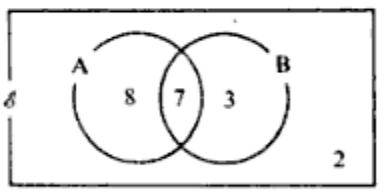
$$P(A \cup B) = \frac{n(A \cup B)}{n(\mathscr{E})} = \frac{6}{9} = \frac{2}{3} \quad \text{i.e. P(multiple of 3 or odd number or both)} = \frac{2}{3}$$

Example 4

One element is randomly selected from a universal set of 20 elements. Sets A and B are subsets of the universal set and $n(A) = 15$, $n(B) = 10$ and $n(A \cap B) = 7$. If P(A) is the probability of the selected element belonging to set A, find (a) P(A), (b) $P(A \cap B)$, (c) P(A′), (d) $P(A \cup B)$.

First draw a Venn diagram, showing the number of elements in each subset: (hint: consider $n(A \cap B)$ first)
From the Venn diagram:

(a) $P(A) = \frac{15}{20} = \frac{3}{4}$
(b) $P(A \cap B) = \frac{7}{20}$
(c) $P(A') = \frac{5}{20} = \frac{1}{4}$
(d) $P(A \cup B) = \frac{18}{20} = \frac{9}{10}$



Exercise 9A

1. What is the probability of obtaining a tail when a fair coin is tossed once?
2. A six-sided die is thrown once. What is the probability that the result will be
   (a) an even number, (b) a number less than 6,
   (c) a number greater than 2?
3. A bag contains ten coloured discs of which 4 are blue, 3 are green, 2 red and 1 yellow. Find the probability that when one disc is randomly selected from the bag it will be
   (a) red, (b) blue, (c) yellow, (d) not red.
4. Twenty cards are numbered from 1 to 20. One card is then taken at random. What is the probability that the number on the card will be
   (a) a multiple of 4, (b) even, (c) greater than 15, (d) divisible by 5,
   (e) not a multiple of 6?

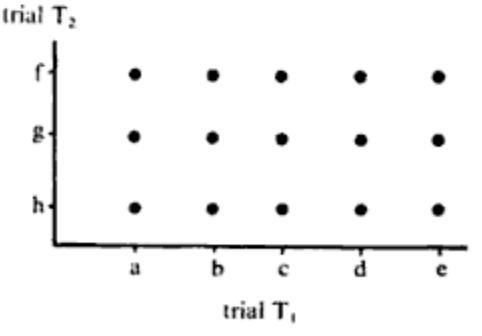
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

5. A letter is chosen at random from the letters a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h. Calculate the probability that the letter chosen will be
(a) a consonant, (b) a vowel, (c) not f, g or h.
6. One girl is chosen at random, from 4 girls Anne, Bonny, Linda and Dawn. Calculate the probability that the girl chosen will be
(a) Anne, (b) either Linda or Dawn.
7. Of 12 beads, 7 are coloured green, 3 are orange and 2 are black. Calculate the probability that when one bead is selected at random, it will
(a) be orange, (b) not be green.
8. What is the probability of drawing a court card from the 26 black cards of a pack?
9. One card is drawn from a pack of 52 cards. Find the probability that the card drawn will (a) be a club, (b) be an ace, (c) be a red card, (d) not be a spade.
10. A universal set has 24 elements and A and B are subsets of the universal set such that $n(A) = 14$, $n(B) = 9$ and $n(A \cap B) = 6$. If P(A) is the probability of selecting an element belonging to set A, calculate
(a) P(A), (b) $P(A \cap B)$, (c) $P(B')$, (d) $P(A \cup B)'$.
11. One element is selected at random from a universal set of 15 elements. R and Q are subsets of the universal set and $n(R) = 6$, $n(Q) = 8$ and $n(R \cap Q) = 2$. Calculate
(a) P(Q), (b) $P(R \cup Q)$, (c) $P(R')$, (d) $P(R \cap Q)$.
12. A and B are subsets of the universal set and $n(A) = 25$, $n(B) = 20$, $[n(A \cup B)'] = 20$ and there are 50 elements in the universal set. When one element is selected at random, calculate
(a) P(A), (b) $P(A \cup B)$, (c) $P(B')$, (d) $P(A \cap B)$.

9.2 Sum and product laws

Possibility space

Suppose that a trial T_1 has possible outcomes a, b, c, d or e. We say that the set a, b, c, d, e is the possibility space, or sample space, for the trial T_1. Now suppose that two trials are carried out, trial T_1 possibility space {a, b, c, d, e} and trial T_2 possibility space {f, g, h} The pairs of outcomes for the two trials can be shown as points on a possibility space diagram. Each dot represents a pair of outcomes.

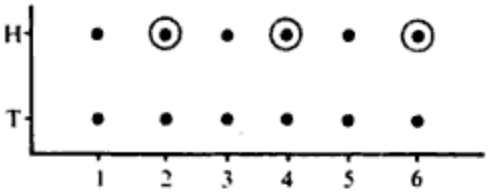


Example 5

Suppose that a coin is tossed and a die is thrown. Draw a possibility space diagram and use it to find the probability of obtaining both a head on the coin and an even number on the die.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The possibility space diagram is:
There are twelve possible outcomes of which only three (circled in the diagram) satisfy the requirements.
Thus P(head and an even number) $= \frac{3}{12} = \frac{1}{4}$



Independent events

Two events are said to be independent if the outcome of one event has no bearing upon the outcome of the other. In the last example the appearance of say, a head, on the coin does not affect the result of throwing the die. Thus the events are independent.
For two independent events A and B
P(A and B) $=$ P(A) $\times$ P(B) or, in set notation,
$P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$

(Conversely, we can say that two events A and B are independent if $P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$)

Thus in example 5, P(head) $= \frac{1}{2}$ P(even number) $= \frac{3}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$
$\therefore$ P(head and even number) $= \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$ as required.

Example 6

A card is to be selected from a pack of cards and a die is to be thrown. Find the probability that the outcome will be (a) a spade and an even number on the die, (b) a red card and a number less than 3 on the die.

The selection of the card and the throwing of the die are independent events.

(a)
P(a spade) $= \frac{13}{52}$
P(even number on die) $= \frac{3}{6}$ (either 2, 4 or 6)
P(a spade and an even number) $=$ P(a spade) $\times$ P(an even number on die)
$= \frac{13}{52} \times \frac{3}{6}$
$= \frac{1}{8}$

(b)
P(a red card) $= \frac{26}{52}$
P(1 or 2 on die) $= \frac{2}{6}$
P(a red card and a 1 or 2 on die) $=$ P(a red card) $\times$ P(a 1 or 2 on die)
$= \frac{26}{52} \times \frac{2}{6}$
$= \frac{1}{6}$

Mutually exclusive events

As was seen on page 191 two events are said to be mutually exclusive if the occurrence of one automatically excludes the possibility of the other occurring. In tossing a coin, if the outcome is a head this excludes the possibility of obtaining a tail on that trial, so the appearance of a head and the appearance of a tail are mutually exclusive events.
Note that, if two events are mutually exclusive, the set of events A and the set of events B would be shown as disjoint sets on a Venn diagram.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Either – Or

If the probability of an event A occurring is p_1 and the probability of a second mutually exclusive event B occurring is p_2, then the probability of either A or B occurring will be $(p_1 + p_2)$

i.e. $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B)$

or, using set notation $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$ for mutually exclusive events. Conversely, we can say that two events are mutually exclusive

if $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$.

Example 7

One card is selected from a pack of cards. What is the probability that the card selected will be either a diamond or a black ace?

Number of cards in pack = 52

P(a diamond) = $\frac{13}{52}$

P(a black ace) = $\frac{2}{52}$

But these are mutually exclusive events since the occurrence of one excludes the other (i.e. the card selected cannot be a black ace and a diamond); thus P(a diamond or a black ace) = P(a diamond) + P(a black ace)

$= \frac{13}{52} + \frac{2}{52} = \frac{15}{52}$

Events that are not mutually exclusive

Suppose we want the probability of one card selected from a pack being either a heart or a queen. These events are not mutually exclusive as the card could be both a heart and a queen, i.e. it could be the queen of hearts. We consider the possibility-space diagram:

	A	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	J	Q	K
♣	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Ⓧ	x
♦	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Ⓧ	x
♥	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ	Ⓧ
♠	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Ⓧ	x

Thus P(♥) = $\frac{13}{52} = \frac{1}{4}$, P(Q) = $\frac{4}{52} = \frac{1}{13}$, and counting the circled entries in the diagram P(♥ or Q) = $\frac{16}{52} = \frac{4}{13}$.

Therefore P(♥ or Q) $\neq$ P(♥) + P(Q) because, as we can see from the diagram, the right-hand side of such a calculation would include the queen of hearts twice.

In general, for two events A and B

$$P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B)$$

or using set notation

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$$

The reader should notice that for mutually exclusive events $P(A \cap B) = 0$ and the above rule reduces to $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$ as required.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 8

A coin is tossed and a die is thrown. Find the probability that the outcome will be a head or a number greater than 4, or both.

These events are clearly not mutually exclusive.
Also, P(head) $= \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(>4) = \frac{2}{6}$
thus, P(head and a number greater than 4) $=$ P(head) $\times$ P(number >4)
$= \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{6}$

Using the result P(A or B) $=$ P(A) $+$ P(B) $-$ P(A and B)
thus, P(Head or number >4) $= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{6} - \frac{1}{6}$
$= \frac{2}{3}$

Alternatively, we could say
P(neither a head nor a number >4) $=$ P(tail) $\times$ P(number $\leqslant 4$)
$= \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{2}{3} = \frac{1}{3}$
$\therefore$ P(head or number >4) $= 1 - \frac{1}{3}$
$= \frac{2}{3}$

Example 9

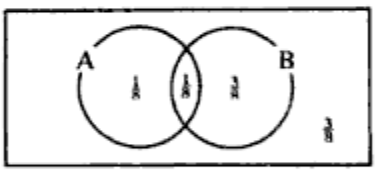
If A and B are two events such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{4}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{8}$ find (a) $P(A \cup B)$, (b) $P[(A \cup B)']$.

METHOD 1 (by calculation)

(a) $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$
$= \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{8}$
$= \frac{5}{8}$

(b) $P[(A \cup B)'] = 1 - P(A \cup B)$
$= 1 - \frac{5}{8}$
$= \frac{3}{8}$

METHOD 2 (by Venn diagram)
Show the probabilities on a Venn diagram, (fill in $P(A \cap B)$ first):



(a) $P(A \cup B) = \frac{3}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} = \frac{5}{8}$
(b) $P[(A \cup B)'] = \frac{3}{8}$.

Successive trials

Suppose that A and B are outcomes of a particular trial. If the trial is repeated and the outcome of the first trial does not affect the outcome of the second trial (i.e. the outcomes of trial 2 are independent of the outcomes of trial 1) then
P(A on 1st trial followed by B on 2nd trial) $=$ P(A) $\times$ P(B)
i.e. $P(A, B) = P(A) \times P(B)$

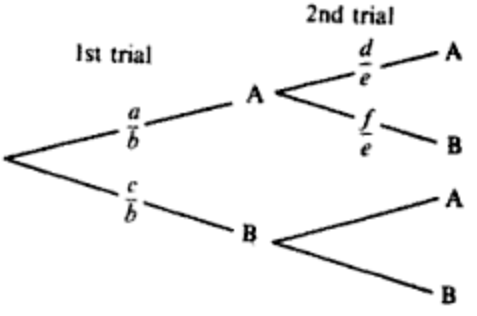
However, in some cases the outcome of trial 1 will affect the outcome of trial 2, i.e. the outcomes are *dependent* or *conditional* events. For example, if the successive trials involve the selection of one object from a group of objects the card, coloured disc or number etc. that is drawn on the first trial may, or may not, be replaced before the second trial takes place. If it is not

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

replaced, then the probabilities of the various outcomes of the second trial will clearly be different from those of the first trial. It is usual therefore to refer to *replacement* or *non-replacement* problems.

Tree diagrams

A tree diagram can be used to show the probabilities of certain outcomes occurring when two or more trials take place in succession. The outcome is written at the end of the branch and the fraction on the branch gives the probability of the outcome occurring.

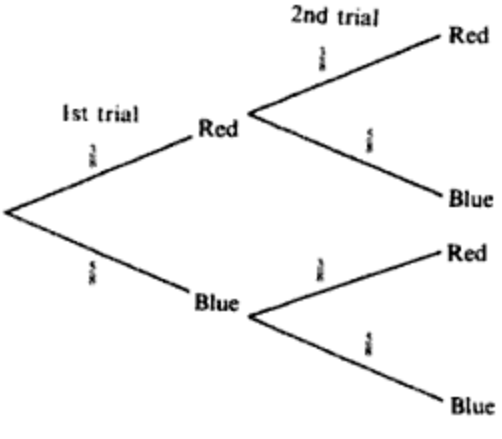


For each trial the number of branches is equal to the number of possible outcomes of that trial. In the diagram there are two possible outcomes, A and B, of each trial.

Example 10

A bag contains 8 marbles of which 3 are red and 5 are blue. One marble is drawn at random, its colour noted and the marble replaced in the bag. A marble is again drawn from the bag and its colour noted. Find the probability that the marbles drawn will be
(a) red followed by blue, (b) red and blue in any order, (c) of the same colour.

Draw a tree diagram showing the probabilities of each outcome of the two trials.



P(red followed by red) $= \frac{3}{8} \times \frac{3}{8} = \frac{9}{64}$

P(red followed by blue) $= \frac{3}{8} \times \frac{5}{8} = \frac{15}{64}$

P(blue followed by red) $= \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{3}{8} = \frac{15}{64}$

P(blue followed by blue) $= \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{5}{8} = \frac{25}{64}$

(a) P(red followed by blue) $= \frac{15}{64}$

(b) P(red and blue in any order) $= \frac{15}{64} + \frac{15}{64} = \frac{15}{32}$

(c) P(both of same colour) $= \frac{9}{64} + \frac{25}{64} = \frac{17}{32}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Alternatively, these results can be calculated without the use of a tree diagram. The two trials are independent events, and for each trial P(red) = $\frac{3}{8}$ and P(blue) = $\frac{5}{8}$.

(a) P(red followed by blue) = P(red) × P(blue)
$= \frac{3}{8} \times \frac{5}{8} = \frac{15}{64}$

(b) P(red and blue in any order) = P(red then blue) + P(blue then red)
= P(red) × P(blue) + P(blue) × P(red)
$= \frac{3}{8} \times \frac{5}{8} + \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{3}{8}$
$= \frac{15}{32}$

(c) P(both of same colour) = P(red then red) + P(blue then blue)
= P(red) × P(red) + P(blue) × P(blue)
$= \frac{3}{8} \times \frac{3}{8} + \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{5}{8}$
$= \frac{17}{32}$

Example 11

A bag contains 7 discs, 2 of which are red and 5 are green. Two discs are removed at random and their colours noted. The first disc is not replaced before the second is selected. Find the probability that the discs will be (a) both red, (b) of different colours, (c) the same colour.

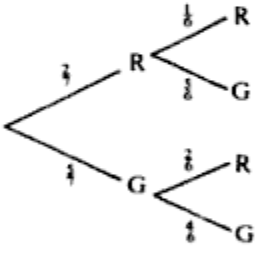
METHOD 1 (by calculation)
After the first disc is removed only 6 discs remain in the bag and the number of each colour will depend upon the result of the first trial.

(a) 1st trial P(R) = $\frac{2}{7}$
2nd trial P(R) = $\frac{1}{6}$
thus P(R, R) = $\frac{2}{7} \times \frac{1}{6} = \frac{1}{21}$

(b) P(different) = P(G, R) + P(R, G)
$= \frac{5}{7} \times \frac{2}{6} + \frac{2}{7} \times \frac{5}{6}$
$= \frac{10}{21}$

(c) P(same colour) = 1 − P(different)
$= \frac{11}{21}$

METHOD 2 (by tree diagram)



P(R, R) = $\frac{2}{7} \times \frac{1}{6} = \frac{1}{21}$
P(R, G) = $\frac{2}{7} \times \frac{5}{6} = \frac{5}{21}$
P(G, R) = $\frac{5}{7} \times \frac{2}{6} = \frac{5}{21}$
P(G, G) = $\frac{5}{7} \times \frac{4}{6} = \frac{10}{21}$

(a) P(R, R) = $\frac{1}{21}$

(b) P(different) = P(R, G) + P(G, R)
$= \frac{5}{21} + \frac{5}{21}$
$= \frac{10}{21}$

(c) P(same) = P(R, R) + P(G, G)
$= \frac{1}{21} + \frac{10}{21}$
$= \frac{11}{21}$

Example 11 shows the use of the general rule that, for two dependent events, A and B,

$$P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A) \times P(B|A) \text{ or } P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B|A)$$

where P(B|A) represents the probability of event B occurring given that event A has occurred.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Summary

The sum and product laws of probability are:

i $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$ which, for mutually exclusive events reduces to
$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$.

ii $P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$ for independent events
and $P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B|A)$ for dependent (or conditional) events.

Exercise 9B

1. If $P(A) = \frac{3}{5}$ and $P(B) = \frac{1}{3}$, find
   (a) $P(A \cup B)$ if A and B are mutually exclusive events,
   (b) $P(A \cap B)$ if A and B are independent events.
2. Given that $P(A) = \frac{2}{3}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{3}$ and $P(A \cup B) = \frac{5}{6}$ state whether each of the following are true or false:
   (a) A and B are mutually exclusive events,
   (b) A and B are independent events.
3. If $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{4}$ and $P(C) = \frac{1}{3}$ find
   (a) $P(A \cap B)$, if A and B are independent events,
   (b) $P(A \cup C)$, if A and C are mutually exclusive events.
4. If A and B are independent events such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(B) = \frac{1}{4}$, find (a) $P(A \cap B)$, (b) $P(A \cup B)$.
5. If A and B are independent events such that $P(A) = \frac{2}{3}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{3}$, find (a) $P(B)$, (b) $P(A \cup B)$.
6. Events A and B are such that $P(A) = \frac{3}{4}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{3}{8}$. State whether A and B are (a) mutually exclusive, (b) independent.
7. Events A and B are such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(B) = \frac{7}{12}$ and $P[(A \cup B)'] = \frac{1}{4}$. State whether A and B are
   (a) mutually exclusive, (b) independent.
8. Find the probability of drawing either a black ace or a red court card in one draw from a pack of cards.
9. The numbers 1, 2, 4, 6, 10, 12, 13, 16, 17 and 20 are written on ten pieces of card and one is drawn at random. Find the probability that the number on the card drawn will be either an odd number or a multiple of 3.
10. Find the probability that when a die is thrown and a card is drawn from a pack, the outcome will be a black card and an odd number on the die.
11. A card is drawn from a pack and then replaced. A second card is then drawn. Find the probability that both cards will be diamonds.
12. A coin is tossed twice. Find the probability that the outcome of the two trials will be (a) two heads, (b) two tails.
13. A die is thrown and a card is drawn from a pack. Find the probability that the outcome is an even number on the die and a black court card.
14. A card is drawn from a pack and a die is thrown. Find the probability that the card is not a club and the number on the die is greater than 4.
15. To start a game a player has to throw a 6 with a die. Find the probability that a player starts at
    (a) his first throw, (b) his second throw, (c) either his first or his second throw.
16. Two dice are thrown and the scores added together. Illustrate the

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

possibility-space diagrammatically. Find the probability that the total is
(a) 4, (b) greater than 4.

17. A coin is tossed and a die is thrown. Draw the possibility-space diagram and find the probability that the outcome of the trial is
(a) a tail and an odd number, (b) a tail and a multiple of 3.

18. Two cards are drawn from a pack of cards, the first being replaced before the second is drawn. Find the probability that the cards will be
(a) a diamond followed by a spade, (b) a king followed by a black card,
(c) a red card followed by a club, (d) a red card and a club in any order,
(e) two aces.

19. A number is selected at random from the set {2, 4, 6, 8} and another number is selected at random from the set {1, 3, 5, 7}. The two numbers so obtained are multiplied together. Draw a possibility-space diagram and find the probability that the product formed will be
(a) even, (b) more than ten.

20. Two numbers are selected at random, one from each of the sets {1, 3, 5, 7} and {2, 4, 6, 8}. The numbers obtained are added together. Draw a possibility-space diagram and find the probability that the sum obtained is (a) less than eight, (b) greater than ten.

21. Three cards are drawn in succession from a pack of cards with replacement taking place. Find the probability that the cards will be
(a) all red, (b) a heart followed by two spades,
(c) a heart and two spades in any order.

22. Two cards are drawn from a pack of cards without replacement. Find the probability that the two cards will be
(a) a club followed by a spade, (b) a red ace followed by a spade,
(c) a black 7 followed by a red card, (d) two hearts.

23. A bag contains 9 discs, 2 of which are green and 7 yellow. Two discs are removed at random in succession, without replacement. Find the probability that the discs will
(a) both be green, (b) be of the same colour, (c) be of different colours.

24. Two different pupils are chosen at random from a group of 3 boys and 5 girls. Find the probability that the two pupils chosen will be
(a) the two youngest pupils, (b) two boys.

25. A coin is tossed and a die is thrown. Find the probability that the result will be a head on the coin or a six on the die (or both).

26. A card is drawn from a pack of 52 cards and a die is thrown. Find the probability of obtaining an ace card or a three on the die (or both).

27. A coin is tossed and a card selected from a pack of 52 cards. Find the probability of obtaining a head on the coin or a court card (or both).

28. A die is biased so that the probability of throwing a six is $\frac{1}{10}$. Two players each throw the die once. Find the probability that one or both players throw a six.

29. Four different numbers are chosen at random from the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. Find the probability that the numbers chosen will be
(a) all odd, (b) two odd and two even numbers.

30. Three discs are chosen at random, and without replacement, from a bag containing 3 red, 8 blue and 7 white discs. Find the probability that the discs chosen will be
(a) all red, (b) all blue, (c) one of each colour.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9.3 Further conditional probability

In the last section we saw that, for conditional events A and B,

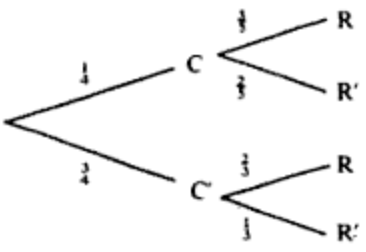
$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B|A)$$

Some questions require $P(B|A)$ to be found and the rearranged form $P(B|A) = \dfrac{P(A \cap B)}{P(A)}$ is useful.

Example 12

A bag contains five discs, three of which are red. A box contains six discs, four of which are red. A card is selected at random from a normal pack of 52 cards, if the card is a club a disc is removed from the bag and if the card is not a club a disc is removed from the box. Find (a) the probability that the disc removed will be red, (b) the probability that, if the removed disc is red it came from the bag.

Such questions are best solved by means of a tree diagram. Let C be the event of the card being a club and R the event of the disc being red. Draw the tree diagram:
(R′ is the event of the disc *not* being red.)



$P(C \cap R) = \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{3}{5} = \frac{3}{20}$

$P(C \cap R') = \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{2}{5} = \frac{1}{10}$

$P(C' \cap R) = \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{2}{3} = \frac{1}{2}$

$P(C' \cap R') = \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{4}$

(a) $P(R) = P(C \cap R) + P(C' \cap R)$
$= \frac{3}{20} + \frac{1}{2}$
$= \frac{13}{20}$

(b) We now require $P(C|R)$

$$P(C|R) = \frac{P(R \cap C)}{P(R)} = \frac{P(C \cap R)}{P(R)} = \frac{\frac{3}{20}}{\frac{13}{20}} = \frac{3}{13}$$

Exercise 9C

1. If A and B are dependent events such that $P(A) = \frac{5}{8}$ and $P(B|A) = \frac{3}{7}$, find $P(A \cap B)$.
2. If A and B are dependent events such that $P(A) = \frac{2}{5}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{3}{10}$, find $P(B|A)$.
3. Suppose that two different cards are removed from a pack of 52 cards. If event A is that of the first card being a Jack and event B is that of the second card being a court card (J, Q, K), find (a) $P(B|A)$, (b) $P(A \cap B)$.
4. A bag contains 3 yellow and 1 blue disc, whereas a box contains 2 yellow and 3 blue discs. A card is drawn from a pack of cards and if this card is a court card, a disc is drawn from the bag, otherwise a disc is drawn from the box.
   (a) Find the probability that the disc drawn is yellow,
   (b) given that the disc drawn is blue, find the probability that it came from the bag.
5. A bag contains 4 golf balls and 2 other balls, whereas a box contains 2 golf balls and 3 other balls. A die is thrown and if a number less than 3

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

results a ball is drawn from the bag, otherwise a ball is drawn from the box. Find the probability that
(a) the ball drawn is a golf ball,
(b) if the ball drawn is a golf ball, it came from the box.

6. A school is divided into two parts: Upper school, 400 boys and 200 girls, Lower school, 400 girls and 300 boys. A first pupil is chosen at random from the school. If this pupil comes from the Lower school, a second pupil is chosen from the Upper school; if the first pupil comes from the Upper school, the second pupil is chosen from the Lower school. Find the probability that
(a) the second pupil chosen will be a girl,
(b) if the second pupil chosen is a boy, he is a member of the Upper school.

7. A bag contains 20 discs of which one quarter are white; a similar box contains 15 discs of which one third are white. A card is drawn from a pack, and if the card drawn is a 7, 8 or 9 a disc is drawn from the bag, otherwise a disc is drawn from the box. Find the probability that
(a) the disc drawn is white,
(b) if the disc drawn is white, it came from the box.

8. A hospital diagnoses that a patient has contracted a virus X but it is not known which one of the three strains of the virus X_1, X_2 or X_3 the patient has. For a patient having virus X, the probability of it being X_1, X_2 or X_3 is $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{3}{8}$ or $\frac{1}{8}$ respectively. The probability of a recovery (event R) is $\frac{1}{2}$ for X_1, $\frac{2}{3}$ for X_2 and $\frac{1}{4}$ for X_3. Find
(a) the probability that the patient will recover,
(b) the probability that, if the patient recovers, he had virus X_3.

9. A box contains 6 discs of which 2 are blue; a similar bag contains 5 discs of which 3 are blue. A coin, biased so that a head is twice as likely as a tail, is tossed. If the outcome is a head, a disc is removed from the box, otherwise a disc is removed from the bag.
(a) Find the probability that the disc will not be blue,
(b) given that the disc is blue, find the probability that it came from the box.

10. Use the box and bag of question **9**. When the weighted coin shows a head, two discs are removed from the box without replacement and, if not a head, two discs are removed from the bag, without replacement. Find the probability that
(a) both discs are blue, (b) if both discs are blue, they came from the bag.

9.4 Probability involving permutations and combinations

Example 13

A team of five children is randomly selected from Alec, Bob, Charles, David, Emma, Frances, Gina and Helen. What is the probability that both Gina and Helen are in the team?

There are 8 children from whom to choose the team.
Number of ways of choosing a team of 5 from 8 = ${}^8C_5$
If Gina and Helen are to be included, the other 3 to complete the team have

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

to be chosen from the other 6 (A, B, C, D, E, F)
Number of ways of choosing a team including Gina and Helen = ${}^6C_3$

$$P(\text{G, H included}) = \frac{\text{number of teams including G and H}}{\text{total number of possible teams}}$$
$$= \frac{{}^6C_3}{{}^8C_5} = \frac{6!}{3!\,3!} \times \frac{5!\,3!}{8!}$$
$$= \frac{5}{14}$$

Example 14

Find the probability that when a hand of 7 cards is dealt from a shuffled pack of 52 cards it contains (a) all 4 aces, (b) exactly 3 aces, (c) at least 3 aces.

(a) Total number of possible hands = ${}^{52}C_7$
number of hands with 4 aces = ${}^{48}C_3$ (since the other 3 cards must be chosen from the other 48 cards)

$$P(\text{hand has 4 aces}) = \frac{{}^{48}C_3}{{}^{52}C_7} = \frac{1}{7735}$$

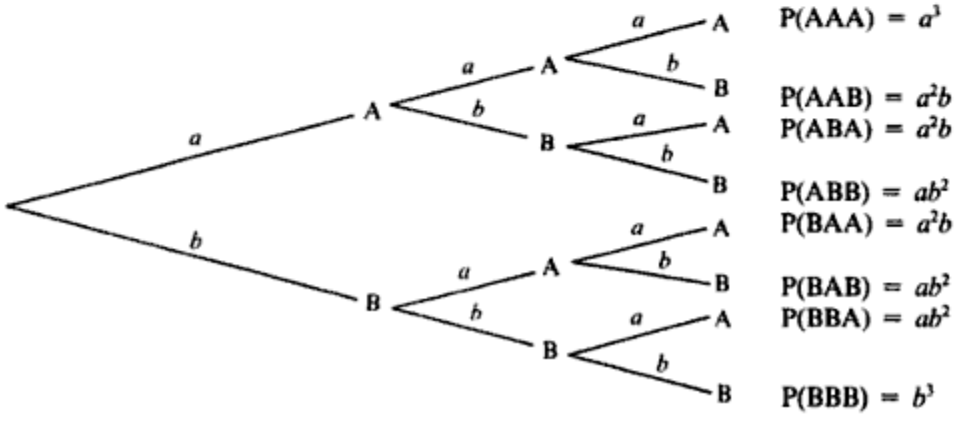
(b) number of hands with 3 aces and 4 cards not aces = ${}^4C_3 \times {}^{48}C_4$

$$P(\text{exactly 3 aces}) = 4 \times \frac{{}^{48}C_4}{{}^{52}C_7} = \frac{9}{1547}$$

(c) P(at least 3 aces) = P(exactly 3 aces) + P(4 aces)
$$= \frac{1}{7735} + \frac{9}{1547}$$
$$= \frac{46}{7735}$$

Binomial Probability

Suppose that a trial is repeated a number of times, say 3, and that in each trial there are two possible outcomes A and B. If P(A) = a and P(B) = b, and the outcome of each trial is independent of the previous trials, the tree diagram would be:



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The probability of obtaining outcome B on each occasion $= P(BBB) = b^3$

or of obtaining outcome A exactly twice $= P(AAB) + P(ABA) + P(BAA)$
$= 3a^2b$

Clearly for more trials, say 5, the tree diagram would become very large and so an alternative method is needed. If the trial is carried out five times the various outcomes would be:

5 A's 4 A's, 1 B 3 A'S, 2 B's 2 A'S, 3 B's 1 A, 4 B'S 5 B's

The 5 A's occur in five trials in ${}^5C_5 = 1$ way (AAAAA)

The 4 A's occur in five trials in ${}^5C_4 = 5$ ways (BAAAA, ABAAA, AABAA, AAABA, AAAAB)

The 3 A's occur in five trials in ${}^5C_3 = 10$ ways etc.

Thus the probabilities of the various combinations of A's and B's would be

	${}^5C_5a^5$	${}^5C_4a^4b^1$	${}^5C_3a^3b^2$	${}^5C_2a^2b^3$	${}^5C_1ab^4$	${}^5C_0b^5$
or	$1a^5$	$5a^4b^1$	$10a^3b^2$	$10a^2b^3$	$5ab^4$	$1b^5$

Notice that these numbers could also be obtained from the sixth row of Pascal's Triangle:

Similarly the seventh row would give the coefficients for 6 trials and so on.

						1						
					1		1					
				1		2		1				
			1		3		3		1			
		1		4		6		4		1		
	1		5		10		10		5		1	
1		6		15		20		15		6		1

Example 15

A coin is biased so that P(head) $= \frac{2}{3}$ and P(tail) $= \frac{1}{3}$. If the coin is tossed 6 times find the probability of obtaining
(a) 6 heads, (b) exactly 5 heads, (c) at least 5 heads, (d) at least 1 tail,
(e) 3 heads and 3 tails with the heads occurring on successive tosses of the coin.

First list the various combinations of probabilities with $h = P(\text{head}) = \frac{2}{3}$ and $t = P(\text{tail}) = \frac{1}{3}$
These are:

	${}^6C_6h^6$	${}^6C_5h^5t^1$	${}^6C_4h^4t^2$	${}^6C_3h^3t^3$	${}^6C_2h^2t^4$	${}^6C_1h^1t^5$	${}^6C_0t^6$
or	$1h^6$	$6h^5t^1$	$15h^4t^2$	$20h^3t^3$	$15h^2t^4$	$6h^1t^5$	$1t^6$

(a) $P(6 \text{ heads}) = 1h^6 = (\frac{2}{3})^6$
$= \frac{64}{729}$

(b) $P(5 \text{ heads}) = 6h^5t^1 = 6(\frac{2}{3})^5(\frac{1}{3})$
$= \frac{64}{243}$

(c) P(at least 5 heads) = P(exactly 5 heads) + P(6 heads)
$= \frac{64}{243} + \frac{64}{729}$
$= \frac{448}{729}$

(d) P(at least 1 tail) = 1 − P(no tails) = 1 − P(6 heads)
$= 1 - \frac{64}{729}$
$= \frac{665}{729}$

(e) $P(HHHTTT) = \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^3\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^3 = \frac{2^3}{3^6}$

However, there are $\frac{4!}{3!}$ ways of arranging the 3 heads and 3 tails with the 3 heads kept together:

HHHTTT, THHHTT, TTHHHT, TTTHHH.

Thus the required probability is $4 \times \frac{2^3}{3^6} = \frac{32}{729}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 9D

1. There are only 2 boys in a group of 6 pupils. A group of 5 pupils is to be selected. Find the probability that both boys are in the group selected.
2. A group of 7 pupils are designated T, U, V, W, X, Y and Z. Find the probability that when a group of 4 pupils are selected, at random, it will include X, Y and Z.
3. A bag contains 10 discs of which 3 are red and 7 are blue. If 6 discs are selected at random, find the probability that all the red discs are selected.
4. Four letters are chosen at random from the letters a, b, c, d, e, f. Find the probability that both vowels are in the group chosen.
5. There are 5 green, 4 yellow and 3 blue discs in a bag, from which 4 discs are chosen at random. Find the probability that the 4 discs selected will contain
   (a) exactly 3 blue discs, (b) exactly 3 yellow discs, (c) at least one green disc.
6. From a well shuffled pack of 52 cards a hand of 6 cards is dealt. Find the probability that the hand will contain
   (a) 4 queens, (b) exactly 3 queens, (c) at least 3 queens.
7. A hand of 7 cards is dealt from a shuffled pack of 52 cards. Find the probability that the hand will contain
   (a) exactly 6 black cards, (b) all black cards, (c) at least 6 black cards.
8. An unbiased coin is tossed 7 times. Find the probability of obtaining
   (a) 7 tails, (b) exactly 6 tails, (c) at least one head.
9. A fair coin is tossed ten times. Find the probability of obtaining
   (a) exactly 9 heads, (b) no tails, (c) more than 8 heads.
10. A fair coin is tossed 9 times. Find the probability of obtaining
    (a) 5 heads and 4 tails, (b) 7 tails and 2 heads.
11. A coin is biased so that P(head) = $\frac{1}{4}$ and P(tail) = $\frac{3}{4}$. If the coin is tossed 5 times find the probability of obtaining
    (a) no tails, (b) exactly 1 tail, (c) 3 tails and 2 heads,
    (d) at least 4 heads, (e) 2 heads and 3 tails with the heads occurring in succession.
12. A fair coin is tossed 12 times. Find the probability of obtaining more than 9 tails.
13. A marksman fires at a target and the probability of hitting the bull with any one shot is $\frac{2}{3}$. If he fires 6 shots find the probability that he obtains
    (a) 6 bulls, (b) no bulls, (c) at least 3 bulls.
14. Ten unbiased dice are thrown. Find the probability of obtaining exactly seven sixes.
15. A fair die is thrown 6 times. Find the probability of obtaining
    (a) 6 odd numbers, (b) only 1 even number, (c) at least 4 odd numbers.
16. A firm manufactures radios. The probability that any radio fails the quality check is 0·1. Find the probability that in a case of 15 radios
    (a) all pass the quality check,
    (b) exactly 1 fails the quality check,
    (c) at least 13 pass the quality check.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

17. A die is biased so that P(odd number) = $\frac{1}{3}$ and P(even number) = $\frac{2}{3}$. If this die is thrown 8 times, find the probability of obtaining
(a) an even number 7 times, (b) no odd numbers,
(c) an equal number of odd and even numbers,
(d) 5 odd numbers and 3 even numbers with the even numbers occurring in succession,
(e) alternate odd and even numbers.

Exercise 9E Examination questions

1. From a pack of 52 playing cards two cards are drawn without replacement. Calculate, as a fraction in its lowest terms, the probability that
(a) both are Hearts,
(b) both are red,
(c) neither is a Club. (A.E.B)

2. A card is drawn at random from an ordinary pack of 52 playing cards and it is not returned to the pack. A second card is drawn at random. Calculate, showing details of your working, the probabilities:
(i) that the first card is a spade and the second card is the king of spades;
(ii) that the first card is a king and the second card is the queen of the same suit;
(iii) that the two cards are numerically the same or have the same rank (e.g. are both queens);
(iv) that one card is a heart and the other a spade. (Oxford)

3. Box A contains 5 pieces of paper numbered 1, 3, 5, 7, 9.
Box B contains 3 pieces of paper numbered 1, 4, 9.
One piece of paper is removed at random from each box.
Calculate the probability that the two numbers obtained have
(i) the same value,
(ii) a sum greater than 3,
(iii) a product that is exactly divisible by 3. (Cambridge)

4. Two fair cubical dice are thrown. Calculate the probability that the sum of the scores is
(a) exactly 5,
(b) less than 5,
(c) at least 6. (A.E.B.)

5. In a game, a player rolls two balls down an inclined plane so that each ball finally settles in one of five slots and scores the number of points allotted to that slot as shown in the diagram on the right.

It is possible for both balls to settle in one slot and it may be assumed that each slot is equally likely to accept either ball.
The player's score is the sum of the points scored by each ball.
Draw up a table showing all the possible scores and the probability of each.
If the player pays 10p for each game and receives back a number of pence equal to his score, calculate the player's expected gain or loss per 50 games. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

6. (a) Two dice are thrown together, and the scores added. What is the probability that (i) the total score exceeds 8? (ii) the total score is 9, or the individual scores differ by 1, or both?

(b) A bag contains 3 red balls and 4 black ones. 3 balls are picked out, one at a time and not replaced. What is the probability that there will be 2 red and 1 black in the sample? (S.U.J.B.)

7. A, B and C fire one shot each at a target.
The probability that A will hit the target is $\frac{1}{5}$.
The probability that B will hit the target is $\frac{1}{4}$.
The probability that C will hit the target is $\frac{1}{3}$.
If they fire together, calculate the probability that
(i) all three shots hit the target, (ii) C's shot only hits the target,
(iii) at least one shot hits the target, (iv) exactly two shots hit the target.
(Cambridge)

8. The birthdays of Jack and Jill are in the first seven days in January.
Find the probability that next year
(a) both have their birthday on Monday,
(b) Jack and Jill have their birthdays on the same day,
(c) they have their birthdays on different days,
(d) Monday is the birthday of one or both. (A.E.B.)

9. Calculate
(i) the number of arrangements of 8 different books on a shelf,
(ii) the probability that, in any one of these arrangements, 3 particular books are together. (Cambridge)

10. Three dice are to be rolled. Find the probability of scoring a double but not a triple. (London)

11. The probability that it will rain on a given morning is $\frac{1}{4}$.
If it rains the probability that Mr X misses his train is $\frac{2}{3}$.
If it does not rain the probability that Mr X catches his train is $\frac{5}{6}$.
If he catches his train the probability that he is early for work is $\frac{4}{5}$.
If he misses his train the probability that he is late for work is $\frac{3}{5}$.
Calculate the probability that, on a given morning,
(i) it rains and Mr X is late for work,
(ii) it does not rain and he is early for work. (Cambridge)

12. Two rugby teams, A and B, play a series of three matches. The probability that team A wins any given match is $\frac{1}{2}$ while the probability that team B wins any given match is $\frac{2}{5}$.
Calculate the probability that
(i) all three matches are drawn,
(ii) the teams are level after two matches,
(iii) the series is drawn. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

13. In order to start in a game of chance a player throws a fair cubical die until he obtains a six. He then records whatever scores he obtains on subsequent throws.
For example:
throws of 2, 4, 3, 6, 4, 6, 2, 5 give recorded scores of 4, 6, 2, 5.
Calculate the probability that
(a) the first score recorded is that of the player's fourth throw,
(b) the player does not record a score in his first five throws.
The player has seven throws. Calculate the probability that he will have recorded
(c) exactly three fives and a three,
(d) a total score of three. (A.E.B.)

14. Two events A and B are such that
$P(A) = 0{\cdot}2$, $P(A' \cap B) = 0{\cdot}22$, $P(A \cap B) = 0{\cdot}18$.
Evaluate (i) $P(A \cap B')$, (ii) $P(A|B)$. (J.M.B.)

15. A card is drawn at random from a pack of 52 cards and is then replaced. Let A denote the event 'an ace is drawn', and let R denote the event 'a red card is drawn'. Calculate the values of $P(A)$, $P(R)$, $P(A \cap R)$ and $P(A \cup R)$.
If this experiment is performed four times, find the probability
(a) that an ace will be drawn for the first time at the third attempt,
(b) that a red card will be drawn exactly twice.
(c) that a red card will be drawn at least once.
Find also how many times the experiment must be performed to ensure that the probability of a red card being drawn at least once exceeds 0·99. (A.E.B.)

16. Two players, X and Y, play a game in which X throws 6 coins and Y throws an unbiased die. Player X wins if the number of heads is greater than the number on the die.
(i) If X throws 5 heads find the probability that he wins.
(ii) If Y throws the number 3, show that the probability of X winning is $\frac{11}{32}$. (Cambridge)

17. Previous experience indicates that, of the students entering upon a particular diploma course, 90% will successfully complete it.
One year, 15 students commence the course. Calculate, correct to 3 decimal places, the probability that
(i) all 15 successfully complete the course,
(ii) only 1 student fails,
(iii) no more than 2 students fail,
(iv) at least 2 students fail. (Cambridge)

18. The probability that a marksman will hit a target is $\frac{4}{5}$. He fires 10 shots. Calculate, correct to 3 decimal places, the probability that he will hit the target
(i) at least 8 times,
(ii) no more than 7 times.
If he hits the target exactly 7 times, calculate the probability that the 3 misses are with successive shots. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

19. The probability that a certain football team, playing at home, will win a match is $\frac{4}{5}$.
Calculate the probability that in their next 6 home matches, the team will win
(i) exactly 4 matches,
(ii) at least 4 matches,
(iii) exactly 4 successive matches. (Cambridge)

20. Out of a large population it may be assumed that 5% of unmarried men of forty years of age will marry within five years. Calculate the probabilities that out of a sample of 8 unmarried men who are 40 years old, selected at random,
(i) none will get married within 5 years;
(ii) just three will get married within 5 years;
(iii) at least four will get married within 5 years.
If the size of the sample increases by 4, calculate the probability that just 6 of the 12 men are still unmarried after five years. (Oxford)

21. A player can play on either of two gambling machines, A and B. He chooses one of the two machines at random, and plays two games. The probability of winning a game on A is $\frac{1}{3}$, and the probability of winning a game on B is $\frac{1}{4}$. If he loses both of these two games, he plays a third game on the other machine; otherwise he plays the third game on the same machine. Find the probability that he
(i) wins the first game;
(ii) changes machines after the second game;
(iii) plays the third game on A;
(iv) wins the third game. (Oxford)

22. The events A and B are such that

$$P(A) = \tfrac{1}{2},$$
$$P(A \mid B') = \tfrac{2}{3},$$
$$P(A \mid B) = \tfrac{3}{7},$$

where B′ is the event 'B does not occur'. Find $P(A \cap B)$, $P(A \cup B)$, $P(B)$, $P(B \mid A)$.
State, with reasons, whether A and B are
(i) independent,
(ii) mutually exclusive. (Cambridge)

23. Three people independently each think of an integer in the set $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$. Find, in fractional form, the probability that
(a) all three of the integers selected are greater than 4,
(b) all three of the integers selected are greater than 5,
(c) the least integer selected is 5,
(d) the three integers selected are different given that the least integer selected is 5,
(e) the sum of the three integers selected is more than 15. (A.E.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

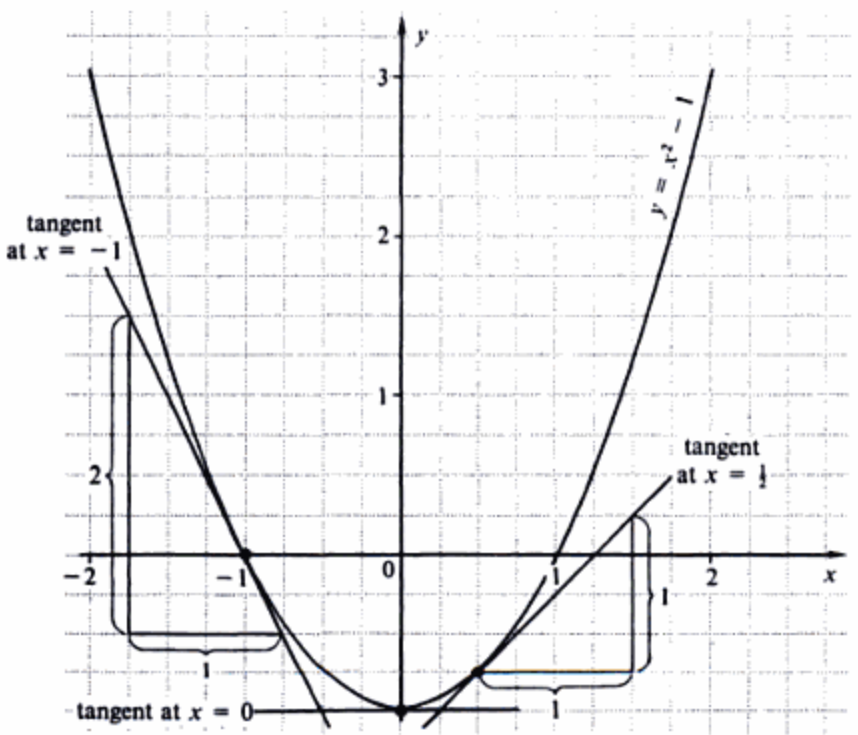
10
Calculus I: Differentiation

10.1 The gradient of a curve

In chapter 3 we saw that the gradient of a straight line is the same at all points on the line. With a curve however the gradient, or steepness, will depend upon where we are on the curve.

The gradient at a point P on a curve is defined as the gradient of the *tangent* drawn to the curve at the point P, i.e. the gradient of the line that just touches the curve at the point P.

If we wished to find the gradient of a curve at some particular point, we could accurately draw the curve, draw the tangent to the curve at the required point and then measure the gradient of this tangent.



The graph shown is that of $y = x^2 - 1$ for $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$ with the tangents drawn at $x = -1$, $x = 0$ and at $x = \frac{1}{2}$. From the graph we can see that the gradient of $y = x^2 - 1$ is

$-\frac{2}{1} = -2$ at $x = -1$ (the negative sign is because y *decreases* by 2 units as x *increases* by 1 unit)

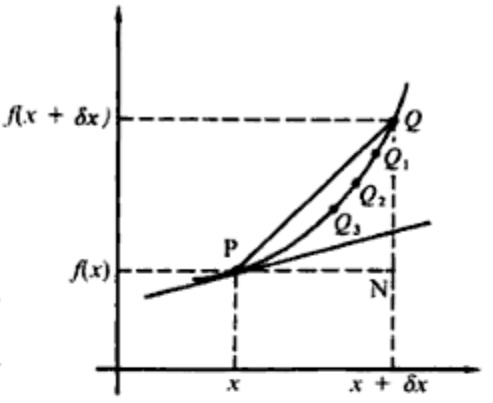
0 at $x = 0$,

and $\frac{1}{1} = 1$ at $x = \frac{1}{2}$.

Clearly it is not easy to draw these tangents with any high degree of accuracy and so we need an alternative method for finding accurately the gradient at particular points on a curve.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Suppose that we wish to find the gradient of a curve $y = f(x)$ at a point $P(x, y)$ on the curve. Consider a second point, Q, lying on the curve, near to P and with x-coordinate given by $x + \delta x$ where δx is used to denote a small increment of length in the direction of the x-axis.



Thus the gradient of the chord PQ $= \dfrac{QN}{PN}$

$$= \frac{f(x + \delta x) - f(x)}{x + \delta x - x}$$

$$= \frac{f(x + \delta x) - f(x)}{\delta x}$$

Now if we move Q nearer to P, say to points Q_1, Q_2, ... then the gradient of the chords PQ, PQ_1, PQ_2, ... will give better and better approximations for the gradient of the tangent at P and therefore, the gradient of the curve at P. Thus the gradient of the curve $y = f(x)$ at some point $P(x, y)$ on the curve is given by

$$\lim_{\delta x \to 0} \left[\frac{f(x + \delta x) - f(x)}{\delta x} \right]$$

If we say that P has coordinates (x, y) and Q has coordinates $(x + \delta x, y + \delta y)$

then the gradient $= \lim\limits_{\delta x \to 0} \left[\dfrac{y + \delta y - y}{x + \delta x - x} \right]$

$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0} \left(\frac{\delta y}{\delta x} \right)$$

We write $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ (pronounced 'dee y by dee x') for $\lim\limits_{\delta x \to 0} \left(\dfrac{\delta y}{\delta x} \right)$ and we call $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ the gradient function, derived function or differential coefficient of y with respect to x. The gradient function gives a formula by which the gradient at any point on the line can be determined. The process of finding the differential coefficient of a function is called *differentiation*. A shorthand notation that is sometimes used is that if $y = f(x)$ we write $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ as $f'(x)$ or simply y'.

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } \frac{dy}{dx} &= \lim_{\delta x \to 0} \left(\frac{\delta y}{\delta x} \right) \\ &= \lim_{\delta x \to 0} \left[\frac{f(x + \delta x) - f(x)}{\delta x} \right] \end{aligned}}$$

Note Though we choose to use a fractional form of representation, $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ is a limit and is not a fraction, i.e. $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ does not mean $dy \div dx$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ means y differentiated with respect to x. Thus, $\dfrac{dp}{dx}$ means p differentiated with respect to x. The '$\dfrac{d}{dx}$' is the 'operator', operating on some function of x.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 1

Find, from first principles, the differential coefficient of y with respect to x if $y = x^2$.

Here $f(x) = x^2$. Using
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{f(x + \delta x) - f(x)}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{(x + \delta x)^2 - x^2}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{2x\delta x + (\delta x)^2}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0}(2x + \delta x) = 2x$$

Thus if $y = x^2$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x$.

Alternatively, this could be set out as follows:

$$y = x^2 \qquad \ldots [1]$$

Let x change by a small amount δx and the consequent change in y be δy, then

$$y + \delta y = (x + \delta x)^2 \qquad \ldots [2]$$

Subtracting equation [1] from equation [2]

$$y + \delta y - y = (x + \delta x)^2 - x^2$$

or
$$\delta y = (x + \delta x)^2 - x^2$$

$\therefore$
$$\frac{\delta y}{\delta x} = \frac{(x + \delta x)^2 - x^2}{\delta x}$$

By definition
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left(\frac{\delta y}{\delta x}\right) = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{(x + \delta x)^2 - x^2}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{2x\delta x + (\delta x)^2}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0}[2x + \delta x]$$
$$= 2x$$

Example 2

If $f(x) = 4x + 2x^2$, find $f'(x)$ from first principles and hence calculate $f'(2)$ and $f'(-2)$.

$$f'(x) = \frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{f(x + \delta x) - f(x)}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{4(x + \delta x) + 2(x + \delta x)^2 - 4x - 2x^2}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{4\delta x + 4x\delta x + 2(\delta x)^2}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0}[4 + 4x + 2\delta x]$$

$\therefore$ $f'(x) = 4 + 4x$

Since $f'(x) = 4 + 4x$

then $f'(2) = 4 + 4(2)$
$= 12$

and $f'(-2) = 4 + 4(-2)$
$= -4$

Thus if $f(x) = 4x + 2x^2$, then $f'(x) = 4 + 4x$, $f'(2) = 12$ and $f'(-2) = -4$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 10A

1. Draw the graph of $y = x^2 + x - 6$ for $-5 \leqslant x \leqslant 6$. Draw the tangents to this curve at $x = 3$, $x = 1$ and $x = -2$, and hence find a value for the gradient of the curve at each of these points.
2. Draw the graph of $y = \dfrac{x^2 - 4x}{4}$ for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 6$. Draw the tangents to the curve at $x = 4$, $x = 3$ and $x = 2$ and hence find a value for the gradient of the curve at each of these points.
3. Differentiate each of the following from first principles to find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$.

   (a) $y = 5x$ (b) $y = 9x + 5$ (c) $y = 3x^2$
   (d) $y = x^3$ (e) $y = x^2 + 3x$ (f) $y = 5x - x^2 + 7$
   (g) $y = \dfrac{1}{x}$ (h) $y = \dfrac{1}{x^2}$

4. If $f(x) = 3x - 2x^2$ find $f'(x)$ from first principles and hence evaluate $f'(4)$ and $f'(-1)$.
5. If $f(x) = 2x^2 + 5x - 3$ find $f'(x)$ from first principles and hence evaluate $f'(-1)$ and $f'(-2)$.
6. If $f(x) = x^3 - 2x$ find $f'(x)$ from first principles and hence evaluate $f'(1)$, $f'(0)$ and $f'(-1)$.

10.2 Differentiation of ax^n

In order to avoid differentiating functions from first principles, as we have done in 10.1, we can establish certain rules.

Suppose we wish to find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ given that $y = x^n$.

In this case $f(x) = x^n$, and
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{f(x + \delta x) - f(x)}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{(x + \delta x)^n - x^n}{\delta x}\right] \qquad \ldots [1]$$

Now for positive integer values of n, $(x + \delta x)^n$ can be expanded by the binomial theorem to give a finite series:

$$(x + \delta x)^n = x^n + {}^nC_1x^{n-1}\delta x + {}^nC_2x^{n-2}(\delta x)^2 + {}^nC_3x^{n-3}(\delta x)^3 + \ldots + (\delta x)^n$$

substituting this in [1], gives

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[nx^{n-1} + {}^nC_2x^{n-2}\delta x + {}^nC_3x^{n-3}(\delta x)^2 + \ldots + (\delta x)^{n-1}\right]$$

i.e. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = nx^{n-1}$

Thus the differential coefficient of x^n is nx^{n-1} and although the above proof is for positive integer values of n, the result applies for all rational values of n. This result, together with the three rules stated below, enable us to differentiate many functions.

(i) If $y = f(x) + g(x) - h(x)$ then

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(f(x)) + \frac{d}{dx}(g(x)) - \frac{d}{dx}(h(x))$$
$$= f'(x) + g'(x) - h'(x)$$

(ii) If $y = af(x)$ where a is a constant then

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = a\frac{d}{dx}(f(x))$$
$$= af'(x)$$

(iii) If $y = a$ where a is a constant, we can write this as

$$y = ax^0$$

then $\frac{dy}{dx} = (0)ax^{-1} = 0$

Thus the differential coefficient of a constant is zero.

[Rules for differentiating $f(x) \times g(x)$ and $\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$ will be obtained later.]

Note: The rule for differentiating $y = ax^n$, i.e. $\frac{dy}{dx} = anx^{n-1}$, can be remembered in words as:
'multiply by the power and decrease the power by one'.

Example 3

Differentiate the following with respect to x.
(a) $y = x^8$ (b) $y = 6$ (c) $y = 3x^5$ (d) $y = 8\sqrt{x}$
(e) $y = 3x^2 - 6x + \frac{2}{x^2}$ (f) $y = (2x + 3)(x + 1)$

(a) If $y = x^8$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 8x^7$$

(Multiply by the power and decrease the power by one.)

(b) If $y = 6$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$$

(Differentiation of a constant term gives zero.)

(c) If $y = 3x^5$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 15x^4$$

(Multiply by the power and decrease the power by one.)

(d) If $y = 8\sqrt{x}$

$$= 8x^{1/2}$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \tfrac{1}{2} \times 8x^{-1/2}$$
$$= \frac{4}{\sqrt{x}}$$

(e) If $y = 3x^2 - 6x + \frac{2}{x^2}$

$$= 3x^2 - 6x + 2x^{-2}$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 6x - 6 - 4x^{-3}$$
$$= 6x - 6 - \frac{4}{x^3}$$

(f) If $y = (2x + 3)(x + 1)$

$$= 2x^2 + 5x + 3$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 4x + 5$$

Example 4

Find the gradient of the curve $y = x^2 + 7x - 2$ at the point (2, 16).

$$y = x^2 + 7x - 2$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x + 7$$

Thus at (2, 16), $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2(2) + 7 = 11$

At the point (2, 16) the curve $y = x^2 + 7x - 2$ has a gradient of 11.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 5

Find the points on the curve $y = x^3 + 3x^2 - 6x - 10$ where the gradient is 3.

$$y = x^3 + 3x^2 - 6x - 10$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2 + 6x - 6$$

If the gradient is 3, then $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3$

i.e. $3x^2 + 6x - 6 = 3$

$x^2 + 2x - 3 = 0$

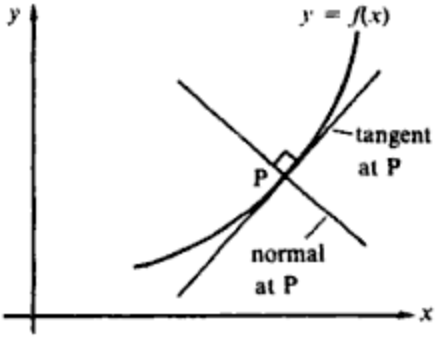
giving $x = -3$ or 1. If $x = -3$ $y = -27 + 27 + 18 - 10$
$= 8$

and if $x = 1$ $y = 1 + 3 - 6 - 10$
$= -12$

The curve $y = x^3 + 3x^2 - 6x - 10$ has a gradient of 3 at $(-3, 8)$ and at $(1, -12)$.

Tangents and normals

Suppose that some point P lies on a curve $y = f(x)$. The line passing through P, perpendicular to the tangent to the curve at P, is said to be the *normal* to the curve at P. To find the equation of the tangent or normal to a curve at some point $P(x_1, y_1)$ on the curve we use $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$ [see page 87] with the gradient m determined by differentiation.



Example 6

Find the equation of the tangent and normal to the curve $y = x^2 - 4x + 1$ at the point $(-2, 13)$.

$$y = x^2 - 4x + 1$$
$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = 2x - 4$$

at $(-2, 13)$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2(-2) - 4 = -8$

Thus the tangent at $(-2, 13)$ has gradient -8 and the normal has gradient $\frac{1}{8}$.

Using $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$, equation of tangent is:

$y - 13 = -8(x - -2)$

i.e. $y = -8x - 3$

equation of normal is:

$y - 13 = \frac{1}{8}(x - -2)$

i.e. $8y = x + 106$

Higher derivatives

We can repeat the differentiation process to find the differential coefficient of the differential coefficient of y with respect to x. This is called the second differential of y with respect to x and is written $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ or, if $y = f(x)$ it is

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

written as $f''(x)$.

Thus if $y = 3x^3 - 6x + 4$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 9x^2 - 6$$

and $$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 18x.$$

Exercise 10B

Differentiate the following functions with respect to x.

1. x^5 **2.** x^3 **3.** $12x^2$ **4.** $5x^4$ **5.** $16x$
6. $3x^2$ **7.** $9x^3$ **8.** $3x^4$ **9.** 7 **10.** $2x$
11. $5x^7$ **12.** 6 **13.** $x^{5/3}$ **14.** $x^{3/4}$ **15.** $x^{2/5}$
16. $x^{3/5}$ **17.** $6x^{2/3}$ **18.** $8x^{1/4}$ **19.** $\sqrt{x}$ **20.** $\sqrt{x^3}$
21. $4\sqrt{x}$ **22.** $\frac{5}{x}$ **23.** $\frac{3}{x^2}$ **24.** $\frac{8}{\sqrt{x}}$ **25.** $\frac{2}{x^3}$

Find the gradient function $\frac{dy}{dx}$ for each of the following:

26. $y = x^2 + 7x - 4$
27. $y = x - 7x^2$
28. $y = 6x^2 - 7x + 8$
29. $y = 3 + x$
30. $y = x^3 + 7x^2 - 2$
31. $y = 3x^6 - 2x^2 + 6x - 8$
32. $y = 3x^2 + 7x - 4 + \frac{1}{x}$
33. $y = 3x - \frac{5}{x} + \frac{6}{x^2}$
34. $y = 5x - \frac{3}{\sqrt{x}}$
35. $y = (x + 3)(x + 1)$
36. $y = (x + 4)(x - 2)$
37. $y = (2x + 3)(x + 2)$

Find the gradients of the following lines at the points indicated:

38. $y = x^2 + 4x$ at $(0, 0)$
39. $y = 5x - x^2$ at $(1, 4)$
40. $y = 3x^3 - 2x$ at $(2, 20)$
41. $y = 5x + x^3$ at $(-1, -6)$
42. $y = (x + 1)(2x + 3)$ at $(2, 21)$
43. $y = 2x^3 - x^2 - 6$ at $(2, 6)$
44. $y = 3x + \frac{1}{x}$ at $(1, 4)$
45. $y = 2x^2 - x + \frac{4}{x}$ at $(2, 8)$

Find the coordinates of any points on the following lines where the gradient is as stated.

46. $y = x^2$, gradient 8
47. $y = x^2$, gradient -8
48. $y = x^2 - 4x + 5$, gradient 2
49. $y = 5x - x^2$, gradient 3
50. $y = x^4 + 2$, gradient -4
51. $y = x^3 + 3x^2 - 5x - 10$, gradient 4
52. $y = x^3 + x^2 - x + 1$, gradient zero.
53. $y = \frac{12}{x}$, gradient -3
54. If $f(x) = x^3 + 4x$ find
(a) $f(1)$, (b) $f'(x)$, (c) $f'(1)$,
(d) $f''(x)$, (e) $f''(1)$.
55. If $f(x) = 3x^2 + \frac{24}{x}$ find
(a) $f(2)$, (b) $f'(x)$, (c) $f'(2)$,
(d) $f''(x)$, (e) $f''(2)$.
56. If $f(x) = 3x^2 - 4x$ find the value of a given that $f'(a) = 5$
57. If $f(x) = x^3 + 1$ find the value of a given that $f''(a) = 24$
58. Find the second differential of y with respect to x for each of the following:
(a) $y = 6x^2 + 7$
(b) $y = 5x^3 + 6x - 5$
(c) $y = 2 + \frac{3}{x}$.
59. If $y = 3x^2 - x$ show that

$$y\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{dy}{dx} - 6y + 1 = 6x.$$

60. Find the gradient of the curve $y = x^2 + 6x - 4$ at the point where the curve cuts the y-axis.
61. Find the coordinates of the points where the curve $y = x^2 - x - 12$ cuts the x-axis and determine the gradient of $y = x^2 - x - 12$ at these points.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

62. The line $y = 4x - 5$ cuts the curve $y = x^2 - 2x$ at two points. Find the gradient of $y = x^2 - 2x$ at these two points.

63. The gradient of $y = x^2 - 4x + 6$ at (3, 3) is the same as the gradient of $y = 8x - 3x^2$ at (a, b). Find the values of a and b.

64. Find the coordinates of the point on the curve $y = x^2 - 6x + 3$ where the tangent is parallel to the line $y = 2x + 3$.

65. Find the coordinates of the point on the curve $y = x - x^2$ where the tangent is parallel to the line $2y + x - 3 = 0$.

66. Find the coordinates of the point on the curve $y = 3x^2 - 9x + 10$ where the normal is parallel to the line $3y - x + 4 = 0$.

67. Find the equations of the tangent and the normal to the following curves at the points indicated:
(a) $y = x^2$ at (3, 9)
(b) $y = 5 - 2x^2$ at $(-1, 3)$
(c) $y = x^2 - 5x - 4$ at the point on the curve with an x-coordinate of 5,
(d) $y = 4 + x - 2x^2$ at the point on the curve with an x-coordinate of 1.

68. T is the tangent to the curve $y = x^2 + 6x - 4$ at (1, 3) and N is the normal to the curve $y = x^2 - 6x + 18$ at (4, 10). Find the coordinates of the point of intersection of T and N.

69. The tangent to the curve $y = ax^2 + bx + 2$ at $(1, \frac{1}{2})$ is parallel to the normal to the curve $y = x^2 + 6x + 10$ at $(-2, 2)$. Find the values of a and b.

10.3 Maximum, minimum and points of inflexion

Figure 1 shows the sketch of a function of x, say $y = f(x)$.
At the points A, B and C the tangent to the curve is parallel to the x-axis and therefore the gradient of the curve at A, B and C is zero,
i.e. $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ at A, B and C.
The point A is said to be a maximum point on the curve since the value of y at A is clearly greater than the values of y at points on the curve close to A.

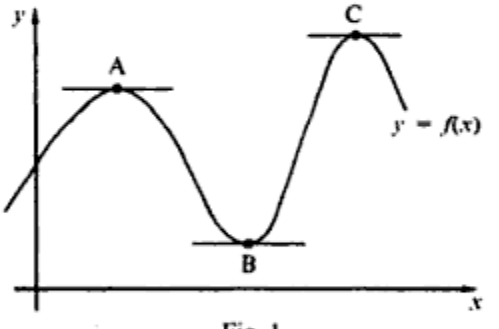


Fig. 1

It is important to realise that at a maximum point such as A, the value of y may not be the greatest value of y on the entire curve. The important fact is that the value of y at A is greater than at points close to A. Thus A is really a *local* maximum but we usually refer to such points simply as maximum points.

In a similar way C is another (local) maximum point on the curve.

The value of y at B is less than the values of y at points on the curve close to B and so B is said to be a (local) minimum point on the curve.

Such maximum and minimum points are said to be *turning* points on the curve. To locate such points without having to draw the graph we have only to find the points at which $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$. However there may be some point on a curve at which $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$, but the point is neither a maximum nor a minimum.
In Figure 2, D is such a point because the tangent is parallel to the x-axis but D is neither a maximum point nor a minimum point. D is called a point of *inflexion*.

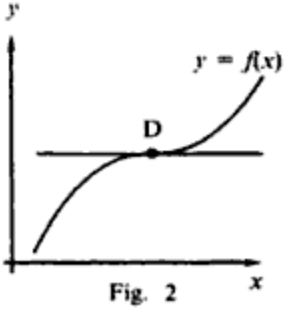


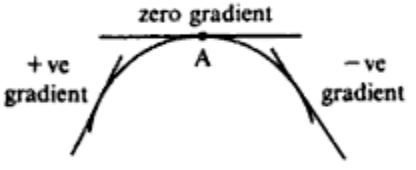
Fig. 2

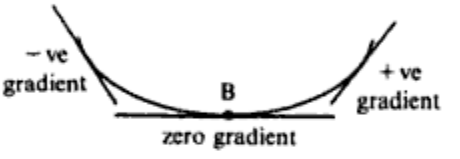
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

A point on a curve at which $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$, i.e. maximum points like A or C in Figure 1, minimum points like B in Figure 1 or points of inflexion such as D in Figure 2 are called *stationary* points.

Having located these stationary points, we can distinguish between them i.e. determine whether they are maximum points, minimum points or points of inflexion, by considering the sign of the gradient at points close to, and on either side of these points.

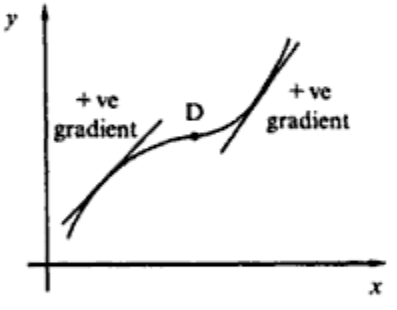
For increasing values of x, as we approach and pass through a maximum point such as A, the gradient of the curve changes from positive ('uphill' for increasing x) to zero, at A, to negative ('downhill' for increasing x).

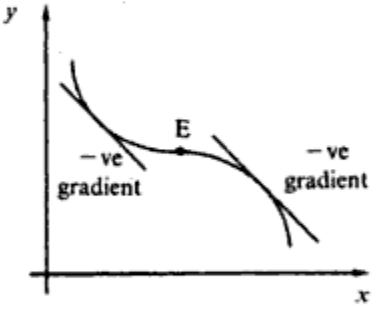




On the other hand, as we approach and pass through a minimum point such as B, the gradient changes from negative through zero to positive.

For points of inflexion, such as D and E, the gradient of the curve does not change sign as we pass through the point.





Thus, to find the stationary points on a curve $y = f(x)$ and to distinguish between them, we proceed as follows:

1. Find the gradient function $\frac{dy}{dx}$ of the curve.
2. Equate to zero the expression for $\frac{dy}{dx}$.
3. Find the values of x (i.e. $x_1, x_2, x_3 \ldots$) which satisfy this equation.
4. Consider the sign of $\frac{dy}{dx}$ on either side of these points.
5. Find the values $y_1, y_2, y_3 \ldots$ which correspond to $x_1, x_2, x_3 \ldots$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 7

Find the coordinates of any stationary points on the curve $y = x^3 - 2x^2 - 4x$ and distinguish between these points.

$$y = x^3 - 2x^2 - 4x$$
$$\Rightarrow \frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2 - 4x - 4$$

At stationary points, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ i.e. $3x^2 - 4x - 4 = 0$

$$(3x + 2)(x - 2) = 0$$
$$\text{thus } x = -\tfrac{2}{3} \text{ or } 2$$

We must now consider the sign of $\frac{dy}{dx}$ as x increases through these points,

$$\text{now, } \frac{dy}{dx} = (3x + 2)(x - 2)$$

$\therefore$ If x is 'just' less than $-\frac{2}{3}$ (say $-0{\cdot}8$) $\frac{dy}{dx} = (-\text{ve})(-\text{ve}) = +\text{ve}$

and if x is 'just' more than $-\frac{2}{3}$ (say $-0{\cdot}5$) $\frac{dy}{dx} = (+\text{ve})(-\text{ve}) = -\text{ve}$

Thus the gradient changes from $+$ve (/) to $-$ve (\) as we pass through $x = -\frac{2}{3}$, i.e. a maximum point.

If x is 'just' less than 2 (say $1{\cdot}5$) $\frac{dy}{dx} = (+\text{ve})(-\text{ve}) = -\text{ve}$

and if x is 'just' more than 2 (say $2{\cdot}5$) $\frac{dy}{dx} = (+\text{ve})(+\text{ve}) = +\text{ve}$

Thus the gradient changes from $-$ve (\) to $+$ve (/) as we pass through $x = 2$, i.e. a minimum point.

When $x = -\frac{2}{3}$, $y = (-\frac{2}{3})^3 - 2(-\frac{2}{3})^2 - 4(-\frac{2}{3})$
$= 1\frac{13}{27}$

when $x = 2$, $y = (2)^3 - 2(2)^2 - 4(2)$
$= -8$

Thus a maximum point occurs at $(-\frac{2}{3}, 1\frac{13}{27})$ and a minimum point occurs at $(2, -8)$.

Notice that we did not need to evaluate $\frac{dy}{dx}$ at points on either side of the stationary points, we had only to determine the *sign* of the gradient function. For this reason the factorised form of $\frac{dy}{dx}$ was useful.

Example 8

Find the coordinates of any stationary points on the curve $y = x^4 + 2x^3$ and distinguish between them. Hence sketch the curve.

$$y = x^4 + 2x^3$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 4x^3 + 6x^2 = 2x^2(2x + 3)$$

At stationary points $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ i.e. $x = 0$ or $-\frac{3}{2}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Using $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x^2(2x + 3)$

For x just less than 0 (say $-0{\cdot}1$) $\frac{dy}{dx} = (+\text{ve})(+\text{ve}) = +\text{ve}$ (/)

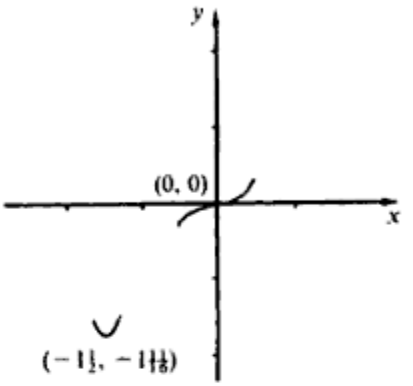
For x just more than 0 (say $0{\cdot}1$) $\frac{dy}{dx} = (+\text{ve})(+\text{ve}) = +\text{ve}$ (/)

Thus at $x = 0$ there is a point of inflexion.

For x just less than $-\frac{3}{2}$ (say $-1{\cdot}6$) $\frac{dy}{dx} = (+\text{ve})(-\text{ve}) = -\text{ve}$ (\)

For x just more than $-\frac{3}{2}$ (say -1) $\frac{dy}{dx} = (+\text{ve})(+\text{ve}) = +\text{ve}$ (/)

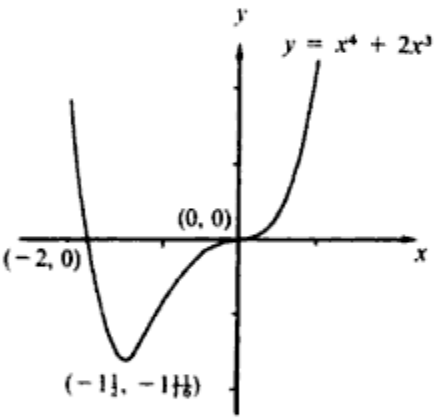
Thus at $x = -\frac{3}{2}$ there is a minimum point.



If $x = 0$, $y = 0$. If $x = -\frac{3}{2}$, $y = -1\frac{11}{16}$
Thus a minimum point occurs at $(-1\frac{1}{2}, -1\frac{11}{16})$ and a point of inflexion occurs at (0, 0).
These facts can be used to start the sketch as shown.

When sketching, it is also useful to know where the curve cuts the axes.

Clearly when $x = 0$, $y = 0$
but also, when $y = 0$, $x^4 + 2x^3 = 0$
i.e. $x^3(x + 2) = 0$
giving $x = 0$ or -2.
Thus we can complete the sketch as shown on the right.



Note
When sketching the graph of $y = f(x)$, it is useful to examine the behaviour of $f(x)$ as $x \to \pm\infty$.

In the above example $y = x^4 + 2x^3$ and so as $x \to \pm\infty$ the x^4 term will dominate.
Thus as $x \to +\infty$, $y \to +\infty$
and as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to +\infty$ which agrees with our sketch.

Curve sketching is considered in greater detail in the next chapter.

Exercise 10C

For questions **1** to **8**, find the coordinates of any stationary points on the given curves and distinguish between them.

1. $y = 2x^2 - 8x$
2. $y = 18x - 20 - 3x^2$
3. $y = x^3 - x^2 - x + 7$
4. $y = x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x - 5$
5. $y = 1 - 3x + x^3$
6. $y = x^3 - 3x^2 + 3x - 1$
7. $y = (x - 1)(x^2 - 6x + 2)$
8. $y = x^3 + 6x^2 + 12x + 12$

For questions **9** to **14**, sketch the curves of the given equations, clearly indicating on your sketch the coordinates of any stationary points and of any points where the lines cut the axes.

9. $y = (1 - x)(x - 5)$
10. $y = x^2 + 2x - 3$
11. $y = x^2 - 8x - 20$
12. $y = x^3 - 4x^2 + 4x$
13. $y = x(x - 3)(x + 5)$
14. $y = 3x^4 - 4x^3$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Use of the second differential

Figure 1 shows the graph of some function $y = f(x)$. A is a minimum point, B is a point of inflexion and C is a maximum point. Figure 2 shows the corresponding graph of $f'(x)$ plotted against x.

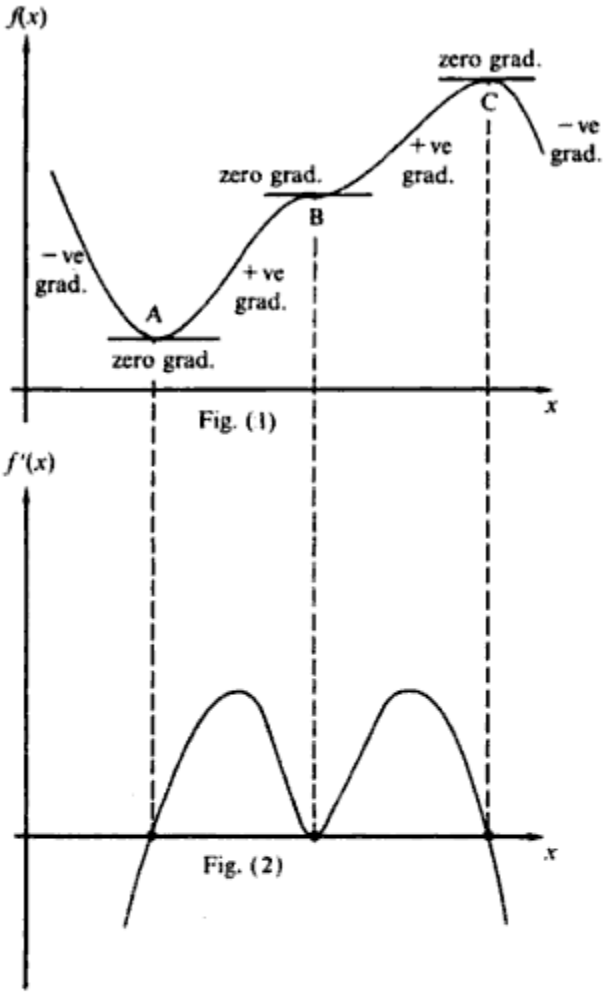
The gradient of the curve shown in Figure 2 will be given by $\frac{d}{dx}[f'(x)]$, i.e. $f''(x)$ or $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$.

Notice that the minimum point A, in Figure 1, corresponds to a point at which there is a +ve gradient in Figure 2,
i.e. $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} > 0$ for a minimum point.

The maximum point C, in Figure 1, corresponds to a point at which there is a −ve gradient in Figure 2,
i.e. $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} < 0$ for a maximum point.

The point of inflexion B, in Figure 1, corresponds to a point where the gradient is zero in Figure 2,
i.e. $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0$ for a point of inflexion.

In fact it can also be true that $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0$ at maximum and minimum points and so, if we wish to use the second differential as an aid to determining the nature of stationary points, we can say:



For any point (x_1, y_1) on the curve $y = f(x)$ for which $f'(x_1) = 0$ then,
(a) if $f''(x_1) > 0$ then the point is a minimum point,
(b) if $f''(x_1) < 0$ then the point is a maximum point,
(c) if $f''(x_1) = 0$ then the point is either a maximum point, a minimum point or a point of inflexion and, to determine which it is, we consider the sign of $f'(x)$ on either side of the point.

Example 9

Find the coordinates of any stationary points on the curve $y = 5x^6 - 12x^5$ and distinguish between them. Hence sketch the curve.

$$y = 5x^6 - 12x^5 \quad = x^5(5x - 12)$$
$$y' = 30x^5 - 60x^4 \quad = 30x^4(x - 2)$$
$$y'' = 150x^4 - 240x^3 = 30x^3(5x - 8)$$

At stationary points $y' = 0$ i.e. $30x^4(x - 2) = 0$ giving $x = 0$ or $x = 2$

when $x = 2$, $y'' = 30(2)^3(10 - 8)$ i.e. positive $\Rightarrow$ minimum,
when $x = 0$, $y'' = 0 \Rightarrow$ further investigation of y' needed either side of $x = 0$,

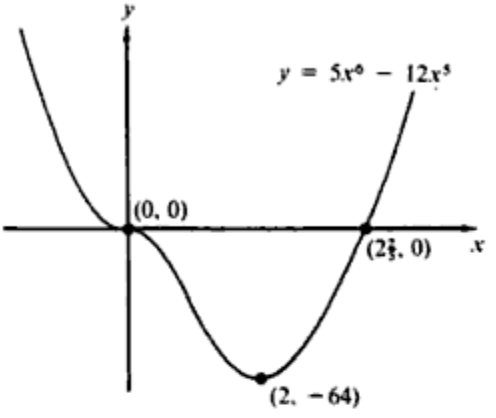
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

when x is just less than zero, say $-0{\cdot}1$, y' is negative (\)
when x is just more than zero, say $+0{\cdot}1$, y' is negative (\) $\Rightarrow$ point of inflexion

when $x = 0$, $y = 0$ and when $x = 2$, $y = -64$.

Thus (0, 0) is a point of inflexion and (2, −64) is a minimum point.

From $y = x^5(5x - 12)$ we see that the axes are cut at (0, 0) and ($2\frac{2}{5}$, 0) and a sketch of the curve can be made as shown.



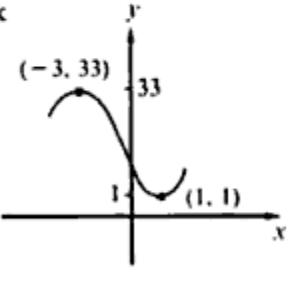
Note also that as $x \to +\infty$, $y \to +\infty$
and as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to +\infty$

Example 10

Find (a) the coordinates and nature of any turning points on the curve $y = x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 6$
(b) the maximum value of $x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 6$ in the range
(i) $-4 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$ (ii) $-4 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$

(a) $y = x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 6$
$y' = 3x^2 + 6x - 9 \qquad = 3(x - 1)(x + 3)$
$y'' = 6x + 6$
At stationary points $y' = 0$ i.e. $(x - 1)(x + 3) = 0$
giving $x = 1$ or $x = -3$
when $x = 1$ $y'' = 12$ i.e. positive $\Rightarrow$ minimum
when $x = -3$ $y'' = -12$ i.e. negative $\Rightarrow$ maximum
when $x = 1$ $y = 1$ and when $x = -3$ $y = 33$
Thus (1, 1) is a minimum point and (−3, 33) is a maximum point.

(b) From (a) we know that the graph of $y = x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 6$ must look something like that shown on the right.
Thus, remembering that (−3, 33) is a *local* maximum the expression $x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 6$ will exceed the value 33 for sufficiently large x.



(i) for $-4 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$:
if $x = 2$, $x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 6 = 8 + 12 - 18 + 6$
$= 8$
$\therefore$ in the range $-4 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$,
$x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 6$ has a maximum value of 33

(ii) for $-4 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$:
if $x = 4$, $x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 6 = 64 + 48 - 36 + 6$
$= 82$
$\therefore$ in the range $-4 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$,
$x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 6$ has a maximum value of 82.

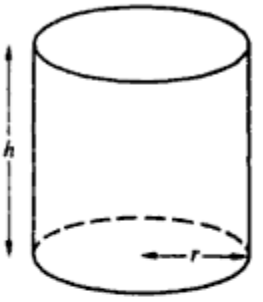
The above examples show how the stationary points of a curve may be located when the equation of the curve is given. However, in some instances the equation may not be given. This is likely to be the case when the problem relates to a real life or practical situation and then the first task is to express the given information as an equation relating two variables. The

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

stationary points can then be determined and their practical significance interpreted. The following example illustrates such a case.

Example 11

A company that manufactures dog food wishes to pack the food in closed cylindrical tins. What should be the dimensions of each tin if each is to have a volume of 128π cm³ and the minimum possible surface area?



Suppose that each tin has base radius r and perpendicular height h. We require the dimensions for the surface area S to be a minimum and so we need an expression for S.

$$S = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$$

We cannot differentiate this expression, in this form, as S is given as a function of *two* variables r and h.
However the volume $V = \pi r^2 h$ and this volume is to be 128π cm³.

$$\therefore \quad 128\pi = \pi r^2 h \quad \text{or} \quad h = \frac{128}{r^2}$$

$$\therefore \quad S = 2\pi r^2 + \frac{256\pi}{r}$$

$$\text{and} \quad \frac{dS}{dr} = 4\pi r - \frac{256\pi}{r^2}$$

$$\text{When} \quad \frac{dS}{dr} = 0, \quad \text{then} \quad 4\pi r - \frac{256\pi}{r^2} = 0$$

$$\text{giving} \quad r = 4 \text{ cm}$$

$$\text{and} \quad h = \frac{128}{4^2} = 8 \text{ cm}$$

$$\frac{d^2S}{dr^2} = 4\pi + \frac{512\pi}{r^3}, \text{ which is positive for } r = 4 \Rightarrow \text{minimum.}$$

Thus the surface area S has a minimum value when $r = 4$ cm and $h = 8$ cm.
Each tin should have a base radius of 4 cm and perpendicular height 8 cm.

Exercise 10D

For questions **1** to **8** find the coordinates of any stationary points on the given curves and distinguish between them.

1. $y = x^2 + 10x + 10$
2. $y = \frac{1}{4} + 9x - 3x^2$
3. $y = x^3 - 3x^2 - 24x$
4. $y = 3x^2 + 45x - 75 - x^3$
5. $y = 2x^3 - 24x$
6. $y = x^4 + 3$
7. $y = x^6 - 6x^4$
8. $y = 15x^3 - x^5$

For questions **9** to **14**, sketch the curves of the given equations clearly indicating on your sketch the coordinates of any stationary points and of any points where the lines cut the axes.

9. $y = 3x - x^2$
10. $y = x^2 - 4$
11. $y = (x - 2)^2$
12. $y = x^4 - 4x^3$
13. $y = (x - 2)^2(x - 1)$
14. $y = x^5 - 5x^4$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

15. Find (a) the coordinates and nature of any turning points on the curve $y = x^3 - \frac{3}{2}x^2 - 6x + 12$,
(b) the maximum value of $x^3 - \frac{3}{2}x^2 - 6x + 12$ in the range $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$,
(c) the minimum value of $x^3 - \frac{3}{2}x^2 - 6x + 12$ in the range $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$.

16. Find (a) the coordinates and nature of any turning points on the curve $y = 36x - 3x^2 - 2x^3$,
(b) the minimum and maximum values of $36x - 3x^2 - 2x^3$ in the range $-5 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$.

17. If $S = 4r^2 - 10r + 7$, find the minimum value of S and the value of r which gives this minimum value.

18. If $V = 30t - 6t^2$, find the maximum value of V and the value of t for which it occurs.

19. If $A = xy$ and $2x + 5y = 100$, find the maximum value of A and the values of x and y which give this maximum value.

20. If $V = 4rx + 2r^2$ and $3r + x = 5$, find the maximum value of V and the values of r and x that give this maximum value.

21. A rectangular enclosure is formed by using 1200 m of fencing. Find the greatest possible area that can be enclosed in this way and the corresponding dimensions of the rectangle.

22. An open metal tank with a square base is made from 12 m² of sheet metal. Find the length of the side of the base for the volume of the tank to be a maximum and find this maximum volume.

23. A piece of wire of length 60 cm is cut into two pieces. Each piece is then bent to form the perimeter of a rectangle which is twice as long as it is wide. Find the lengths of the two pieces of wire if the sum of the areas of the rectangles is to be a minimum.

24. A cylindrical can is made so that the sum of its height and the circumference of its base is 45π cm. Find the radius of the base of the cylinder if the volume of the can is a maximum.

25. A ship is to make a voyage of 200 km at a constant speed. When the speed of the ship is v km/h the cost is £$(v^2 + 4000/v)$ per hour. Find the speed at which the ship should travel so that the cost of the voyage is a minimum.

10.4 Small changes

In section 10.1 we defined $\frac{dy}{dx}$ as $\lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left(\frac{\delta y}{\delta x}\right)$. Thus, if δx is small then

$$\frac{\delta y}{\delta x} \approx \frac{dy}{dx} \quad \text{or} \quad \delta y \approx \frac{dy}{dx}\delta x.$$

Thus if y is given as a function of x we can determine the change in y corresponding to some given small change in x.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 12

If $y = 2x^2 - 3x$ find the approximate change in y when x increases from 6 to 6·02.

$$y = 2x^2 - 3x$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 4x - 3$$

using $\delta y \approx \frac{dy}{dx}\delta x$

$$\delta y \approx (4x - 3)\delta x \quad \text{and if } x = 6 \quad \text{and} \quad \delta x = 0{\cdot}02$$
$$\delta y \approx (24 - 3)(0{\cdot}02) = 0{\cdot}42$$

When x changes from 6 to 6·02 the value of y changes by approximately 0·42.

Example 13

In calculating the area of a circle it is known that an error of $\pm 3\%$ could have been made in the measurement of the radius. Find the possible percentage error in the area.

We are told that $\frac{\delta r}{r} = \pm\frac{3}{100}$ and we require $\frac{\delta A}{A}$.

For small δr $\quad \frac{\delta A}{\delta r} \approx \frac{dA}{dr}$

but $\quad A = \pi r^2$ i.e. $\frac{dA}{dr} = 2\pi r$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{\delta A}{\delta r} \approx 2\pi r$$
$$\delta A \approx 2\pi r \delta r$$
$$\therefore \quad \frac{\delta A}{A} \approx \frac{2\pi r \delta r}{\pi r^2} = \frac{2\delta r}{r}$$
$$= \pm\frac{6}{100}$$

Thus the possible percentage error in the area will be $\pm 6\%$.

Example 14

Find an approximate value for $\sqrt{(16{\cdot}08)}$

For this we use $y = \sqrt{x}$ with $(x, y) = (16, 4)$ and $(x + \delta x, y + \delta y) = (16 + 0{\cdot}08, 4 + \delta y)$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$$

For small δx, $\frac{\delta y}{\delta x} \approx \frac{dy}{dx}$ i.e. $\delta y \approx \frac{dy}{dx}\delta x$

$$\therefore \quad \delta y \approx \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}\delta x$$
$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{16}}(0{\cdot}08)$$
$$= 0{\cdot}01$$
$$\therefore \quad y + \delta y \approx 4 + 0{\cdot}01 \quad \text{and so} \quad \sqrt{(16{\cdot}08)} \approx 4{\cdot}01$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

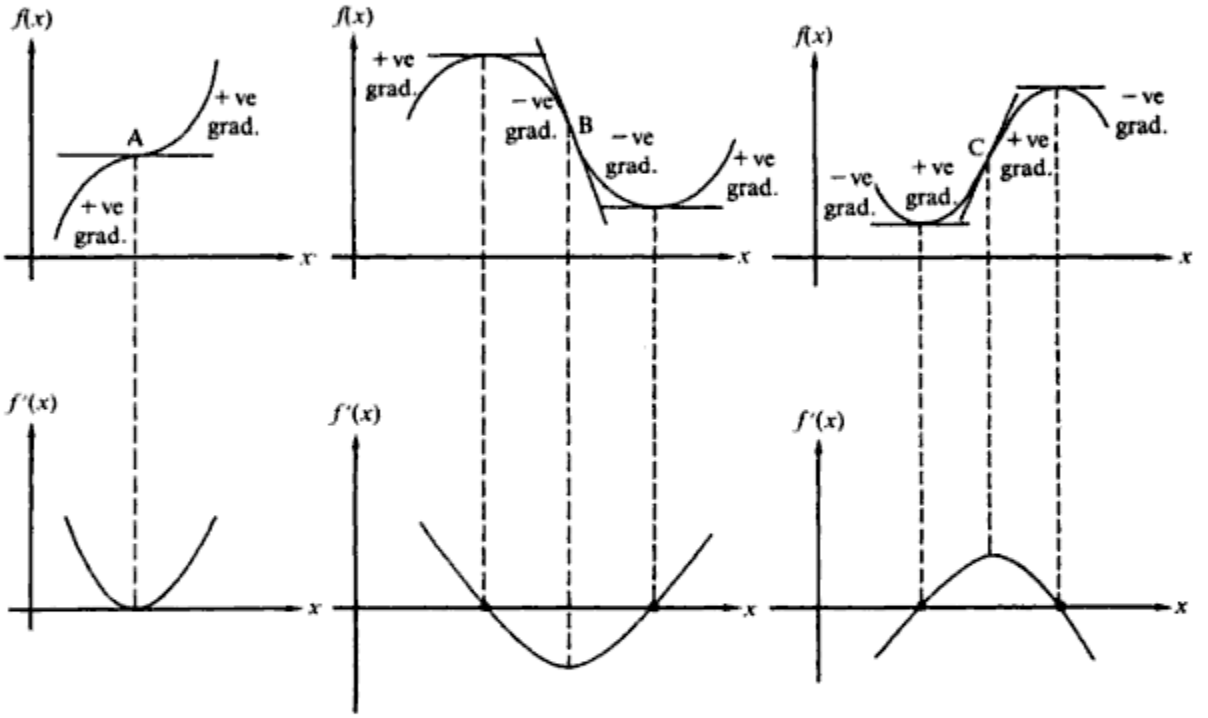
Exercise 10E

1. If $y = x^2 + 2x$ find the approximate increase in y when x increases from 9 to 9·01.
2. If $y = x + \frac{1}{x}$ find the approximate increase in y when x increases from 2 to 2·04.
3. It is noticed that when x increases slightly from an initial value of 7, the value of y increases by 0·7. Find the approximate increase in x that caused this increase in y given that x and y are related according to the rule $y = (2x + 3)(x + 2)$.
4. If $y = 5x^4$ and x is increased by 2% of its original value, find the corresponding percentage increase in y.
5. Find an approximate value for the increase in the volume of a sphere when the radius of the sphere increases from 10 cm to 10·1 cm. (Leave π in your answer).
6. Find the percentage increase in the volume of a cube when all the edges of the cube are increased in length by 2%.
7. Find an approximate value for the increase in the radius of a sphere given that this increase causes the surface area to increase from 100π cm^2 to $100{\cdot}4\pi$ cm^2.
8. A rectangle is known to be twice as long as it is wide. If the width is measured as 20 cm $\pm$ 0·2 cm find the area in the form $A \pm b$.
9. The time period, T, of a pendulum of length l is given by $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{l}{g}}$ where π and g are constants. Find the approximate percentage increase in T when the length of the pendulum increases by 4%.
10. A solid circular cylinder has base radius 5 cm and height 12·5 cm. Find the approximate increase in the surface area of the cylinder when the radius of the base increases to 5·04 cm. (Leave π in your answer).
11. Find an approximate value for $(5{\cdot}02)^3$.
12. Find an approximate value for $\sqrt[3]{(64{\cdot}96)}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

10.5 More about points of inflexion

We saw on page 266 that when examining points on the curve $y = f(x)$ for which $f'(x) = 0$, if $f''(x) < 0$ we have a maximum point, if $f''(x) > 0$ we have a minimum point and if $f''(x) = 0$ we *could* have a point of inflexion. Indeed at all points of inflexion $f''(x) = 0$ but it is possible to have a point of inflexion (a, b) i.e. $f''(a) = 0$, for which $f'(a) \neq 0$. A point of inflexion is said to occur at any point P on a curve at which the tangent to the curve at P crosses the curve at P. Thus in the diagrams shown below A, B and C are all points of inflexion, but only A is a stationary point on the curve as the tangent at A is parallel to the x-axis, (i.e. $f'(x) = 0$ at A). The second set of diagrams show that the gradient of $f'(x)$, i.e. $f''(x)$, is zero at A, B and C.



Thus if $y = f(x)$ stationary points occur where $f'(x) = 0$. These stationary points may be turning points (maximum or minimum) or points of inflexion. Points of inflexion that are not turning points may also occur if $f'(x) \neq 0$ but $f''(x) = 0$.

Example 15

Find the coordinates of any points of inflexion on the curve $y = x^3(x - 1)$ and determine whether they are horizontal points of inflexion.

$$y = x^3(x - 1)$$
$$= x^4 - x^3$$
$$y' = 4x^3 - 3x^2 = x^2(4x - 3)$$
$$y'' = 12x^2 - 6x = 6x(2x - 1)$$

At points of inflexion $y'' = 0$ i.e. $6x(2x - 1) = 0$

giving $x = 0$ or $x = \frac{1}{2}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9. (i) A rectangular block has a base x centimetres square. Its total surface area is 150 cm². Prove that the volume of the block is $\frac{1}{2}(75x - x^3)$ cm³.
Calculate (a) the dimensions of the block when its volume is maximum; (b) this maximum volume. Show that your answer is a maximum rather than a minimum.

(ii) Write down the gradient of the function $4x^2 + \frac{27}{x}$. Hence find the value of x for which the function has a maximum or minimum value, and state which it is, giving reasons. (Oxford)

10. A solid right circular cylinder of height h and radius r has a *total* external surface area of 600 cm².

Show that $h = \frac{300}{\pi r} - r$ and hence express the volume, V, in terms of r.

If h and r can vary, find $\frac{dV}{dr}$ and $\frac{d^2V}{dr^2}$ in terms of r. Show that V has a maximum and find the corresponding value of r in terms of π.
Calculate the ratio $h:r$ in this maximum case. (A.E.B.)

11. A cylinder of volume V is to be cut from a solid sphere of radius R.

Prove that the maximum value of V is $\frac{4\pi R^3}{3\sqrt{3}}$. (A.E.B.)

12. The equation of a curve is $y = 2x^3 - 7x^2 + 15$. Write down an expression for $\frac{dy}{dx}$ and hence find

(i) the equation of the tangent to the curve at (2, 3),
(ii) the approximate change in y as x increases from 2 to 2·03, stating whether this is an increase or a decrease. (Cambridge)

13. Given that $y = x^{-1/3}$ use the calculus to determine an approximate value for $\frac{1}{\sqrt[3]{0{\cdot}9}}$. (Cambridge)

14. (i)

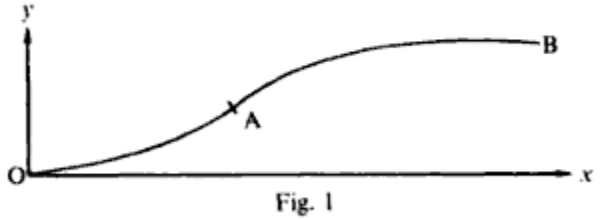


Fig. 1

Fig. 1 represents part of a switch-back ride at a fair. The section O to A is part of the curve whose equation is $y = x^2$ and the section from A to B is part of the curve whose equation is $3y = -20 + 20x - 2x^2$. Find the coordinates of A. Show that the gradients for each section are equal at A, and find this gradient.

(ii) A solid metal cylinder has a height of 10 cm. It is machined until its radius is reduced by 0·5%, its height remaining at 10 cm. Use the method of small increments to find the percentage decrease in volume. No credit will be given for any other method. (Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

11
Sketching functions I

11.1 General methods

For the function $y = f(x)$, we can plot values of x against the corresponding values of y and obtain an accurate graph of the function. A less accurate representation, which we call a sketch, is adequate for many purposes provided that the sketch still shows the salient and noteworthy features of the function.

In earlier chapters we have already encountered the idea of sketching straight lines, quadratic curves, cubic curves and various other functions. Thus if asked to sketch the graph of an equation of the type $y = mx + c$, we know it will be a straight line and need only find two points on the line. If asked to sketch the graph of a function of the type $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$, we expect a quadratic curve which will be either a 'hill' $\frown$ (if $a < 0$) or a 'valley' $\smile$ (if $a > 0$). By finding (a) where the curve cuts the axes and (b) the coordinates and nature of any turning points, a good sketch can be made.

If asked to sketch the graph of a function of the type $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, we expect a cubic curve which will have both a 'hill' and a 'valley': $\sim$ (if $a > 0$) or $\backsim$ (if $a < 0$). [These 'hills' and 'valleys' may merge into a point of inflexion: $\sim$ or $\backsim$]. Again, by finding intercepts with the axes and the coordinates and nature of any turning points, the curve can be sketched.

However, not all functions are of one of the above types and so we need a general approach to sketching. The following steps will give information from which the graphs of many types of functions, $y = f(x)$, can be sketched.

1. Is there any obvious symmetry?
   If the equation is unchanged when $(-x)$ is substituted for x, the graph will be symmetrical about the y-axis (i.e. an even function, $f(-x) = f(x)$).
   If the equation is unchanged when $(-y)$ is substituted for y, the graph will be symmetrical about the x-axis. [Applies to graphs of the type $y^2 = f(x)$]
   If $f(-x) = -f(x)$ the function is an odd function and the graph is symmetrical for a 180° turn about the origin.

2. Find where the line cuts the x and y axes.

3. Examine the behaviour of the function as $x \to \pm\infty$.

4. Investigate any places where the function is undefined (e.g. $f(x) = 1/x$ is not defined for $x = 0$).

5. If the above steps indicate the presence of a turning point, find its location and nature.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Important notes

(a) For simple functions, e.g. $f(x) = x$, $g(x) = x^2$, $h(x) = 1/x$, point **1**, the symmetry aspect is worthy of consideration but for more complicated functions it is not always easy to consider this aspect. Thus only consider **1** if symmetry is obvious.

(b) For most functions, it is not necessary to follow all five steps; as soon as sufficient information has been gained to enable a sketch of the function to be made, there is no need to search for more. Indeed, point **5** can be difficult unless the function is easy to differentiate, and even when turning points are present a reasonably accurate sketch can often be made without having to locate them precisely.

(c) The behaviour of a function as $x \to \pm\infty$ (point **3**), and values of x for which a function is undefined (point **4**), are illustrated in the following example.

Example 1

For each of the following functions, (i) examine the behaviour of the function as $x \to \pm\infty$, (ii) find any values of x for which the function is undefined and investigate the function on either side of this value of x.

(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{3}{x}$, (b) $f(x) = 3 + \dfrac{2}{x}$, (c) $f(x) = \dfrac{5x - 1}{x}$, (d) $f(x) = 3 - \dfrac{2}{x^2}$.

(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{3}{x}$

(i) For x, a large +ve number, $f(x)$ is small and positive we write this: as $x \to +\infty$, $f(x) \to 0^+$.
(i.e. $f(x)$ is 'just' greater than zero)
For x, a large −ve number, $f(x)$ is small and negative we write this: as $x \to -\infty$, $f(x) \to 0^-$.
(i.e. $f(x)$ is 'just' less than zero)

(ii) $f(x)$ is undefined for $x = 0$
For x *just* greater than zero, $f(x)$ is a large +ve number.
For x *just* less than zero, $f(x)$ is a large −ve number.
Thus: as $x \to 0^+$, $f(x) \to +\infty$
as $x \to 0^-$, $f(x) \to -\infty$.

(b) $f(x) = 3 + \dfrac{2}{x}$

(i) For x, a large +ve number, $\dfrac{2}{x}$ is small and positive.
Thus: as $x \to +\infty$, $f(x) \to 3^+$. (i.e. $f(x)$ is 'just' greater than 3)
For x, a large −ve number, $\dfrac{2}{x}$ is small and negative.
Thus: as $x \to -\infty$, $f(x) \to 3^-$. (i.e. $f(x)$ is 'just' less than 3)

(ii) $f(x)$ is undefined for $x = 0$
For x *just* greater than zero, $f(x)$ is a large +ve number.
For x *just* less than zero, $f(x)$ is a large −ve number.
Thus: as $x \to 0^+$, $f(x) \to +\infty$.
as $x \to 0^-$, $f(x) \to -\infty$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) $f(x) = \dfrac{5x - 1}{x}$

$= 5 - \dfrac{1}{x}$ (i) As $x \to +\infty, f(x) \to 5^-$.
As $x \to -\infty, f(x) \to 5^+$.
(ii) $f(x)$ is undefined for $x = 0$
As $x \to 0^+, f(x) \to -\infty$.
As $x \to 0^-, f(x) \to +\infty$.

(d) $f(x) = 3 - \dfrac{2}{x^2}$ (i) As $x \to +\infty, f(x) \to 3^-$.
As $x \to -\infty, f(x) \to 3^-$.
(ii) $f(x)$ is undefined for $x = 0$
As $x \to 0^+, f(x) \to -\infty$.
As $x \to 0^-, f(x) \to -\infty$.

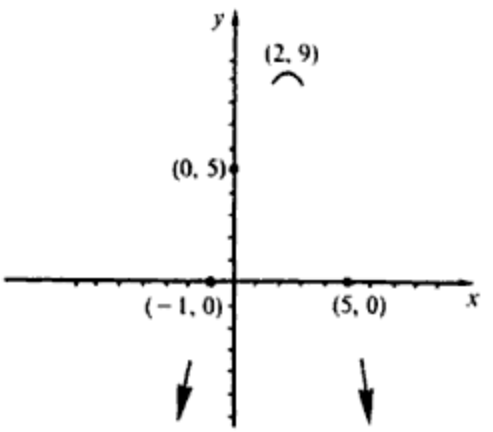
Example 2

Sketch the graph of the function
(a) $f(x) = 5 + 4x - x^2$,

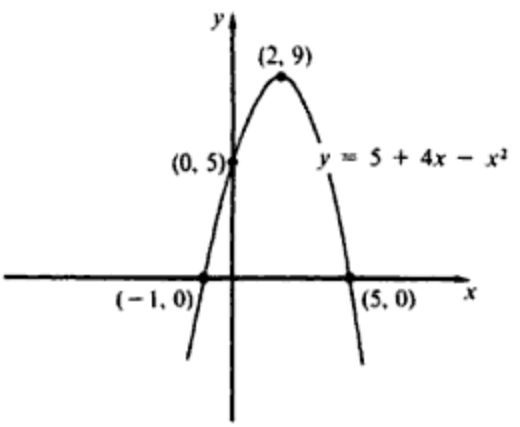
(b) $g(x) = \begin{cases} 5 & \text{for } x \leqslant 0 \\ 5 + 4x - x^2 & \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 5 \\ 0 & \text{for } x \geqslant 5. \end{cases}$

(a) Let $y = 5 + 4x - x^2$

x-axis	When $y = 0$, $5 + 4x - x^2 = 0$ i.e. $(5 - x)(1 + x) = 0$ cuts x-axis at $(5, 0)$ and $(-1, 0)$
y-axis	When $x = 0$, $y = 5$ cuts y-axis at $(0, 5)$
$x \to \pm\infty$	For large x the x^2 term dominates Thus as $x \to +\infty$, $y \to -\infty$ as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to -\infty$
f(x) undefined	There is no value of x for which $f(x)$ is undefined.
Max/min	$y = 5 + 4x - x^2$ $y' = 4 - 2x$ $y'' = -2$ Thus a maximum exists at $(2, 9)$

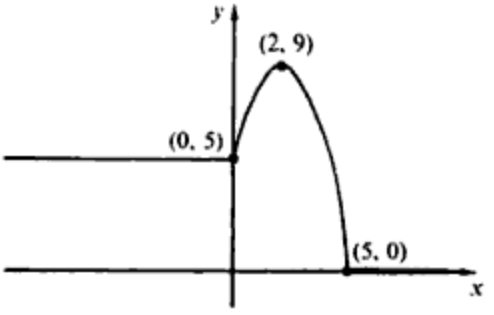


The sketch can then be completed.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

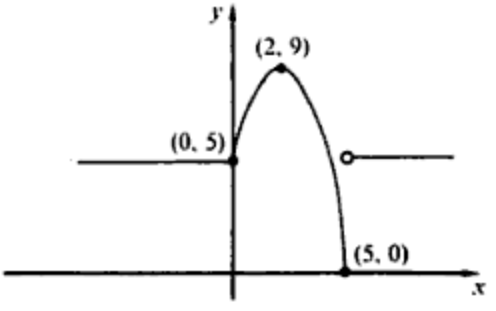
(b) The sketch of $g(x)$ will be the same as that of $f(x)$ for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$, but will equal 5 for $x \leqslant 0$ and 0 for $x \geqslant 5$.
Thus the sketch will be:



Notice that, although the nature of $g(x)$ changes noticeably at $x = 0$ and at $x = 5$, the line itself does not 'break'; $g(x)$ is said to be a *continuous* function (as indeed was $f(x)$).

An example of a *discontinuous* function would be:

$$h(x) = \begin{cases} 5 & \text{for } x \leqslant 0 \\ 5 + 4x - x^2 & \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 5 \\ 5 & \text{for } x > 5 \end{cases}$$



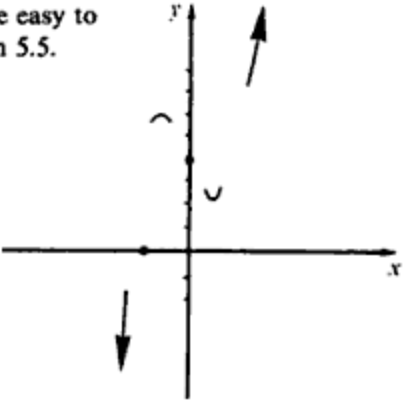
Example 3

Show that there is a solution to the equation $x^3 - 3x + 4 = 0$, that lies between $x = -3$ and $x = -2$. Sketch the curve given by $y = x^3 - 3x + 4$.

Let $y = x^3 - 3x + 4$, then the solutions of $x^3 - 3x + 4 = 0$ are obtained by putting $y = 0$.
Now y is zero at the points where the curve intersects the x-axis.
When $x = -3$, $y = (-3)^3 - 3(-3) + 4$
or $y = -14$
When $x = -2$, $y = (-2)^3 - 3(-2) + 4$
or $y = +2$
Since for $x = -3$, $y < 0$ and for $x = -2$, $y > 0$ there must exist some value of x between -3 and -2 for which $y = 0$.
Thus there is a solution of the equation $x^3 - 3x + 4 = 0$ lying between $x = -3$ and $x = -2$.
Note that since the solution is not an integer value, it would not be easy to find this solution by means of the factor theorem as used in section 5.5.

$y = x^3 - 3x + 4$

x-axis	Curve cuts x-axis between $(-3, 0)$ and $(-2, 0)$. At this stage we do not know if there is any other point of intersection with the x-axis.
y-axis	Intersection at $(0, 4)$
$x \to \pm\infty$	For large x, x^3 dominates. Thus as $x \to +\infty$, $y \to +\infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to -\infty$.

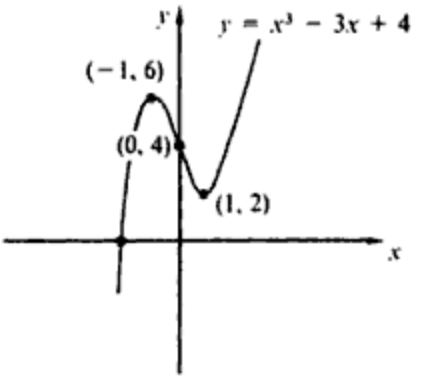


Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

y undefined There is no value of x for which y is undefined.

Max/min $y = x^3 - 3x + 4$
$y' = 3x^2 - 3$
$y'' = 6x$
Thus there exists a max at $(-1, 6)$ and a min at $(1, 2)$.

The sketch can then be completed.



Example 4

Make a sketch of the curve given by $y = \dfrac{x+5}{x}$.

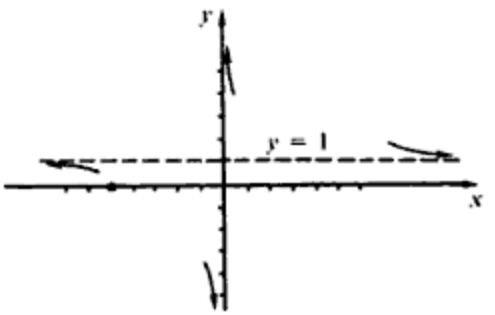
$y = \dfrac{x+5}{x}$ can be written as $y = 1 + \dfrac{5}{x}$.

x-axis $y = 0$ when $x = -5$
$\therefore$ cuts x-axis at $(-5, 0)$

y-axis No y-axis intercept because y is not defined for $x = 0$

$x \to \pm\infty$ As $x \to +\infty$, $y \to 1^+$
As $x \to -\infty$, $y \to 1^-$

The line $y = 1$ is called an *asymptote* to the curve, meaning that it is a straight line that the curve gets nearer and nearer to without actually touching. The line $y = 1$ is a horizontal asymptote and is shown as a broken line on the graph.



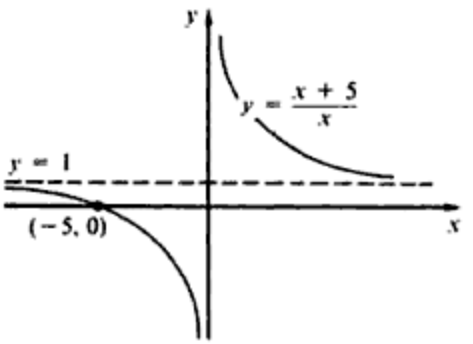
y undefined y is undefined for $x = 0$.
As $x \to 0^+$, $y \to +\infty$.
As $x \to 0^-$, $y \to -\infty$.

The line $x = 0$, i.e. the y-axis, is a vertical asymptote to the curve.

Max/min $y' = \dfrac{-5}{x^2}$. Thus there is no value of x for which $y' = 0$ and therefore no turning points.

Note, also, that the gradient is always negative.

The sketch can then be completed.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

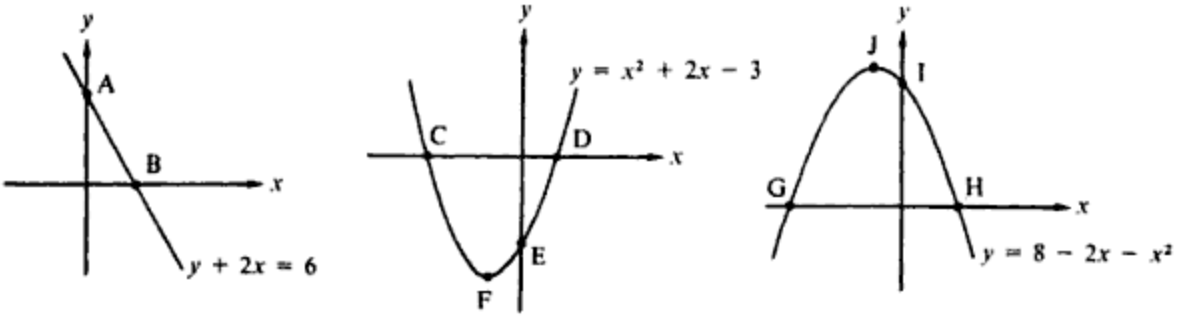
Exercise 11A

1. If each of the following were sketched, state which would give straight lines.

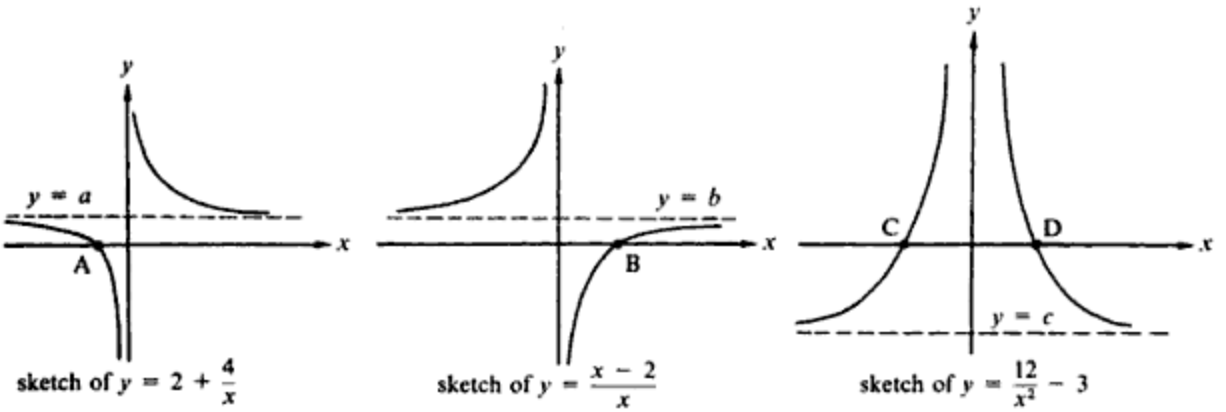
(a) $y = 2x + 3$ (b) $y = x^2 + 4x$ (c) $2y + 3x = 8$

(d) $y = x^3$ (e) $\frac{x}{3} + \frac{y}{4} = 1$ (f) $y = 2 + \frac{3}{x}$

2. Find the coordinates of the points A to J shown in the sketches below.



3. Find the coordinates of the points A to D and the values of the constants a to c shown in the sketches below.



4. Make sketch graphs of the following lines giving the coordinates of any maximum points, minimum points and any intersections with the axes.

(a) $5y = 15 - 3x$

(b) $y = |2x + 4|$

(c) $y = 16 - x^2$

(d) $y = |2 - x - x^2|$

5. Show that there is a solution to the equation $x^3 - 6x^2 + 9x + 1 = 0$ between $x = -1$ and $x = 0$. Sketch the curve given by $y = x^3 - 6x^2 + 9x + 1$.

6. Sketch the graphs of the functions:

(a) $f(x) = \begin{cases} 8 & \text{for } x \leqslant -3 \\ x^2 - 1 & \text{for } -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 2 \\ 3 & \text{for } x \geqslant 2 \end{cases}$

(b) $g(x) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{for } x < -2 \\ x^2 + 2x & \text{for } -2 \leqslant x \leqslant 1 \\ 4 - x & \text{for } x \geqslant 1 \end{cases}$

(c) $h(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 2x - 3 & \text{for } x \leqslant 1 \\ 6x - 5 - x^2 & \text{for } x \geqslant 1 \end{cases}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

7. Make a sketch of $y = f(x)$ given that $f(x)$ is an odd function and

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2 \\ 4 & \text{for } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

8. Make a sketch of $y = f(x)$ given that $f(x)$ is an even function and

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 1 & \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 3 \\ 8 & \text{for } x > 3 \end{cases}$$

9. Make a sketch of $y = f(x)$ for $-6 \leqslant x < 6$ given that

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x(3 - x) & \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 3 \\ x - 3 & \text{for } 3 \leqslant x < 6 \end{cases}$$

and $f(x)$ is periodic with period 6.

Make sketch graphs of the following functions, labelling asymptotes, and giving the coordinates of any turning points and intersections with axes.

10. $f(x) = 1 + \dfrac{3}{x}$

11. $f(x) = \dfrac{2}{x} - 2$

12. $f(x) = \left|2 - \dfrac{8}{x}\right|$

13. $f(x) = \dfrac{2 - x}{x}$

14. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x - 3}{x}$

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{4}{x^2} - 1$

16. $f(x) = \left|1 - \dfrac{4}{x^2}\right|$

11.2 Further considerations

When sketching functions of the type $y = ax \pm \dfrac{b}{cx}$, $y = ax \pm \dfrac{b}{cx^2}$ or $y = ax^2 \pm \dfrac{b}{x}$ the techniques of section 11.1 are still applicable. However, with these functions it should be noted that as $x \to \pm\infty$, $y \to ax$, ax or ax^2 respectively.

Example 6

Make a sketch of the function $f(x) = x - \dfrac{1}{x}$.

Let $y = x - \dfrac{1}{x}$.

x-axis $y = 0$ when $x - \dfrac{1}{x} = 0$
i.e. $x^2 = 1$ or $x = \pm 1$
Cuts x-axis at $(-1, 0)$ and $(1, 0)$

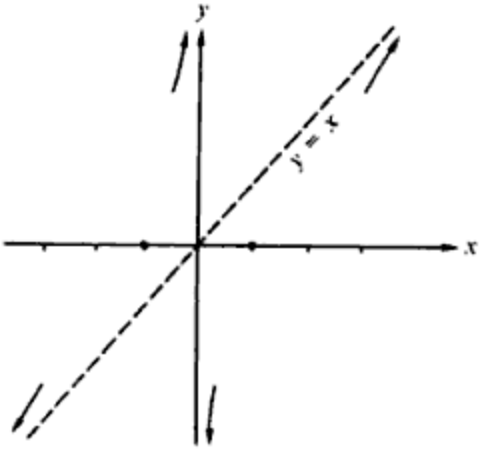
y-axis No y-axis intersection as y is not defined for $x = 0$.

$x \to \pm\infty$ As $x \to \pm\infty$, $y \to x$ i.e. $y = x$ is an asymptote (called an oblique asymptote).
In fact, for $y = x - \dfrac{1}{x}$
as $x \to +\infty$, $y \to x^-$ and
as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to x^+$

y undefined y is undefined for $x = 0$.
As $x \to 0^+$, $y \to -\infty$.
As $x \to 0^-$, $y \to +\infty$.
$x = 0$ is a vertical asymptote.

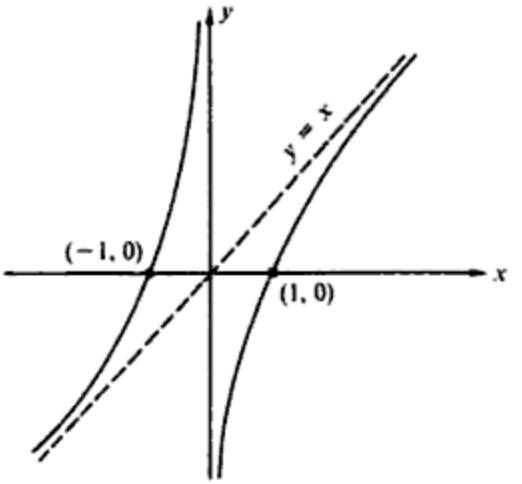
Max/min $y' = 1 + \dfrac{1}{x^2}$ which will never equal zero. $\therefore$ no turning points.

Notice also that the gradient is always positive.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The sketch can then be completed.

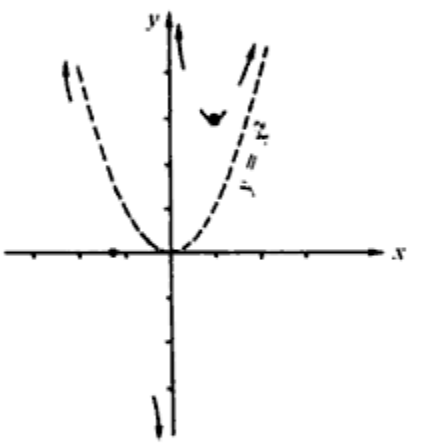


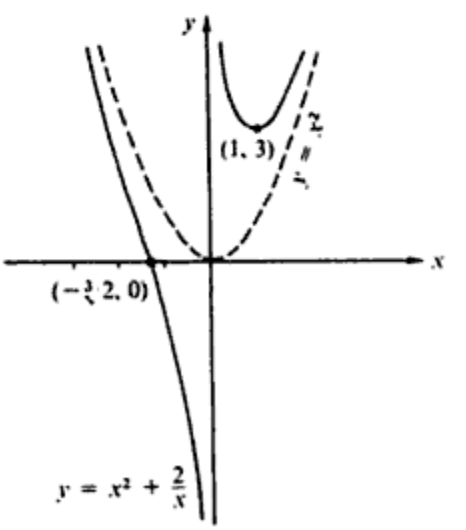
Example 7

Make a sketch of the curve given by $y = x^2 + \frac{2}{x}$.

x-axis	When $y = 0$, $x^2 + \frac{2}{x} = 0$ i.e. $x = \sqrt[3]{(-2)}$ Cuts x-axis at $(-\sqrt[3]{2}, 0)$.
y-axis	No y-axis intersection as y is not defined for $x = 0$.
$x \to \pm\infty$	$y \to x^2$, i.e. the curve approximates to that of $y = x^2$. In fact, for $y = x^2 + \frac{2}{x}$, as $x \to +\infty$, $y \to (x^2)^+$. as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to (x^2)^-$.
y undefined	y is undefined for $x = 0$. Thus $x = 0$ is a vertical asymptote. As $x \to 0^+$, $y \to +\infty$. As $x \to 0^-$, $y \to -\infty$.
Max/min	$y' = 2x - \frac{2}{x^2}$, $y'' = 2 + \frac{4}{x^3}$ Thus min at (1, 3).

The sketch can then be completed.





Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

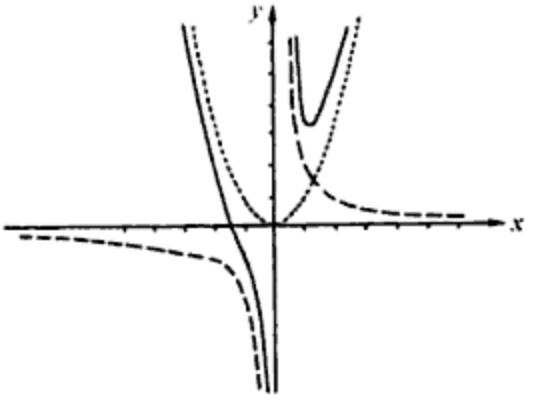
An alternative method for obtaining the sketch of $f(x) = g(x) + h(x)$, is to sketch $y = g(x)$ and $y = h(x)$ on the same axes and then to sum the functions to give $y = f(x)$.

For $f(x) = x^2 + \frac{2}{x}$, i.e. Example 7, this would then appear as follows with:

$y = x^2$ shown as ----------

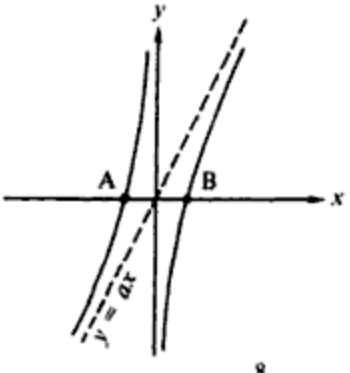
$y = \frac{2}{x}$ shown as - - - - - - - - - -

and $y = x^2 + \frac{2}{x}$ shown as ————————

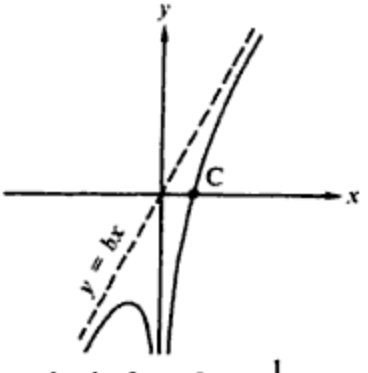


Exercise 11B

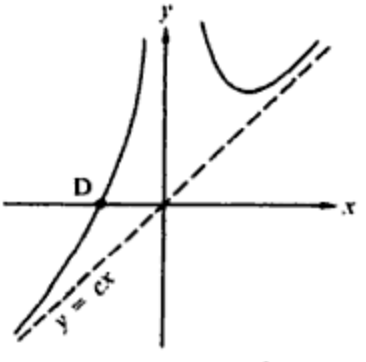
1. Find the coordinates of the points A to D and the values of the constants a to c in the sketches shown below.



sketch of $y = 2x - \frac{8}{x}$



sketch of $y = 2x - \frac{1}{4x^2}$



sketch of $y = x + \frac{1}{x^2}$

Make sketch graphs of each of the following, labelling any asymptotes and showing the coordinates of any turning points and the intersections with the axes.

2. $y = x + \frac{1}{x}$ **3.** $y = x - \frac{9}{x}$ **4.** $y = \frac{9}{x} - x$ **5.** $y = \left|x + \frac{4}{x}\right|$

Make sketch graphs of each of the following. The precise location of any turning points need not be given.

6. $y = x - \frac{1}{x^2}$ **7.** $y = \frac{8}{x^2} - x$ **8.** $y = \left|x^2 - \frac{1}{x}\right|$ **9.** $y = \left|x^2 + \frac{1}{x}\right|$

11.3 Simple transformations

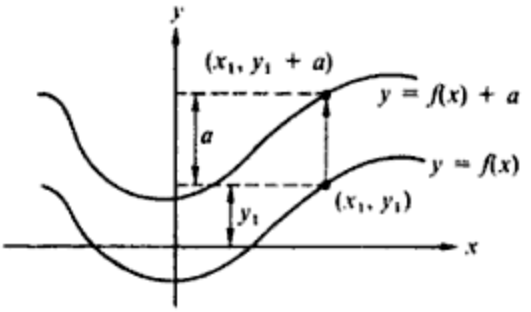
The reader will be familiar with the simple transformations, i.e. translations, reflections, rotations and enlargements. From the graph of $y = f(x)$ it is possible to deduce the graphs of other functions which are transformations of $y = f(x)$.

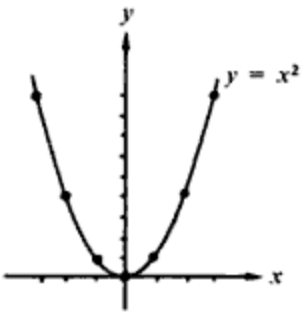
In this section we shall see how the graph of $y = f(x)$ can help us to draw the graphs of $y = f(x) + a$, $y = f(x - a)$, $y = -f(x)$, $y = f(-x)$, $y = af(x)$ and $y = f(ax)$.

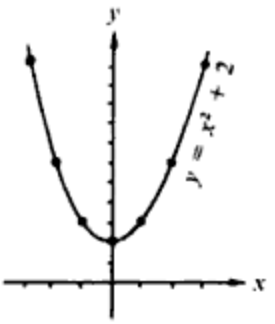
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

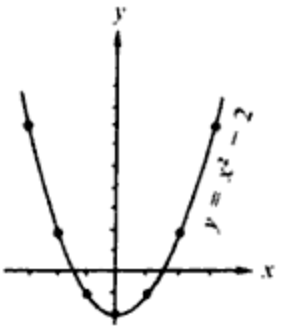
$y = f(x) + a$

Consider a point (x_1, y_1) on the graph of $y = f(x)$, i.e. $y_1 = f(x_1)$. The point on $y = f(x) + a$ with an x-coordinate of x_1, will have a y-coordinate of $(y_1 + a)$. Thus for every point (x_1, y_1) on $y = f(x)$, there exists a point $(x_1, y_1 + a)$ on $y = f(x) + a$. Therefore, if we translate the graph of $y = f(x)$ by a units parallel to the y-axis, we obtain the graph of $y = f(x) + a$.
e.g.



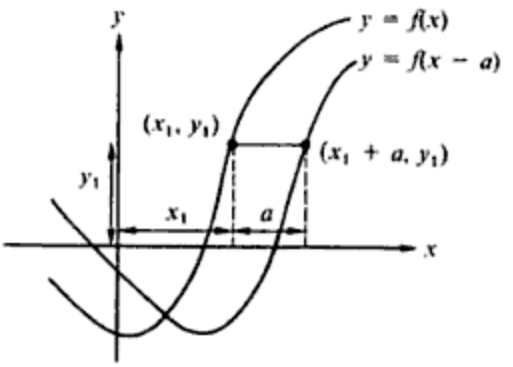


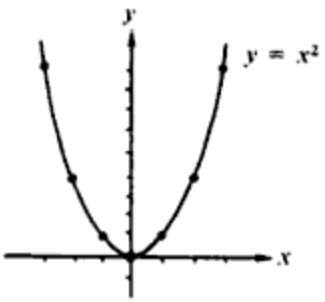


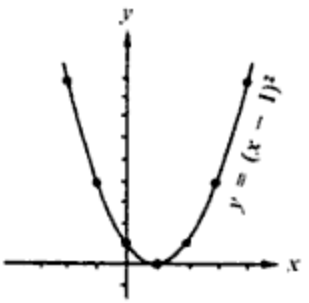


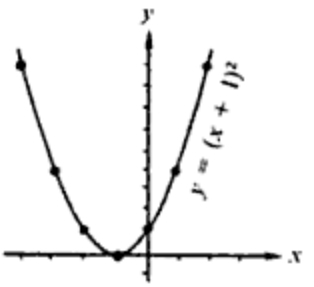
$y = f(x - a)$

Consider a point (x_1, y_1) on the graph of $y = f(x)$, i.e. $y_1 = f(x_1)$. The point on $y = f(x - a)$ with a y-coordinate of y_1 will have an x coordinate of $(x_1 + a)$. Thus for every point (x_1, y_1) on $y = f(x)$, there exists a point $(x_1 + a, y_1)$ on $y = f(x - a)$. Therefore, if we translate the graph of $y = f(x)$ by a units parallel to the x-axis, we obtain the graph of $y = f(x - a)$.
e.g.









Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 8

Find the equation of the curve obtained when the graph of $y = 2x^2 + 3x - 1$ is first reflected in the y-axis and then translated $+2$ units in the direction Ox.

A reflection in the y-axis transforms $y = f(x)$ to $y = f(-x)$
Thus $y = 2x^2 + 3x - 1$ is transformed to $y = 2(-x)^2 + 3(-x) - 1$
$= 2x^2 - 3x - 1$
A transformation of $+2$ units in the direction $0x$ transforms $y = f(x)$ to $y = f(x - 2)$
Thus $y = 2x^2 - 3x - 1$ transforms to $y = 2(x - 2)^2 - 3(x - 2) - 1$
$= 2x^2 - 11x + 13$
Thus under a reflection in the y-axis followed by a translation of $+2$ units in the direction $0x$, the curve $y = 2x^2 + 3x - 1$ transforms to $y = 2x^2 - 11x + 13$.
Alternatively the same result could be obtained using the methods of chapter 6, as follows.
Any point on the line $y = 2x^2 + 3x - 1$ will have coordinates of the form $(k, 2k^2 + 3k - 1)$.
Thus if (x', y') lies on the required image line

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} k \\ 2k^2 + 3k - 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$= \begin{pmatrix} -k + 2 \\ 2k^2 + 3k - 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

i.e. $x' = -k + 2$ and $y' = 2k^2 + 3k - 1$
Eliminating k from these equations gives $y' = 2(x')^2 - 11x' + 13$.
The required image line has equation $y = 2x^2 - 11x + 13$, as before.

Exercise 11C

1. (a) Draw x and y axes for $-5 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$ and $-6 \leqslant y \leqslant 6$.
   (b) By using integer values of x plot the graph of $y = 3 + 2x - x^2$ for $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$.
   (c) If $f(x) = 3 + 2x - x^2$ draw the graphs of the following functions on the same pair of axes used for (b),
   $y = f(x) + 2$, $y = f(x - 1)$, $y = f(-x)$
   and give the equation of each function.
2. (a) Draw x- and y-axes for $-6 \leqslant x \leqslant 6$ and $-8 \leqslant y \leqslant 8$.
   (b) By using integer values of x, plot the graph of $y = x^2 - 2x$ for $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$.
   (c) If $f(x) = x^2 - 2x$ draw the graphs of the following functions on the same pair of axes used for (b),
   $y = f(x) - 3$, $y = -f(x)$, $y = f(x + 4)$
   and give the equation of each function.
3. Draw x- and y-axes for $-4 \leqslant x \leqslant 10$ and $-4 \leqslant y \leqslant 10$.
   By using integer values of x, plot the graph of $y = x^2$ for $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$ and, on the same axes, draw $y = (x - 2)^2$, $y = (\frac{1}{2}x - 2)^2$, $y = (\frac{1}{2}x - 2)^2 - 4$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. Find the equation of the curve obtained when the graph of $y = x^2 + x + 1$ is:
   (a) Translated $+4$ units in the direction of Oy, (O being the origin).
   (b) Translated -3 units in the direction of Oy.
   (c) Reflected in the y-axis.
   (d) Reflected in the x-axis.
   (e) Translated $+2$ units in the direction of Ox.
   (f) Translated -2 units in the direction of Ox.
   (g) Stretched parallel to the y-axis, scale factor 2, followed by a translation of $+2$ in the direction of Oy.
   (h) Translated $+2$ units in the direction of Oy followed by a stretch parallel to Oy, scale factor 2.
5. State the transformation that must be given to the graph of $y = x^n$ to obtain the graph of:
   (a) $y = x^n + 2$ (b) $y = (-x)^n$ (c) $y = (x - 3)^n$
   (d) $y = 2x^n$ (e) $y = \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^n$ (f) $y = (x + 2)^n - 3$
   (g) $y = (2x)^n - 3$ (h) $y = 2(x - 1)^n + 5$
6. Prove that the curve obtained when $y = \frac{5x}{2} - \frac{x^2}{4} - 6$ is stretched parallel to Ox by a scale factor $\frac{1}{2}$ and then reflected in the x-axis is the same as that obtained when $y = x^2 + x$ is translated by $+3$ units parallel to Ox. Find the equation of this curve.

11.4 $\frac{1}{f(x)}$

A sketch of the graph $y = f(x)$ can be used to obtain a sketch of $y = \frac{1}{f(x)}$.

It is necessary to bear in mind the following important points.

1. For values of x for which $f(x) > 0$, then $\frac{1}{f(x)} > 0$.
2. For values of x for which $f(x) < 0$, then $\frac{1}{f(x)} < 0$.
3. If $f(x) = 0$ when $x = a$, i.e. $f(a) = 0$, then $\frac{1}{f(x)}$ is not defined for this value of x and $x = a$ is a vertical asymptote of $y = \frac{1}{f(x)}$.
4. If $f(x)$ cuts the y-axis at the point $(0, b)$, then $\frac{1}{f(x)}$ will cut the y-axis at the point $\left(0, \frac{1}{b}\right)$.
5. As $f(x) \to \pm\infty$, then $\frac{1}{f(x)} \to 0$.
6. If there is a maximum/minimum at $x = x_1$ on $y = f(x)$ then there is a minimum/maximum at $x = x_1$ on $y = \frac{1}{f(x)}$.

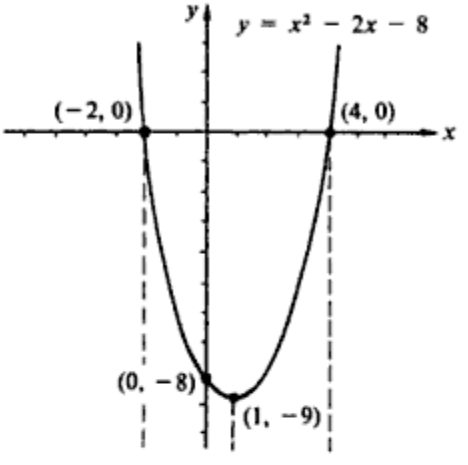
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 9

Make a sketch of $y = x^2 - 2x - 8$ and hence sketch $y = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 2x - 8}$.

$$y = x^2 - 2x - 8$$
$$= (x - 4)(x + 2)$$

x-axis	Cuts x-axis at $(-2, 0)$ and at $(4, 0)$.
y-axis	Cuts y-axis at $(0, -8)$.
$x \to \pm\infty$	As $x \to +\infty$, $y \to +\infty$. As $x \to -\infty$, $y \to +\infty$.
y undefined	There is no value of x for which y is undefined.
Max/min	$y' = 2x - 2$ and $y'' = 2$ $\therefore$ min at $(1, -9)$



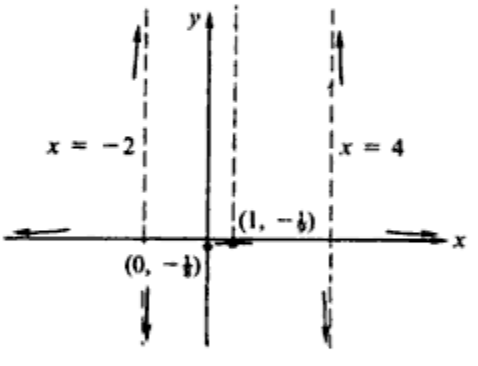
$$y = \frac{1}{x^2 - 2x - 8}$$
$$= \frac{1}{f(x)}$$

Vertical asymptote where $f(x) = 0$, i.e. $x = -2$ and $x = 4$. $\dfrac{1}{f(x)}$ has the same sign as $f(x)$ on either side of these asymptotes.

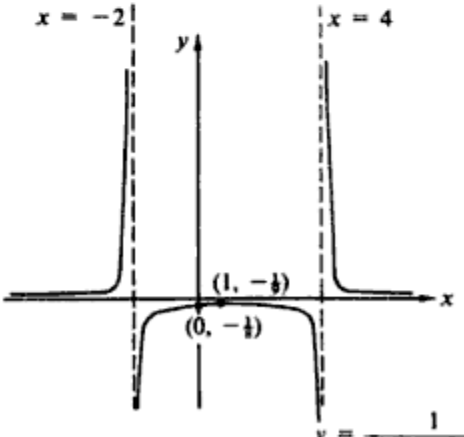
As $f(x) \to \infty$, $\dfrac{1}{f(x)} \to 0$, i.e. when $x \to \pm\infty$.

$f(x)$ cuts y-axis at $(0, -8) \Rightarrow \dfrac{1}{f(x)}$ cuts y-axis at $(0, -\frac{1}{8})$

$f(x)$ has min at $(1, -9) \Rightarrow \dfrac{1}{f(x)}$ has max at $(1, -\frac{1}{9})$



The sketch can then be completed.



$y = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 2x - 8}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Notice from the graph of $y = \dfrac{1}{(x-4)(x+2)}$ that the ranges of values y can take for real x are $y \leqslant -\frac{1}{9}$, $y > 0$.

We say that the range of the function $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{(x-4)(x+2)}$ for the domain $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \neq 4, x \neq -2\}$ is $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \leqslant -\frac{1}{9} \text{ or } y > 0\}$. This range of values of y can be determined algebraically using the method shown in Example 10.

Example 10

Calculate the range of the function $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{(x-4)(x+2)}$ for real x.

Let $y = \dfrac{1}{(x-4)(x+2)}$ $\quad \therefore y = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 2x - 8}$ $\quad \ldots [1]$

From [1] $\quad yx^2 - 2xy - 8y = 1$

i.e. $\quad yx^2 - 2xy - 8y - 1 = 0$

For $y \neq 0$ this is a quadratic in x.

Thus, for real x, $\quad 4y^2 - 4(y)(-8y - 1) \geqslant 0$

i.e. $\quad y(9y + 1) \geqslant 0$

Solving this inequality using the methods of chapter 5, page 143:

For $y = 0$ the result $-1 = 0$ is obtained which is not possible. $\therefore \quad y \neq 0$

	$y < -\frac{1}{9}$	$-\frac{1}{9} < y < 0$	$y > 0$
y	−ve	−ve	+ve
$9y + 1$	−ve	+ve	+ve
$y(9y + 1)$	+ve	−ve	+ve

Thus the range of the function is $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \leqslant -\frac{1}{9} \text{ or } y > 0\}$.
(Note: this technique is practised further in Chapter 14.)

Exercise 11D

For questions **1** to **9**, make sketch graphs of $f(x)$ and $1/f(x)$ showing clearly the coordinates of any turning points and of any intersections with the axes.

1. $f(x) = x^2 - 6x + 5$
2. $f(x) = 1 - x^2$
3. $f(x) = (x - 2)(x - 5)$
4. $f(x) = (3 - x)(x + 1)$
5. $f(x) = 4x - x^2 - 3$
6. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 4x - 12}{8}$
7. $f(x) = x(x - 4)$
8. $f(x) = (x - 2)^2$
9. $f(x) = (x + 2)(x - 1)^2$

10. Sketch the graph of $y = \sin\theta$ for $-360° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$. Hence sketch $y = \operatorname{cosec}\theta$ for $-360° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

11. Sketch the graph of $y = \cos\theta$ for $-360° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$. Hence sketch $y = \sec\theta$ for $-360° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$.

12. Sketch the graph of $y = \tan\theta$ for $-360° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$. Hence sketch $y = \cot\theta$ for $-360° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$.

13. Calculate the range of the following functions for real x.

(a) $\dfrac{1}{x^2 - x - 6}$ (b) $\dfrac{1}{2x^2 - 7x + 3}$ (c) $\dfrac{1}{4x - 3 - x^2}$ (d) $\dfrac{6}{x^2 + 3x - 4}$

Exercise 11E Examination questions

1. On two separate diagrams sketch the graphs of
(i) $y = x^2 + 2$ for $-6 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$,
(ii) $y = |8 - 3x|$ for $1 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$.
In each case state the range of values of y. (Cambridge)

2. Using a *separate* diagram for each, *sketch* the curves
(a) $y = x(x - 1)$,
(b) $y = x^2(x - 1)$,
(c) $y = x^2(x - 1)^2$. (A.E.B.)

3. Calculate the range of values of m for which the line $y = mx$ intersects the curve $y = x^2 - 4x + 9$ in two distinct points. Sketch the curve and indicate on it the significance of the values of m you have found. (S.U.J.B.)

4. The curve with equation

$$y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d,$$

where a, b, c and d are constants, passes through the points (0, 3) and (1, 0). At these points the curve has gradients -7 and 0, respectively.
(i) Find the values of a, b, c and d.
(ii) Show that the curve crosses the x-axis at the point (3, 0).
(iii) Find the x-coordinate of the maximum point on the curve.
(iv) Sketch the curve. (Cambridge)

5. On separate diagrams, **sketch** the graphs of
(i) $y = (x - 3)^2 + 2$,
(ii) $y = 2\sin\left(x - \dfrac{\pi}{2}\right)$ for $-\dfrac{\pi}{2} \leqslant x \leqslant \dfrac{3\pi}{2}$.
In each case state the range of values of y. (Cambridge)

6. Sketch the curve $y = \cos x + 2$ for the interval $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$.
On the same diagram sketch the curve $y = \dfrac{1}{\cos x + 2}$ for the same interval. (Cambridge)

7. Find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ when $y = x + \dfrac{9}{x}$. Find also the maxima and minima of y, distinguishing carefully between them.
Show that $\dfrac{dy}{dx} < 1$ for all values of x.
Draw a sketch of the curve $y = x + \dfrac{9}{x}$. (Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. On separate diagrams, sketch the graphs of
(a) $y = x(x - 5)^2$ (b) $y^2 = x(x - 5)^2$

9. (a) Sketch the graph of $y = (x + 1)(x - 2)$ and hence sketch the graph of $z = 1/\{(x + 1)(x - 2)\}$. By calculation find the range of values which z can take. (S.U.J.B.)

10. Prove that, for all real x,

$$0 < \frac{1}{x^2 + 6x + 10} \leqslant 1.$$

Sketch the curve

$$y = \frac{1}{x^2 + 6x + 10}.$$ (Oxford)

11. Sketch separately the graphs of
(i) $y = 2(x + 2)(x - 1)(x - 2)$; (ii) $y = (x - 1)(x - 3)^2$
showing the coordinates of the points where they cross or touch the axes. Find a cubic function $f(x)$ such that the graph of $y = f(x)$ crosses the x-axis at $x = 1$, touches the x-axis at $x = 3$ and crosses the y-axis at $y = 18$. From consideration of the sketch graph of $y = f(x)$ show that if the equation $f(x) = k$ has three real roots then k must be negative. Give the sign of each root in this case. Show, also, that if $k > 0$ then the equation $f(x) = k$ has just one real root and give the range of values of k for which this root is negative. (S.U.J.B.)

12. Write down the condition for the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ $(a \neq 0)$ to have no real roots. Sketch the graph of $y = x^2 + 3x + 7$ and hence sketch the graph of $y = 1/(x^2 + 3x + 7)$.
Sketch the graph of $y = (x - 1)(x + 5)$ and hence sketch the graph of $z = 1/((x - 1)(x + 5))$.
By calculation find the range of values which z can take. (S.U.J.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

12
Calculus II: Integration

12.1 The reverse of differentiation

In chapter 10 we saw that if we know the equation of a curve, say $y = f(x)$ then, by differentiation, we can find the gradient function $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

If, instead, we are given the gradient function $\frac{dy}{dx}$, can we obtain the equation of the curve?
This reverse process is called **integration**.

Suppose $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x$. To find y, we require a function that differentiates to give $2x$. Clearly, $y = x^2$ is such a function, but there are many others, e.g. $y = x^2 - 3$, $y = x^2 + 1$, $y = x^2 + 7$, etc.
We say that $y = x^2 + c$, where c is a constant, gives $2x$ when differentiated. Thus if we **integrate** $2x$, we obtain $x^2 + c$. Given the gradient function of a curve, integration gives the 'family' of curves to which that gradient function applies. Given more information about the curve, we may be able to determine the value of c, the constant of integration, and hence the equation of a particular curve.
In simple cases this process of integration can be carried out by inspection.

Thus, given $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x$ then $y = x^2 + c$

given $\frac{dy}{dx} = 4x^3$ then $y = x^4 + c$

given $\frac{dy}{dx} = x^4$ then $y = \frac{1}{5}x^5 + c$

In the general case, given $\frac{dy}{dx} = ax^n$ then $y = \frac{ax^{n+1}}{n+1} + c$.

This general statement can be verified by differentiation:

If $y = \frac{ax^{n+1}}{n+1} + c$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{a(n+1)x^{n+1-1}}{n+1}$$

$$= ax^n \quad \text{as required.}$$

Note that the statement 'If $\frac{dy}{dx} = ax^n$, then $y = \frac{ax^{n+1}}{n+1} + c$' does not apply for $n = -1$, because in such cases we have $y = \frac{ax^0}{0} + c$, which is meaningless.

We can now state the rule for integrating ax^n:

$$\boxed{\text{If } \frac{dy}{dx} = ax^n \text{ then } y = \frac{ax^{n+1}}{n+1} + c \text{ provided } n \neq -1}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The integral sign

We have seen that, if $\frac{dy}{dx} = ax^n$ then, by integration $y = \frac{ax^{n+1}}{n+1} + c$ (provided $n \neq -1$).

Using the integral sign: $\int$ we write this as $\boxed{\int ax^n dx = \frac{ax^{n+1}}{n+1} + c \quad \text{for} \quad n \neq -1}$

with the 'dx' signifying that the integration is carried out with respect to the variable x.

$\int g(x)dx$ is read as 'the integral of $g(x)$ with respect to x' and we use the extended S symbol because, as we shall see, integration can be considered as a summation.

From the rules given in chapter 10 for differentiation, it follows that

$$\int af(x)dx = a\int f(x)dx$$

and $\int [af(x) + bg(x) - ch(x)]dx = a\int f(x)dx + b\int g(x)dx - c\int h(x)dx$

Example 3

Find (a) $\int 4x^5 dx$ (b) $\int \frac{6}{x^3}dx$ (c) $\int \left(5 - x^2 + \frac{18}{x^4}\right)dx$

(a) $\int 4x^5 dx$

$= \frac{4x^6}{6} + c$

$= \frac{2x^6}{3} + c$

(b) $\int \frac{6}{x^3}dx$

$= \int 6x^{-3}dx$

$= \frac{6x^{-2}}{-2} + c$

$= -\frac{3}{x^2} + c$

(c) $\int \left(5 - x^2 + \frac{18}{x^4}\right)dx$

$= \int (5 - x^2 + 18x^{-4})dx$

$= 5x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{18x^{-3}}{-3} + c$

$= 5x - \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{6}{x^3} + c$

Since there is an arbitrary constant, c, in each of these solutions, we say that these are *indefinite* integrals.

Second Order Differentials

Remembering that the differential of $\frac{dy}{dx}$ with respect to x is $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$, it follows that

$$\int \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}dx = \frac{dy}{dx} + c$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 4

Find y as a function of x, given that $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 15x - 2$ and that when $x = 2$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 25$ and $y = 20$.

Given $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 15x - 2$

Integrating both sides of this equation with respect to x,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \int (15x - 2)dx$$
$$= \frac{15x^2}{2} - 2x + c$$

But $\frac{dy}{dx} = 25$ when $x = 2$,

$\therefore \quad 25 = \frac{15(4)}{2} - 2(2) + c$ i.e. $c = -1$

$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{15x^2}{2} - 2x - 1$

Integrating both sides of this equation with respect to x,

$$y = \frac{5x^3}{2} - x^2 - x + d$$

But $y = 20$ when $x = 2$, giving $d = 6$.

The required equation is $y = \frac{5x^3}{2} - x^2 - x + 6$.

Exercise 12A

1. Find an expression for y if $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is given by

(a) $3x^2$ (b) $2x$ (c) x^3 (d) $2x^4$ (e) 5
(f) $3x^5$ (g) $\sqrt{x}$ (h) $\frac{6}{x^2}$ (i) $-\frac{4}{x^3}$ (j) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$
(k) $2x^3 + 3x^2$ (l) $5x + 1$ (m) $2x + 9x^2$
(n) $5x^4 - 6x$ (o) $8x^3 - 12x^2$ (p) $x(4 - 3x)$
(q) $3x(x - 2)$ (r) $2x(x^3 - 4)$ (s) $(3x - 1)(x + 1)$
(t) $(x - 6)(x - 2)$

2. Integrate the following functions with respect to x.

(a) $8x^3$ (b) $12x$ (c) $5x^2$ (d) 7 (e) $7 - 2x$
(f) $\frac{6}{x^3}$ (g) $-\frac{12}{x^5}$ (h) $\frac{3x}{\sqrt{x}}$ (i) $\frac{5x^2}{\sqrt{x}}$ (j) $\frac{3x^4 + 6}{x^2}$
(k) $4x^3 + 3x^2 + 2x + 1$ (l) $2x^2(3 - 4x)$
(m) $x^4 + x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{x^4}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. Find

(a) $\int 12x\,dx$ (b) $\int (x^3 + x)dx$ (c) $\int x(x + 1)dx$

(d) $\int (x + 6)(x - 4)dx$ (e) $\int \frac{5}{x^4}dx$ (f) $\int \left(10x^4 + 8x^3 - \frac{6}{x^2}\right)dx$

(g) $\int \frac{x^4 + 1}{x^2}dx$ (h) $\int \frac{(1 - 3x)}{\sqrt{x}}dx$ (i) $\int \left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)\left(x - \frac{1}{x}\right)dx$

4. The gradient of a curve at the point (x, y) on the curve is given by $6x$. If the curve passes through the point $(1, 4)$, find the equation of the curve.

5. Find the equation of the curve passing through the point $(-2, 6)$ and having gradient function $(3x^2 - 2)$.

6. The gradient of a curve at the point (x, y) on the curve is given by $2(1 - x)$ and the curve passes through the point $(-1, 5)$. Find the equation of the curve.

7. Find S as a function of t given that $\frac{dS}{dt} = 6t^2 + 12t + 1$ and when $t = -2$, $S = 5$.

8. Find V as a function of h given that $\frac{dV}{dh} = 2(7h - 2)$ and when $h = 2$, $V = 21$.

9. Find A as a function of p given that $\frac{dA}{dp} = 5 - 4p$ and when $p = 3$, $A = -2$.

10. The gradient of a curve at the point (x, y) on the curve is given by $(3x^2 + 8)$. If the curve and the line $2x - y - 1 = 0$ cut the y-axis at the same point, find the equation of the curve.

11. The gradient function of a curve is given by $(2x - 3)$ and the curve cuts the x-axis at two points: A(5, 0) and B. Find the equation of the curve and the coordinates of B.

12. The gradient of a curve at the point (x, y) on the curve is given by $(2x - 4)$. If the minimum value of y is 3, find the equation of the curve.

13. Find y as a function of x given that $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 4 - 6x$ and that when $x = 2$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = -4$ and $y = 7$.

14. Find y as a function of x given that $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 6x - 4$, $y = 4$ when $x = 1$ and $y = 2$ when $x = -1$.

15. Find y as a function of x given that $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 30x$, $y = 32$ when $x = 2$ and $y = 5$ when $x = -1$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

12.2 The area under a curve

Suppose A_1 is the area bounded by the curve $y = f(x)$, the x-axis and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ (see Figure 1). We say that A_1 is the area 'under' the curve from $x = a$ to $x = b$. One way to estimate this area would be to divide it into strips. Since each of these strips approximates to a rectangle (Figure 2), we can then sum the areas of these rectangles. This would give an approximate value for A_1; the more rectangles we use, the greater is the accuracy. Consider one such rectangle, width δx (Figure 3).

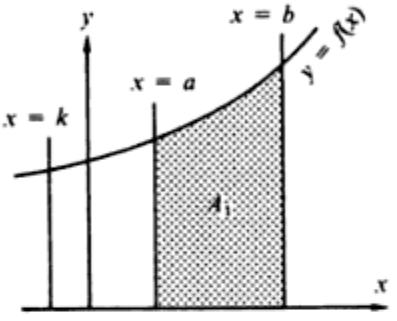


Fig. 1

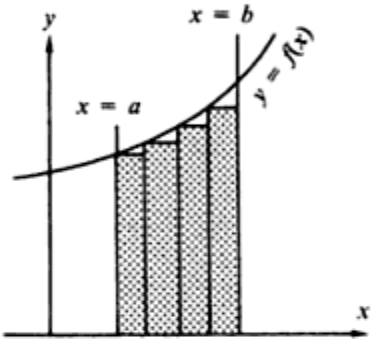


Fig. 2

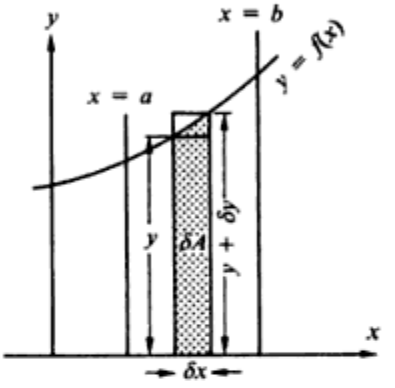


Fig. 3

In Figure 3, if δA is the shaded area, $y\,\delta x < \delta A < (y + \delta y)\delta x$

Thus $\quad y < \dfrac{\delta A}{\delta x} < y + \delta y$

Now as $\delta x \to 0$ (i.e. we increase the number of rectangles)

$\dfrac{\delta A}{\delta x} \to \dfrac{dA}{dx}$ and $\delta y \to 0$

Thus $\quad \dfrac{dA}{dx} = y \quad$ or $\quad A = \displaystyle\int y\,dx$

This integration will give an area function $A(x)$ and will involve a constant of integration c. As we substitute a value for x into the function $A(x)$, say $x = b$, we will obtain an answer for the area under the curve from a right-hand boundary of $x = b$ to some left-hand boundary. The position of the left-hand boundary will determine the value of c, the constant of integration. Suppose we take $x = k$ as the left-hand boundary, then

$$A(a) = \text{Area from } x = k \text{ to } x = a.$$
$$A(b) = \text{Area from } x = k \text{ to } x = b.$$
$$\therefore \quad A(b) - A(a) = \text{Area from } x = a \text{ to } x = b.$$

As $A = \displaystyle\int y\,dx$, we write $A(b) - A(a)$ as $\displaystyle\int_a^b y\,dx$.

$$\therefore \quad A_1 = \int_a^b y\,dx.$$

$y\,\delta x < \delta A < y\,\delta x + \delta y \delta x$

As $\delta x \to 0 \quad \delta y \to 0$ and so $\delta y \delta x$ becomes negligible compared with $y\,\delta x$.

Thus as $\delta x \to 0$, $\delta A \to y\,\delta x$.

But $\quad A_1 = \displaystyle\sum_{x=a}^{x=b} \delta A$

$$\therefore \quad A_1 = \lim_{\delta x \to 0} \sum_{x=a}^{x=b} y\,\delta x$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The area under the curve can therefore be found as the limit of a sum or by integration. Thus integration is a process of summation and

$$\boxed{A_1 = \lim_{\delta x \to 0} \sum_{x=a}^{x=b} y\,\delta x = \int_a^b y\,dx, \quad \text{where} \quad y = f(x).}$$

Definite integrals

Note that $\int_a^b f(x)dx$ is known as a *definite* integral because the limits of integration, i.e. $x = a$ and $x = b$, are known.

Suppose $\quad \int f(x)dx = F(x) + c$

then $\quad \int_{x=a}^{x=b} f(x)dx = (F(b) + c) - (F(a) + c)$

$$= F(b) - F(a)$$

We usually write this: $\quad \int_{x=a}^{x=b} f(x)dx = \Big[F(x)\Big]_a^b$

$$= F(b) - F(a)$$

We see that the constants of integration cancel out so that in the case of a definite integral there is no need to give an arbitrary constant in the result.

Example 5

Evaluate the following definite integrals: (a) $\int_{-1}^{1} (2x - 3)dx$ (b) $\int_{1/4}^{1/2} \frac{1}{x^3}dx$

(a) $\int_{-1}^{1} (2x - 3)dx$

$$= \Big[x^2 - 3x\Big]_{-1}^{1}$$
$$= [1^2 - 3(1)] - [(-1)^2 - 3(-1)]$$
$$= -2 - 4$$
$$= -6$$

(b) $\int_{1/4}^{1/2} \frac{1}{x^3}dx = \int_{1/4}^{1/2} x^{-3}dx$

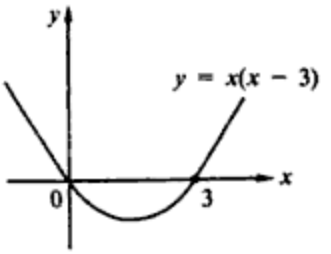
$$= \left[\frac{x^{-2}}{-2}\right]_{1/4}^{1/2}$$
$$= \left[-\frac{1}{2x^2}\right]_{1/4}^{1/2}$$
$$= \left(-\frac{1}{2(\frac{1}{2})^2}\right) - \left(-\frac{1}{2(\frac{1}{4})^2}\right)$$
$$= -2 + 8$$
$$= +6$$

Calculation of the area under a curve

When we calculate the area under a curve, the important first step is to make a sketch of the curve. We must then remember that an area lying 'above' the x-axis will have a positive value, whereas areas lying 'below' the x-axis will be negative. In some cases the required area may lie both 'above' and 'below' the x-axis and particular care is needed in these situations.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 6



Find the area between the curve $y = x(x - 3)$ and the x-axis.

First, make a sketch of the curve $y = x(x - 3)$
In this case the required area lies 'below' the x-axis.

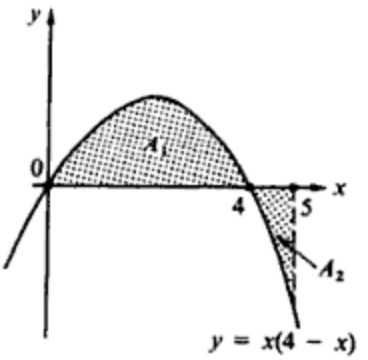
Using $A = \int y\,dx$ and substituting for y from the equation of the curve, as we cannot integrate y with respect to x.

$$\therefore \quad A = \int_0^3 x(x - 3)dx$$
$$= \left[\frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{3x^2}{2}\right]_0^3$$
$$= \left(9 - \frac{27}{2}\right) - (0) = -4\tfrac{1}{2}$$

The area has a negative sign, as was anticipated, and the numerical value is $4\frac{1}{2}$ sq. units.

Example 7

Find the area between the curve $y = x(4 - x)$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = 5$.
First, make a sketch of the curve $y = x(4 - x)$
The sketch shows that the required area is in two parts; one part lies above the x-axis and therefore has a positive area, the other part lies below the x-axis and has a negative area.



Using $A = \int y\,dx$ and calculating the two areas separately,

$$A_1 = \int_0^4 x(4 - x)dx \qquad A_2 = \int_4^5 x(4 - x)dx$$
$$= \left[2x^2 - \frac{x^3}{3}\right]_0^4 \qquad = \left[2x^2 - \frac{x^3}{3}\right]_4^5$$
$$= \left(32 - \frac{64}{3}\right) - (0) \qquad = \left(50 - \frac{125}{3}\right) - \left(32 - \frac{64}{3}\right)$$
$$= +\frac{32}{3} = +10\tfrac{2}{3} \qquad = -2\tfrac{1}{3}$$

The total area under the curve between $x = 0$ and $x = 5$ is given by the sum of the *numerical* values of these two areas:

required area $= 10\frac{2}{3} + 2\frac{1}{3} = 13$ sq. units.

Note In the last example, it is possible to calculate $\int_0^5 x(4 - x)dx$, but this would not give the correct answer for the required area. Instead we would obtain an answer of $10\frac{2}{3} - 2\frac{1}{3}$ i.e. $8\frac{1}{3}$, as the following working shows:

$$\int_0^5 x(4 - x)dx = \left[2x^2 - \frac{x^3}{3}\right]_0^5$$
$$= \left(50 - \frac{125}{3}\right) - (0) = 8\tfrac{1}{3}$$

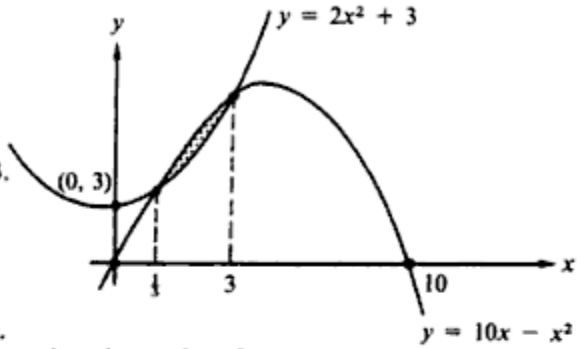
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 8

Find the area enclosed between the curves $y = 2x^2 + 3$ and $y = 10x - x^2$.

First, make a sketch of the two curves, noting that the curves will intersect at the points where

$$2x^2 + 3 = 10x - x^2$$
$$3x^2 - 10x + 3 = 0$$
$$(3x - 1)(x - 3) = 0 \quad \text{i.e. at} \quad x = \tfrac{1}{3} \quad \text{and} \quad x = 3.$$



The curve $y = 2x^2 + 3$ intersects the y-axis at $(0, 3)$ and does not cut the x-axis.
The curve $y = 10x - x^2$ intersects the axes at $(0, 0)$ and at $(10, 0)$.
The information is sufficient for a sketch to be made.
The area enclosed by $y = 10x - x^2$, the ordinates $x = \frac{1}{3}$ and $x = 3$ and the x-axis is

$$\int_{1/3}^{3} (10x - x^2)\,dx.$$

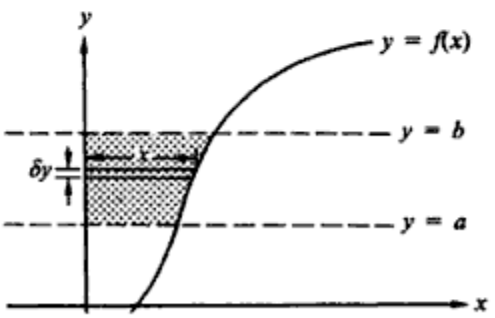
The area enclosed by $y = 2x^2 + 3$, the ordinates $x = \frac{1}{3}$ and $x = 3$ and the x-axis is

$$\int_{1/3}^{3} (2x^2 + 3)\,dx.$$

The shaded area is
$$\int_{1/3}^{3} (10x - x^2)\,dx - \int_{1/3}^{3} (2x^2 + 3)\,dx$$
$$= \int_{1/3}^{3} (10x - x^2 - 2x^2 - 3)\,dx$$
$$= \int_{1/3}^{3} (10x - 3x^2 - 3)\,dx$$
$$= \Big[5x^2 - x^3 - 3x\Big]_{1/3}^{3}$$
$$= (45 - 27 - 9) - (\tfrac{5}{9} - \tfrac{1}{27} - 1)$$
$$= 9\tfrac{13}{27} \text{ sq. units.}$$

Area between a curve and the y-axis

Suppose we wish to find the area between some curve $y = f(x)$ and the y-axis, from $y = a$ to $y = b$.
Considering a strip of length x and width δy, drawn parallel to the x-axis, we see that



$$A = \lim_{\delta y \to 0} \sum_{y=a}^{y=b} x\,\delta y$$

$$\int^{b}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 9

Find the area enclosed between the curve $y^2 = 9 - x$ and the y-axis.

First we make a sketch of the curve $y^2 = 9 - x$.

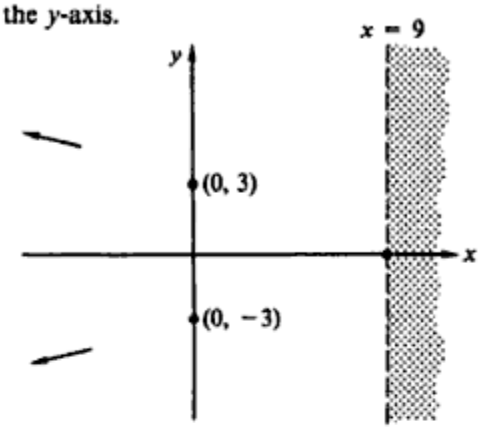
Symmetry The equation is unchanged if y is replaced by $(-y)$. Hence the curve is symmetrical about the x-axis.

y-axis Cuts y-axis at (0, 3) and at (0, −3).

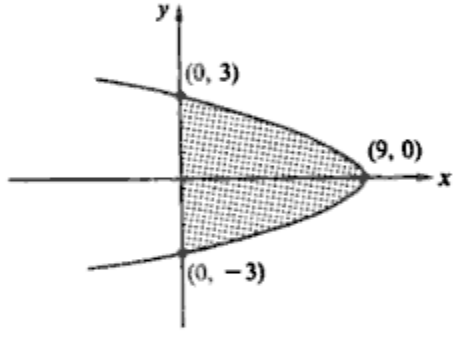
x-axis Cuts x-axis at (9, 0).

$x \to \pm\infty$ $y = \pm\sqrt{(9 - x)}$
$\therefore$ as $x \to +\infty$, y is undefined.
As $x \to -\infty$, $y = \pm\sqrt{(9 + \infty)}$
i.e. as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to \pm\infty$ slowly by comparison with x.

y undefined y is undefined for $x > 9$ because $(9 - x)$ will be negative. Thus the sketch can be completed and the required area shown shaded:



$$\text{Required area} = \int_{y=-3}^{y=3} x\,dy$$



Now we cannot integrate x with respect to y, so we substitute for x,

$$\therefore \quad A = \int_{y=-3}^{y=3} (9 - y^2)\,dy$$

which gives $A = 36$ sq. units

Exercise 12B

1. Evaluate the following definite integrals.

(a) $\int_1^5 2x\,dx$ (b) $\int_0^2 3x^2\,dx$

(c) $\int_{-1}^4 (6 - 2x)\,dx$ (d) $\int_{-1}^1 (1 + x)\,dx$

(e) $\int_{-1}^3 (3x - 2)\,dx$ (f) $\int_{-4}^0 (x^2 + x + 1)\,dx$

(g) $\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x^2}\,dx$ (h) $\int_4^9 \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$

(i) $\int_0^4 (x^3 - 2x - 3\sqrt{x})\,dx$ (j) $\int_1^4 \left(\frac{x^4 - x^3 + \sqrt{x} - 1}{x^2}\right)dx$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

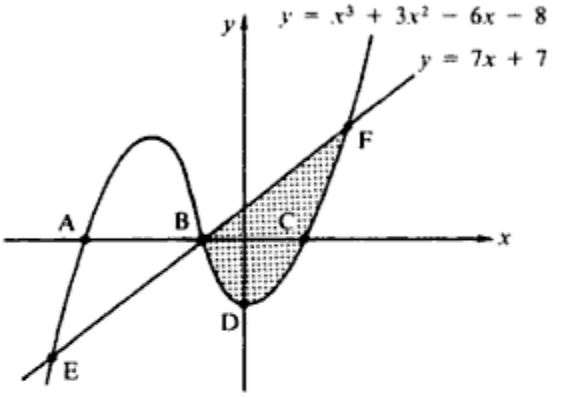
16. Find the area enclosed between the curve $y^2 = 4 - x$ and the y-axis.

17. Find the area enclosed by the curve $(y - 1)^2 = x$, the y-axis and the line $y = 3$.

18. Find the area enclosed between the curve $y = x^2$ and the straight line $y = x$.

19. The line $y = x + 8$ cuts the curve $y = 12 + x - x^2$ at two points A and B (B being in the first quadrant). Find the coordinates of A and B and find the area enclosed between the curve $y = 12 + x - x^2$ and the straight line AB.

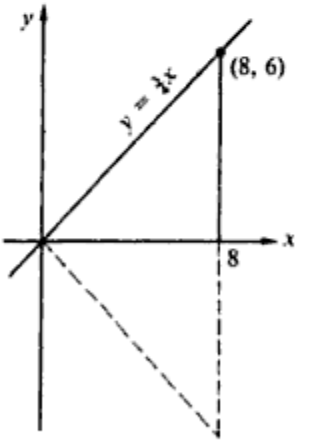
20. The sketch graph shows the lines $y = 7x + 7$ and $y = x^3 + 3x^2 - 6x - 8$. Find the coordinates of the points A, B, C, D, E and F and find the shaded area.



21. Find the area enclosed between the curves $y = x^2 + 6$ and $y = 12 + 4x - x^2$.

22. Find the area enclosed between the curves $y = x^2 - 4x$ and $y = 6x - x^2$.

12.3 Volume of revolution



Suppose that the area enclosed by the line $y = \frac{3}{4}x$, the x-axis and the line $x = 8$ is rotated about the x-axis through one revolution. The solid formed is referred to as a solid of revolution and, in this case, will be a cone. In this particular case the volume of the cone can be readily calculated since its base radius is 6 units and the perpendicular height of the cone is 8 units:

volume of solid of revolution (i.e. the cone)

$$= \tfrac{1}{3} \times \pi r^2 \times h$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{3} \times \pi 6^2 \times 8$$
$$= 96\pi \text{ cubic units.}$$

If instead of a straight line, a curve with equation $y = f(x)$ is rotated in the same way, the volume of the solid of revolution can be calculated by the use of calculus.

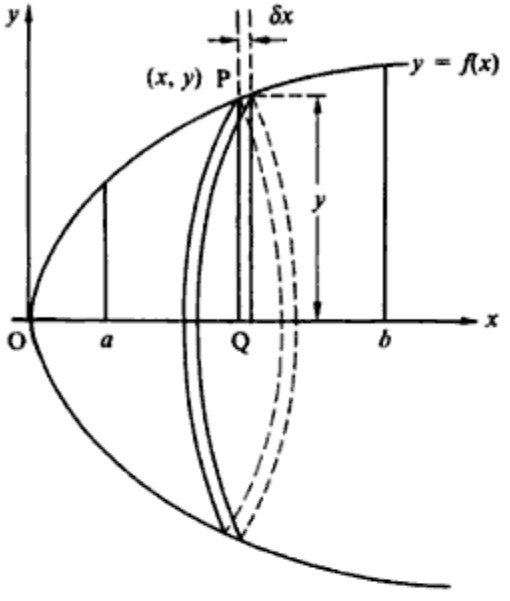
Suppose the area bounded by the curve $y = f(x)$, the x-axis and the ordinates $x = a$ and $x = b$ is rotated about the x-axis through one revolution.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Consider the elementary strip PQ, thickness δx, length y, drawn parallel to the y-axis. The result of rotating this elementary strip through one revolution about the x-axis is to produce an elementary disc of radius y and thickness δx. Let δV be the volume of this disc, then

$$\delta V = \pi y^2 \delta x.$$

Thus, as we allow $\delta x \to 0$, the sum of all these volumes δV will tend towards V, the volume of the solid of revolution.



$$\therefore \quad V = \lim_{\delta x \to 0} \sum_{x=a}^{x=b} \pi y^2 \, \delta x$$

$$= \int_a^b \pi y^2 \, dx$$

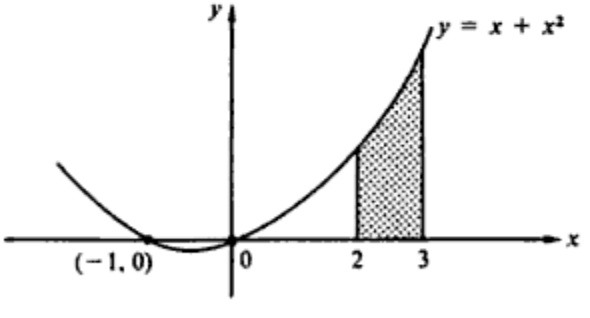
Thus $\boxed{V = \int_a^b \pi y^2 dx \quad \text{where} \quad y = f(x)}$

This definite integral can then be evaluated to find V, the volume of revolution.

Example 10

Find the volume of the solid of revolution formed by rotating the area enclosed by the curve $y = x + x^2$, the x-axis and the ordinates $x = 2$ and $x = 3$ through one revolution about the x-axis.

First sketch the situation.



The volume of revolution V is given by

$$V = \int_a^b \pi y^2 \, dx$$

$$= \int_2^3 \pi(x + x^2)^2 dx$$

$$= \pi \int_2^3 (x^2 + 2x^3 + x^4) dx$$

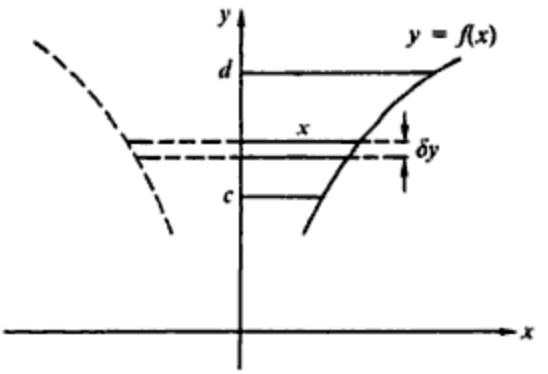
$$= \pi \left[\frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^4}{2} + \frac{x^5}{5} \right]_2^3$$

$$= \pi \left[\left(9 + \frac{81}{2} + \frac{243}{5} \right) - \left(\frac{8}{3} + 8 + \frac{32}{5} \right) \right] = 81\tfrac{1}{30}\pi \text{ cubic units}$$

The volume of revolution is $81\frac{1}{30}\pi$ cubic units.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Rotation about the y-axis



The volume of the solid of revolution formed by rotating an area through one revolution about the y-axis can be found in a similar way.
The elementary strip will be drawn parallel to the x-axis. In this case, the elementary discs will have radius x and thickness δy.

Thus $V = \lim_{\delta y \to 0} \sum \pi x^2 \, \delta y$

$$V = \int_{y=c}^{y=d} \pi x^2 \, dy$$

Note that the integration will be with respect to y and hence the limits of the integration will be values of y.

Exercise 12C

Find the volumes of the solids formed when each of the areas of questions **1** to **10** perform one revolution about the x-axis.

1. The area enclosed by the curve $y = x^2$, the x-axis and the line $x = 2$.
2. The area between the line $y = x + 1$ and the x-axis from $x = 1$ to $x = 3$.
3. The area between the line $y = 3x + 2$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$.
4. The area enclosed by the curve $y = x^3$, the x-axis and the line $x = 2$.
5. The area enclosed by the curve $y = x^2 + 1$, the x-axis, $x = -1$ and $x = 1$.
6. The area enclosed by the curve $y = x^3 + 1$, the x-axis and the line $x = 1$.
7. The area enclosed by the curve $y = 4x - x^2$ and the x-axis.
8. The area enclosed by the curve $y = x^2 - x^3$ and the x-axis.
9. The area enclosed by the curve $y = x - \frac{1}{x}$ the x-axis and the line $x = 2$.
10. The area enclosed between the curve $y = 4x - x^2$ and the line $y = 2x$.
11. Find the equation of the straight line joining the origin to the point with coordinates (h, r). Hence find a formula for the volume of a right circular cone of base radius r and height h.

Find the volumes of the solids formed when each of the areas of questions **12** to **14** perform one revolution about the y-axis.

12. The area lying in the first quadrant and bounded by the curve $y = x^2$, the y-axis and the line $y = 4$.
13. The area lying in the first quadrant and bounded by the curve $y = 2x^2 + 1$, the y-axis and the lines $y = 2$ and $y = 5$.
14. The area lying in the first quadrant and bounded by the y-axis, the curve $y = x^3$ and the line $y = 3x + 2$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

when $t = 1\frac{1}{2}$, $v = 4(1\frac{1}{2}) - 3$

i.e. $v = 3$ m/s

(c) Using $a = \dfrac{dv}{dt}$

$a = 4$ m/s²

The displacement is 6 m, the velocity is 3 m/s and the acceleration is constant and is 4 m/s².

Example 12

A body moves in a straight line. At time t seconds its acceleration is given by $a = 6t + 1$. When $t = 0$, the velocity v of the body is 2 m/s and its displacement s from the origin O is 1 metre. Find expressions for v and s in terms of t.

Given that $a = \dfrac{dv}{dt} = 6t + 1$

$$v = \int (6t + 1)dt$$

$$v = 3t^2 + t + c$$

but when $t = 0$, $v = 2$ thus $2 = 0 + c$ $\therefore$ $c = 2$

Substituting for c, $v = 3t^2 + t + 2$

Using $v = \dfrac{ds}{dt} = 3t^2 + t + 2$

$$s = \int (3t^2 + t + 2)dt$$

i.e. $s = t^3 + \dfrac{t^2}{2} + 2t + d$

but when $t = 0$, $s = 1$ thus $1 = 0 + d$ $\therefore$ $d = 1$

Substituting for d, $s = t^3 + \dfrac{t^2}{2} + 2t + 1$

Thus at time t, $v = 3t^2 + t + 2$ and $s = t^3 + \dfrac{t^2}{2} + 2t + 1$.

B. Determination of centroids

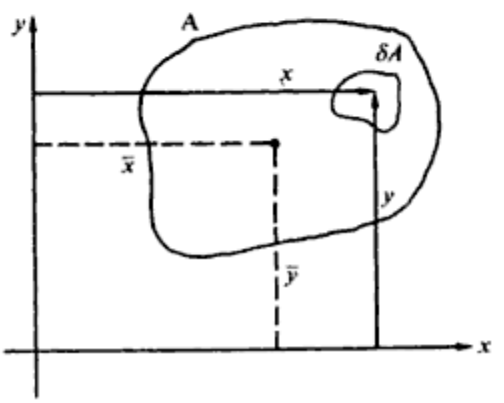
The centroid of an area is that point about which the area is evenly spread. Thus if the area possesses a line of symmetry, the centroid will lie on that line.

If $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ is the centroid of an area A, then $A\bar{x}$ is called the first moment of area about the y-axis and $A\bar{y}$ is called the first moment of area about the x-axis.

Considering A as the sum of a number of smaller areas of which δA, centroid (x, y), is typical,

then $A\bar{x} = \lim\limits_{\delta A \to 0} \sum (\delta A \times x)$

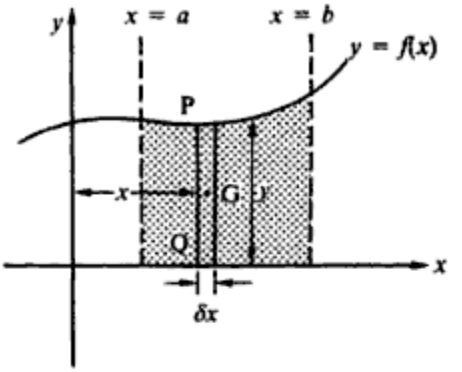
and $A\bar{y} = \lim\limits_{\delta A \to 0} \sum (\delta A \times y)$



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Suppose we wish to find the coordinates of the centroid of an area under a curve $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

Consider the total area A, centroid $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$, divided into elementary strips like PQ, parallel to the y-axis and at a distance x from it. For small values of δx, the centroid of PQ can be considered to be at $G\left(x, \frac{y}{2}\right)$ and if the area of the strip is δA, it follows that $\delta A \approx y\,\delta x$.



Considering the moment of area about the y-axis

$$A\bar{x} = \lim_{\delta A \to 0} \sum_{x=a}^{x=b} x\,\delta A$$

$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0} \sum_{x=a}^{x=b} xy\,\delta x \quad \text{because as} \quad \delta A \to 0,\ \delta x \to 0$$

$$= \int_{x=a}^{x=b} xy\,dx$$

Similarly, considering the moment of area about the x-axis

$$A\bar{y} = \lim_{\delta A \to 0} \sum_{x=a}^{x=b} \frac{y}{2}\delta A$$

$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0} \sum_{x=a}^{x=b} \frac{y^2}{2}\delta x$$

$$= \int_{x=a}^{x=b} \frac{y^2}{2}\,dx$$

Thus $\boxed{A\bar{x} = \int_{x=a}^{x=b} xy\,dx \quad \text{and} \quad A\bar{y} = \int_{x=a}^{x=b} \frac{y^2}{2}\,dx}$

Example 13

Find the coordinates of the centroid of the area lying in the first quadrant and enclosed by the curve $y^2 = 16x$, the x-axis and the lines $x = 9$ and $x = 1$.

Thus $\quad A\bar{x} = \int_1^9 xy\,dx \quad \ldots [1]$

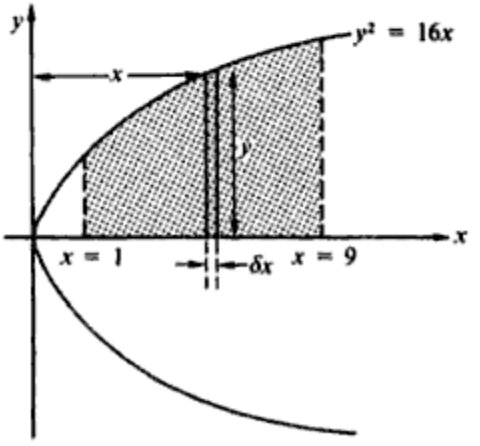
and $\quad A = \int_1^9 y\,dx \quad \ldots [2]$

From [2] $\quad A = \int_1^9 4x^{1/2}\,dx$

$$= \frac{8}{3}(27 - 1) = \frac{8 \times 26}{3}$$

Substituting this into [1] gives

$$\frac{8 \times 26}{3}\bar{x} = \int_1^9 4x^{3/2}\,dx$$



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$= \frac{242 \times 8}{5}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \bar{x} = \frac{363}{65} \quad \text{or} \quad 5{\cdot}58 \text{ correct to 2 decimal places}$$

Considering moment of area about the x-axis

$$A\bar{y} = \int_{x=1}^{x=9} \frac{y^2}{2}\,dx$$

$$\frac{8 \times 26}{3}\bar{y} = \int_1^9 8x\,dx \quad \text{(substituting for } y \text{ from } y^2 = 16x\text{)}$$

$$= 320$$

$$\therefore \qquad \bar{y} = \frac{60}{13} \quad \text{or} \quad 4{\cdot}62 \text{ correct to 2 decimal places}$$

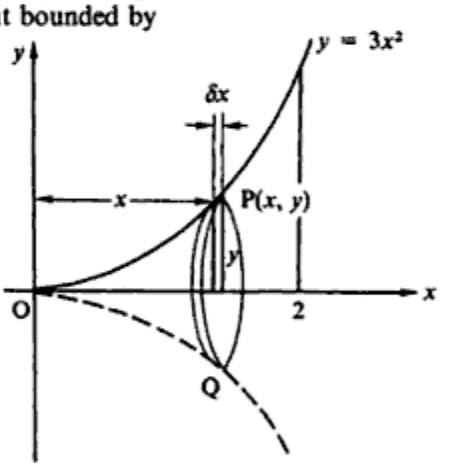
Notes: (i) In the last example the area considered had no lines of symmetry and so both coordinates $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ had to be calculated using integration.

(ii) For a body of uniform density the centroid of the body will coincide with its centre of gravity.

A similar technique may be used to determine the centroid of a solid of revolution.

Example 14

Find the centroid of the volume of revolution formed by rotating, through one revolution about the x-axis, the area in the first quadrant bounded by the curve $y = 3x^2$, the x-axis and the line $x = 2$.



The centroid of the volume of revolution will lie on the axis of symmetry, i.e. the x-axis. Consider an elementary disc PQ formed by rotating an elementary strip, thickness δx and radius y, through one revolution about the x-axis.

Volume of elementary disc PQ $= \pi y^2\,\delta x$

moment of PQ about y-axis $= x\pi y^2\,\delta x$

Taking moments about the y-axis:

$$V\bar{x} = \int_0^2 \pi x y^2\,dx \quad \text{where} \quad V = \int_0^2 \pi y^2\,dx$$

$$\bar{x}\int_0^2 \pi 9x^4\,dx = \int_0^2 9\pi x^5\,dx \quad \text{substituting for } y \text{ from } y = 3x^2$$

giving $\qquad \bar{x} = \frac{5}{3}$

The centroid of the volume of revolution is at the point $(1\frac{2}{3}, 0)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 12D

Displacement, velocity and acceleration

In questions 1 to 6, s metres, v m/s and a m/s² represent respectively the displacement, velocity and acceleration of a body, relative to an origin O, at time t seconds.

1. If $s = 5t^3 - t$ find expressions for v and a in terms of t.
2. If $s = 4t^2 - t^3$ find the displacement, velocity and acceleration when (a) $t = 0$, (b) $t = 2$.
3. If $v = 3t^2 - 8t$ and $s = 3$ when $t = 0$, find expressions for a and s in terms of t.
4. If $v = t^2 - 4t + 3$ and $s = 4$ when $t = 3$, find
   (a) the values of t when the body is at rest,
   (b) the acceleration when $t = 5$,
   (c) the displacement when $t = 1$.
5. If $a = 1 - t$ and, when $t = 2$, $v = 1$ and $s = 4\frac{2}{3}$ find expressions for v and s in terms of t.
6. If $a = 6t - 12$ and, when $t = 0$, $v = 9$ and $s = 6$ find the values of t when the body is at rest and the displacement of the body from O at these times.
7. A body starts from rest at an origin O and its acceleration at any time t seconds later is given by $a = (3 - 2t)$ m/s². Find the displacement of the body from O when it is next at rest.
8. A body starts from rest at an origin O and its acceleration at time t seconds later is given by
   $a = t + 3$ for $0 \leqslant t \leqslant 6$ and $a = 3t/2$ for $t \geqslant 6$.
   Find an expression for s, the displacement from O at time t for $t \geqslant 6$ and hence find s when $t = 8$.

Centroids

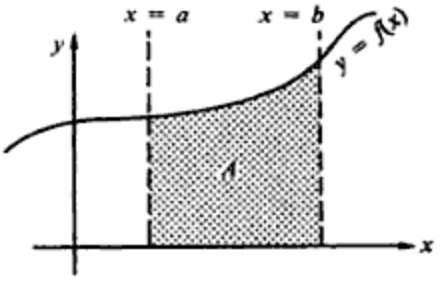
Find the coordinates of the centroids of the following areas.

9. The area enclosed by the curve $y = 4 - x^2$ and the x-axis.
10. The area enclosed by the curve $y = 3x - x^2$ and the x-axis.
11. The area bounded by the curve $y = x^2 + 2$, $x = -2$, $x = 2$ and the x-axis.
12. The area bounded by the curve $y = x^2$, $x = 3$ and the x-axis.
13. The area bounded by the curve $y = x^3$, $x = 3$ and the x-axis.

Find the centroid of the solid of revolution formed by rotating the following areas one revolution about the x-axis.

14. The area bounded by the curve $y = x^2$, the x-axis and the line $x = 4$.
15. The area between $y = x^3 + 1$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = 2$.

12.5 Mean value of a function

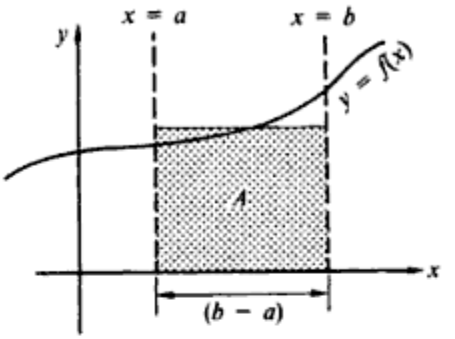


Consider the area under a curve $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

If this area is A, then $A = \int_{x=a}^{x=b} y\,dx$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Now consider a rectangle of the same area A and of the same base $(b - a)$. The height of this rectangle would equal the mean value of the function $f(x)$ in the range $a \leqslant x \leqslant b$
i.e. (mean value of $f(x)$ in $a \leqslant x \leqslant b$) $\times$ $(b - a) = A$



> Thus we define the mean value of a function $y = f(x)$ in the range $a \leqslant x \leqslant b$ as $\dfrac{1}{(b-a)}\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$.

Example 15

Find the mean value with respect to x of the function $(5x^2 - 4x)$ for $1 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$.

Given: $f(x) = 5x^2 - 4x$

By definition, the mean value is $\dfrac{1}{(b-a)}\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$

$$= \frac{1}{(3-1)}\int_1^3 (5x^2 - 4x)\,dx$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\left[\tfrac{5}{3}x^3 - 2x^2\right]_1^3$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}(\tfrac{5}{3} \times 27 - 2 \times 9 - \tfrac{5}{3} \times 1 + 2 \times 1)$$

$$= 27\tfrac{1}{3}$$

The mean value of $(5x^2 - 4x)$ over the range $1 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$ is $27\frac{1}{3}$.

Example 16

A thin rod of length $2l$ is of variable density. Calculate the mean value of the density of the rod, if at a distance x from one end, the density of the rod is cx^2, where c is a constant.

Given that the density is a function of x such that

$$f(x) = cx^2 \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2l$$

$$\text{mean value of density} = \frac{1}{(b-a)}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{(2l-0)}\int_0^{2l} cx^2\,dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{2l}\left[\frac{cx^3}{3}\right]_0^{2l}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2l}\left(\frac{8l^3c}{3}\right)$$

$$= \frac{4l^2c}{3}$$

The mean value of the density of the rod is $\dfrac{4l^2c}{3}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 12E

1. Find the mean value of x^2 for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$.
2. Find the mean value of $2x + 3$ for $1 \leqslant x \leqslant 7$.
3. Find the mean value of x^3 for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$.
4. Find the mean value of $3x^2 + 2x$ for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$.
5. Find the mean value of $\frac{1}{x^2}$ for $1 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$.
6. Find the mean value of $x^2 + 4$ for $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$.
7. Find the mean value of $4 - x^2$ for $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$.
8. Find the mean value of $4x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x - 1$ for $-1 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$.
9. The velocity v in m/s of a body t seconds after timing commences is given by $v = 3t^2 - 4$.
   (a) Find the mean velocity during the interval $t = 1$ to $t = 3$.
   (b) Find the mean acceleration during the interval $t = 1$ to $t = 3$.
10. The tension T newtons in a particular spring depends on the extension x metres of the spring from its natural length in accordance with the rule $T = 30x$. Find the mean tension in the spring as x increases from 0·1 m to 0·2 m.
11. The kinetic energy k joules of a 10 kg body depends on the velocity v m/s in accordance with the rule $k = 5\,v^2$. Find the mean kinetic energy possessed by the body as v increases from 1 m/s to 7 m/s.

Exercise 12F Examination questions

1. Integrate with respect to x:
   (i) $\frac{1}{x^3}$ (ii) $\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$. (S.U.J.B.)
2. Evaluate $\int_1^2 \frac{x^3 + 1}{x^2}\,dx$. (S.U.J.B.)
3. (a) Integrate with respect to x,
   $(\sqrt{x} - x)^2$
   (b) Evaluate
   $$\int_1^2 \left(3x + \frac{1}{x^2} - \frac{1}{x^4}\right)dx$$ (A.E.B.)
4. At any point (x, y) on a certain curve,
   $$\frac{dy}{dx} = (3x - 2)(x + 2).$$
   Given that it passes through $(-1, 1)$ find the equation of the curve. Find, and distinguish between, the turning points of the curve. (A.E.B.)
5. A particle P moves in a straight line and passes a fixed point O with a velocity of V m/s. Its acceleration, a m/s^2, is given by $a = 16 - 4t$ for $0 \leqslant t \leqslant 3$ and $a = t + 1$ for $t \geqslant 3$, where t is the time in seconds after passing O. Given that the velocity of P when $t = 3$ is 38 m/s, find
   (i) the value of V,
   (ii) the velocity of P when $t = 4$. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

11. Find the equation of the chord which joins the points A$(-2, 3)$ and B$(0, 15)$ on the curve $y = 15 - 3x^2$.

(a) Show that the finite area enclosed by the curve and the chord AB is 4 square units.

(b) Find the volume generated when this area is rotated through 360° about the x-axis, leaving your answer in terms of π. (A.E.B.)

12. Given the curve whose equation is

$$y = x^{-1/2},$$

find (i) the mean value of $\frac{1}{y}$, with respect to x, in the interval $1 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$;

(ii) the area of the region R bounded by the curve, the x-axis and the lines $x = 1$ and $x = 4$; (J.M.B.)

13. Sketch the curve with equation

$$y = (x^2 - 1)(x + 2).$$

(a) Calculate the area of the finite region above the x-axis bounded by the curve and the x-axis.

(b) Find the coordinates of the point of inflexion on the curve and the equation of the tangent at this point. (London)

14. The points P$(3, 2)$ and Q$(0, 1)$ lie on the curve $y^2 = x + 1$. Calculate the volume of the solid generated when the region bounded by the lines $y = 0$, $x = 0$, $x = 3$ and the arc PQ of the curve is rotated completely about the x-axis. Give your answer as a multiple of π.

S is the region bounded by the lines $y = 1$, $x = 3$ and the arc PQ of the curve. Show that when S is rotated completely about the x-axis the volume of the solid generated is $\frac{9\pi}{2}$.

When S is rotated completely about the line $x = 3$ show that the volume of the solid generated is

$$\pi \int_1^2 (4 - y^2)^2 dy.$$

Calculate this volume in terms of π. (J.M.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

13
Calculus III: Further techniques

13.1 Function of a function

When $y = x^2 + 4$, we say that y is a function of x.
If $y = (x^2 + 4)^5$, we say that y is a function (the fifth power) of a function $(x^2 + 4)$ of x.
Suppose that $y = u^5$ and that $u = x^2 + 4$, then this again leads to $y = (x^2 + 4)^5$. In this case we have used another variable u which links together the variables y and x.
Suppose $y = f(u)$ and $u = g(x)$ and let x change by a small amount δx, and the consequent change in u be δu and the change in y be δy.

Then $\dfrac{\delta y}{\delta x} = \dfrac{\delta y}{\delta u} \times \dfrac{\delta u}{\delta x}$

As $\delta x \to 0$, so also $\delta u \to 0$ and $\delta y \to 0$.
So taking limits as $\delta x \to 0$ we have

$$\boxed{\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx}}$$

This is also referred to as the **chain rule**.
The introduction of a third variable may be used to enable us to differentiate a function of a function.

Example 1

Find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ if (a) $y = (3x^2 - 2)^4$, (b) $y = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{(x^2 - 2)}}$

(a)

$$y = (3x^2 - 2)^4$$

Let $u = 3x^2 - 2$ then $y = u^4$

$\therefore$ $\dfrac{du}{dx} = 6x$ and $\dfrac{dy}{du} = 4u^3$

Using $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{dy}{du} \times \dfrac{du}{dx}$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 4u^3 \times 6x$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 24x(3x^2 - 2)^3$$

(b)

$$y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(x^2 - 2)}} = (x^2 - 2)^{-1/2}$$

Let $u = x^2 - 2$ then $y = u^{-1/2}$

$\therefore$ $\dfrac{du}{dx} = 2x$ and $\dfrac{dy}{du} = -\dfrac{1}{2}u^{-3/2}$

$$= -\frac{1}{2u^{3/2}}$$

Using $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{dy}{du} \times \dfrac{du}{dx}$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{1}{2u^{3/2}} \times 2x$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{(x^2 - 2)^{3/2}}$$

Note: The final answer should always be given in terms of the variable used in the question and not the third variable, u, which was of our invention.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

In general if $y = [f(x)]^n$, letting $u = f(x)$ then $y = u^n$

then $\dfrac{du}{dx} = f'(x)$ and $\dfrac{dy}{du} = nu^{n-1}$

$$\boxed{\text{Thus if } \quad y = [f(x)]^n, \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = n[f(x)]^{n-1}f'(x)}$$

With some practice it is quite possible, and permissible, to write down the answer to differentiations of this type without showing the substitution and the introduction of the third variable.

Example 2

Find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ if (a) $y = (4x^3 - 7x)^6$, (b) $y = \sqrt{(5x - 2x^2)}$, (c) $y = \dfrac{1}{3x^3 - 4x}$.

(a) $y = (4x^3 - 7x)^6$

$\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 6(4x^3 - 7x)^5(12x^2 - 7)$

(b) $y = \sqrt{(5x - 2x^2)}$

$= (5x - 2x^2)^{1/2}$

$\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{2}(5x - 2x^2)^{-1/2} \times (5 - 4x)$

i.e. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{5 - 4x}{2\sqrt{(5x - 2x^2)}}$

(c) $y = \dfrac{1}{3x^3 - 4x} = (3x^3 - 4x)^{-1}$

$\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (-1)(3x^3 - 4x)^{-2} \times (9x^2 - 4)$

i.e. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{4 - 9x^2}{(3x^3 - 4x)^2}$

Example 3

Find the equation of (a) the tangent and (b) the normal to the curve $y = \dfrac{5}{x^2 - 3}$ at the point (2, 5).

Note Substituting $x = 2$ in the equation of the curve gives $y = \dfrac{5}{2^2 - 3} = 5$.

So the point (2, 5) does lie on the curve.

(a) $y = \dfrac{5}{x^2 - 3} = 5(x^2 - 3)^{-1}$

$\therefore \dfrac{dy}{dx} = 5(-1)(x^2 - 3)^{-2} \times (2x)$

$= \dfrac{-10x}{(x^2 - 3)^2}$

Gradient of tangent at the point (2, 5) is $\dfrac{-10(2)}{(2^2 - 3)^2} = -20$.

Using $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$, equation of tangent at (2, 5) is $y - 5 = -20(x - 2)$

or $y + 20x = 45$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

25. Find the coordinates of any stationary points on the following curves and state the nature of each.

(a) $y = \dfrac{1}{1 + x^2}$ (b) $y = (2x - 5)^4$

(c) $y = (2x - 5)^3$ (d) $y = \dfrac{1}{x^2 + 4x}$

26. The displacement, s metres, of a body from an origin O at time t seconds is given by $s = \sqrt{(1 + 2t)}$. When $t = 12$ find
(a) the displacement from O (b) the velocity and
(c) the acceleration of the body.

13.2 Integration of $f'(x)[f(x)]^n$

Although we have established a rule for integrating a power of x, i.e. $\int x^n dx = \dfrac{x^{n+1}}{n + 1} + c$, there are few such rules and we are dependent upon our ability to recognize the type of expression to be integrated.

Consider $\int 24x^3(x^4 + 7)^5 dx$.

If we go back to our idea of integration being the reverse of differentiation, we can see that this integrand, i.e. the expression which is to be integrated, may have come from differentiating $(x^4 + 7)^6$.
The expression $(x^4 + 7)^6$ is a function of a function and as we saw in section 13.1, the differential of this expression is $6(x^4 + 7)^5 \times (4x^3)$ or $24x^3(x^4 + 7)^5$.
Thus the integrand is exactly the differential of $(x^4 + 7)^6$ with respect to x, and hence

$$\int 24x^3(x^4 + 7)^5\, dx = (x^4 + 7)^6 + c.$$

This is rather an artificial example in that the numbers have been carefully chosen to produce the desired result. The method would still work had a number other than 24 appeared in the integrand.
In this type of integration we are expecting to see an integrand which has come from differentiating a function of a function of x. The key to the method lies in recognizing that the integrand is a function to some power multiplied by the differential of that function (or some scalar multiple of it). We can state this in general terms:

$$\int f'(x)[f(x)]^n dx = \frac{1}{n + 1}[f(x)]^{n+1} + c.$$

It is better *not* to remember such a statement, but rather to understand how the integrand has been built up by differentiating a function of a function.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 5

Find (a) $\int 20(7 + 5x)^3\,dx$ (b) $\int (2 - 3x)^6\,dx$.

(a) $\int 20(7 + 5x)^3\,dx$

We suspect that this may have come from differentiating $(7 + 5x)^4$ as a function of a function. This would give $4(7 + 5x)^3 \times (5)$ which is exactly the integrand,

$$\therefore \int 20(7 + 5x)^3\,dx = (7 + 5x)^4 + c$$

(b) $\int (2 - 3x)^6\,dx$

We suspect that this may have come from differentiating $(2 - 3x)^7$ as a function of a function. This would give $7(2 - 3x)^6 \times (-3)$ which is $-21(2 - 3x)^6$ and this is a scalar multiple of the integrand,

$$\therefore \int (2 - 3x)^6\,dx = -\frac{1}{21}(2 - 3x)^7 + c$$

Example 6

Find (a) $\int x^4(1 + 2x^5)^3\,dx$ (b) $\int (4x - 2)(x^2 - x + 4)^5\,dx$.

(a) $\int x^4(1 + 2x^5)^3\,dx$

If this has come from differentiating $(1 + 2x^5)^4$, then we expect to see the differential of $(1 + 2x^5)^4$, or a multiple of it, in the integrand.

Now $\frac{d}{dx}(1 + 2x^5)^4$ is $40x^4(1 + 2x^5)^3$,

$$\therefore \int x^4(1 + 2x^5)^3\,dx = \frac{1}{40}(1 + 2x^5)^4 + c$$

(b) $\int (4x - 2)(x^2 - x + 4)^5\,dx$

We suspect this may have come from differentiating $(x^2 - x + 4)^6$.

Now $\frac{d}{dx}(x^2 - x + 4)^6$

$= 6(x^2 - x + 4)^5 \times (2x - 1)$

$$\therefore \int (4x - 2)(x^2 - x + 4)^5\,dx = \tfrac{1}{3}(x^2 - x + 4)^6 + c$$

Note Integrations of the type shown in Examples 5 and 6 can also be performed by the method of substitution which is explained in more detail in chapter 20.

Exercise 13B

Find

1. $\int 24(4 + 3x)^7\,dx$ **2.** $\int 42(2 + 7x)^5\,dx$ **3.** $-\int 14(3 - 2x)^6\,dx$

4. $\int 10x(x^2 + 4)^4\,dx$ **5.** $\int (2 + 3x)^5\,dx$ **6.** $\int (1 + 2x)^4\,dx$

7. $\int (1 - 6x)^3\,dx$ **8.** $\int 2(3 + 4x)^4\,dx$ **9.** $\int 6(1 - 2x)^4\,dx$

10. $\int 2x(1 + x^2)^3\,dx$ **11.** $\int x^2(1 - x^3)^4\,dx$ **12.** $\int x^3(x^4 + 6)^3\,dx$

13. $\int (2x + 1)(x^2 + x + 3)^4\,dx$ **14.** $\int (3x^2 - 1)(x^3 - x + 4)^4\,dx$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

15. $\int (1 + 2x)(4 + x + x^2)^5\,dx$ **16.** $\int (x - 1)(x^2 - 2x + 4)^7\,dx$

Evaluate the following definite integrals

17. $\int_0^1 16x(x^2 + 5)^3\,dx$ **18.** $\int_1^7 (x - 7)^5\,dx$

19. $\int_0^1 x(x^2 + 4)^4\,dx$ **20.** $\int_{-1}^1 (3 + 2x)^5\,dx$

21. $\int_1^2 (2x - 1)(x^2 - x + 1)^5\,dx$ **22.** $\int_0^2 (1 - 2x)(x^2 - x - 3)^3\,dx$

23. $\int_1^4 \frac{(1 + \sqrt{x})^5}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$

13.3 Related rates of change

Suppose that y is expressed as a function of x, say $y = f(x)$. If we know the rate at which x changes with respect to some other variable, say time t $\left(\text{i.e. we know } \frac{dx}{dt}\right)$, then we can use the chain rule to find the rate of change of y with respect to this third variable t, $\left(\text{i.e. we can find } \frac{dy}{dt}\right)$.

i.e. Given $y = f(x)$ and $\frac{dx}{dt}$, we can find $\frac{dy}{dt}$ by using
$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{dy}{dx} \times \frac{dx}{dt} = f'(x)\frac{dx}{dt}.$$

Example 7

If the radius r of a sphere is increasing at 2 cm/s, find the rate at which the volume of the sphere is increasing when the radius is 3 cm (leave your answer in terms of π).

We know that the volume of a sphere is given by $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ and we are given that $\frac{dr}{dt} = 2$ cm/s

We require $\frac{dV}{dt}$; using
$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{dV}{dr} \times \frac{dr}{dt}$$
$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{d}{dr}\left(\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3\right) \times \frac{dr}{dt}$$
$$= \frac{4}{3}\pi \times 3r^2 \times 2$$
$$= 8\pi r^2 \text{ cm}^3/\text{s}$$

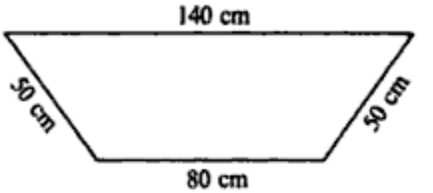
Thus when $r = 3$ cm, $\frac{dV}{dt} = 72\pi$ cm^3/s

When the radius of the sphere is 3 cm, the volume of the sphere is increasing at 72π cm^3/s.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

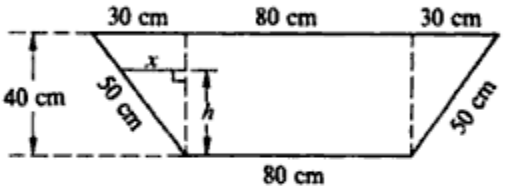
Example 8

Water is pumped into an empty trough which is 200 cm long, at the rate of 33 000 cm³/s. The uniform cross-section of the trough is an isosceles trapezium with the dimensions shown. Find the rate at which the depth of the water is increasing at the instant when this depth is 20 cm.



We require $\frac{dh}{dt}$; thus, given $\frac{dV}{dt}$, we want a formula linking V and h so that we can use the chain rule.

The total depth of the trough is 40 cm.



When the depth of water is h, $\frac{x}{30} = \frac{h}{40}$

or $x = \frac{3}{4}h$

The volume V of water in the trough when the depth of water is h, is given by

$$V = \tfrac{1}{2}(80 + 80 + 2x) \times h \times 200 \text{ cm}^3$$
$$= (160 + \tfrac{3}{2}h) \times 100h$$

Using $\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{dV}{dh} \times \frac{dh}{dt}$

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{d}{dh}(16\,000h + 150h^2) \times \frac{dh}{dt}$$
$$= (16\,000 + 300h) \times \frac{dh}{dt}$$

But $\frac{dV}{dt} = 33\,000$ cm³/s, so when $h = 20$ cm,

$$33\,000 = (16\,000 + 300(20)) \times \frac{dh}{dt}$$

i.e. $\frac{dh}{dt} = 1\frac{1}{2}$ cm/s

When the depth of water is 20 cm, the depth is increasing at the rate of $1\frac{1}{2}$ cm/s.

Note that in the last example we could have used $\frac{dh}{dt} = \frac{dh}{dV} \times \frac{dV}{dt}$, where

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = 33\,000 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dh}{dV} = 1\Big/\frac{dV}{dh} = \frac{1}{16\,000 + 300h}$$
$$\frac{dh}{dt} = \frac{33\,000}{16\,000 + 300h}$$
$$= 1\tfrac{1}{2} \text{ cm/s} \quad \text{when} \quad h = 20 \text{ cm.}$$

The justification that $\frac{dh}{dV} = 1\Big/\frac{dV}{dh}$, or that $\frac{dy}{dx} = 1\Big/\frac{dx}{dy}$, is as follows.

By definition, $\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left(\frac{\delta y}{\delta x}\right)$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{1}{\left(\frac{\delta x}{\delta y}\right)}\right] \qquad \ldots [1]$$

but as $\delta x \to 0$, then so also $\delta y \to 0$. Thus [1] can be written

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta y \to 0}\left[1\Big/\frac{\delta x}{\delta y}\right]$$

Thus $$\boxed{\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{dx}{dy}\right)} \quad \text{as required.}}$$

Exercise 13C

1. If $T = 5p^2 + \frac{3}{p}$, find $\frac{dT}{dq}$ when $p = 2$ given that for that value of p, $\frac{dp}{dq} = 4$.
2. If $A = (2t + 3)^5$ and $x = 2t^2 + 6t$, find an expression for $\frac{dA}{dx}$ in terms of t.
3. If r, the radius of a circle, increases at the rate of 2 cm/s, find an expression in terms of r for the rate at which the area of the circle is increasing.
4. If the radius of a sphere is increasing at 1 cm/s, find the rate at which the surface area is increasing when the radius is 5 cm. (Leave π in your answer.)
5. Air is being pumped into a spherical balloon at a rate of 54 cm³/s. Find the rate at which the radius is increasing when the volume of the balloon is 36π cm³.
6. If the volume of a sphere increases at the rate of 6 cm³/s, find the rate of increase in the surface area of the sphere at the instant when its radius is 4 cm.
7. Oil is dripping onto a surface at the rate of $\frac{1}{10}\pi$ cm³/s and forms a circular film which may be considered to have a uniform depth of 0·1 cm. Find the rate at which the radius of the circular film is increasing when this radius is 5 cm.
8. A closed right-circular cylinder has base radius r cm and height $3r$ cm. If r is increased at a rate of 1 millimetre per second, find expressions in terms of r for the rate of increase of
   (a) the total external surface area and (b) the volume of the cylinder.
9. A hollow cone of base radius a and height $3a$ is held vertex downwards. The cone is initially empty and liquid is poured into it at a rate of 4π cm³/s. Find the rate at which the depth of the liquid in the vessel is increasing 16 seconds after the pouring commenced.
10. A container is in the shape of a cone of semi-vertical angle 30°, with its vertex downwards. Liquid flows into the container at the rate of $\frac{\sqrt{3}\pi}{4}$ cm³/s. At the instant when the radius of the circular surface of

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 10

Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ in terms of the parameter t if: (a) $x = 2t^3, y = 4t^2 + 1$ (b) $x = \frac{3}{t}, y = \sqrt{(1 + t^2)}$

(a) $x = 2t^3, \quad y = 4t^2 + 1$

$\therefore \quad \frac{dx}{dt} = 6t^2, \frac{dy}{dt} = 8t$

Using $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dt} \times \frac{dt}{dx}$

$\frac{dy}{dx} = 8t \times \frac{1}{6t^2}$

i.e. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{4}{3t}$

(b) $x = \frac{3}{t} = 3t^{-1}, \quad y = \sqrt{(1 + t^2)} = (1 + t^2)^{1/2}$

$\therefore \quad \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{-3}{t^2}, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{1}{2}(1 + t^2)^{-1/2} \times 2t$

Using $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dt} \times \frac{dt}{dx}$

$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{2}(1 + t^2)^{-1/2} \times 2t \times \left(\frac{t^2}{-3}\right)$

i.e. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-t^3}{3\sqrt{(1 + t^2)}}$

The last example made use of the fact that $\frac{dt}{dx} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)}$, which was proved on page 324.

Second differential

Particular care is needed when finding the second differential from the parametric equations.
One method is to find the cartesian equation by eliminating the parameter and then to find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ in the usual way.
Alternatively, it is often better to work in terms of the parameter throughout as the following example illustrates.

Example 11

Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ in terms of t given that $x = \frac{1}{t}, y = 3t^2 + 2$.

$x = \frac{1}{t} = t^{-1} \qquad y = 3t^2 + 2$

$\frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{-1}{t^2} \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = 6t$

Using $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dt} \times \frac{dt}{dx}$

$\frac{dy}{dx} = 6t \times (-t^2) \qquad \left(\frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{-1}{t^2}, \text{ hence } \frac{dt}{dx} = -t^2\right)$

$= -6t^3$

In order to find $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$, we need to differentiate $\frac{dy}{dx}$ with respect to x, so we must therefore differentiate $(-6t^3)$ with respect to x.

$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{d}{dx}(-6t^3)$

$= \frac{d}{dt}(-6t^3) \times \frac{dt}{dx}$ (Chain rule used to enable $-6t^3$ to be differentiated with respect to t)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

27. Copy and complete the following table for $x = 4 \sin \theta$, $y = \cos \theta$ (where θ is in radians).

θ	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$	π	$\frac{7\pi}{6}$	$\frac{4\pi}{3}$	$\frac{3\pi}{2}$	$\frac{5\pi}{3}$	$\frac{11\pi}{6}$	2π
x			3·46		3·46				−3·46		−3·46		
y		0·87				−0·87		−0·87				0·87	

Draw x- and y-axes and hence plot the graph of the curve $x = 4 \sin \theta$, $y = \cos \theta$ for $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant 2\pi$.

28. Copy and complete the following table for $x = 2t(t^2 - 1)$, $y = 4t^2$

t	−2	$-1\frac{1}{2}$	−1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2
x									
y									

Draw x- and y- axes and hence plot the graph of the curve $x = 2t(t^2 - 1)$, $y = 4t^2$ for $-2 \leqslant t \leqslant 2$.

13.5 Product rule

Suppose u and v are functions of x and

$$y = uv \qquad \ldots [1]$$

Let x change by a small amount δx and let the consequent change in u be δu, in v be δv and in y be δy.

Then
$$y + \delta y = (u + \delta u)(v + \delta v) \qquad \ldots [2]$$

Subtracting equation [1] from equation [2],

$$y + \delta y - y = (u + \delta u)(v + \delta v) - uv$$

i.e.
$$\delta y = u\delta v + v\delta u + \delta u \delta v$$

$$\frac{\delta y}{\delta x} = u\frac{\delta v}{\delta x} + v\frac{\delta u}{\delta x} + \delta u\frac{\delta v}{\delta x}$$

By definition, as $\delta x \to 0$, $\frac{\delta y}{\delta x} \to \frac{dy}{dx}$, $\frac{\delta v}{\delta x} \to \frac{dv}{dx}$ and $\frac{\delta u}{\delta x} \to \frac{du}{dx}$;

also as $\delta x \to 0$, both δu and δv approach 0.

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = u\frac{dv}{dx} + v\frac{du}{dx} + 0 \times \frac{dv}{dx}$$

$$\boxed{\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = u\frac{dv}{dx} + v\frac{du}{dx}}$$

This important result should be memorised.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 12

Differentiate the following with respect to x (a) $y = x(x + 3)^4$ (b) $y = (2x + 1)^3(x - 1)^4$

(a) $y = x(x + 3)^4$
This is of the form $y = uv$ where
$u = x$ and $v = (x + 3)^4$
Using the product rule

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = x \times 4(x + 3)^3 + (x + 3)^4 \times 1$$
$$= (x + 3)^3[4x + x + 3]$$
$$= (x + 3)^3(5x + 3)$$

(b) $y = (2x + 1)^3(x - 1)^4$
This is of the form $y = uv$ where
$u = (2x + 1)^3$ and $v = (x - 1)^4$
Using the product rule

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = (2x + 1)^3 \times 4(x - 1)^3 + (x - 1)^4 \times 3(2x + 1)^2 \times 2$$
$$= 2(2x + 1)^2(x - 1)^3[2(2x + 1) + 3(x - 1)]$$
$$= 2(2x + 1)^2(x - 1)^3(7x - 1)$$

13.6 Quotient rule

Suppose u and v are functions of x and that $y = \frac{u}{v}$.

Writing this as $y = uv^{-1}$, we can use the product rule to give

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = u\frac{d}{dx}(v^{-1}) + v^{-1}\frac{du}{dx}$$
$$= u \times -1(v^{-2})\frac{dv}{dx} + \frac{1}{v} \times \frac{du}{dx} \qquad \left[\text{by chain rule } \frac{d}{dx}(v^{-1}) = \frac{d}{dv}(v^{-1}) \times \frac{dv}{dx}\right]$$
$$= \frac{-u\frac{dv}{dx} + v\frac{du}{dx}}{v^2}$$

$$\boxed{\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{v\frac{du}{dx} - u\frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}}$$

This important result should be memorised.

Example 13

Differentiate the following with respect to x:

(a) $y = \frac{2x + 3}{1 - 5x}$ (b) $y = \frac{(3x + 1)^4}{(5x - 2)^3}$

(a) $y = \frac{2x + 3}{1 - 5x}$

This is of the form $y = \frac{u}{v}$ where
$u = 2x + 3$ and $v = 1 - 5x$.
Using the quotient rule,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(1 - 5x)2 - (2x + 3)(-5)}{(1 - 5x)^2}$$
$$= \frac{2 - 10x + 10x + 15}{(1 - 5x)^2}$$
$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{17}{(1 - 5x)^2}$$

(b) $y = \frac{(3x + 1)^4}{(5x - 2)^3}$

This is of the form $y = \frac{u}{v}$ where
$u = (3x + 1)^4$ and $v = (5x - 2)^3$.
Using the quotient rule,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(5x - 2)^3 4(3x + 1)^3(3) - (3x + 1)^4 3(5x - 2)^2(5)}{(5x - 2)^6}$$
$$= \frac{3(5x - 2)^2(3x + 1)^3}{(5x - 2)^6}[4(5x - 2) - 5(3x + 1)]$$
$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3(3x + 1)^3}{(5x - 2)^4}(5x - 13).$$

Note In the differentiation of products and quotients, particular care over the algebraic simplification is necessary.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

13.7 Implicit functions

An implicit function is one in which a relationship between, say, two variables x and y is given without having y as an explicit or clearly defined function of x.
Thus in $y = 3x^2 - 7x + 1$, y is given as an explicit function of x, whereas in $y^2 - 3yx = x^2$, y is not given explicitly as a function of x.
An implicit function involving y and x can be differentiated with respect to x as it stands.
Suppose $\quad y^2 + 4x = 6x^2$,
Differentiating each term with respect to x,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(y^2) + \frac{d}{dx}(4x) = \frac{d}{dx}(6x^2)$$

i.e. $$\frac{d}{dy}(y^2)\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{d}{dx}(4x) = \frac{d}{dx}(6x^2)$$

Thus $$2y\frac{dy}{dx} + 4 = 12x$$

It should be noted that we had to rearrange $\frac{d}{dx}(y^2)$ using the chain rule, $\frac{d}{dx}(y^2) = \frac{d}{dy}(y^2)\frac{dy}{dx}$ to enable y^2 to be differentiated with respect to y.

Example 14

Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ in terms of x and y if: (a) $y^3 + 6x = x^2$ (b) $3y^2 + 2y + xy = x^3$.

(a) $y^3 + 6x = x^2$
Differentiating each term with respect to x,

$$3y^2\frac{dy}{dx} + 6 = 2x$$

i.e. $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2x - 6}{3y^2}$$

(b) $3y^2 + 2y + xy = x^3$
Differentiating each term with respect to x,

$$6y\frac{dy}{dx} + 2\frac{dy}{dx} + \left(x\frac{dy}{dx} + y\right) = 3x^2$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx}(6y + 2 + x) = 3x^2 - y$$

i.e. $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3x^2 - y}{x + 6y + 2}.$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 15

Find the equation of (a) the tangent and (b) the normal to the curve $3x^2 - xy - 2y^2 + 12 = 0$ at the point (2, 3).

$3x^2 - xy - 2y^2 + 12 = 0$

[Note that since $3(2)^2 - 2(3) - 2(3)^2 + 12$
$= 12 - 6 - 18 + 12$
$= 0$, the point (2, 3) does lie on the curve.]

(a) Differentiating the equation of the curve with respect to x,

$$6x - x\frac{dy}{dx} - y - 4y\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$$

thus $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{6x - y}{x + 4y}$$

Gradient at the point (2, 3) $= \dfrac{6(2) - 3}{2 + 4(3)}$
$= \dfrac{9}{14}$

Equation of tangent at (2, 3) is $y - 3 = \dfrac{9}{14}(x - 2)$
or $14y = 9x + 24$.

(b) Gradient of normal is $\dfrac{-1}{\text{(gradient of tangent)}} = -\dfrac{14}{9}$ at the point (2, 3).

Equation of normal at (2, 3) is $y - 3 = -\dfrac{14}{9}(x - 2)$
or $9y + 14x = 55$

The equation of the tangent is $14y = 9x + 24$ and the equation of the normal is $9y + 14x = 55$.

Exercise 13F

In questions **1** to **9**, find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ in terms of x and y.

1. $x^2 + y^2 = 10$
2. $2x^2 + y^2 = 4x$
3. $6x^2 + 2y^3 = 8x + 4y$
4. $2x^3 - 5y^2 + 6x - 10y = 6$
5. $2x^2 + 2y^2 + 3x = 10 + 7y$
6. $x^2 + xy + y^2 = 0$
7. $x^3 + 3xy - y^2 = 6$
8. $2x^3 + 3xy^2 - y^3 = 0$
9. $3x^2 + 2y^2 - 5x + xy + 6y = 8$
10. Find the gradient of the curve $x^2 + 6y^2 = 10$ at the point $(2, -1)$.
11. Find the gradient of the curve $x^3 + 4xy = 15 + y^2$ at the point (2, 1).

For questions **12** to **14**, find the equation of (a) the tangent and (b) the normal to the curve at the given point on the curve.

12. $5y^2 - 3x^2 - x + y = 0$ at the point $(1, -1)$
13. $3x^2 - 2xy + y^2 = 9$ at the point $(-2, -3)$
14. $x^3 + 3x^2y = 2y^2$ at the point $(-1, 1)$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9. A curve is defined parametrically by the equations

$$x = t^3 - 6t + 4,\ y = t - 3 + \frac{2}{t}.$$

Find

(i) the equations of the normals to the curve at the points where the curve meets the x-axis,

(ii) the coordinates of their point of intersection. (Cambridge)

10. A curve is given by the parametric equations:

$$x = \frac{(1 - t)}{(1 + t)},\ y = (1 - t)(1 + t)^2.$$

Find dy/dx and d^2y/dx^2 in terms of t. Find also the equation of the tangent to the curve at the point where $t = 2$.

(S.U.J.B.)

11. Find the equations of the tangents to the curve $y^2 + 3xy + 4x^2 = 14$ at the points where $x = 1$. (S.U.J.B.)

12. Given that $y^2 - 5xy + 8x^2 = 2$, prove that $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{5y - 16x}{2y - 5x}$.

The distinct points P and Q on the curve $y^2 - 5xy + 8x^2 = 2$ each have x-coordinate 1. The normals to the curve at P and Q meet at the point N. Calculate the coordinates of N. (A.E.B.)

13. Sketch the curve given parametrically by

$$x = t^2,\ y = t^3.$$

Show that an equation of the normal to the curve at the point A(4, 8) is $x + 3y - 28 = 0$.

This normal meets the x-axis at the point N. Find the area of the region enclosed by the arc OA of the curve, the line segment AN and the x-axis. (London)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

14
Sketching functions II

14.1 Rational functions

In this section we consider functions $f(x)$ of the type $f(x) = \frac{g(x)}{h(x)}$. The five basic investigations for curve sketching used in chapter 11 are still applicable for functions of this type, i.e.

(i) symmetry if obvious,
(ii) intersection with axes,
(iii) behaviour as $x \to \pm\infty$
(iv) $f(x)$ undefined,
(v) maximum/minimum.

Examples 1 to 7 show the ways in which these investigations give information from which a sketch of $\frac{g(x)}{h(x)}$ can be made. We restrict our attention to functions $\frac{g(x)}{h(x)}$ for which $h(x)$ is a polynomial of order 2 or less.

The reader should note that in the examples of this chapter, the behaviour of the function on either side of the vertical asymptotes is not investigated. These investigations are not always easy and the information gained from the other investigations usually allows the behaviour of the function near these asymptotes to be determined.

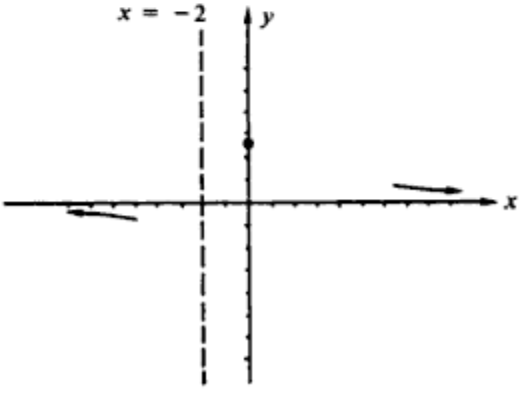
Type I $f(x) = \frac{a}{bx + c}$

Example 1

Make a sketch of the curve given by $y = \frac{5}{x + 2}$

x-axis	No value of x for which $y = 0$ $\therefore$ no intercept with x-axis.
y-axis	Cuts y-axis at $(0, 2\frac{1}{2})$
$x \to \pm\infty$	As $x \to \pm\infty$, $y \to \frac{5}{x}$

Thus for x a large positive number, y is small and positive, thus as $x \to +\infty$, $y \to 0^+$. For x a large negative number, y is small and negative, thus as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to 0^-$.

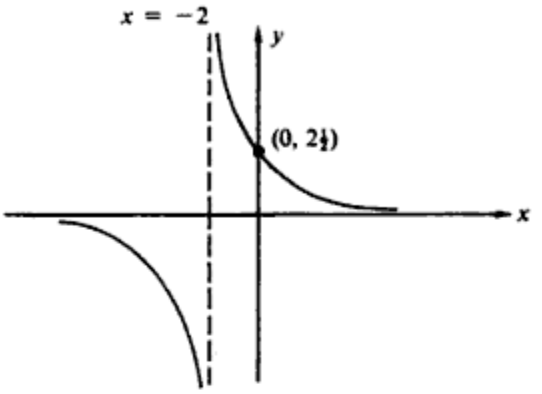


Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

y undefined y is undefined for $x = -2$.
Thus $x = -2$ is a vertical asymptote.

Max/min $y' = \dfrac{-5}{(x+2)^2}$
Thus no turning points and the gradient is always negative.

The sketch can then be completed.



Type II $f(x) = \dfrac{ax + b}{cx + d}$

Example 2

Make a sketch of the curve given by $y = \dfrac{x+3}{x-1}$

x-axis Cuts x-axis at $(-3, 0)$

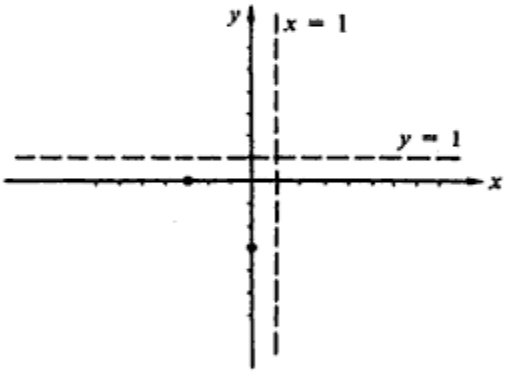
y-axis Cuts y-axis at $(0, -3)$

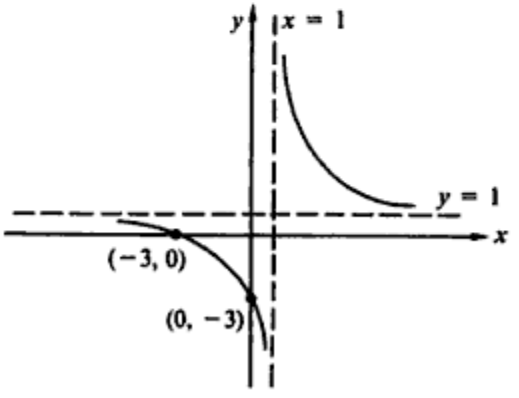
$x \to \pm\infty$ By writing $y = \dfrac{1 + 3/x}{1 - 1/x}$
As $x \to \pm\infty$, $y \to 1$
$\therefore$ $y = 1$ is a horizontal asymptote. (It is not necessary to consider $x \to +\infty$ and $x \to -\infty$ separately for functions of this type.)

y undefined y is undefined for $x = 1$.
Thus $x = 1$ is a vertical asymptote.

Max/min $y' = \dfrac{1(x-1) - 1(x+3)}{(x-1)^2}$
$= \dfrac{-4}{(x-1)^2}$
Thus no turning points and the gradient is always negative.

The sketch can then be completed.





Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Type III $f(x) = \dfrac{g(x)}{h(x)}$ for $h(x)$ a quadratic function.

Some functions of this type have a range that is restricted in some way for $x \in \mathbb{R}$. It is useful to examine the range of $f(x)$ first to determine whether such restrictions exist. In addition, such examinations will indicate whether any maximum or minimum points exist.

Note In the following examples, when $f(x)$ is an improper fraction, i.e. order of $g(x) \geqslant$ order of $h(x)$, then $f(x)$ is rearranged to eliminate these improper fractions when considering $x \to \pm\infty$.

Example 3

Sketch the curve given by $y = \dfrac{3x + 3}{x(3 - x)}$

If $y = \dfrac{3x + 3}{x(3 - x)}$ ... [1] then $y = \dfrac{3x + 3}{3x - x^2}$ ... [2]

Range of values of y From [2] $3xy - x^2y = 3x + 3$

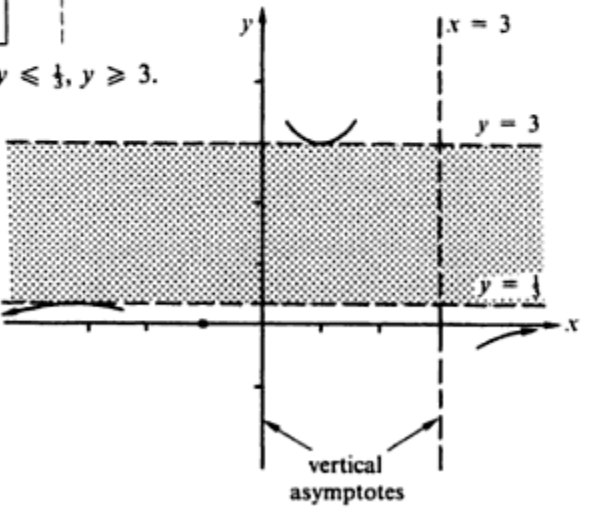
i.e. $x^2y + 3x(1 - y) + 3 = 0$

For $y \neq 0$, this is a quadratic in x.
Thus, for real x, $[3(1 - y)]^2 - 4y(3) \geqslant 0$
i.e. $(3y - 1)(y - 3) \geqslant 0$
We solve this inequality using the methods of chapter 5, page 143.

For $y = 0$, $3x + 3 = 0$,
$x = -1$
$\therefore$ y can equal zero.

	$y < \frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3} < y < 3$	$y > 3$
$3y - 1$	−ve	+ve	+ve
$y - 3$	−ve	−ve	+ve
$(3y - 1)(y - 3)$	+ve	−ve	+ve

Thus the ranges of values y can take for real x are $y \leqslant \frac{1}{3}$, $y \geqslant 3$.
We can therefore shade a region on our sketch where the curve cannot exist. Note also that for each value of y in the allowed ranges, there will exist two distinct values of x, except at $y = 3$ and $y = \frac{1}{3}$ where a repeated root will occur, and at $y = 0$ where a single root occurs. From $y \leqslant \frac{1}{3}$ we expect a (local) maximum at $y = \frac{1}{3}$, and from $y \geqslant 3$ we expect a (local) minimum at $y = 3$.



x-axis Cuts x-axis at $(-1, 0)$.

y-axis No y-axis intercept as y not defined for $x = 0$.

$x \to \pm\infty$ As $x \to \pm\infty$, $y \to \dfrac{3x}{-x^2}$.

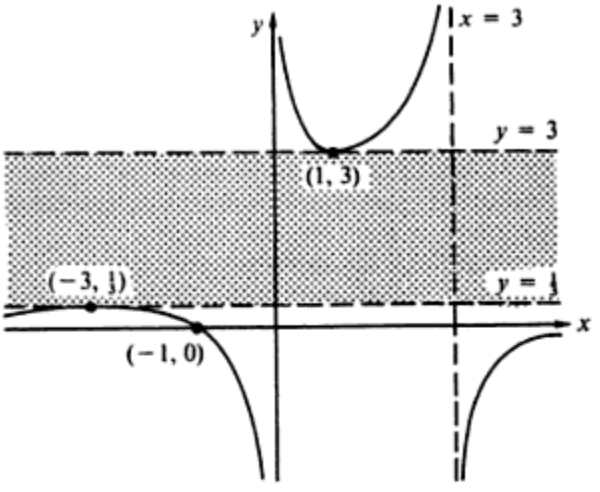
Thus as $x \to +\infty$, $y \to 0^-$; as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to 0^+$

y undefined $x = 0$ and $x = 3$ are vertical asymptotes.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Max/min When $y = \frac{1}{3}$, $x = -3$
max at $(-3, \frac{1}{3})$;
when $y = 3$, $x = 1$
min at $(1, 3)$

The sketch can then be completed.



Note For some sketches it can also be useful to determine the sign of the function throughout its domain by constructing a table. For the last function, remembering that $f(x)$ can only change sign where the curve cuts the x-axis (i.e. $x = -1$) and at vertical asymptotes (i.e. $x = 0$ and $x = 3$), the table would be as shown on the right.

	$x < -1$	$-1 < x < 0$	$0 < x < 3$	$x > 3$
$3x + 3$	−ve	+ve	+ve	+ve
x	−ve	−ve	+ve	+ve
$3 - x$	+ve	+ve	+ve	−ve
$\frac{3x + 3}{x(3 - x)}$	+ve	−ve	+ve	−ve

The reader should verify that these results agree with the sketch.

Example 4

Sketch the curve given by $y = \dfrac{(x - 5)(x - 1)}{(x + 1)(x - 3)}$

Note that the R.H.S. is an improper fraction.

If $y = \dfrac{(x - 5)(x - 1)}{(x + 1)(x - 3)}$ ... [1] then $y = \dfrac{x^2 - 6x + 5}{x^2 - 2x - 3}$ ... [2]

and $y = 1 + \dfrac{8 - 4x}{x^2 - 2x - 3}$ ... [3]

Range of values of y From [2], $(y - 1)x^2 + 2x(3 - y) - 3y - 5 = 0$

For $y \neq 1$, this is a quadratic in x.
Thus, for real x,

$$[2(3 - y)]^2 - 4(y - 1)(-3y - 5) \geqslant 0$$

i.e. $y^2 - y + 1 \geqslant 0$

or $(y - \frac{1}{2})^2 + \frac{3}{4} \geqslant 0$

which is true for all real y

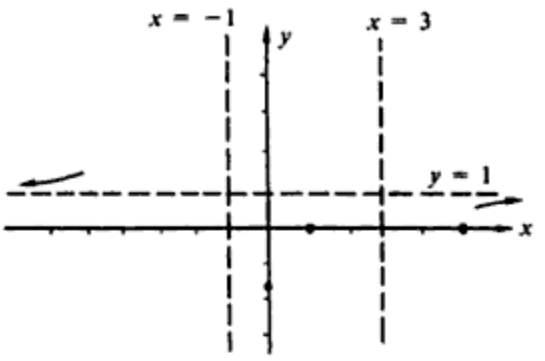
Thus there is no restriction on y.

For $y = 1$, $4x - 8 = 0$,
$x = 2$
$\therefore$ y can equal 1.

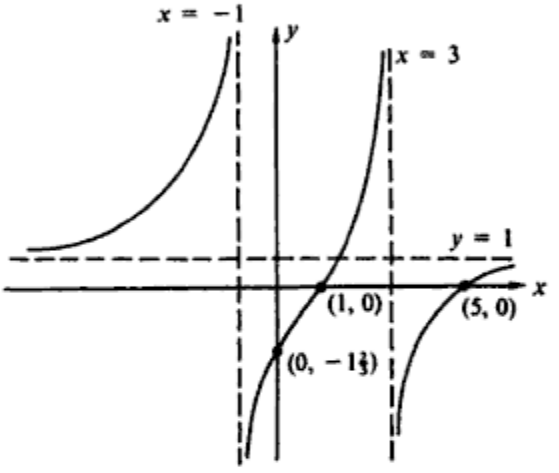
Note also that, for each value of y, there will exist two real distinct values of x, except where $y = 1$ for which there is one value for x, i.e. $x = 2$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

x-axis	Cuts x-axis at (1, 0) and (5, 0) (from [1])
y-axis	Cuts y-axis at $(0, -1\frac{2}{3})$ (from [2])
$x \to \pm\infty$	As $x \to \pm\infty$, $y \to 1 - \dfrac{4x}{x^2}$ (from [3]) $\therefore$ as $x \to +\infty$ $y \to 1^-$ as $x \to -\infty$ $y \to 1^+$ (see note below)
y undefined	$x = -1$ and $x = 3$ are vertical asymptotes (from [1])
Max/min	Range of values suggest no max/min.



The sketch can then be completed:



Note Alternatively, the horizontal asymptote could be determined by writing
$y = \dfrac{1 - 6/x + 5/x^2}{1 - 2/x - 3/x^2}$, then as $x \to \pm\infty$, $y \to 1$

Example 5

Sketch the curve given by $y = \dfrac{12}{x^2 + 2x - 3}$

If $y = \dfrac{12}{x^2 + 2x - 3}$ ... [1] then $y = \dfrac{12}{(x + 3)(x - 1)}$ ... [2]

Range of values of y From [1], $x^2y + 2xy - 3y - 12 = 0$

For $y \neq 0$, this is a quadratic in x.
Thus, for real x, $4y^2 - 4y(-3y - 12) \geqslant 0$
i.e. $y(y + 3) \geqslant 0$

For $y = 0$, we obtain $-12 = 0$ which is impossible.
$\therefore$ $y \neq 0$.

	$y < -3$	$-3 < y < 0$	$y > 0$
y	−ve	−ve	+ve
$y + 3$	−ve	+ve	+ve
$y(y + 3)$	+ve	−ve	+ve

i.e. $y \leqslant -3, y \geqslant 0$

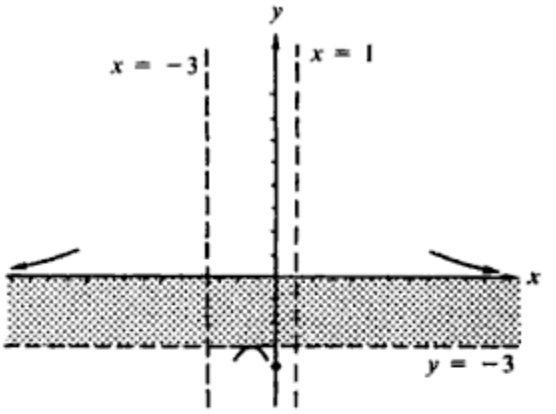
$\therefore$ the ranges of values y can take for real x are: $y \leqslant -3$, $y > 0$.

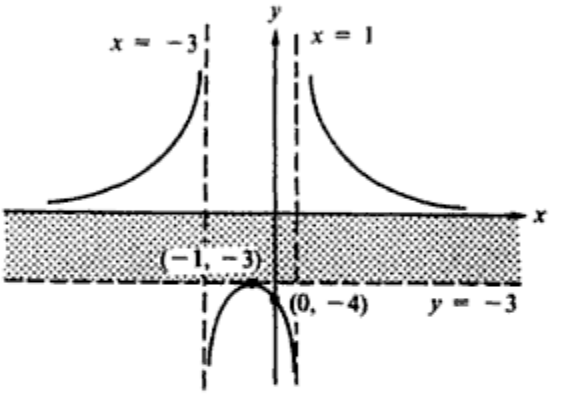
$y = -3$ will be a local maximum and for the remainder of the range there will be two distinct real values of x for each value of y.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

x-axis	No x-axis intercept
y-axis	Cuts y-axis at $(0, -4)$
$x \to \pm\infty$	As $x \to \pm\infty$, $y \to \dfrac{12}{x^2}$ (from [1])
	$\therefore$ as $x \to +\infty$, $y \to 0^+$ as $x \to -\infty$, $y \to 0^+$
y undefined	$x = -3$ and $x = 1$ are vertical asymptotes (from [2])
Max/min	When $y = -3$, $x = -1$. Max at $(-1, -3)$

The sketch can then be completed.





Note Alternatively the method of section 11.4 page 288 could have been used for this

Example 6

Sketch the curve given by $y = \dfrac{2 - 3x}{x^2 + 3x + 3}$

In this case the denominator does not factorise.

Range of values of y From $y = \dfrac{2 - 3x}{x^2 + 3x + 3}$, we have $x^2y + 3x(y + 1) + 3y - 2 = 0$

For $y \neq 0$, this is a quadratic in x.
Thus, for real x, $[3(y + 1)]^2 - 4y(3y - 2) \geqslant 0$
i.e. $(3y + 1)(y - 9) \leqslant 0$

	$y < -\frac{1}{3}$	$-\frac{1}{3} < y < 9$	$y > 9$
$3y + 1$	−ve	+ve	+ve
$y - 9$	−ve	−ve	+ve
$(3y + 1)(y - 9)$	+ve	−ve	+ve

i.e. $-\frac{1}{3} \leqslant y \leqslant 9$

For $y = 0$, $3x = 2$
$x = \frac{2}{3}$
$\therefore$ y can equal zero.

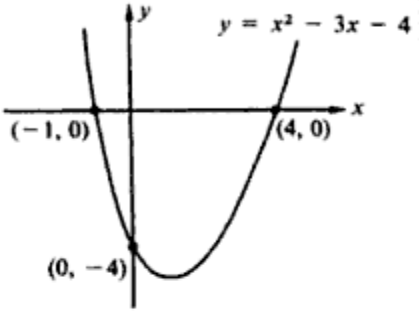
$\therefore$ the range of values y can take for real x is $-\frac{1}{3} \leqslant y \leqslant 9$.
$y = -\frac{1}{3}$ will be a minimum and $y = 9$ a maximum. For every other value of y in the permitted range there will correspond two distinct values for x except $y = 0$ for which there is one value of x, i.e. $x = \frac{2}{3}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

14.2 Inequalities

We saw in chapter 5 that, for a quadratic inequality, say $x^2 - 3x - 4 < 0$, the range of values that x can take can be found by sketching, by completing the square, or by considering the signs of the factors:

Sketching



Thus for $x^2 - 3x - 4 < 0$,
$-1 < x < 4$

Completing the square

$$x^2 - 3x - 4 < 0$$
$$(x - \tfrac{3}{2})^2 - \tfrac{9}{4} - 4 < 0$$
$$(x - \tfrac{3}{2})^2 < \tfrac{25}{4}$$
$$-\tfrac{5}{2} < (x - \tfrac{3}{2}) < \tfrac{5}{2}$$
giving $-1 < x < 4$

Signs of the factors

$$x^2 - 3x - 4 < 0$$
$$\therefore \quad (x - 4)(x + 1) < 0$$

	$x < -1$	$-1 < x < 4$	$x > 4$
$x - 4$	−ve	−ve	+ve
$x + 1$	−ve	+ve	+ve
$(x - 4)(x + 1)$	+ve	−ve	+ve

$\therefore \quad -1 < x < 4$

Similar techniques can be used to find the range of possible values x can take in more complicated inequalities, as the following examples show.

Example 8

Find the range (or ranges) of values that x can take if $x - 2 < \dfrac{8}{x}$.

By sketching

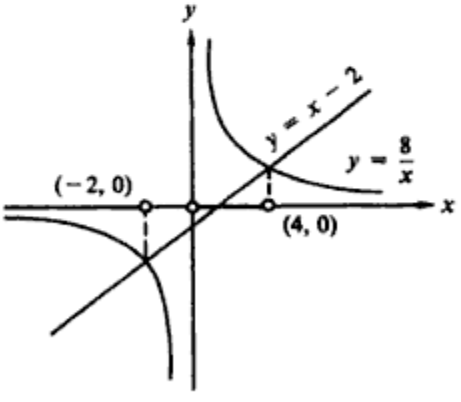
In this method we sketch $y = x - 2$ and $y = \dfrac{8}{x}$ on the same graph.

Important points will be where these lines meet.

At points of intersection $x - 2 = \dfrac{8}{x}$ which, provided $x \neq 0$, gives $x^2 - 2x - 8 = 0$ giving $x = -2$ or $x = 4$.

For $x - 2 < \dfrac{8}{x}$, we look for x values for which the line $y = x - 2$ is 'lower' than the curve $y = \dfrac{8}{x}$. (The relevant parts of the x-axis are shown in heavy type on the sketch.)

Thus for $x - 2 < \dfrac{8}{x}$ we must have $x < -2$ or $0 < x < 4$.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

By calculation $\quad x - 2 < \frac{8}{x}$

i.e. $\quad x - 2 - \frac{8}{x} < 0 \quad$ or $\quad \frac{(x-4)(x+2)}{x} < 0.$

Now the function $y = f(x)$ may change sign as the graph of $y = f(x)$ cuts the x-axis and at vertical asymptotes. Thus for $y = \frac{(x-4)(x+2)}{x}$, the critical values of x are 4, -2 and 0. We can then construct a table from which we can see that $\frac{(x-4)(x+2)}{x} < 0$ for $x < -2$ and for $0 < x < 4$.

	$x < -2$	$-2 < x < 0$	$0 < x < 4$	$x > 4$
$x - 4$	$-$ve	$-$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve
$x + 2$	$-$ve	$+$ve	$+$ve	$+$ve
x	$-$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve	$+$ve
y	$-$ve	$+$ve	$-$ve	$+$ve

Example 9

Find the solution set of the inequality $\frac{x+4}{x+1} < \frac{x-2}{x-4}$.

By sketching:

The graphical solution is obtained by sketching $y = \frac{x+4}{x+1}$ and $y = \frac{x-2}{x-4}$ on the same axes.

The sketch can be made using the methods developed earlier in this chapter. Notice that the two curves will intersect where

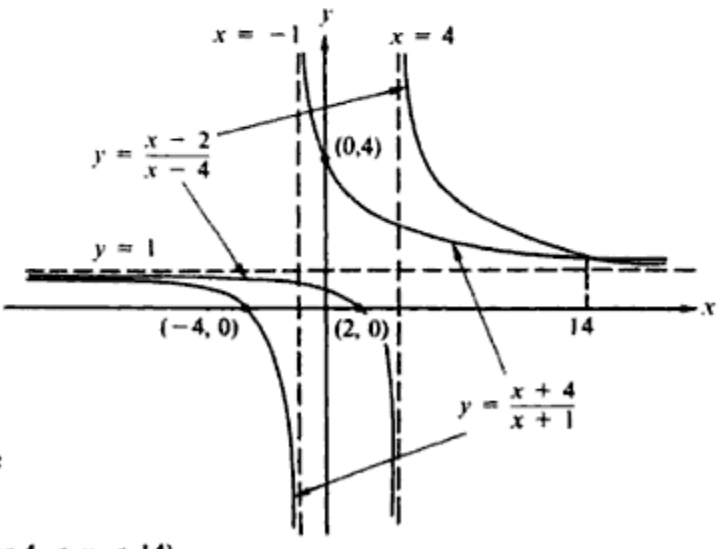
$x^2 - 16 = (x-2)(x+1),$

i.e. $\quad x = 14.$

For $\frac{x+4}{x+1} < \frac{x-2}{x-4}$, we look for values of x for which the curve $y = \frac{x+4}{x+1}$ is 'lower' than the curve $y = \frac{x-2}{x-4}$.

Thus for $\frac{x+4}{x+1} < \frac{x-2}{x-4}$ we must have $x < -1$ or $4 < x < 14$,

i.e. the solution set is $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x < -1 \text{ or } 4 < x < 14\}$.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

By calculation: $\dfrac{x+4}{x+1} < \dfrac{x-2}{x-4}$ i.e. $\dfrac{x+4}{x+1} - \dfrac{x-2}{x-4} < 0$

or $\dfrac{x-14}{(x+1)(x-4)} < 0$

	$x < -1$	$-1 < x < 4$	$4 < x < 14$	$x > 14$
$x - 14$	−ve	−ve	−ve	+ve
$x + 1$	−ve	+ve	+ve	+ve
$x - 4$	−ve	−ve	+ve	+ve
$\dfrac{x-14}{(x+1)(x-4)}$	−ve	+ve	−ve	+ve

Thus for $\dfrac{x+4}{x+1} < \dfrac{x-2}{x-4}$, we must have $x < -1$ or $4 < x < 14$, or in set notation $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x < -1 \text{ or } 4 < x < 14\}$.

Example 10

Find the range (or ranges) of values x can take if $\dfrac{x-2}{x^2-x+1} > 0$.

Since $x^2 - x + 1 = (x - \frac{1}{2})^2 + \frac{3}{4}$, the denominator of $\dfrac{x-2}{x^2-x+1}$ is always positive. Thus the sign of $\dfrac{x-2}{x^2-x+1}$ depends on the sign of the numerator, $x - 2$.

Now $x - 2 > 0$ if $x > 2$, hence

$$\frac{x-2}{x^2-x+1} > 0 \quad \text{if} \quad x > 2.$$

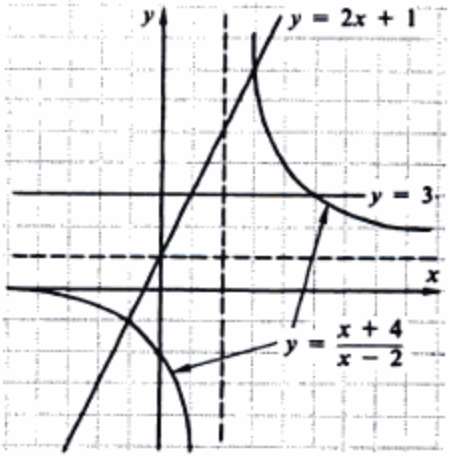
This result, as the reader can verify, can also be obtained by sketching.

Modulus inequalities

Simple modulus inequalities have been solved on page 4.
For example, we know that $|3x + 1| > 8$
means that $3x + 1 < -8$ or $3x + 1 > 8$
i.e. $x < -3$ or $x > 2\frac{1}{3}$
In order to solve more complicated modulus inequalities, we need other techniques as shown in the following examples.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 14B



1. The graph shows the lines $y = 2x + 1$, $y = 3$ and $y = \dfrac{x+4}{x-2}$.
Use the graph to find the solution sets of the following inequalities.
(a) $\dfrac{x+4}{x-2} < 3$,
(b) $2x + 1 > \dfrac{x+4}{x-2}$.

For each of the inequalities in questions **2** to **27**, find the range (or ranges) of values x can take for the inequality to be true.

2. $(2x - 3)^2 > 1$ **3.** $(x - 1)^2 < 7 - x$ **4.** $x + 2 > \dfrac{15}{x}$

5. $13 > 2x + \dfrac{15}{x}$ **6.** $\dfrac{7}{4 - x} > 2$ **7.** $x < \dfrac{8}{x - 2}$

8. $x^4 - 10x^2 + 9 > 0$ **9.** $4x^4 - 17x^2 + 4 < 0$ **10.** $\dfrac{3x + 2}{x - 2} > 1$

11. $\dfrac{3x - 10}{x - 4} < 2$ **12.** $\dfrac{3x + 1}{2x - 5} < 1$ **13.** $x > \dfrac{4 - x}{x - 1}$

14. $x < \dfrac{4x}{x + 1}$ **15.** $\dfrac{x^2 + 3}{x - 1} > 6$ **16.** $\dfrac{x + 1}{x^2 + x + 1} > 0$

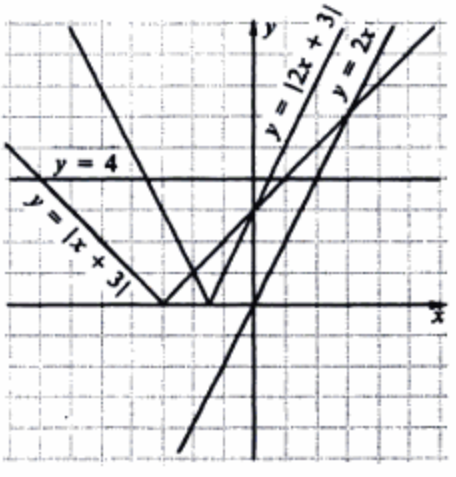
17. $x - 2 < \dfrac{6 - x}{x}$ **18.** $\dfrac{(x - 6)(x + 1)}{x} > -4$ **19.** $x - 2 < \dfrac{6x - 9}{x + 2}$

20. $\dfrac{3 - x}{x - 8} < \dfrac{1}{x}$ **21.** $\dfrac{x - 2}{x + 1} > \dfrac{x - 6}{x - 2}$ **22.** $\dfrac{x + 1}{x - 1} < \dfrac{x + 3}{x + 2}$

23. $\dfrac{2x + 3}{x + 4} > \dfrac{x}{x - 2}$ **24.** $\dfrac{3x - 8}{2x - 1} > \dfrac{x - 4}{x + 1}$ **25.** $\dfrac{3x}{x - 8} < \dfrac{2x - 1}{x - 5}$

26. $\dfrac{x}{4x - 8} < \dfrac{1}{x}$ **27.** $\dfrac{x - 1}{x} > \dfrac{2}{3 - x}$

28. The graph shows the lines $y = |2x + 3|$, $y = 2x$, $y = |x + 3|$ and $y = 4$. Use the graph to find the solution sets of the following inequalities.
(a) $|x + 3| < 4$,
(b) $2x > |x + 3|$,
(c) $|2x + 3| > |x + 3|$.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

For each of the inequalities in questions **29** to **43**, find the range (or ranges) of values x can take for the inequality to be true.

29. $|2x - 3| > 5$ **30.** $|4x + 2| < x + 8$ **31.** $|2x + 1| > x + 5$

32. $|x| > |2x + 3|$ **33.** $|2x + 5| > |x + 1|$ **34.** $|2x - 3| > 4|x|$

35. $|x + 1| > |x - 3|$ **36.** $6 - x > |3x - 2|$ **37.** $3|x + 5| > |x + 3|$

38. $3|x - 1| < |x - 3|$ **39.** $2|x - 3| > |x|$ **40.** $|x| > 2|x + 1|$

41. $\left|\dfrac{x}{x-3}\right| < 2$ **42.** $\left|\dfrac{x}{x-3}\right| < x$ **43.** $\left|\dfrac{2x-4}{x+1}\right| < 4$

Exercise 14C Examination questions

1. Sketch the curve $y = \dfrac{1}{1+x}$.

Determine (i) the equation of the tangent to the curve at the point where $x = 0$;

(ii) the equation of the other tangent to the curve which is parallel to the tangent in part (i). (S.U.J.B.)

2. Sketch the curve $y = \dfrac{x}{x-1}$. Find the ranges of values of x for which $\dfrac{x}{x-1} > -1$. (Oxford)

3. Sketch the curve

$$y = \frac{x}{x-2}$$

and write down the equation of its mirror image in the y-axis. (London)

4. State the equations of the asymptotes of the graph of the function

$$f\colon\ x \to \frac{3x}{x-2},$$

where $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x \neq 2$.

Sketch the graph of the function showing clearly the asymptotes. (London)

5. Prove that the function $y = \dfrac{9}{x+2} - \dfrac{1}{x}$ has a maximum value at $x = 1$.

Find the value of x for which y has a minimum value.

SKETCH the graph of the function. (Graph paper is not required—a sketch showing the main relevant features will suffice.)

Prove that the x-coordinate of any point of inflexion on the graph will be a solution of the equation $(x + 2)^3 = 9x^3$. (You are NOT asked to solve this equation.) (S.U.J.B.)

6. Show that, for real x,

$$-\frac{1}{4} \leqslant \frac{x}{x^2+4} \leqslant \frac{1}{4}.$$

Sketch the curve $y = \dfrac{x}{x^2+4}$, showing the coordinates of the turning points. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

7. Given that $y(x - 1) = x^2 + 3$, where x is real, show that y cannot take any value between -2 and 6.
Find the equations of the asymptotes of the curve

$$y = \frac{x^2 + 3}{x - 1}$$

and sketch the curve, showing the coordinates of the turning points.
(Cambridge)

8. In each of the following cases, determine the range of values of x for which
(i) $1 - 2x > 0$,
(ii) $(x + 1)(x - 2) > 0$,
(iii) $\dfrac{(x + 1)(x - 2)}{1 - 2x} > 0$. (Cambridge)

9. Find the set of real values of x for which
$|x - 2| > 2|x + 1|$. (London)

10. Find the set of values of x for which
$|x - 1| - |2x + 1| > 0$. (London)

11. Given that $y = \dfrac{3x + k}{x^2 - 1}$, where x is real and k is a constant, show that y can take all real values if $|k| < 3$. (London)

12. Find the ranges of values of x which satisfy the inequalities
(a) $x^2 - 3x < 0$,
(b) $\dfrac{2}{x - 1} < x$. (A.E.B.)

13. Obtain the set of values of x for which

$$\frac{1}{x - 2} > \frac{1}{x + 2},$$ (London)

14. Find, in each case, the set of values of x for which
(i) $x(x - 2) > x + 4$,
(ii) $x - 2 > \dfrac{x + 4}{x}$, (Cambridge)

15. Find the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = x(x - 3)$ at the point $P(2, -2)$. Using the same axes sketch the curve and the tangent at P.
Using sketches, or otherwise, find the values of x for which
(a) $x(x - 3) \leqslant x - 4$,
(b) $x - 3 < \dfrac{x - 4}{x}$,
(c) $\dfrac{1}{x - 3} < \dfrac{x}{x - 4}$. (London)

16. Given that $y(x^2 - 4) = 2x + 5$ where x is real, prove that y cannot take any value in the range $-1 < y < -\frac{1}{4}$.
Sketch the graph of the curve with equation $y = \dfrac{2x + 5}{x^2 - 4}$, indicating clearly the asymptotes.
Calculate the ranges of values of x for which $\left|\dfrac{2x + 5}{x^2 - 4}\right| \geqslant \frac{1}{3}$. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

15
Trigonometry II

15.1 Sum and product formulae

We saw in section 4.7, that

$$\sin(A + B) = \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B \quad \ldots [1]$$

and

$$\sin(A - B) = \sin A \cos B - \cos A \sin B \quad \ldots [2]$$

adding these we get $\sin(A + B) + \sin(A - B) = 2 \sin A \cos B$ ... [3]

and subtracting we get $\sin(A + B) - \sin(A - B) = 2 \cos A \sin B.$ ... [4]

If we write $C = A + B$ and $D = A - B$, then $A = \dfrac{C + D}{2}$ and $B = \dfrac{C - D}{2}$

and we then have

$$\sin C + \sin D = 2 \sin \frac{C + D}{2} \cos \frac{C - D}{2}$$

and

$$\sin C - \sin D = 2 \cos \frac{C + D}{2} \sin \frac{C - D}{2}$$

We can, in a similar way, use the expansions of $\cos(A \pm B)$,

i.e.

$$\cos(A + B) = \cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B \quad \ldots [5]$$

and

$$\cos(A - B) = \cos A \cos B + \sin A \sin B, \quad \ldots [6]$$

to give

$$\cos C + \cos D = 2 \cos \frac{C + D}{2} \cos \frac{C - D}{2}$$

and

$$\cos C - \cos D = -2 \sin \frac{C + D}{2} \sin \frac{C - D}{2}$$

These four results should be memorised:

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \sin C + \sin D &= 2 \sin \frac{C + D}{2} \cos \frac{C - D}{2} \\ \sin C - \sin D &= 2 \cos \frac{C + D}{2} \sin \frac{C - D}{2} \\ \cos C + \cos D &= 2 \cos \frac{C + D}{2} \cos \frac{C - D}{2} \\ \cos C - \cos D &= -2 \sin \frac{C + D}{2} \sin \frac{C - D}{2} \end{aligned}}$$

Note carefully the pattern which runs through these identities and also the negative sign which appears on the right-hand side of the last one.

Example 1

Prove that $\dfrac{\sin 5A - \sin 3A}{\cos 3A + \cos 5A} = \tan A.$

Applying the above results: $\dfrac{\sin 5A - \sin 3A}{\cos 3A + \cos 5A} = \dfrac{2 \cos \dfrac{5A + 3A}{2} \sin \dfrac{5A - 3A}{2}}{2 \cos \dfrac{3A + 5A}{2} \cos \dfrac{3A - 5A}{2}}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$= \frac{2\cos 4A \sin A}{2\cos 4A \cos(-A)}$$

$$= \frac{\sin A}{\cos A} \quad \text{since} \quad \cos(-A) = \cos A$$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{\sin 5A - \sin 3A}{\cos 3A + \cos 5A} = \tan A \quad \text{as required.}$$

Note It is also useful to be able to use these four standard results the other way round, i.e. to express products as sums or differences.

From equations [3], [4], [5] and [6], we can write:

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} 2\sin A \cos B &= \sin(A+B) + \sin(A-B) \\ 2\cos A \sin B &= \sin(A+B) - \sin(A-B) \\ 2\cos A \cos B &= \cos(A+B) + \cos(A-B) \\ 2\sin A \sin B &= \cos(A-B) - \cos(A+B) \end{aligned}}$$

Note very carefully the similarities, and also the differences, between these four relations and the previous ones.

Example 2

Prove $\dfrac{\sin 8\theta \cos\theta - \sin 6\theta \cos 3\theta}{\cos 2\theta \cos\theta - \sin 3\theta \sin 4\theta} = \tan 2\theta.$

$$\frac{\sin 8\theta \cos\theta - \sin 6\theta \cos 3\theta}{\cos 2\theta \cos\theta - \sin 3\theta \sin 4\theta} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}(\sin 9\theta + \sin 7\theta) - \frac{1}{2}(\sin 9\theta + \sin 3\theta)}{\frac{1}{2}(\cos 3\theta + \cos\theta) - \frac{1}{2}(\cos\theta - \cos 7\theta)}$$

$$= \frac{\sin 7\theta - \sin 3\theta}{\cos 3\theta + \cos 7\theta}$$

$$= \frac{2\cos 5\theta \sin 2\theta}{2\cos 5\theta \cos 2\theta}$$

$$= \frac{\sin 2\theta}{\cos 2\theta}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{\sin 8\theta \cos\theta - \sin 6\theta \cos 3\theta}{\cos 2\theta \cos\theta - \sin 3\theta \sin 4\theta} = \tan 2\theta$$

Example 3

Solve the equation $\sin x + \sin 5x = \sin 3x$ for $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$.

$$\sin x + \sin 5x = \sin 3x$$

$\therefore \quad 2\sin 3x \cos 2x = \sin 3x$

hence $\quad \sin 3x(2\cos 2x - 1) = 0$

$\therefore \quad \sin 3x = 0$, which gives $\quad 3x = 0°, 180°, 360°, 540°, \ldots$

i.e. $\quad x = 0°, 60°, 120°, 180°, \ldots$

or $\quad \cos 2x = \frac{1}{2}$, which gives $\quad 2x = 60°, 300°, 420°, \ldots$

i.e. $\quad x = 30°, 150°, 210°, \ldots$

Thus, solutions in the range $0° \leqslant x \leqslant 180°$ are $x = 0°, 30°, 60°, 120°, 150°, 180°$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Also $a \cos x - b \sin x = \sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}\left[\dfrac{a}{\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}} \cos x - \dfrac{b}{\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}} \sin x\right]$

$$= \sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}[\cos x \cos \alpha - \sin x \sin \alpha]$$

$$= \sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}\cos (x + \alpha) \quad \text{where} \quad \tan \alpha = \frac{b}{a}.$$

Example 4

Express (a) $4 \cos x - 5 \sin x$ in the form $R \cos (x + \alpha)$,
(b) $2 \sin x + 5 \cos x$ in the form $R \sin (x + \alpha)$.

(a) $4 \cos x - 5 \sin x$

Now $\sqrt{(4^2 + 5^2)} = \sqrt{41}$, and so we write

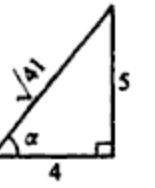
$$4 \cos x - 5 \sin x = \sqrt{41}\left[\frac{4}{\sqrt{41}} \cos x - \frac{5}{\sqrt{41}} \sin x\right]$$

$$= \sqrt{41}(\cos x \cos \alpha - \sin x \sin \alpha)$$

where α is given by:

$$= \sqrt{41} \cos (x + \alpha) \quad \text{where} \quad \tan \alpha = \tfrac{5}{4}$$

thus $4 \cos x - 5 \sin x = \sqrt{41} \cos (x + 51{\cdot}34^\circ)$



(b) $2 \sin x + 5 \cos x$

Now $\sqrt{(2^2 + 5^2)} = \sqrt{29}$, and so we write

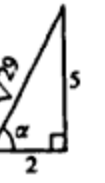
$$2 \sin x + 5 \cos x = \sqrt{29}\left[\frac{2}{\sqrt{29}} \sin x + \frac{5}{\sqrt{29}} \cos x\right]$$

$$= \sqrt{29}(\sin x \cos \alpha + \cos x \sin \alpha)$$

where α is given by:

$$= \sqrt{29} \sin (x + \alpha) \quad \text{where} \quad \tan \alpha = \tfrac{5}{2}$$

thus $2 \sin x + 5 \cos x = \sqrt{29} \sin (x + 68{\cdot}20^\circ)$



Example 5

Find the maximum value of $24 \sin \theta - 7 \cos \theta$ and the smallest positive value of θ that gives this maximum value.

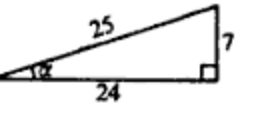
Now $\sqrt{(24^2 + 7^2)} = 25$ and so we write

$$24 \sin \theta - 7 \cos \theta = 25\left[\frac{24}{25} \sin \theta - \frac{7}{25} \cos \theta\right]$$

$$= 25(\sin \theta \cos \alpha - \cos \theta \sin \alpha)$$

where α is given by:

$$= 25 \sin (\theta - 16{\cdot}26^\circ)$$



Hence the maximum value of $24 \sin \theta - 7 \cos \theta$ is 25 and this occurs when $(\theta - 16{\cdot}26^\circ) = 90^\circ$, i.e. when $\theta = 106{\cdot}26^\circ$

Example 6

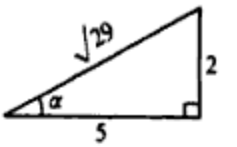
Solve $5 \cos x - 2 \sin x = 2$ for $-180^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 180^\circ$.

Now $\sqrt{(5^2 + 2^2)} = \sqrt{29}$ and so we rearrange the equation to:

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

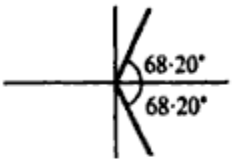
$$\frac{5}{\sqrt{29}}\cos x - \frac{2}{\sqrt{29}}\sin x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{29}}$$

$\therefore \quad \cos x \cos \alpha - \sin x \sin \alpha = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{29}}$ where α is given by:



i.e. $\quad \cos(x + 21{\cdot}80^\circ) = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{29}}$

Now $\quad \cos^{-1}\left(\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{29}}\right) = 68{\cdot}20^\circ$ and a positive cosine gives:

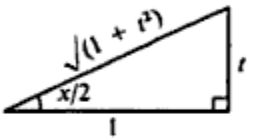


Thus $\quad x + 21{\cdot}80^\circ = 68{\cdot}20^\circ$ or $x + 21{\cdot}80^\circ = -68{\cdot}20^\circ$

i.e. $\quad x = 46{\cdot}40^\circ$ or $x = -90^\circ$.

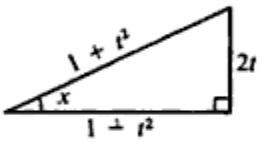
The *t*-substitution

Equations of the type encountered in Example 6 (i.e. $a \cos x + b \sin x = c$) can also be solved by using the substitution $t = \tan \frac{x}{2}$:



Then since $\tan 2A = \dfrac{2 \tan A}{1 - \tan^2 A}$,

it follows that $\tan x = \dfrac{2t}{1 - t^2}$ i.e.



$$\boxed{\text{Thus, when } t = \tan\frac{x}{2},\ \sin x = \frac{2t}{1+t^2} \text{ and } \cos x = \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}.}$$

Example 7

Solve the equation $5 \cos x - 2 \sin x = 2$ for $-180^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 180^\circ$ using the substitution $t = \tan \frac{x}{2}$.

Substituting $t = \tan \frac{x}{2}$, i.e. $\cos x = \dfrac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2}$ and $\sin x = \dfrac{2t}{1 + t^2}$

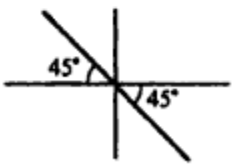
$$5\left(\frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}\right) - 2\left(\frac{2t}{1+t^2}\right) = 2$$

$$5 - 5t^2 - 4t = 2 + 2t^2$$

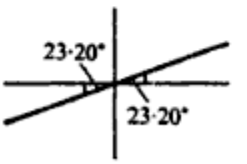
i.e. $\quad 7t^2 + 4t - 3 = 0$

giving $\quad t = -1$ or $t = \frac{3}{7}$

hence $\quad \tan \frac{x}{2} = -1$



or $\quad \tan \frac{x}{2} = \frac{3}{7}$



i.e. $\quad \frac{x}{2} = -45^\circ, 135^\circ, \ldots$

$\quad x = -90^\circ, 270^\circ, \ldots$

i.e. $\quad \frac{x}{2} = -156{\cdot}80^\circ, 23{\cdot}20^\circ, \ldots$

$\quad x = -313{\cdot}60^\circ, 46{\cdot}40^\circ, \ldots$

The solutions in the range $-180^\circ \leqslant x \leqslant 180^\circ$ are $x = -90^\circ, 46{\cdot}40^\circ$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Note also that α and β must each be between 0 and $\pi/4$ because they are inverse tangents of positive numbers less than one. Thus we expect $(\alpha + \beta)$ to be between 0 and $\pi/2$.

Now
$$\tan(\alpha + \beta) = \frac{\tan\alpha + \tan\beta}{1 - \tan\alpha\tan\beta}$$
$$= \frac{\sqrt{3}/2 + \sqrt{3}/5}{1 - (\sqrt{3}/2)(\sqrt{3}/5)}$$
$$= \sqrt{3}$$
$$\therefore \quad \alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{3}$$
$$\therefore \quad \tan^{-1}\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \tan^{-1}\frac{\sqrt{3}}{5} = \frac{\pi}{3}.$$

Example 11

Find a positive value of x that satisfies the equation

$\tan^{-1} 3x + \tan^{-1} x = \frac{\pi}{4}$, giving your answer correct to 3 decimal places.

Let $\alpha = \tan^{-1} 3x$ i.e. $\tan\alpha = 3x$
and $\beta = \tan^{-1} x$ i.e. $\tan\beta = x$

Thus $\alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{4}$

$$\therefore \quad \tan(\alpha + \beta) = \tan\frac{\pi}{4} = 1 \qquad \ldots [1]$$
$$\frac{\tan\alpha + \tan\beta}{1 - \tan\alpha\tan\beta} = 1$$
$$\frac{3x + x}{1 - (3x)(x)} = 1$$
$$\text{i.e.} \quad 3x^2 + 4x - 1 = 0$$

Solving this quadratic by the formula and taking the positive root gives $x = 0{\cdot}215$.

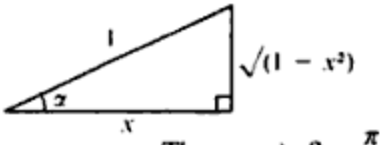
Note: The negative solution of the equation $3x^2 + 4x - 1 = 0$, i.e. $x = -1{\cdot}55$, does not satisfy the equation $\tan^{-1} 3x + \tan^{-1} x = \pi/4$, as can be verified using a calculator. This 'other solution' arises because, for $\alpha + \beta = \pi/4$, we have said $\tan(\alpha + \beta) = \tan\pi/4 = 1$, see [1] above. However $\tan(\alpha + \beta)$ equals 1 for values of $(\alpha + \beta)$ other than the $\pi/4$ value we require it to be. Hence the 'solution' $-1{\cdot}55$ arises but must be discarded as it does not satisfy the orginal equation we are asked to solve. When solving equations of this type it is advisable to check that the solutions obtained do satisfy the equation.

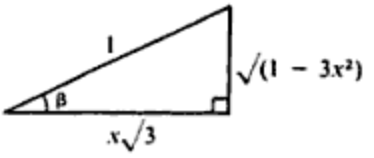
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 12

Solve the equation $\cos^{-1} x + \cos^{-1}(x\sqrt{3}) = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

Let $\alpha = \cos^{-1} x$ i.e. $\cos\alpha = x$ and $\beta = \cos^{-1}(x\sqrt{3})$ i.e. $\cos\beta = x\sqrt{3}$





Thus $\alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{2}$

Taking the cosine of both sides of this equation, (we choose the cosine as $\cos \pi/2 = 0$)

$$\text{gives} \quad \cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos\frac{\pi}{2} = 0$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta = 0$$

$$x \times x\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{[(1 - x^2)(1 - 3x^2)]} = 0$$

$$x^2\sqrt{3} = \sqrt{(1 - 4x^2 + 3x^4)}$$

Squaring both sides of this equation:

$$3x^4 = 1 - 4x^2 + 3x^4$$

$$\therefore \quad 4x^2 = 1 \quad \text{giving} \quad x = \pm\tfrac{1}{2}.$$

By substitution in the original equation it can be shown that $x = -\frac{1}{2}$ is not a possible solution for $\cos^{-1} x$ having a range $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$.
Thus the only solution of the equation is $x = \frac{1}{2}$.

Exercise 15C

1. Evaluate the following giving your answers in degrees (do not use a calculator).
   (a) $\sin^{-1} 0$ (b) $\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$ (c) $\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$ (d) $\sin^{-1}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)$
   (e) $\cos^{-1}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)$ (f) $\sin^{-1}\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$ (g) $\tan^{-1}(\sqrt{3})$ (h) $\tan^{-1}(-\sqrt{3})$
2. Evaluate the following giving your answers in radians (leave π in your answers and do not use a calculator).
   (a) $\sin^{-1} 1$ (b) $\sin^{-1}(-1)$ (c) $\cos^{-1}(\frac{1}{2})$ (d) $\cos^{-1}\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$
   (e) $\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$ (f) $\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)$ (g) $\sin^{-1}\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$ (h) $\cos^{-1}\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$
3. (a) Draw x- and y-axes using a scale of 2 cm to 1 unit and such that $-1 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$ and $-1 \leqslant y \leqslant 4$.
   (b) Copy and complete the following table of values for $y = \cos x$ with $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$. (Use a calculator to obtain the values of y.)

x rad	0	0·25	0·5	0·75	1	1·25	1·5	1·75	2	2·25	2·5	2·75	3	3·14 (i.e. π)
y (correct to 2 d.p's)	1	0·97	0·88									−0·92	−0·99	−1

   Hence draw the graph of $y = \cos x$ for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$.
   (c) By plotting (1, 0), (0·97, 0·25), (0·88, 0·5) etc. draw the graph of $y = \cos^{-1} x$ on the same pair of axes used for (b).

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. Without using a calculator find
   (a) $\sin\theta$ if $\theta = \sin^{-1}(\frac{3}{5}) + \sin^{-1}(\frac{5}{13})$
   (b) $\cos\theta$ if $\theta = \cos^{-1}(\frac{5}{13}) - \cos^{-1}(\frac{8}{17})$
   (c) $\tan\theta$ if $\theta = \tan^{-1}(\frac{3}{4}) + \tan^{-1}(\frac{7}{24})$
   (d) $\sin\theta$ if $\theta = \sin^{-1}(\frac{4}{5}) - \cos^{-1}(\frac{8}{17})$
   (e) $\cos\theta$ if $\theta = \cos^{-1}(\frac{24}{25}) - \sin^{-1}(\frac{12}{17})$
5. Evaluate the following. (Give your answers in terms of π and do not use a calculator).
   (a) $\sin^{-1}(\frac{1}{3}) + \cos^{-1}(\frac{1}{3})$
   (b) $2\tan^{-1}(\frac{1}{3}) + \tan^{-1}(\frac{1}{7})$
6. Prove that
   $\sin(2\sin^{-1}x + \cos^{-1}x) = \sqrt{(1 - x^2)}$
7. Without the use of a calculator show that
   $2\sin^{-1}(\frac{3}{5}) - \cos^{-1}(\frac{35}{37}) = \sin^{-1}(\frac{756}{625})$
8. Find a positive value of x that satisfies the equation
   $\tan^{-1}(3x) + \tan^{-1}(2x) = \frac{\pi}{4}$
9. Find, correct to three decimal places, a positive value of x that satisfies the equation
   $\tan^{-1}x + \tan^{-1}(2x) = \tan^{-1}2$
10. Solve the equation
    $\cos^{-1}x + \cos^{-1}(x\sqrt{8}) = \frac{\pi}{2}$
11. Solve the equation
    $2\sin^{-1}(x\sqrt{6}) + \sin^{-1}(4x) = \frac{\pi}{2}$
12. Solve the equation
    $2\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) + \sin^{-1}(x\sqrt{2}) = \frac{\pi}{2}$

15.4 General solutions

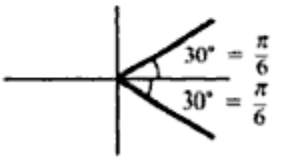
In all the trigonometric equations encountered so far in this book, the required solutions have been restricted to a given interval, say $-\pi$ to π or 0 to 2π, etc. Without such a restriction, there would be an infinite number of solutions. Nevertheless, it is useful to be able to give an expression for the general solution in terms of some letter, usually n. Then, by allowing n to take the integer values (i.e. $n \in \mathbb{Z}$), any particular solution of the equation can be obtained. We now consider three basic types of equation.

Type 1 $\cos\theta = \cos\alpha$

Example 13

Find the general solution of the equation $\cos\theta = \cos\pi/6$.

Now $\cos\pi/6 = \sqrt{3}/2$, and so we require all values of θ for which $\cos\theta = \sqrt{3}/2$.
We can show two solutions in the range $-\pi \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi$ in a diagram:



Other solutions will occur as we add or subtract multiples of 2π to these two solutions.
Thus the general solution of $\cos\theta = \cos\pi/6$ is $\theta = 2n\pi \pm \pi/6$ for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Extending this idea, we can say that the general solution of the equation $\cos\theta = \cos\alpha$ is $\theta = 2n\pi \pm \alpha$ for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ where α is in radians (or $360n^\circ \pm \alpha$ for α in degrees).

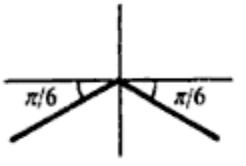
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

To determine the general solution to a trigonometrical equation, it is best to use the first principles method shown in the previous examples, i.e. determine the general solution from a diagram showing the solutions in the range $-\pi$ to π. However, for some types of equation the ability to quote and use the above standard results can lead to a very concise method of solution. The 'alternative solutions' given for examples 18 to 20 demonstrate this technique.

Example 16

Find the general solution of the equation $\sin 2\theta = -\frac{1}{2}$.

For $\sin\theta = -\frac{1}{2}$, we have two solutions in the range $-\pi \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi$ as shown:



Other solutions will occur as we add or subtract multiples of 2π to these.
Thus for $\sin 2\theta = -\frac{1}{2}$

$$2\theta = \begin{cases} 2n\pi - \pi/6 \\ 2n\pi + \pi + \pi/6 \end{cases} \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \theta = \begin{cases} n\pi - \pi/12 \\ n\pi + 7\pi/12 \end{cases}$$

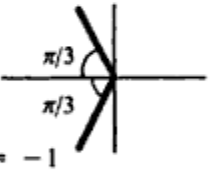
Example 17

Find the general solution to the equation $2\cos^2\theta + 3\cos\theta + 1 = 0$

$$2\cos^2\theta + 3\cos\theta + 1 = 0$$
$$\therefore \quad (2\cos\theta + 1)(\cos\theta + 1) = 0$$

i.e. $\cos\theta = -\frac{1}{2}$ or $\cos\theta = -1$

For $-\pi \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi$, solutions are as shown in the diagrams:



Other solutions will occur as we add or subtract multiples of 2π to these.

Thus, for $\cos\theta = -\frac{1}{2}$ and for $\cos\theta = -1$

$\theta = 2n\pi \pm 2\pi/3$ $\qquad$ $\theta = 2n\pi + \pi$

Thus $\quad \theta = 2n\pi \pm 2\pi/3, (2n+1)\pi$

Example 18

Find the general solution of the equation $\cos 5\theta = \cos 3\theta$.

If $\quad \cos 5\theta = \cos 3\theta$

then $\quad \cos 5\theta - \cos 3\theta = 0$

$$\therefore \quad -2\sin\frac{5\theta + 3\theta}{2}\sin\frac{5\theta - 3\theta}{2} = 0$$
$$-2\sin 4\theta \sin\theta = 0$$

Thus, either $\sin 4\theta = 0$ or $\sin\theta = 0$

For $-\pi \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi$, solutions for $\sin\theta = 0$ are as shown in the diagram:

Thus for $\sin 4\theta = 0$ and for $\sin\theta = 0$

$4\theta = n\pi$

$\theta = n\pi/4$ $\qquad$ $\theta = n\pi$

Now, as n takes the integer values, the solutions given by $n\pi/4$ will contain all those given by $n\pi$.

Thus the general solution of $\cos 5\theta = \cos 3\theta$ is $\theta = n\pi/4$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Alternative solution for $\cos 5\theta = \cos 3\theta$
From the summary on page 362

$\cos\theta = \cos\alpha$ has the general solution $\theta = 2n\pi \pm \alpha$

Thus $\cos 5\theta = \cos 3\theta$ has the general solution $5\theta = 2n\pi \pm 3\theta$

and either $5\theta = 2n\pi + 3\theta$ or $5\theta = 2n\pi - 3\theta$

$\theta = n\pi$ or $\theta = n\pi/4$

Thus, as before, the general solution is $\theta = n\pi/4$

Example 19

Find the general solution of the equation $\sin 5\theta = \cos 3\theta$.

If $\sin 5\theta = \cos 3\theta$

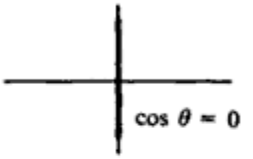
then $\sin 5\theta = \sin(\pi/2 - 3\theta)$

$\sin 5\theta - \sin(\pi/2 - 3\theta) = 0$

$\therefore \quad 2\cos(\theta + \pi/4)\sin(4\theta - \pi/4) = 0$

Thus either $\cos(\theta + \pi/4) = 0$ or $\sin(4\theta - \pi/4) = 0$

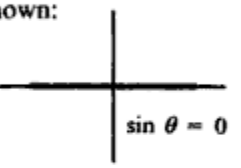
Solution for $\cos\theta = 0$ and $\sin\theta = 0$ are shown:



Thus for $\cos(\theta + \pi/4) = 0$ and for $\sin(4\theta - \pi/4) = 0$

$\theta + \pi/4 = n\pi + \pi/2$ $\quad 4\theta - \pi/4 = n\pi$

$\theta = n\pi + \pi/4$ or $\theta = n\pi/4 + \pi/16$



Alternative solution for $\sin 5\theta = \cos 3\theta$

$\sin 5\theta = \cos 3\theta$ can be written $\sin 5\theta = \sin(\pi/2 - 3\theta)$

From the summary on page 362

$$\sin\theta = \sin\alpha \text{ has the general solution } \theta = \begin{cases} 2n\pi + \alpha \\ (2n+1)\pi - \alpha \end{cases}$$

Thus $\sin 5\theta = \sin(\pi/2 - 3\theta)$ has the general solution

$$5\theta = \begin{cases} 2n\pi + \pi/2 - 3\theta \\ (2n+1)\pi - \pi/2 + 3\theta \end{cases}$$

and either $5\theta = 2n\pi + \pi/2 - 3\theta$ giving $\theta = n\pi/4 + \pi/16$

or $5\theta = 2n\pi + \pi/2 + 3\theta$ giving $\theta = n\pi + \pi/4$

Example 20

Find the general solution of the equation $\tan 5\theta = \tan(2\theta + \pi/6)$

$\tan 5\theta = \tan(2\theta + \pi/6)$ gives $\dfrac{\sin 5\theta}{\cos 5\theta} = \dfrac{\sin(2\theta + \pi/6)}{\cos(2\theta + \pi/6)}$

$\therefore \quad \sin 5\theta\cos(2\theta + \pi/6) - \cos 5\theta\sin(2\theta + \pi/6) = 0$

giving $\sin[5\theta - (2\theta + \pi/6)] = 0$

i.e. $\sin(3\theta - \pi/6) = 0$

Solutions for $\sin\theta = 0$ are as shown in the diagram:

Thus for $\sin(3\theta - \pi/6) = 0$

$3\theta - \pi/6 = n\pi$ giving $\theta = n\pi/3 + \pi/18$

Alternative solution for $\tan 5\theta = \tan(2\theta + \pi/6)$
From the summary on page 362

$\tan\theta = \tan\alpha$ has the general solution $\theta = n\pi + \alpha$

Thus $\tan 5\theta = \tan(2\theta + \pi/6)$ has the general solution $5\theta = n\pi + 2\theta + \pi/6$

i.e. $\theta = n\pi/3 + \pi/18$ as before.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Since $\cos\theta = \sqrt{(1 - \sin^2\theta)}$
$\approx \sqrt{(1 - \theta^2)}$ for small values of θ
$\approx 1 - \frac{1}{2}\theta^2$ expanding by the binomial theorem.

Thus we have, $\boxed{\text{for small } \theta\text{: } \sin\theta \approx \theta;\ \cos\theta \approx 1 - \tfrac{1}{2}\theta^2;\ \tan\theta \approx \theta}$

Note that these approximations depend upon θ being measured in radians.

Example 21

Find (a) $\lim\limits_{\theta\to 0}\left(\dfrac{\cos 2\theta - 1}{\theta \sin 5\theta}\right)$ (b) $\lim\limits_{\theta\to 0}\left(\dfrac{\sin 3\theta + \tan 5\theta}{2\theta}\right)$

(a) $\lim\limits_{\theta\to 0}\left(\dfrac{\cos 2\theta - 1}{\theta \sin 5\theta}\right)$

$= \dfrac{1 - \frac{1}{2}(2\theta)^2 - 1}{\theta(5\theta)}$

$= \dfrac{-2\theta^2}{5\theta^2} = -\dfrac{2}{5}$

(b) $\lim\limits_{\theta\to 0}\left(\dfrac{\sin 3\theta + \tan 5\theta}{2\theta}\right)$

$= \dfrac{3\theta + 5\theta}{2\theta}$

$= 4.$

Example 22

Find an expression, involving θ, that $\dfrac{21 + 7\tan\theta - 20\cos\theta}{1 + \sin 2\theta}$ approximates to for small values of θ.

Using the approximations for $\sin\theta$, $\cos\theta$ and $\tan\theta$,

$$\frac{21 + 7\tan\theta - 20\cos\theta}{1 + \sin 2\theta} \approx \frac{21 + 7\theta - 20(1 - \frac{1}{2}\theta^2)}{1 + 2\theta}$$

$$\approx \frac{1 + 7\theta + 10\theta^2}{1 + 2\theta}$$

$$\approx \frac{(1 + 2\theta)(1 + 5\theta)}{(1 + 2\theta)}$$

i.e. $\dfrac{21 + 7\tan\theta - 20\cos\theta}{1 + \sin 2\theta} \approx 1 + 5\theta.$

Exercise 15E

1. If θ is a small angle measured in radians approximate values for $\sin\theta$, $\cos\theta$ and $\tan\theta$ can be obtained using $\sin\theta \approx \theta$, $\tan\theta \approx \theta$ and $\cos\theta \approx 1 - \frac{1}{2}\theta^2$. More accurate values can be obtained using a calculator. Using these facts, copy and complete the following tables:

$\theta = 0{\cdot}1$ rad	$\sin\theta$	$\cos\theta$	$\tan\theta$
Approx. value			
Calculator value (correct to 4 decimal places)			

$\theta = 0{\cdot}02$ rad	$\sin\theta$	$\cos\theta$	$\tan\theta$
Approx. value			
Calculator value (correct to 4 decimal places)			

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2. Find (a) $\lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{\sin 2\theta}{\theta}$ (b) $\lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2\theta}$ (c) $\lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{4\theta}{\sin \theta}$ (d) $\lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{\tan 2\theta}{\sin \theta}$

3. Find the expressions involving θ that the following approximate to for small values of θ. (Do *not* ignore terms in θ^2).

(a) $\frac{\cos \theta - 1}{\sin \theta}$ (b) $\frac{\sin \theta}{1 - \cos 2\theta}$ (c) $\frac{\sin 3\theta + \tan \theta}{\cos 2\theta}$

(d) $\sin (\theta + 45°)$ (e) $\cos (\theta + 30°)$ (f) $\frac{1 + \sin \theta}{5 + 3 \tan \theta - 4 \cos \theta}$

4. Given that $1° \approx 0{\cdot}0175$ radians and $(0{\cdot}0175)^2 \approx 0{\cdot}000\,306$ find, without the use of a calculator, approximate values for (a) $\sin 2°$ (b) $\tan 12'$ (c) $\cos 1°$

15.6 Differentiation of trigonometric functions

Suppose $y = \sin x$ ... [1] where x is measured in radians.
Let x change by a small amount δx and the consequent change in y be δy, then

$$y + \delta y = \sin (x + \delta x) \qquad \ldots [2]$$

Subtracting equation [1] from equation [2]

$$\delta y = \sin (x + \delta x) - \sin x$$
$$= 2 \cos (x + \tfrac{1}{2}\delta x) \sin (\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)$$

i.e. $$\frac{\delta y}{\delta x} = \cos (x + \tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)\frac{\sin (\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)}{(\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)}$$

By definition, $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x\to 0}\left(\frac{\delta y}{\delta x}\right)$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x\to 0}\left\{\cos (x + \tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)\frac{\sin (\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)}{(\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)}\right\}$$

Now from section 15.5 $\lim_{\theta\to 0}\left(\frac{\sin \theta}{\theta}\right) = 1$ $\qquad \therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \cos x.$

In a similar way if $y = \cos x$ ... [1]
Let x change by a small amount δx and the consequent change in y be δy, then $y + \delta y = \cos (x + \delta x)$ ... [2]

Subtracting equation [1] from equation [2]

$$\delta y = \cos (x + \delta x) - \cos x$$
$$= -2 \sin (x + \tfrac{1}{2}\delta x) \sin (\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)$$
$$\frac{\delta y}{\delta x} = -\sin (x + \tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)\frac{\sin (\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)}{(\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)}$$

By definition, $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\delta x\to 0}\left(\frac{\delta y}{\delta x}\right)$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x\to 0}\left\{-\sin (x + \tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)\frac{\sin (\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)}{(\tfrac{1}{2}\delta x)}\right\} \qquad \therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = -\sin x$$

From these two results: $\begin{cases} y = \sin x, \\ \frac{dy}{dx} = \cos x \end{cases}$ and $\begin{cases} y = \cos x, \\ \frac{dy}{dx} = -\sin x \end{cases}$

we can obtain the differential coefficients of the other trigonometric ratios.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Differential of tan x and cot x

Since
$$\begin{aligned} y &= \tan x \\ &= \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} \\ \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{\cos x(\cos x) - \sin x(-\sin x)}{\cos^2 x} \\ &= \frac{1}{\cos^2 x} \\ &= \sec^2 x \end{aligned}$$

and
$$\begin{aligned} y &= \cot x \\ &= \frac{\cos x}{\sin x} \\ \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{\sin x(-\sin x) - \cos x(\cos x)}{\sin^2 x} \\ &= \frac{-1}{\sin^2 x} \\ &= -\operatorname{cosec}^2 x \end{aligned}$$

Differential of sec x and cosec x

Since
$$\begin{aligned} y &= \sec x \\ &= \frac{1}{\cos x} = (\cos x)^{-1} \\ \frac{dy}{dx} &= (-1)(\cos x)^{-2}(-\sin x) \\ &= \frac{\sin x}{\cos^2 x} \\ \therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} &= \sec x \tan x \end{aligned}$$

and
$$\begin{aligned} y &= \operatorname{cosec} x \\ &= \frac{1}{\sin x} = (\sin x)^{-1} \\ \frac{dy}{dx} &= (-1)(\sin x)^{-2}(\cos x) \\ &= \frac{-\cos x}{\sin^2 x} \\ \therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} &= -\operatorname{cosec} x \cot x \end{aligned}$$

To summarise these results, for the angle x in radians,

$y = \sin x$ $y' = \cos x$	$y = \cos x$ $y' = -\sin x$	$y = \tan x$ $y' = \sec^2 x$
$y = \operatorname{cosec} x$ $y' = -\operatorname{cosec} x \cot x$	$y = \sec x$ $y' = \sec x \tan x$	$y = \cot x$ $y' = -\operatorname{cosec}^2 x$

(Note that all of the 'co-' functions give a minus sign on differentiation)

If $y = \sin f(x)$ this can be written as $y = \sin u$, where $u = f(x)$ and then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ can be found from $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx}$. Thus expressions such as $\sin f(x)$ can be treated as a function of a function as in section 13.1. Similarly, if $y = \tan^n x$, this may be written as $y = u^n$ where $u = \tan x$ and then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is again $\frac{dy}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx}$.

The following examples illustrate this method.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

15.7 Integration of trigonometric functions

It follows from the differentiation of $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ that

$$\int \sin x\,dx = -\cos x + c \quad \text{and} \quad \int \cos x\,dx = \sin x + c,$$

and since if $y = \sin ax$, $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = a\cos ax$ and if $y = \cos ax$, $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -a\sin ax$

it follows that

$$\int \sin ax\,dx = -\frac{1}{a}\cos ax + c \quad \text{and} \quad \int \cos ax\,dx = \frac{1}{a}\sin ax + c$$

In some cases, trigonometric functions can be integrated directly as the reverse of differentiation, as we can see what function would differentiate to give the integrand.

Example 27

Find the following indefinite integrals (a) $\int \cos 7x\,dx$, (b) $\int 4\operatorname{cosec} x \cot x\,dx$, (c) $\int \sec^2 6x\,dx$.

(a) $\int \cos 7x\,dx$

Now $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sin 7x) = 7\cos 7x$

$\therefore \int \cos 7x\,dx = \frac{1}{7}\sin 7x + c$

(b) $\int 4\operatorname{cosec} x \cot x\,dx$

Now $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{cosec} x) = -\operatorname{cosec} x \cot x$

$\therefore \int 4\operatorname{cosec} x \cot x\,dx = -4\operatorname{cosec} x + c$

(c) $\int \sec^2 6x\,dx$

Now $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\tan 6x) = 6\sec^2 6x$

$\therefore \int \sec^2 6x\,dx = \frac{1}{6}\tan 6x + c$

Example 28

Find the following indefinite integrals (a) $\int 6\cos x \sin^2 x\,dx$, (b) $\int \sin^4 2x \cos 2x\,dx$.

(a) $\int 6\cos x \sin^2 x\,dx$

Now $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sin^3 x) = 3\sin^2 x \cos x$

$\therefore \int 6\cos x \sin^2 x\,dx = 2\sin^3 x + c$

(b) $\int \sin^4 2x \cos 2x\,dx$

Now $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sin^5 2x) = 5\sin^4 2x\, 2\cos 2x$

$= 10\sin^4 2x \cos 2x$

$\therefore \int \sin^4 2x \cos 2x\,dx = \frac{1}{10}\sin^5 2x + c$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 29

Find the following indefinite integrals (a) $\int \cot^5 x \operatorname{cosec}^2 x\,dx$, (b) $\int \sec^4 x \tan x\,dx$.

(a) $\int \cot^5 x \operatorname{cosec}^2 x\,dx$

Now $\frac{d}{dx}(\cot^6 x) = -6 \cot^5 x \operatorname{cosec}^2 x$

$\therefore \int \cot^5 x \operatorname{cosec}^2 x\,dx = -\frac{1}{6}\cot^6 x + c$

(b) $\int \sec^4 x \tan x\,dx = \int \sec^3 x(\sec x \tan x)\,dx$

Now $\frac{d}{dx}(\sec^4 x) = 4 \sec^3 x \sec x \tan x$

$\therefore \int \sec^4 x \tan x\,dx = \frac{1}{4}\sec^4 x + c.$

Example 30

Find $\int 8 \sin 4x \sin x\,dx$.

Now $8 \sin 4x \sin x = 4(\cos 3x - \cos 5x)$ (using the result of section 15.1)

$\therefore \int 8 \sin 4x \sin x\,dx = \frac{4}{3}\sin 3x - \frac{4}{5}\sin 5x + c.$

$\int \sin^n x\,dx$, $\int \cos^n x\,dx$

Example 31 shows the method to use for these integrations when n is odd and Example 32 shows the method to use when n is even.

Example 31

Find $\int \cos^7 x\,dx$

$$\begin{aligned}\int \cos^7 x\,dx &= \int \cos x(\cos^6 x)\,dx\\ &= \int \cos x(1 - \sin^2 x)^3\,dx\\ &= \int \cos x(1 - 3\sin^2 x + 3\sin^4 x - \sin^6 x)\,dx\\ &= \int (\cos x - 3\sin^2 x \cos x + 3\sin^4 x \cos x - \sin^6 x \cos x)\,dx\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \int \cos^7 x\,dx = \sin x - \sin^3 x + \frac{3}{5}\sin^5 x - \frac{1}{7}\sin^7 x + c$

Example 32

Find $\int \sin^4 x\,dx$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

35. Find the following indefinite integrals (hint: simplify each expression first).

(a) $\int \sin x \cot x \, dx$ (b) $\int (\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x)\, dx$ (c) $\int (\cos^2 x - \sin^2 x)\, dx$

(d) $\int \frac{1}{1 - \sin^2 x} dx$ (e) $\int \cos x(\sec x + \tan x)\, dx$ (f) $\int \frac{2 \tan x}{\sin 2x} dx$

Evaluate the following definite integrals

36. $\int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - \sin x)\, dx$ **37.** $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sin 2x \, dx$ **38.** $\int_0^{\pi} \cos\left(3x + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) dx$

39. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sin^3 x \cos x \, dx$ **40.** $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec^2 x \tan^3 x \, dx$ **41.** $\int_{\pi/8}^{\pi/4} 2 \cos^2 2x \, dx$

42 $\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \cos^3 x \, dx$ **43.** $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin 3x \cos 5x \, dx$

44. Find the area between the curve $y = \sin x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi$.

45. Find the area between the curve $y = 3 \cos x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi/2$.

46. Find the area between the curve $y = \sin x + 3 \cos x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi/2$.

47. Find the volume of the solid of revolution formed by rotating about the x-axis the area between the curve $y = \sin x$ and the x-axis, from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi$.

48. Find the volume of the solid of revolution formed by rotating about the x-axis the area between the curve $y = \sin x + \cos x$ and the x-axis, from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi/2$.

15.8 Differentiation of inverse trigonometric functions

Suppose $y = \sin^{-1} x$

then $x = \sin y$

and $\frac{dx}{dy} = \cos y \quad \ldots [1]$

Using $\frac{dy}{dx} = 1/(dx/dy)$, (see page 324) and $\sin^2 y + \cos^2 y = 1$, we can rearrange [1] to give

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - \sin^2 y)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)}}$$

$$\boxed{\text{Thus, if } y = \sin^{-1} x, \text{ then } \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)}}}$$

In a similar way, it can be shown that

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \text{if } y = \cos^{-1} x, \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)}} \\ \text{and if } y = \tan^{-1} x, \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{1 + x^2}. \end{array}}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 33

Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ if $y = \sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}$ where a is a constant.

Let $\quad u = \frac{x}{a}$, then $\quad y = \sin^{-1} u$

thus $\quad \frac{du}{dx} = \frac{1}{a}$ and $\frac{dy}{du} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - u^2)}}$

Using $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx}$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - u^2)}} \times \frac{1}{a}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2/a^2)}} \times \frac{1}{a}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)}}.$$

Example 34

Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ if (a) $y = \cos^{-1}\frac{x}{5}$, (b) $y = \cos^{-1}(x^2 - 1)$.

(a) $\quad y = \cos^{-1}\frac{x}{5}$

Let $\quad u = \frac{x}{5}$, then $\quad y = \cos^{-1} u$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{1}{5} \text{ and } \frac{dy}{du} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{(1 - u^2)}}$$

Using $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx}$

$$= \frac{-1}{\sqrt{(1 - u^2)}} \times \frac{1}{5}$$

$$= \frac{-1}{\sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{25}\right)}} \times \frac{1}{5}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{(25 - x^2)}}$$

(b) $\quad y = \cos^{-1}(x^2 - 1)$

Let $\quad u = x^2 - 1$, then $\quad y = \cos^{-1} u$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 2x \text{ and } \frac{dy}{du} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{(1 - u^2)}}$$

Using $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx}$

$$= \frac{-1}{\sqrt{(1 - u^2)}} \times 2x$$

$$= \frac{-2x}{\sqrt{[1 - (x^2 - 1)^2]}}$$

$$= \frac{-2x}{\sqrt{(2x^2 - x^4)}}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-2}{\sqrt{(2 - x^2)}}$$

$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)}} dx$ and $\int \frac{1}{(a^2 + x^2)} dx$

From $\frac{d}{dx}(\sin^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)}}$, it can be shown that $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}\right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)}}$

and from $\frac{d}{dx}(\tan^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{(1 + x^2)}$, it can be shown that $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{a}\right) = \frac{a}{(a^2 + x^2)}$.

Thus to integrate expressions involving $\frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)}}$ we look for a solution of the form $\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a} + c$ and to integrate an expression of the form $\frac{1}{(a^2 + x^2)}$ we look for a solution of the form $\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{a}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 35

Find (a) $\int \frac{4}{x^2 + 16} dx$ (b) $\int \frac{2}{36 + x^2} dx$.

(a) $\int \frac{4}{x^2 + 16} dx$

Since this involves $\frac{1}{x^2 + 16}$ i.e. of the form $\frac{1}{x^2 + a^2}$, we suspect it has come from the differentiation of $\tan^{-1} \frac{x}{4}$ which is $\frac{4}{x^2 + 16}$.

Thus $\int \frac{4}{x^2 + 16} dx = \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{4} + c$.

(b) $\int \frac{2}{36 + x^2} dx$

The differential of $\tan^{-1} \frac{x}{6}$ is $\frac{6}{x^2 + 36}$.

Thus $\int \frac{2}{36 + x^2} dx = \frac{1}{3} \int \frac{6}{36 + x^2} dx$

$= \frac{1}{3} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{6} + c$.

Example 36

Evaluate $\int_{-1.5}^{0} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(9 - x^2)}} dx$.

This is of the form $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)}} dx$ and we can therefore quote the solution:

$$\int_{-1.5}^{0} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(9 - x^2)}} dx = \left[\sin^{-1} \frac{x}{3}\right]_{-1.5}^{0}$$

$$= \sin^{-1}(0) - \sin^{-1}\left(-\frac{1.5}{3}\right)$$

$$= 0 - \left(-\frac{\pi}{6}\right) \qquad \therefore \int_{-1.5}^{0} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(9 - x^2)}} dx = \frac{\pi}{6}$$

The reader should note that in order to integrate more complicated functions of this type, e.g. $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2 - Ax^2)}} dx$, for $A \neq 1$ or $\int \frac{1}{a^2 + Ax^2} dx$, for $A \neq 1$, we use the method of 'changing the variable' which is explained in chapter 20.

Exercise 15H

Differentiate the following with respect to x

1. $\sin^{-1} x$ **2.** $\tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$ **3.** $\sin^{-1} \frac{x}{4}$

4. $\cos^{-1} 3x$ **5.** $\tan^{-1} 4x$ **6.** $\sin^{-1} 6x$

7. $\sin^{-1}(2x - 1)$ **8.** $\tan^{-1}(1 - 3x)$ **9.** $\sin^{-1}(x^2 - 1)$

10. $x \sin^{-1} x$ **11.** $x \tan^{-1} x$ **12.** $(x^2 + 1) \tan^{-1} x$

Find the following indefinite integrals

13. $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(4 - x^2)}} dx$ **14.** $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(16 - x^2)}} dx$ **15.** $\int \frac{3}{9 + x^2} dx$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

6. Given that

$$3 \sin x - \cos x \equiv R \sin (x - \alpha),$$

where $R > 0$ and $0° < \alpha < 90°$, find the values of R and α correct to one decimal place.
Hence find one value of x between 0° and 360° for which the curve $y = 3 \sin x - \cos x$ has a turning point. (London)

7. Find the general solution of the equation

$$\tan \theta - \sin \theta = 1 - \cos \theta.$$ (Cambridge)

8. (i) Find the general solution, in radians, of the equation

$$\sin 3x = -\tfrac{1}{2}.$$

(ii) By putting $\tan (\theta/2) = t$, or otherwise, find the general solution of the equation

$$2 \cos \theta - \sin \theta = 1,$$

giving your answers to the nearest tenth of a degree. (London)

9. (a) Find the general solution of the equation

$$\tan x + \sec x = 3 \cos x.$$

(b) Express $5 \sin^2 x - 3 \sin x \cos x + \cos^2 x$ in the form $a + b \cos (2x - \alpha)$ where a, b, α are independent of x.
Hence, or otherwise, find the maximum and minimum values of

$$5 \sin^2 x - 3 \sin x \cos x + \cos^2 x$$

as x varies. (Cambridge)

10. If $x = t^2 \sin 3t$ and $y = t^2 \cos 3t$, find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ in terms of t, and show that the curve defined by these parametric equations is parallel to the x-axis at points where $\tan 3t = \dfrac{2}{3t}$. (S.U.J.B.)

11. Find

$$\int \sin x(1 + \cos^2 x)\,dx.$$ (Cambridge)

12. Prove from first principles that the derivative of $\sin x$ is $\cos x$.

$\left[\text{You may use } \lim_{\theta \to 0} \dfrac{\sin \theta}{\theta} = 1 \text{ without proof.}\right]$

When x increases from π to $\pi + \varepsilon$, where ε is small, the increment in

$$\frac{\sin x}{x}$$

is approximately equal to $p\varepsilon$. Find p in terms of π. (J.M.B.)

13. (a) Differentiate with respect to x
(i) $\tan 2x$, (ii) $\sin^3 3x$, (iii) $(1 + \sin x)^5$.

(b) If $y = \dfrac{\sin x}{x}$, prove that

$$x\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 2\frac{dy}{dx} + xy = 0.$$ (S.U.J.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

14. Sketch the curve $y = 1 + \sin x$ for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \frac{3}{2}\pi$.
Show that $(1 + \sin x)^2 = \frac{3}{2} + 2 \sin x - \frac{1}{2} \cos 2x$.
Hence show that the volume of the solid of revolution formed when the region $(0 \leqslant x \leqslant \frac{3}{2}\pi)$ bounded by the curve $y = 1 + \sin x$, the y-axis and the x-axis is rotated through one revolution about the x-axis is

$$\tfrac{1}{4}\pi(9\pi + 8).$$ (Cambridge)

15. (a) Differentiate with respect to x:

(i) $x \sin 2x$; (ii) $\tan\left(3x + \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right)$; (iii) $(1 + \cos x)^2$.

(b) Evaluate the following integrals:

(i) $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/3} \sin\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) dx$; (ii) $\displaystyle\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/3} \cos 3x \, dx$. (S.U.J.B.)

16. Given that $\sin^{-1} x$, $\cos^{-1} x$ and $\sin^{-1}(1 - x)$ are acute angles,
(i) prove that $\sin[\sin^{-1} x - \cos^{-1} x] = 2x^2 - 1$,
(ii) solve the equation $\sin^{-1} x - \cos^{-1} x = \sin^{-1}(1 - x)$. (A.E.B.)

17. Differentiate $x \sin^{-1} mx$, where m is a constant.
Hence, or otherwise, integrate $\sin^{-1} mx$. (J.M.B.)

18. (i) For the curve $y = \sin x \cos^3 x$, where $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$, find the x- and y-coordinates of the points at which $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 0$.

Sketch the curve.

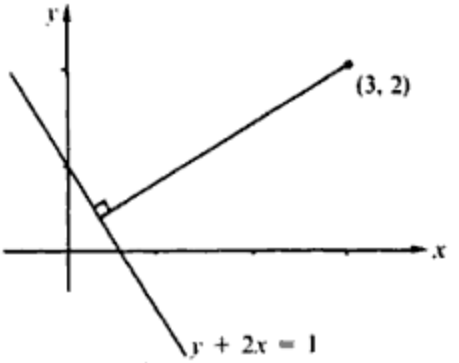
(ii) For the curve $y^2 = \sin x \cos^3 x$, where $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \frac{1}{2}\pi$, show that

$$\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 = \tfrac{1}{4} \cot x(\cos^2 x - 3 \sin^2 x)^2,$$

provided that $x \neq 0$.
Sketch the curve. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

16.2 Distance of a point from a line



Suppose we want to find the shortest distance from the point (3, 2) to the line $y + 2x = 1$. We could proceed as follows:

gradient of $y + 2x = 1$ is -2

$\therefore$ gradient of line perpendicular to $y + 2x = 1$ is $\frac{1}{2}$.

Line through the point (3, 2) perpendicular to $y + 2x = 1$ has equation $y - 2 = \frac{1}{2}(x - 3)$

i.e. $2y = x + 1$

Solving $2y = x + 1$ and $y + 2x = 1$ simultaneously gives $x = \frac{1}{5}$ and $y = \frac{3}{5}$.
Thus the lines $2y = x + 1$ and $y + 2x = 1$ intersect at $(\frac{1}{5}, \frac{3}{5})$.
Length of the line joining the points (3, 2) and $(\frac{1}{5}, \frac{3}{5})$ is given by

$$\sqrt{[(3 - \tfrac{1}{5})^2 + (2 - \tfrac{3}{5})^2]} = \tfrac{7}{5}\sqrt{5} \text{ units.}$$

Alternatively we could express the equation $y + 2x = 1$ in vector form and proceed as in chapter 2 (see page 67 example 22). However, at times it is more convenient to quote and use the formula stated and proved below.

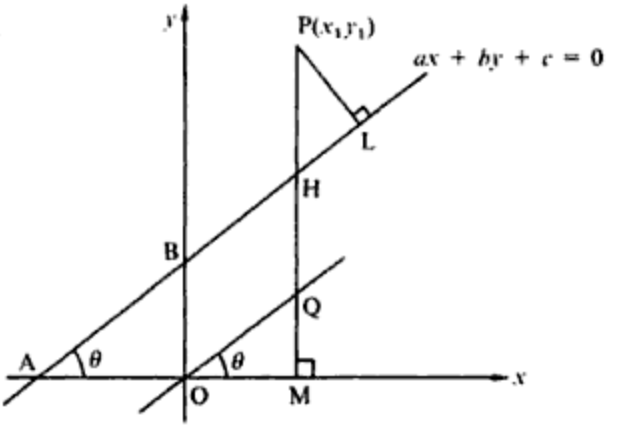
> The perpendicular distance from the point (x_1, y_1) to the line $ax + by + c = 0$ is given by $\dfrac{ax_1 + by_1 + c}{\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}}$,
> i.e. we substitute the coordinates of the point into the equation of the line and divide by $\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}$.

For the point (3, 2) and the line $y + 2x = 1$ (i.e. $2x + y - 1 = 0$) this formula gives the perpendicular distance as

$$\frac{2(3) + 2 - 1}{\sqrt{(2^2 + 1^2)}} = \frac{7}{\sqrt{5}} = \frac{7}{5}\sqrt{5} \quad \text{as required.}$$

The formula quoted above may be proved as follows:

Let P be the point (x_1, y_1) and AB the line $ax + by + c = 0$. PL is the perpendicular from P to the line AB.
The line through P, parallel to the y-axis, cuts the x-axis at M, AB at H and the line through the origin parallel to AB at Q.



Gradient of $ax + by + c = 0$ is $\frac{-a}{b} = \tan\theta$

where θ is the angle made with the x-axis, and the y-intercept, i.e. OB, is $-\frac{c}{b}$.

Then
$$\begin{aligned} \text{PL} \sec\theta &= \text{PH} \\ &= \text{PM} - \text{MQ} - \text{QH} \\ &= y_1 - \text{OM} \tan\theta - \text{OB} \\ &= y_1 - x_1\left(-\frac{a}{b}\right) - \left(-\frac{c}{b}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$PL\sqrt{(1 + \tan^2\theta)} = \frac{ax_1 + by_1 + c}{b}$$

$$PL = \frac{ax_1 + by_1 + c}{b\sqrt{(1 + a^2/b^2)}} = \frac{ax_1 + by_1 + c}{\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}} \quad \text{as required.}$$

Example 3

Find the perpendicular distance from the line $3y = 4x - 1$ to the points (a) (1, 3), (b) (1, − 2).

$$3y = 4x - 1$$

or

$$0 = 4x - 3y - 1$$

(a) Using $\dfrac{ax_1 + by_1 + c}{\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}}$

$$\text{Required distance} = \frac{4(1) - 3(3) - 1}{\sqrt{(4^2 + 3^2)}} = -\frac{6}{5}$$

(b) Using $\dfrac{ax_1 + by_1 + c}{\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}}$

$$\text{Required distance} = \frac{4(1) - 3(-2) - 1}{\sqrt{(4^2 + 3^2)}} = \frac{9}{5}$$

Notice that one result is negative and the other positive. This is due to the fact that the two points lie on opposite sides of the line.
Thus the points (1, 3) and (1, −2) are respectively $1\frac{1}{5}$ and $1\frac{4}{5}$ units from the line $3y = 4x - 1$, and they lie on different sides of the line.

Example 4

Find the equations of the lines that bisect the angles between the lines $3x - 4y + 13 = 0$ and $12x + 5y - 32 = 0$.

Any point on a line that bisects one of the angles between the line $3x - 4y + 13 = 0$ and the line $12x + 5y - 32 = 0$ will be equidistant from these two lines. Thus we require the locus of all the points which are equidistant from $3x - 4y + 13 = 0$ and $12x + 5y - 32 = 0$. Suppose that (x, y) is the general point equidistant from the two lines, then using $\dfrac{ax_1 + by_1 + c}{\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}}$ it follows that

$$\frac{3x - 4y + 13}{\sqrt{(3^2 + 4^2)}} = \pm\frac{12x + 5y - 32}{\sqrt{(12^2 + 5^2)}}$$

i.e. $13(3x - 4y + 13) = \pm 5(12x + 5y - 32)$
which gives $3x + 11y - 47 = 0$ and $11x - 3y + 1 = 0$.

The equations of the bisectors of the angles between the lines $3x - 4y + 13 = 0$ and $12x + 5y - 32 = 0$ are $3x + 11y - 47 = 0$ and $11x - 3y + 1 = 0$.

Note: The two bisectors will be at right angles to each other (i.e. in the example above the gradients of the bisectors are $-\frac{3}{11}$ and $\frac{11}{3}$).

Exercise 16B

1. In each of the following find the perpendicular distance from the given point to the given line.
   (a) $4y + 3x + 6 = 0$, (2, − 1) (b) $12y = 5x - 1$, (−3, −2)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

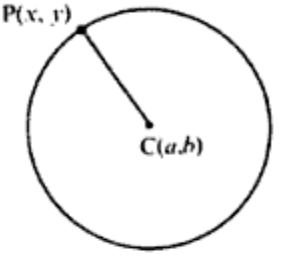
We now consider the four types of curve in more detail and although we shall define each curve using the idea of a locus, it can be shown that such definitions are consistent with the conic section idea explained above.

16.3 The circle

The circle is defined as the locus of all points, P(x, y), which are equidistant from some given point C, (a, b). Suppose that the distance of the points P, from the given point C(a, b) is r, then

$$CP^2 = (x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2$$
$$= r^2$$

Thus the required locus is $(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = r^2$, where r is the radius of the circle and the point (a, b) is its centre.



If the coordinates of the point C are (0, 0), i.e. C is at the origin, then the equation becomes $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$, thus

Circle centre (0, 0) and radius r has equation	$x^2 + y^2 = r^2$
Circle centre (a, b) and radius r has equation	$(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = r^2$

Example 5

Find the centre and the radius of the circles with equations:
(a) $(x - 2)^2 + y^2 = 25$ (b) $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 2y = 4$

(a) $(x - 2)^2 + y^2 = 25$
Comparing this equation with
$(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = r^2$
the centre is (2, 0) and the radius is 5 units.

(b) $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 2y = 4$
which can be rearranged as
$(x^2 - 4x + 4) + (y^2 - 2y + 1) = 4 + 4 + 1$
i.e. $(x - 2)^2 + (y - 1)^2 = 3^2$
Comparing this equation with
$(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = r^2$
the centre is (2, 1) and the radius is 3 units

Note: the general equation of the circle, $(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = r^2$, may be written as $x^2 + y^2 - 2ax - 2by + (a^2 + b^2 - r^2) = 0$. Notice that the coefficients of x^2 and y^2 are equal in this second order equation and that there is no xy term. This will be true for all equations of circles.

Intersection of a line and a circle

Consider a straight line $y = mx + c$ and a circle $(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = r^2$.

There are three possible situations:

1. the line cuts the circle in two distinct places, i.e. part of the line is a chord of the circle,
2. the line *touches* the circle, i.e. the line is a tangent to the circle,
3. the line neither cuts nor touches the circle.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Gradient at a given point on a curve

The gradient at a given point is the gradient of the tangent to that curve at the given point, and we can find this directly from the equation of the curve by implicit differentiation.

Example 7

Find the equation of (i) the tangent and (ii) the normal to the circle with equation $x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 2y - 3 = 0$ at the point (5, 4) on the circle.

$$x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 2y - 3 = 0$$

differentiating with respect to x,

$$2x + 2y\frac{dy}{dx} - 6 - 2\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$$

i.e.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3 - x}{y - 1}$$

at the point (5, 4)

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3 - 5}{4 - 1} = -\frac{2}{3}$$

(i) gradient of tangent is $-\frac{2}{3}$
Using $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$,
the equation of the tangent is
$y - 4 = -\frac{2}{3}(x - 5)$
i.e. $3y + 2x = 22$

(ii) gradient of normal is $\frac{3}{2}$
Using $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$,
the equation of the normal is
$y - 4 = \frac{3}{2}(x - 5)$
i.e. $2y - 3x + 7 = 0$

At the point (5, 4) on the circle $x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 2y - 3 = 0$, the equations of the tangent and of the normal are respectively $3y + 2x = 22$ and $2y - 3x + 7 = 0$.

Circle through three given points

Three non-collinear points define a circle, i.e. there is one, and only one circle which can be drawn through three non-collinear points. The equation of any circle may be written as $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$, where g, f and c are constants.
Thus, if we are given the coordinates of three points on the circumference of a circle, we can substitute these values of x and y into the equation of the circle and obtain three equations which can be solved simultaneously to find the constants g, f and c.

Example 8

Find the equation of the circle passing through the points (0, 1), (4, 3) and (1, −1).

Suppose the equation of the circle is

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

Substituting the coordinates of each of the three points into this equation gives:

$$1 + 2f + c = 0 \qquad \ldots [1]$$
$$25 + 8g + 6f + c = 0 \qquad \ldots [2]$$
$$2 + 2g - 2f + c = 0 \qquad \ldots [3]$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Multiplying equation [3] by 4 and then subtracting from equation [2], gives

$$17 + 14f - 3c = 0 \qquad \ldots [4]$$

Multiplying equation [1] by 3 and adding to equation [4], gives

$$20 + 20f = 0 \text{ or } f = -1.$$

Then from equation [1] $\quad c = 1$

and from equation [3] $\quad g = -2\frac{1}{2}$.

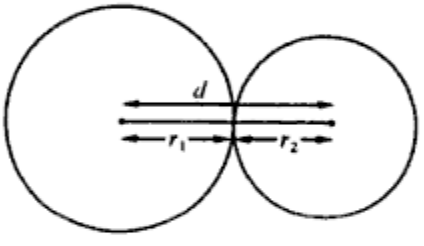
The equation of the circle which passes through (0, 1), (4, 3) and (1, −1) is $x^2 + y^2 - 5x - 2y + 1 = 0$.

Note: In the above example, the coordinates of three points on the circumference were given. The data may sometimes be given in a different form and it is often necessary to use some other geometrical fact concerning the circle, e.g. the perpendicular bisector of a chord passes through the centre of the circle, in order to find the equation of the circle.

Intersecting circles

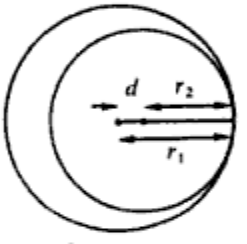
Consider two circles, of radius r_1 and r_2 ($r_1 > r_2$) with their centres distance d apart. There are a number of possible situations:

(i) Circles *touch* externally



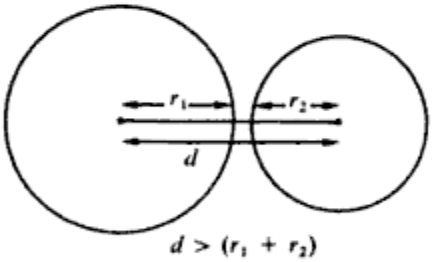
$d = r_1 + r_2$

(ii) Circles *touch* internally



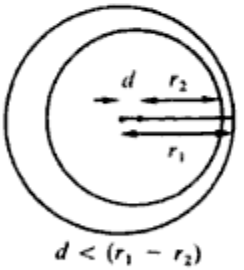
$d = r_1 - r_2$

(iii) Circles do not intersect



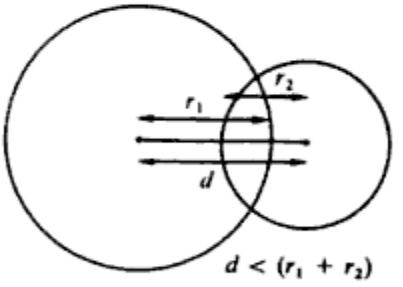
$d > (r_1 + r_2)$

or



$d < (r_1 - r_2)$

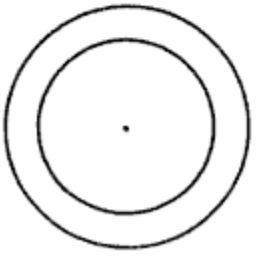
(iv) Circles intersect at two distinct points



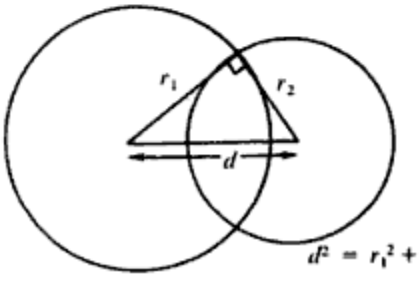
$d < (r_1 + r_2)$

Note also that:

(a) Circles having the same centre are said to be *concentric*



(b) Two circles that cut at right-angles are said to be *orthogonal*



$d^2 = r_1^2 + r_2^2$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 9

Prove that the circles $x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 8y + 5 = 0$ and $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 4y + 7 = 0$ are orthogonal.

$x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 8y + 5 = 0$
i.e. $(x + 1)^2 + (y - 4)^2 = 12$
centre $(-1, 4)$ and radius is $\sqrt{12}$ units

$x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 4y + 7 = 0$
i.e. $(x - 2)^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 1$
centre $(2, 2)$ and radius is 1 unit

Now $r_1^2 + r_2^2 = (\sqrt{12})^2 + 1^2$
$= 13$
and the (distance between their centres)$^2 = (2 - (-1))^2 + (2 - 4)^2$
$= 9 + 4 = 13.$
Thus, since $d^2 = r_1^2 + r_2^2$, the circles $x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 8y + 5 = 0$ and $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 4y + 7 = 0$ are orthogonal.

Example 10

Show that the circles $x^2 + y^2 - 2y - 4 = 0$ and $x^2 + y^2 - x + y - 12 = 0$ intersect in two distinct points and find the equation of the common chord.

The circles have equations $x^2 + y^2 - 2y - 4 = 0$ ... [1]
and $x^2 + y^2 - x + y - 12 = 0$ ... [2]
Consider the equation
$$x^2 + y^2 - 2y - 4 - (x^2 + y^2 - x + y - 12) = 0 \quad \ldots [3]$$
This simplifies to $x - 3y + 8 = 0$, i.e. the equation of a straight line.
If the point, $P(a, b)$, satisfies both equations [1] and [2], then it will also satisfy $x - 3y + 8 = 0$.
If some other point, $Q(c, d)$, satisfies equations [1] and [2], then it also will satisfy $x - 3y + 8 = 0$.
But if this is so, then PQ is the common chord of the two circles.
Thus $x - 3y + 8 = 0$ is the equation of the common chord of the two circles.

Solving the equation of the common chord, $x - 3y + 8 = 0$
with one of the circles $x^2 + y^2 - 2y - 4 = 0$,
i.e. $(3y - 8)^2 + y^2 - 2y - 4 = 0$
giving $y^2 - 5y + 6 = 0$
i.e. $y = 2$, or $y = 3$, and then
substituting in the equation of the common chord, the distinct points of intersection are $(-2, 2)$ and $(1, 3)$.

Note: In this example we were able to find the common chord without having first to find the points of intersection.
If two circles are such that they do not intersect, then the equation analagous to equation [3] above, would, when solved with one of the circle equations, not yield any *real* points.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Notice that the graph of $(y - 2)^2 = 12(x - 1)$ is that of $y^2 = 12x$ translated by 1 unit parallel to the x-axis and 2 units parallel to the y-axis which is consistent with the ideas of section 11.3, page 284.

Example 13

Show that the line $y = 3x + 1$ *touches* the parabola $y^2 = 12x$.

If the given line *touches* the parabola, i.e. is a tangent to the parabola, solving the two equations $y = 3x + 1$ and $y^2 = 12x$ simultaneously should give a quadratic equation with a repeated root.

Substituting $y = 3x + 1$ into $y^2 = 12x$ gives $(3x + 1)^2 = 12x$

$$\therefore \quad 9x^2 + 6x + 1 = 12x$$
$$9x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$$
$$(3x - 1)(3x - 1) = 0$$
$$\therefore \quad x = \tfrac{1}{3} \text{ or } \tfrac{1}{3}, \text{ i.e. a repeated root.}$$

Thus the line $y = 3x + 1$ touches the parabola $y^2 = 12x$ at the point $(\frac{1}{3}, 2)$.

Gradient at a particular point

As with the circle, the gradient at a particular point on a parabola can be determined by implicit differentiation.

Example 14

Show that the point A(2, −4) lies on the parabola $y^2 = 8x$ and find the equation of the normal to the parabola at the point A.

Substituting $x = 2$, $y = -4$ in the equation $y^2 = 8x$, gives $(-4)^2 = 8(2)$, so the point A does lie on the parabola $y^2 = 8x$.

Differentiating implicitly, with respect to x,

$$2y\frac{dy}{dx} = 8$$

i.e. $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{4}{y}.$$

$\therefore$ the gradient at the point A(2, −4) is $\dfrac{4}{-4} = -1$

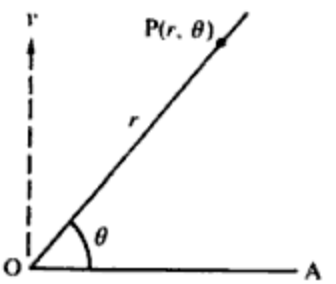
Thus the gradient of the normal at A is + 1 and, using $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$, the equation of the normal at A is $(y - -4) = 1(x - 2)$.

Thus the equation of the normal at the point (2, −4) on the parabola $y^2 = 8x$ is $y = x - 6$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. Find the equation of the tangent to each of the following curves at the given point on the curve.
   (a) $x^2 + 4y^2 = 4$ at $(\sqrt{3}, \frac{1}{2})$, (b) $x^2 + 4y^2 = 100$ at $(-8, 3)$,
   (c) $9x^2 - y^2 = 9$ at $(-\frac{5}{3}, 4)$, (d) $4x^2 - y^2 = 4$ at $(\sqrt{2}, -2)$,
   (e) $xy = 9$ at $(-3, -3)$, (f) $xy = 16$ at $(2, 8)$.
4. Find the equation of the tangent to the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ at the point $(a \cos \theta, b \sin \theta)$ and find the coordinates of the point where this tangent cuts the y-axis.
5. (a) Find the equation of the tangent to the curve $xy = c^2$ at the point $(ct_1, c/t_1)$.
   (b) Find the equation of the normal to the curve $xy = c^2$ at the point $(ct_2, c/t_2)$.
   (c) If the tangent of (a) meets the normal of (b) on the y-axis show that $2t_2 = t_1(1 - t_2^4)$.
6. (a) Find the equation of the chord joining the point $(ct_1, c/t_1)$ to the point $(ct_2, c/t_2)$ on the hyperbola $xy = c^2$.
   (b) By letting $t_1 = t_2 = t$ use your answer to part (a) to obtain the tangent to the curve $xy = c^2$ at the point $(ct, c/t)$.
7. Given that $y = mx + c$ is a tangent to $xy = d^2$ prove that $m = -\frac{c^2}{4d^2}$.
8. Given that $y = mx + c$ is a tangent to the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ prove that $c^2 = a^2m^2 + b^2$.

16.6 Polar coordinates



We have, so far, used cartesian coordinates (x, y) in order to give the position of a point in a plane relative to two axes.
We will now investigate an alternative system of coordinates in which the position of any point P can be described in terms of its distance and direction from a fixed point.
Suppose that OA is a straight line with the point O fixed.
If the distance OP $= r$ and the angle AOP $= \theta$, then the position of the point P is defined by (r, θ) and we call these the polar coordinates of the point P. The angle θ is positive when measured in an anticlockwise direction from the line OA, and is called the vectorial angle.
r is known as the radius vector.
It should be noted that different polar coordinates may be used to describe the same point, e.g. $\left(2, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ could also be written as $\left(2, \frac{5\pi}{2}\right)$, $\left(2, \frac{9\pi}{2}\right)$, $\left(2, -\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ etc.
For this reason it is usual to state the polar coordinates of a point (r, θ) with $-\pi \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi$ or $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant 2\pi$.
Also, it is possible to give polar coordinates with a negative value of r so that $\left(-1, \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ and $\left(1, -\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$ in fact represent the same point. In practice it is usual to state (r, θ) with $r \geqslant 0$.
If OA in the diagram is taken as the x-axis and the y-axis be taken through the point O as indicated, then clearly the cartesian coordinates of P(x, y) can be written as $x = r \cos \theta$, and $y = r \sin \theta$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

In the same way that all the points lying on a line can be described in terms of an equation involving the cartesian coordinates x and y, so also can we describe the line in terms of a polar equation involving r and θ.
Using this polar form of the equation of a curve we can plot values of r against θ and hence represent the curve graphically. Graph paper designed for this specific purpose is obtainable, but the reader will find it possible to obtain sufficiently accurate graphs using plane paper.

Example 21

Copy and complete the following table for $r = 3 \sin \theta$.

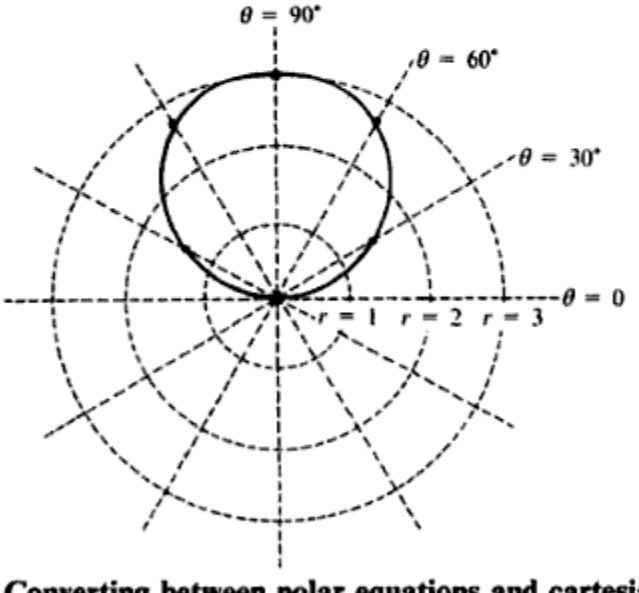
θ	0°	30°	60°	90°	120°	150°	180°	210°	240°	270°	300°	330°	360°
r	0		2·6		2·6			−1·5	−2·6		−2·6		

Hence plot the graph of $r = 3 \sin \theta$ for $0° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$.

Completing the table for $r = 3 \sin \theta$, gives

θ	0°	30°	60°	90°	120°	150°	180°	210°	240°	270°	300°	330°	360°
r	0	1·5	2·6	3·0	2·6	1·5	0	−1·5	−2·6	−3·0	−2·6	−1·5	0

and the curve can now be plotted.



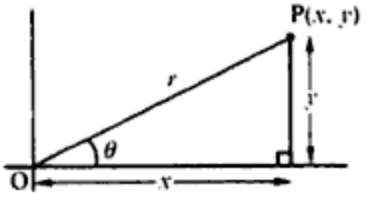
Converting between polar equations and cartesian equations

From the diagram on the right, we have

$$x = r \cos \theta, \qquad y = r \sin \theta$$

and $$r^2 = x^2 + y^2, \qquad \tan \theta = \frac{y}{x}.$$

Using these four relationships, we can convert polar equations to the equivalent cartesian equations and vice-versa.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 22

Express (a) $x^2 + xy = 3$ in polar form, (b) $r = 3 - \sin\theta$ in cartesian form.

(a) $$x^2 + xy = 3$$

Substituting $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$

gives $r^2\cos^2\theta + r^2\cos\theta\sin\theta = 3.$

i.e. $r^2\cos\theta(\cos\theta + \sin\theta) = 3.$

(b) $$r = 3 - \sin\theta$$

In order to be able to use $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$ and $y = r\sin\theta$, we first multiply the polar equation by r:

$$r^2 = 3r - r\sin\theta$$

$$\therefore \quad x^2 + y^2 = 3\sqrt{(x^2 + y^2)} - y$$

i.e. $(x^2 + y^2 + y)^2 = 9(x^2 + y^2)$

which is the required cartesian form.

Note that in this case the polar form of the equation is simpler than the cartesian form.

The following are some particular types of polar equations:

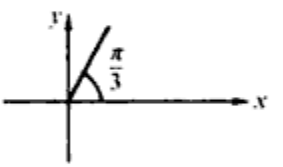
(a) $r = k$, a constant — From $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$, we see that $r = k$ gives $x^2 + y^2 = k^2$, i.e. $r = k$ is the equation of a circle, centre (0, 0), radius k.

(b) $\theta = k$, a constant — Now $\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}$ and so $\frac{y}{x} = m$ where $m = \tan k$

i.e. $y = mx$

Thus $\theta = k$ is the equation of a straight line.

In fact, if we restrict r to positive values only, then $\theta = k$ describes a 'half line', e.g. $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$ as shown.



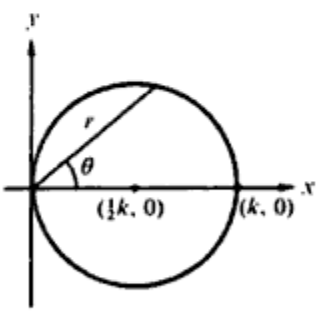
(c) $r = k\theta$ — This form of polar equation will give a spiral (see Exercise 16F Question 6).

(d) $r = k\cos\theta$ — Multiplying by r gives $r^2 = kr\cos\theta$

$\therefore \quad x^2 + y^2 = kx$

i.e. $(x - \frac{1}{2}k)^2 + y^2 = \frac{1}{4}k^2$

Thus $r = k\cos\theta$ is the equation of a circle centre $(\frac{1}{2}k, 0)$ and radius $\frac{1}{2}k$ as shown.

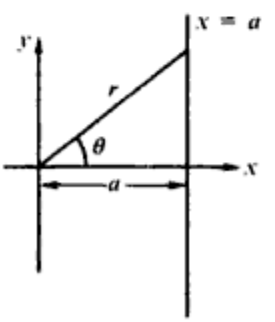


(e) $r = a\sec\theta$ — If $r = a\sec\theta$ then $r = \frac{a}{\cos\theta}$

$\therefore \quad 1 = \frac{a}{r\cos\theta}$ or $1 = \frac{a}{x}$

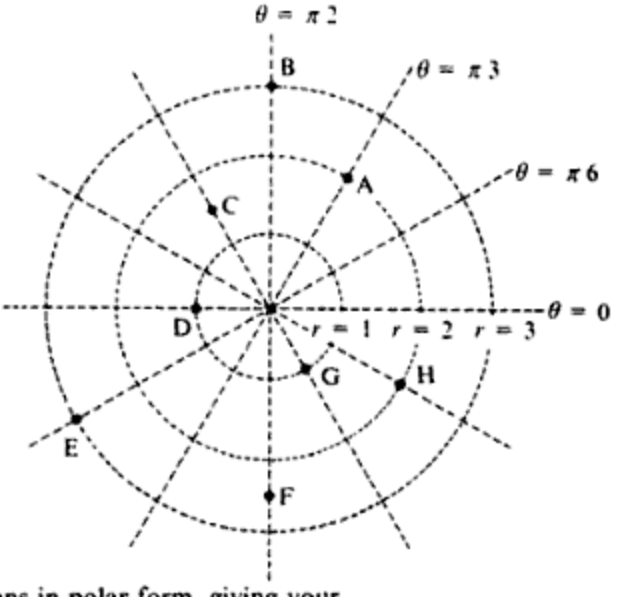
thus $x = a.$

i.e. $r = a\sec\theta$ is the polar equation of the straight line $x = a$ as shown.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 16F



1. Write down the polar coordinates of the points A to H shown in the diagram, giving your answers in the form (r, θ) for $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant 2\pi$ and $r \geqslant 0$

2. Find the cartesian coordinates of the points P to U having polar coordinates as follows:
P(4, 30°) Q(5, 90°) R(2, −90°)
S($5\sqrt{2}$, 135°) T(6, −120°) U(−3, 90°).

3. Express each of the following cartesian equations in polar form, giving your answers in the form $r = f(\theta)$ or $r^2 = f(\theta)$ as appropriate.
(a) $x = 4$ (b) $x^2 + y^2 = 4y$ (c) $2xy = 1$ (d) $y^2 = 8x$
(e) $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 1$ (f) $x^2 + y^2 = 4x$ (g) $x^2 - y^2 = 8$ (h) $(x - y)^2 = 4$

4 Express each of the following polar equations in cartesian form.
(a) $r \sin \theta = 1$ (b) $r = 3$ (c) $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$ (d) $r = \sin \theta$
(e) $r = \sin \theta + \cos \theta$ (f) $r^2 = \sec 2\theta$ (g) $r = 3 \tan \theta$ (h) $3 = r(1 - \sin \theta)$

5. Copy and complete the following table for $r = 3 \cos \theta$.

θ	0°	30°	60°	90°	120°	150°	180°	210°	240°	270°	300°	330°	360°
r		2·6	1·5		−1·5	−2·6		−2·6				2·6	

Hence plot the graph of $r = 3 \cos \theta$ for $0° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$.

6. Copy and complete the following table for $r = \frac{3\theta}{2\pi}$, (θ in radians).

θ	0	$\frac{1}{3}\pi$	$\frac{2}{3}\pi$	π	$\frac{4}{3}\pi$	$\frac{5}{3}\pi$	2π	$\frac{7}{3}\pi$	$\frac{8}{3}\pi$	3π	$\frac{10}{3}\pi$	$\frac{11}{3}\pi$	4π
r	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$									

Hence plot the graph of $r = \frac{3\theta}{2\pi}$ for $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant 4\pi$.

7. Copy and complete the following table for $r = 2(1 + \cos \theta)$

θ	0°	30°	60°	90°	120°	150°	180°	210°	240°	270°	300°	330°	360°
r	4	3·73				0·27		0·27				3·73	

Hence plot the graph of $r = 2(1 + \cos \theta)$ for $0° \leqslant \theta \leqslant 360°$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 16G Examination questions

1. Find the coordinates of the maximum point T and the minimum point B of the curve

$$y = \frac{x^3}{3} - 2x^2 + 3x.$$

Find also the point of inflexion I and show that T, I, B are collinear. Calculate to the nearest 0·1° the acute angle between TIB and the normal to the curve at I. (London)

2. Obtain the equation of the normal to the curve

$$y^2 = x^3$$

at the point (t^2, t^3). Show that the equation of the normal at the point where $t = \frac{1}{2}$ is

$$32x + 24y - 11 = 0.$$

Find the perpendicular distance from the point $(-1, 2)$ to this normal. (J.M.B.)

3. The equation of a circle is $x^2 + y^2 - 3x - 4 = 0$.
Find (i) the coordinates of its centre,
(ii) its radius,
(iii) the coordinates of the points at which it cuts the axes.
Show that the line whose equation is $3x + 4y = 17$ touches the circle and find the coordinates of its point of contact.
Show also that this line and the tangent to the circle at the point $(3, -2)$ intersect at a point on the x-axis and find its coordinates. (J.M.B.)

4. Find, *by calculation*, the coordinates of the centre and the radius of the circle which passes through the points $(1, 1)$, $(3, 5)$ and $(-3, 1)$. (A.E.B)

5. Verify that the circle with equation

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2rx - 2ry + r^2 = 0$$

touches both the coordinate axes.
Find the radii of the two circles which pass through the point $(16, 2)$ and touch both the coordinate axes. (Cambridge)

6. Find the values of m such that $y = mx$ is a tangent from the origin O $(0, 0)$ to the circle whose equation is $(x - 3)^2 + (y - 4)^2 = 1$.
Find the cosine of the acute angle between these tangents. (A.E.B)

7. Find the equations of the two circles which pass through the point $(2, 0)$ and have both the y-axis and the line $y - 1 = 0$ as tangents.
Calculate the coordinates of the second point at which the circles intersect. (A.E.B)

8. The fixed points A and B have coordinates $(-3a, 0)$ and $(a, 0)$ respectively. Find the equation of the locus of a point P which moves in the coordinate plane so that AP = 3PB. Show that the locus is a circle, S, which touches the axis of y and has its centre at the point $(\frac{3}{2}a, 0)$.
A point Q moves in such a way that the perpendicular distance of Q from the axis of y is equal to the length of a tangent from Q to the circle S. Find the equation of the locus of Q.
Show that this locus is also the locus of points which are equidistant from the line $4x + 3a = 0$ and the point $(\frac{3}{4}a, 0)$. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9. A point P moves in the x–y plane so that its distance from the origin, O, is twice its distance from the point with coordinates $(3a, 0)$. Show that the locus of P is a circle and obtain the coordinates of its centre and its radius. If the circle meets the x-axis in A and B, where OA < OB, find the coordinates of A and B. If the tangents from O to the circle are OL and OM, find the angle LOM and the equations of OL and OM. Calculate the area of the triangle enclosed by the lines OL, OM and the tangent to the circle at A. (S.U.J.B)

10. Find the equation of the normal to the parabola $y^2 = 4ax$ at the point $(at^2, 2at)$. The straight line $4x - 9y + 8a = 0$ meets the parabola at the points P and Q; the normals to the parabola at the points P and Q meet at R. Find the coordinates of R, and verify that it lies on the parabola. (Oxford)

11. Prove that the equation of the tangent to the parabola $y^2 = 4ax$ at the point $P(ap^2, 2ap)$ on the curve is

$$py = x + ap^2.$$

Find the coordinates of the point of intersection, T, of the tangents at P and $Q(ap^2, 2aq)$, simplifying your answers where possible.
Given that S is the point $(a, 0)$, verify that $SP \cdot SQ = ST^2$. (Cambridge)

12. The tangent to the curve $4ay = x^2$ at the point $P(2at, at^2)$ meets the x-axis at the point Q. The point S is $(0, a)$.
(a) Prove that PQ is perpendicular to SQ.
(b) Find a cartesian equation for the locus of the point, M, the mid-point of PS. (A.E.B.)

13. Prove that the chord joining the points $P(ap^2, 2ap)$ and $Q(aq^2, 2aq)$ on the parabola $y^2 = 4ax$ has the equation

$$(p + q)y = 2r + 2apq.$$

A variable chord PQ of the parabola is such that the lines OP and OQ are perpendicular, where O is the origin.
(i) Prove that the chord PQ cuts the axis of x at a fixed point, and give the x-coordinate of this point.
(ii) Find the equation of the locus of the mid-point of PQ. (Cambridge)

14. The point P lies on the ellipse $x^2 + 4y^2 = 1$ and N is the foot of the perpendicular from P to the line $x = 2$. Find the equation of the locus of the mid-point of PN as P moves on the ellipse. (Cambridge)

15. Show that the x coordinates of any points of intersection of the line $y = mx + c$ and the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{4} = 1$ are given by the solutions of the quadratic equation $(4 + 9m^2)x^2 + 18mcx + (9c^2 - 36) = 0$.
If the line $y = mx + c$ is a tangent to the ellipse, prove that $c^2 = 4 + 9m^2$. The line $y = mx + c$ passes through the point $(2, 3)$. Write down a second equation connecting m and c, and hence prove that m must satisfy the equation $5m^2 + 12m - 5 = 0$.
Prove that the two tangents drawn from the point $(2, 3)$ to the ellipse are perpendicular to each other. (S.U.J.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

20. The tangent at the point $P\left(ct, \frac{c}{t}\right)$, where $t > 0$, on the rectangular hyperbola $xy = c^2$ meets the x-axis at A and the y-axis at B. The normal at P to the rectangular hyperbola meets the line $y = x$ at C and the line $y = -x$ at D.

(a) Show that P is the mid-point of both AB and CD.

(b) Prove that the points A, B, C and D form the vertices of a square. The normal at P meets the hyperbola again at the point Q and the mid-point of PQ is M.

(c) Prove that, as t varies, the point M lies on the curve

$$c^2(x^2 - y^2)^2 + 4x^3y^3 = 0.$$

(A.E.B.)

21. Find a polar equation of the curve $x^2 + y^2 = 4x$ and calculate the polar coordinates of the two points P and Q where the curve intersects the line $r = 2\sqrt{2}\sec\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \theta\right)$.

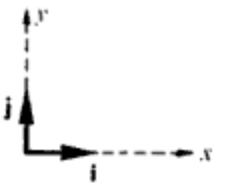
Find the polar equations of the two half-lines from the origin which are tangents to the circle which has PQ as diameter. (London)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

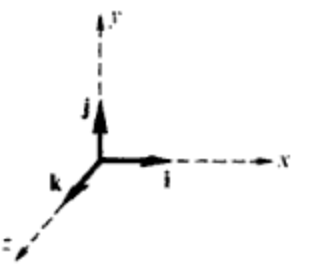
17
Three-dimensional work: vectors and matrices

17.1 Three-dimensional work

From the work of earlier chapters the reader is familar with the use of coordinates to define a point in a plane in terms of its distance from two mutually perpendicular axes x and y. The position vector of such a point has been expressed in the form $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$, where $\mathbf{i}$ is a unit vector in the direction of the x-axis and $\mathbf{j}$ is a unit vector in the direction of the y-axis.



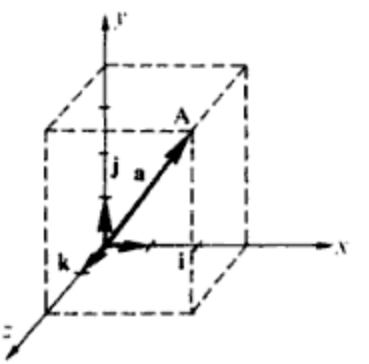
To consider points that are not coplanar we must introduce a third axis, the z-axis, and a corresponding third unit vector $\mathbf{k}$ in the direction of this axis.



Suppose the point A shown in the diagram has coordinates (3, 4, 2).
If $\mathbf{a}$ is the position vector of point A then

$$\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$$

or this may be written as $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$



Note The convention for determining the direction of $\mathbf{k}$ is to use the 'right-handed screw rule'. For this we consider the motion of a screw at O, lying perpendicular to the $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ plane, turning through the right angle from $\mathbf{i}$ to $\mathbf{j}$.

Thus if we draw:

the rotation will move the screw 'out of the page':

if we draw:

the rotation will move the screw 'upwards':

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The reader will remember from chapter 2 that if $\mathbf{r} = x_1\mathbf{i} + y_1\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{s} = x_2\mathbf{i} + y_2\mathbf{j}$ then $|\mathbf{r}| = \sqrt{(x_1^2 + y_1^2)}$ and $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{s} = x_1x_2 + y_1y_2$
$= |\mathbf{r}||\mathbf{s}| \cos\theta$ where θ is the angle between $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{s}$.

These results can be extended to three-dimensional vectors so that if
$\mathbf{r} = x_1\mathbf{i} + y_1\mathbf{j} + z_1\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{s} = x_2\mathbf{i} + y_2\mathbf{j} + z_2\mathbf{k}$ then
$|\mathbf{r}| = \sqrt{(x_1^2 + y_1^2 + z_1^2)}$ and $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{s} = x_1x_2 + y_1y_2 + z_1z_2$
$= |\mathbf{r}||\mathbf{s}| \cos\theta$
where θ is the angle between $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{s}$.

Example 1

Find, to the nearest degree, the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

If θ is the angle between the vectors then $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos\theta$
thus $2 + 2 - 3 = \sqrt{14}\sqrt{6} \cos\theta$
giving $\theta = 84°$ to the nearest degree.

As we saw in chapter 2, if three vectors are coplanar any one of the vectors can be expressed as a combination of scalar multiples of the other two. The converse statement is also true, i.e. if a vector can be expressed as a combination of scalar multiples of two other vectors then the three vectors are coplanar.

Example 2

Show that the vectors $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -10 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$ are coplanar.

Suppose that $\mathbf{c} = \lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b}$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -10 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} = \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then $1 = \lambda + 6\mu$, $-10 = -3\lambda - 4\mu$ and $7 = 2\lambda + 2\mu$.
Solving the first two of these simultaneously gives $\lambda = 4$ and $\mu = -\frac{1}{2}$ and these values are compatible with $7 = 2\lambda + 2\mu$.
Thus we can write $\mathbf{c} = 4\mathbf{a} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{b}$, hence $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{c}$ are coplanar.

Example 3

Find a vector that is perpendicular to $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$.

There are many vectors of the form $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j} + c\mathbf{k}$ that are perpendicular to $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ but for all of them

$$(a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j} + c\mathbf{k}) \cdot (2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) = 0$$

i.e. $2a + 3b - c = 0$
Suppose we take $a = b = 1$ then $c = 5$
Thus the vector $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}$ is perpendicular to $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 6

Show that the vectors $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ form a set of base vectors for three dimensional space and express the vector $\mathbf{d} = 5\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$ in the form $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} + \eta\mathbf{c}$.

The vectors **a**, **b** and **c** will form a set of base vectors provided
(a) no two of the vectors are parallel to each other and
(b) the vectors are not coplanar.

Condition (a) is true as no one of the vectors **a**, **b** or **c** is a scalar multiple of either of the other two.
(b) If **a**, **b** and **c** were coplanar we could write that
$\mathbf{c} = \alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\mathbf{b}$ where α and β are scalars
i.e. $3\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} = \alpha(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + \beta(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$
Equating coefficients of **i**, **j** and **k**: $3 = 2\alpha + \beta$, $8 = 3\alpha - 2\beta$ and $-1 = \alpha + \beta$.
Solving the first two of these simultaneously gives $\alpha = 2$ and $\beta = -1$.
However, these values are not consistent with $-1 = \alpha + \beta$ and so we cannot write $\mathbf{c} = \alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\mathbf{b}$. Thus **a**, **b** and **c** are not coplanar.
Therefore **a**, **b** and **c** form a set of base vectors for three dimensional space.

If $\mathbf{d} = \lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} + \eta\mathbf{c}$

$$5\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k} = \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + \eta(3\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$$

$$\therefore \quad 5 = 2\lambda + \mu + 3\eta \qquad \ldots [1]$$
$$-3 = 3\lambda - 2\mu + 8\eta \qquad \ldots [2]$$
$$6 = \lambda + \mu - \eta \qquad \ldots [3]$$

equation [1] minus equation [3] gives: $-1 = \lambda + 4\eta$
equation [2] added to twice equation [3] gives: $9 = 5\lambda + 6\eta$
Thus $\lambda = 3$, $\mu = 2$ and $\eta = -1$
$\therefore \quad \mathbf{d} = 3\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{c}$

Exercise 17A

1. If $\mathbf{a} = 9\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{c} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$ find
   (a) $|\mathbf{a}|$ (b) $|\mathbf{b}|$ (c) $|\mathbf{c}|$ (d) $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ (e) $\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}$
   (f) the angle between **a** and **b** (to the nearest degree)
   (g) the angle between **b** and **c** (to the nearest degree).
2. If $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ find
   (a) $|\mathbf{a}|$ (b) $|\mathbf{b}|$ (c) the angle between **a** and **b** (to the nearest degree).
3. If $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 12\mathbf{k}$ find $\hat{\mathbf{a}}$, a unit vector in the direction of **a**.
4. If $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix}$ find $\hat{\mathbf{b}}$, a unit vector in the direction of **b**.
5. Find a vector that is perpendicular to $5\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.
6. Find a unit vector that is perpendicular to $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$.
7. State which of the vectors **a**, **b**, **c** or **d** listed below are perpendicular to the vector $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$.
   $\mathbf{a} = -3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ $\quad \mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$
   $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ $\quad \mathbf{d} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. Find the direction ratios and direction cosines of the vector $14\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}$.
9. Vector $\mathbf{r}$ is at right angles to both $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$ and $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$. Find the direction ratios of $\mathbf{r}$.
10. (a) Find a vector that is perpendicular to both $3\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$ and $-3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$
    (b) Find the direction cosines of the vector obtained for part (a)
    (c) Find a unit vector that is perpendicular to both $3\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$ and $-3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.
11. Points A, B and C have position vectors $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$, $3\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ and $5\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j} - 7\mathbf{k}$ respectively. Prove that A, B and C are collinear.
12. Points A, B and C have position vectors $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$, $3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}$ and $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}$ respectively. Prove that angle $B\hat{A}C$ is a right angle.
13. Prove that the vectors $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{c} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ are coplanar.
14. Prove that the vectors $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ are coplanar.
15. If the points A, B and C have position vectors $\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}$, $3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k}$ and $8\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ respectively find the angles of triangle ABC giving your answers to the nearest degree.
16. Prove that the sum of the squares of the direction cosines of any vector is one.
17. Prove that the vectors $\mathbf{a} = -\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$ form a set of base vectors for three dimensional space and express the vector $\mathbf{d} = -3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$ in the form $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} + \eta\mathbf{c}$.
18. Prove that the vectors $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ form a set of base vectors for three dimensional space and express the vector $\mathbf{d} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 7 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$ in the form $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} + \eta\mathbf{c}$.

17.2 Differentiation and integration of vectors

Suppose that $\mathbf{a} = f(x)\mathbf{i} + g(x)\mathbf{j} + h(x)\mathbf{k}$,

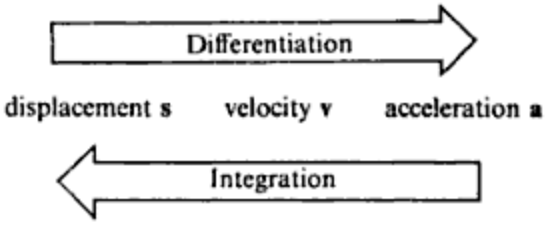
then $\dfrac{d\mathbf{a}}{dx} = f'(x)\mathbf{i} + g'(x)\mathbf{j} + h'(x)\mathbf{k}$.

i.e. to differentiate a vector with respect to some variable x we differentiate each component with respect to that variable.

Similarly, to integrate a vector with respect to some variable x we integrate each component with respect to that variable.
In particular, for a particle which has a displacement vector $\mathbf{s}$, velocity

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

vector **v** and acceleration vector **a** given in terms of the time, t, we can link these vectors by the method shown on page 308 i.e.



Example 7

If $\mathbf{y} = 8p^2\mathbf{i} + (8p - 4)\mathbf{j} + (p^3 + 3)\mathbf{k}$, find $\frac{d\mathbf{y}}{dp}$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dp^2}$

$$\mathbf{y} = 8p^2\mathbf{i} + (8p - 4)\mathbf{j} + (p^3 + 3)\mathbf{k}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{d\mathbf{y}}{dp} = 16p\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} + 3p^2\mathbf{k}$$

$$\text{and} \quad \frac{d^2\mathbf{y}}{dp^2} = 16\mathbf{i} + 6p\mathbf{k}$$

Example 8

If the velocity of a body at time t is given by $\mathbf{v} = 3t^2\mathbf{i} - 2t\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$, find expressions for the acceleration, **a**, and the displacement, **s**, of the body at time t, given that when $t = 1$, $\mathbf{s} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

$$\mathbf{v} = 3t^2\mathbf{i} - 2t\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$$

$$\therefore \quad \mathbf{a} = \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} = 6t\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$$

$$\text{also} \quad \mathbf{s} = \int \mathbf{v}\,dt = t^3\mathbf{i} - t^2\mathbf{j} + 4t\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{c}$$

but when $t = 1$, $\mathbf{s} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$, $\therefore$ $\mathbf{c} = 2\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{k}$

$$\therefore \quad \mathbf{s} = (t^3 + 2)\mathbf{i} - t^2\mathbf{j} + 2(2t - 1)\mathbf{k}$$

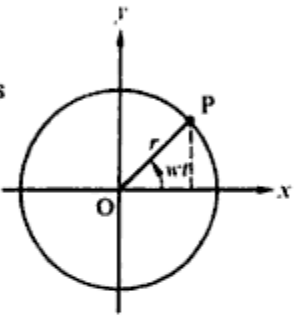
Thus at time t the displacement of the body is given by $\mathbf{s} = (t^3 + 2)\mathbf{i} - t^2\mathbf{j} + 2(2t - 1)\mathbf{k}$ and the acceleration is given by $\mathbf{a} = 6t\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$.

Exercise 17B

1. Differentiate each of the following vectors with respect to t.
   (a) $3t\mathbf{i} + 4t^2\mathbf{j}$ (b) $(3t + 1)\mathbf{i} + 2t\mathbf{j} - 5t^2\mathbf{k}$
   (c) $3\mathbf{i} + 2t\mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}$ (d) $(6t - 1)\mathbf{i} + 3t^3\mathbf{j} - 6t\mathbf{k}$
2. Differentiate each of the following vectors with respect to θ.
   (a) $\sin\theta\mathbf{i} + \cos\theta\mathbf{j}$ (b) $2\cos\theta\mathbf{i} + 2\theta\mathbf{j}$
   (c) $\sin\theta\mathbf{i} - \cos\theta\mathbf{j} + \theta^2\mathbf{k}$ (d) $\sin 3\theta\mathbf{j} - \cos^3\theta\mathbf{k}$
3. The position vector of a particle at time **t** seconds is given by $\mathbf{s} = (2t^3\mathbf{i} - 2t\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$ metres.
   Find the displacement, velocity and acceleration vectors when $\mathbf{t} = 2$.

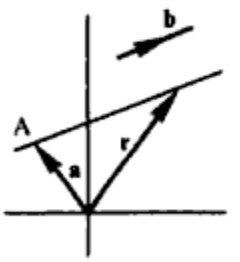
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. The velocity vector of a particle at time t is given by $\mathbf{v} = 2t\mathbf{i} + 3t^2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$. Given that when $t = 0$ the particle has position vector $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ with respect to an origin O, find the position vector of the particle with respect to O when $t = 3$.
5. At time t the displacement of a particle from an origin O is given by $\mathbf{s} = (2 \sin (\pi t)\mathbf{i} + 2 \cos (\pi t)\mathbf{j})$ metres. Prove that the particle is always 2 metres from O and find the velocity and speed of the particle when $t = 2$ seconds.
6. The acceleration of a body at time t is given by $\mathbf{a} = 4t\mathbf{j}$. Find expressions for the velocity, $\mathbf{v}$, and the displacement, $\mathbf{s}$, from an origin O at time t given that when $t = 0$, $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{s} = 3\mathbf{k}$.
7. A body moves such that its position vector when at point P is given by $\overrightarrow{OP} = 3 \sin 5t\mathbf{i} + 3 \cos 5t\mathbf{j}$ where O is the origin and t is the time. Prove that the velocity of the particle when at P is perpendicular to $\overrightarrow{OP}$.
8. For a body moving in a circle of radius r, at constant angular speed ω, the position vector $\mathbf{s}$, of the body at time t is given by $\mathbf{s} = \overrightarrow{OP} = r \cos \omega t\mathbf{i} + r \sin \omega t\mathbf{j}$. Prove that the acceleration of the body has constant magnitude $r\omega^2$ and is directed along $\overrightarrow{PO}$ (see diagram).



17.3 Equations of a straight line in 3-D

As we saw in section 2.5 a line that passes through the point with position vector $\mathbf{a}$ and is parallel to the vector $\mathbf{b}$ has vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$. Thus a line passing through the point A, position vector $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and which is parallel to the vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ has vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$. This may also be written in column vector form, $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$



Example 9

Find the vector equation of the line which is parallel to the vector $3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and passes through a point with position vector $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$.

The vector equation is $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$ where $\mathbf{r}$ is the position vector of a general point on the line and λ is a scalar.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 10

Show that the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} - 9\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ lies on the line L, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$.

The position vector of any point on a line must satisfy the equation of the line. Thus if $\mathbf{i} - 9\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ lies on L there must exist some valve of λ such that

$$\mathbf{i} - 9\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} = 3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$$

i.e. $1 = 3 + \lambda$, $-9 = 3 + 6\lambda$ and $1 = -1 - \lambda$.
The first of these gives $\lambda = -2$ which is consistent with $-9 = 3 + 6\lambda$ and $1 = -1 - \lambda$. Thus the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} - 9\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ does lie on L.

Example 11

The vector equations of three lines are stated below:
line 1: $\mathbf{r} = 17\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k} + \lambda(-9\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k})$
line 2: $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k} + \mu(6\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$
line 3: $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \eta(-3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k})$
State which pair of lines (a) are parallel to each other,
(b) intersect with each other,
(c) are not parallel and do not intersect (i.e. are skew).

(a) line 1 is parallel to $-9\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k}$
line 2 is parallel to $6\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$
line 3 is parallel to $-3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$
$(-9\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k})$ is parallel to $(-3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k})$ as one is a scalar multiple of the other. Thus lines 1 and 3 are parallel.

(b) If two lines intersect there will exist a point whose position vector satisfies the vector equations of both lines.
If lines 1 and 2 intersect there will exist values of λ and μ such that
$17\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k} + \lambda(-9\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k}) = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k} + \mu(6\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$
i.e. $17 - 9\lambda = 2 + 6\mu$, $2 + 3\lambda = -3 + 7\mu$ and $-6 + 9\lambda = 4 - \mu$
Solving $15 = 9\lambda + 6\mu$ and $10 = 9\lambda + \mu$ simultaneously gives $\mu = 1$ and $\lambda = 1$
However this is inconsistent with $5 = 7\mu - 3\lambda$
Thus lines 1 and 2 do not intersect.

If lines 2 and 3 intersect there will exist values of μ and η such that
$2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k} + \mu(6\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) = 2\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \eta(-3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k})$
i.e. $2 + 6\mu = 2 - 3\eta$, $-3 + 7\mu = -12 + \eta$ and $4 - \mu = -1 + 3\eta$
or $2\mu = -\eta$, $9 = \eta - 7\mu$ and $5 = \mu + 3\eta$
Solving $2\mu = -\eta$ and $9 = \eta - 7\mu$ simultaneously gives $\eta = 2$ and $\mu = -1$ which is consistent with $5 = \mu + 3\eta$
Thus lines 2 and 3 intersect.

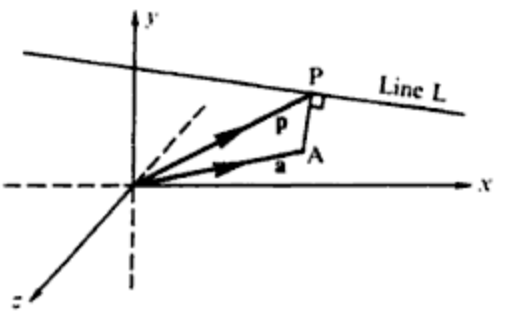
(c) From the working of parts (a) and (b) it is clear that lines 1 and 2 are not parallel and do not intersect.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 12

Find the perpendicular distance from the point A, position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix}$ to the line L, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

Let P be the point where the perpendicular from the point A meets the line L, and let P have position vector **p**.
Suppose that P is the point on the line L for which $\lambda = \lambda_1$, then



$$\mathbf{p} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda_1 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 + 3\lambda_1 \\ 2 - \lambda_1 \\ 3 + 2\lambda_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \quad \overrightarrow{PA} = \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{p} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 + 3\lambda_1 \\ 2 - \lambda_1 \\ 3 + 2\lambda_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 3 - 3\lambda_1 \\ -5 + \lambda_1 \\ 7 - 2\lambda_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

But $\overrightarrow{PA}$ is perpendicular to L and L is parallel to $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

Thus $\begin{pmatrix} 3 - 3\lambda_1 \\ -5 + \lambda_1 \\ 7 - 2\lambda_1 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = 0$ i.e. $9 - 9\lambda_1 + 5 - \lambda_1 + 14 - 4\lambda_1 = 0$
giving $\lambda_1 = 2$

Thus $\overrightarrow{PA} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $|\overrightarrow{PA}| = \sqrt{[(-3)^2 + (-3)^2 + (3)^2]}$
$= 3\sqrt{3}$ units

The perpendicular distance from the point A to the line L is $3\sqrt{3}$ units.

Cartesian equation of a line in three dimensions

Consider a line that is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$ and which passes through the point A, position vector $\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix}$. If the general point on this line has position vector $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}$ then the vector equation of the line is $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Thus $\left.\begin{aligned} x &= a + \lambda p \\ y &= b + \lambda q \\ \text{and} \quad z &= c + \lambda r \end{aligned}\right\}$ These are the parametric equations of the line, using the parameter λ.

Isolating λ in each equation gives $\dfrac{x-a}{p} = \dfrac{y-b}{q} = \dfrac{z-c}{r} (= \lambda)$. These are the cartesian equations of the line

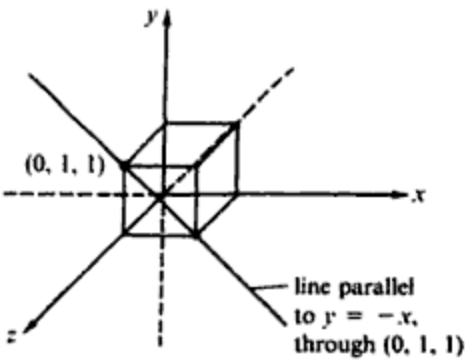
> Thus the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$ has cartesian equations: $\dfrac{x-a}{p} = \dfrac{y-b}{q} = \dfrac{z-c}{r}$

Notes

1. Given the cartesian equation of a line in the above form it is easy to obtain the vector equation by remembering that the numerator gives the position vector $\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix}$ of a point on the line and the denominator gives the direction vector $\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$.
2. It is acceptable to give the cartesian equation of a line in the above form even when one or more of p, q and r are zero.

   For example, the line through (0, 1, 1) and parallel to $y = -x$, i.e. parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$, has vector equation

   $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$, (see diagram).



   This gives the parametric equations $\begin{cases} x = -\lambda \\ y = 1 + \lambda \\ z = 1 \end{cases}$

   The cartesian equations of the line can then be written

   $\dfrac{x}{-1} = \dfrac{y-1}{1} = \dfrac{z-1}{0}$ or simply as $\dfrac{x}{-1} = \dfrac{y-1}{1}$, $z = 1$.

Example 13

Find the cartesian equations of the line that is parallel to the vector $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$ and which passes through the point A, position vector $3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

The vector equation of the line is $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k})$

thus
$$\begin{aligned} x &= 3 + 2\lambda \\ y &= -1 + 3\lambda \\ z &= 2 + 4\lambda \end{aligned}$$

The cartesian equations are therefore $\dfrac{x-3}{2} = \dfrac{y+1}{3} = \dfrac{z-2}{4} (= \lambda)$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

solving simultaneously gives $x_1 = 4$ and $y_1 = 6$
Using these values of x_1 and y_1 equations [1] and equations [2] both give $z_1 = 1$.
Thus the lines L_1 and L_2 do intersect and the point of intersection has coordinates (4, 6, 1).

Exercise 17C

1. State the vector equation of the line which is parallel to $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and which passes through the point A, position vector $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.
2. State the vector equation of the line which passes through the point B, position vector $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and which is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.
3. State a vector that is parallel to the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k})$.
4. Show that the point with position vector $4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 12\mathbf{k}$ lies on the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k})$.
5. Points A, B and C have position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 1 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively. Find which of these points lie on the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$.
6. Points D, E and F have position vectors $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$, $4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$ and $7\mathbf{i} - 8\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$ respectively. Find which of these points lie on the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = (2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$.
7. If the point A, position vector $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$, lies on the line L, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = (2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$, find the values of a and b.
8. Points A and B have position vectors $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $5\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ repectively. Find
   (a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ in the form $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j} + c\mathbf{k}$,
   (b) the vector equation of the line that passes through A and B.
9. Find the cartesian equations of the lines with vector equations
   (a) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$,
   (b) $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k} + \mu(3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k})$,
   (c) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} + \eta(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$.
10. Find the vector equation of the line with parametric equations
$$x = 2 + 3\lambda$$
$$y = 5 - 2\lambda$$
$$z = 4 - \lambda$$
11. Find the vector equations of the lines with the following cartesian equations
    (a) $\dfrac{x-2}{3} = \dfrac{y-2}{2} = \dfrac{z+1}{4}$ (b) $x - 3 = \dfrac{y+2}{4} = \dfrac{z-3}{-1}$
12. Lines L_1 and L_2 have vector equations $\mathbf{r} = 8\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k} + \lambda(-4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$ and $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \mu(\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})$ respectively. Show that L_1 and L_2 intersect and find the position vector of the point of intersection.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

13. Lines L_1 and L_2 have vector equations

$$\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$ respectively. Show that L_1 and L_2 intersect and find the position vector of the point of intersection.

14. For each of the following pairs of lines state whether the two lines intersect and, for those that do, give the coordinates of the point of intersection.

(a) $\dfrac{x-1}{2} = \dfrac{y+2}{1} = \dfrac{z-3}{-1}$; $\dfrac{x+1}{-2} = y - 3 = \dfrac{z-7}{2}$.

(b) $\dfrac{x-1}{1} = \dfrac{y+1}{3} = \dfrac{z-2}{-1}$; $\dfrac{x+3}{-2} = \dfrac{y-8}{1} = \dfrac{z+2}{-1}$.

(c) $x - 2 = \dfrac{y+3}{4} = \dfrac{z-5}{2}$; $\dfrac{x-1}{-1} = \dfrac{y-8}{1} = \dfrac{z-3}{-2}$.

(d) $\dfrac{x-2}{5} = \dfrac{y-3}{-3} = \dfrac{z+1}{2}$; $\dfrac{x-9}{-3} = \dfrac{y-2}{5} = \dfrac{z-2}{-1}$.

15. For each of the pairs of lines given by the following vector equations state whether the lines are parallel lines, non-parallel coplanar lines or skew lines.

(a) $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$ and $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \mu(3\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k})$.

(b) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$ and $\mathbf{r} = 7\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k} + \mu(-\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$.

(c) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(-\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$ and $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k} + \mu(3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$.

(d) $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$ and $\mathbf{r} = -8\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k} + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$.

16. Find the acute angle between the lines with vector equations $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k})$ and $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k} + \mu(2\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$, giving your answer to the nearest degree.

17. Find the acute angle between the lines whose equations are $\dfrac{x-2}{-4} = \dfrac{y-3}{3} = \dfrac{z+1}{-1}$ and $\dfrac{x-3}{2} = \dfrac{y-1}{6} = \dfrac{z+1}{-5}$, giving your answer to the nearest degree.

18. The vector equations of three lines are:

line 1 $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(-\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k})$

line 2 $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} + \mu(-\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{k})$

line 3 $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \eta(2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k})$

(a) Show that lines 1 and 2 intersect and find the position vector of the point of intersection.

(b) Show that lines 2 and 3 intersect and find the position vector of the point of intersection.

(c) Find the distance between these two points of intersection.

19. Two lines L_1 and L_2 lie in the x–y plane and have cartesian equations $y = m_1x + c_1$ and $y = m_2x + c_2$ respectively. Show that the vector equations of L_1 and L_2 can be written

$$\mathbf{r}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ c_1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m_1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{r}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ c_2 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m_2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Use vector methods to show that if θ is the angle between L_1 and L_2

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

then $\tan\theta = \dfrac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1 m_2}$.

(i.e. obtain the result of page 380 by vector methods).

20. For each of the following parts find the perpendicular distance from the given point to the given line,

(a) the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix}4\\2\\2\end{pmatrix}$ and the line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}3\\1\\-1\end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix}1\\-1\\2\end{pmatrix}$

(b) the point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and the line $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$

(c) the point (1, 1, 3) and the line $\dfrac{x+4}{2} = \dfrac{y+1}{3} = \dfrac{z-1}{3}$

(d) the point (−6, −4, −5) and the line $x - 5 = \dfrac{y-6}{2} = \dfrac{z-3}{4}$

21. Find the distance between the pairs of parallel lines listed below

(a) $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}2\\0\\3\end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix}1\\-1\\2\end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}1\\-1\\4\end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix}1\\-1\\2\end{pmatrix}$

(b) $\dfrac{x-2}{1} = \dfrac{y-1}{-1} = \dfrac{z-3}{2}$ and $\dfrac{x+1}{1} = \dfrac{y-3}{-1} = \dfrac{z-1}{2}$

22. Find the shortest distance between the two skew lines L_1 and L_2 given that L_1 has vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}-1\\2\\3\end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix}1\\2\\1\end{pmatrix}$ and L_2 has vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}0\\-1\\1\end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix}2\\1\\3\end{pmatrix}$

23. Find the shortest distance between the two skew lines given in each of the following parts.

(a) $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}1\\2\\-1\end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\\1\end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}2\\-1\\0\end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix}1\\1\\2\end{pmatrix}$

(b) $\dfrac{x-2}{0} = \dfrac{y+1}{1} = \dfrac{z}{2}$ and $\dfrac{x+1}{1} = \dfrac{y-1}{-3} = \dfrac{z-1}{-2}$

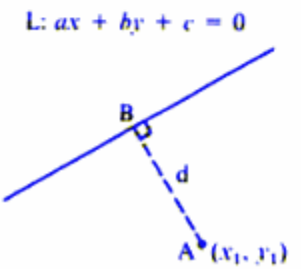
24. The diagram shows the line L and the point A both lying in the x–y plane. L has cartesian equation $ax + by + c = 0$ and A is the point (x_1, y_1). A is a perpendicular distance d from L.

Show that the vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix}x\\y\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0\\-c/b\end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix}b\\-a\end{pmatrix}$ also represents the line L.

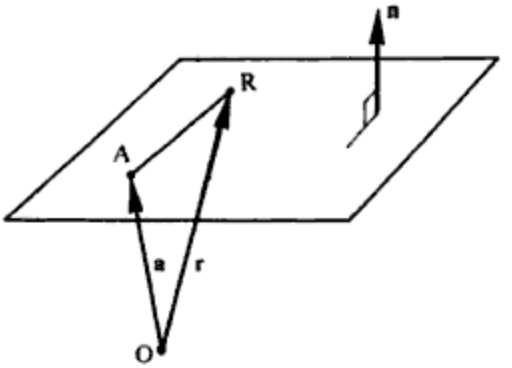
If λ takes the value λ_1 at point B show that $\lambda_1 = \dfrac{b^2x_1 - aby_1 - ac}{b(a^2 + b^2)}$

Hence show that $d = \dfrac{ax_1 + by_1 + c}{\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}}$

(Note: this has proved the result on page 382 by vector methods).



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material



A plane can also be uniquely defined by stating a vector that is perpendicular to the plane and the position vector of a point on the plane.
Suppose that **n** is a vector perpendicular to the plane and A is a point in the plane having position vector **a**.
Consider some general point R in the plane having position vector **r**.
Thus $\overrightarrow{AR}$ will lie in the plane and will therefore be perpendicular to **n**.

i.e. $\overrightarrow{AR} \cdot \mathbf{n} = 0$

thus $(-\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{n} = 0$

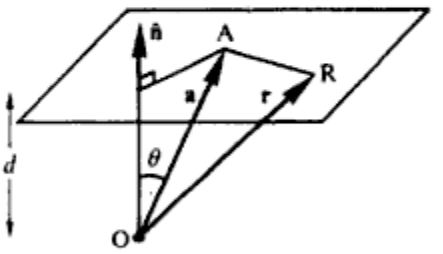
or $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n}$

The equation $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n}$ is the vector equation of the plane that is perpendicular to the vector **n** and that contains the point with position vector **a**.
With **a** and **n** known the scalar product $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n}$ can be evaluated. If $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n} = p$, a scalar, then the equation of the plane is

$$\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{n} = p$$

This form of the equation is referred to as the scalar product form of the vector equation of the plane. The position vector **r**, of *any* point in the plane will satisfy this equation.

Distance of a plane from the origin



Suppose that $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is the *unit* vector perpendicular to the plane and d is the perpendicular distance from the plane to the origin.
The scalar product vector equation of the plane will be

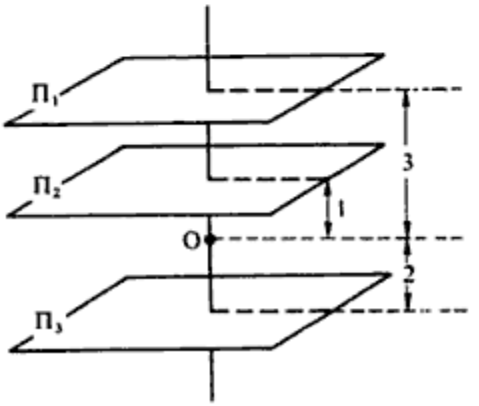
$\mathbf{r} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}$

$= |\mathbf{a}| \times 1 \times \cos\theta$ where θ is the angle between **a** and $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$

$= a \cos\theta$

$= d$

Thus if the equation of the plane is in the form $\mathbf{r} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} = d$ where $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is a unit vector normal to the plane then d is the perpendicular distance of the plane from the origin.
Consider the three parallel planes Π_1, Π_2 and Π_3 with vector equations $\mathbf{r} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} = 3$, $\mathbf{r} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} = 1$ and $\mathbf{r} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} = -2$ respectively. The perpendicular distance of these planes from the origin will be 3 units, 1 unit and 2 units respectively and the significance of the negative sign is that Π_3 is on the other side of the origin from Π_1 and Π_2. Thus Π_1 is 2 units from Π_2 and 5 units from Π_3.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 18

A plane contains a point A, position vector $3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$ and is perpendicular to the vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$. Find
(a) a vector equation of the plane,
(b) the perpendicular distance of the plane from the origin,
(c) the perpendicular distance from this plane to the parallel plane
$\mathbf{r} \cdot (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) = -3$

(a) The scalar product form of the vector equation will be

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{r} \cdot (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) &= (3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}) \cdot (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) \\ &= 3 + 8 - 4 \\ &= 7\end{aligned}$$

The scalar product vector equation of the plane is $\mathbf{r}.(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) = 7$

(b) If we can write the vector equation in the form $\mathbf{r} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} = c$ where $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is a unit vector normal to the plane, then c is the required distance.
Now $|\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}| = 3$
From $\mathbf{r} \cdot (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) = 7$ we can write $\mathbf{r} \cdot \dfrac{(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})}{3} = \dfrac{7}{3}$
giving the perpendicular distance of the plane from the origin as $2\frac{1}{3}$ units.

(c) The plane $\mathbf{r} \cdot (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) = -3$ is on the other side of the origin from $\mathbf{r} \cdot (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) = 7$ and is a perpendicular distance of $\dfrac{3}{\sqrt{(1^2 + 2^2 + 2^2)}} = 1$ unit from the origin. Thus the perpendicular distance between the planes is $3\frac{1}{3}$ units.

Example 19

Find the position vector of the point where the line

$$\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ meets the plane } \mathbf{r} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = 12.$$

The position vector of the point of intersection will satisfy both the equation of the line and that of the plane.
If $\mathbf{r}_1$ is the position vector of the point of intersection then

$$\mathbf{r}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{r}_1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = 12$$

thus
$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 + \lambda \\ 3 - 4\lambda \\ -1 + 2\lambda \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = 12$$

$$\therefore \quad 10 + 2\lambda + 3 - 4\lambda - 3 + 6\lambda = 12$$
$$\lambda = \tfrac{1}{2}$$

Thus the required position vector is $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5\frac{1}{2} \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 20

Show that the line $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$ lies in the plane $\mathbf{r} \cdot (3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = 1$.

If the line and the plane (i) are parallel and (ii) contain a common point, then the line must lie in the plane.

(i) The line is parallel to $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and the plane is perpendicular to $3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.
However $(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) \cdot (3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = 3 - 2 - 1$
$= 0$
Hence the vectors $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and $3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ are perpendicular to each other.
Thus the line and plane are both perpendicular to $3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and must therefore be parallel to each other

(ii) The line passes through the point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$.
Also $(3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) \cdot (3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = 9 - 6 - 2$
$= 1$
i.e. $(3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})$ satisfies $\mathbf{r} \cdot (3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = 1$
Thus the point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ is common to both the line and the plane.
With conditions (i) and (ii) proved the line must lie in the plane.

Alternatively example 20 can be solved by showing that the line and plane contain two common points. Taking any two values for λ, for example $\lambda = 0$ and $\lambda = 1$:

If $\lambda = 0$ $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ Thus the point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ lies on the given line.

If $\lambda = 1$ $\mathbf{r} = 4\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ Thus the point with position vector $4\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ lies on the given line.

But $(3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) \cdot (3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = 1$
and $(4\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}) \cdot (3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = 1$
i.e. both points also lie in the plane $\mathbf{r} \cdot (3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = 1$.
Therefore the line and plane contain two common points and so the line must lie in the plane.

Cartesian equation of a plane

Consider a plane with equation $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{n} = p$ where $\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix}$. Writing $\mathbf{r}$, the position vector of a general point in the plane, as $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}$ gives

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix} = p$$

i.e. $ax + by + cz = p$

Thus a plane perpendicular to $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j} + c\mathbf{k}$ has cartesian equation $ax + by + cz = p$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2. The plane Π has vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.

   Show that the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix}$ lies in the plane Π.

3. The plane Π has vector equation $\mathbf{r} \cdot (2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = 5$. Show that the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ lies in the plane Π.
4. Find the scalar product vector equation of the plane that is perpendicular to $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and contains the point with position vector $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.
5. Find the scalar product vector equation of the plane that is perpendicular to $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and contains the point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$.
6. Find the vector equation of the line that passes through the point A, position vector $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$, and is perpendicular to the plane Π, vector equation $\mathbf{r} \cdot (2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}) = 2$
7. State which of the lines given by the vector equations below are perpendicular to the plane $\mathbf{r} \cdot (2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) = 6$
   (a) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$
   (b) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \mu(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$
   (c) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} + \eta(4\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})$.
8. State which of the lines given by the vector equations below are parallel to the plane $\mathbf{r} \cdot (\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}) = 5$
   (a) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$
   (b) $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mu(4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})$
   (c) $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} + \eta(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k})$.
9. Write down the vector equations of the following planes in the form $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{n} = p$
   (a) $4x + 2y + 3z = 4$ (b) $2x - 3y + 4z = 5$
10. Find the cartesian equation of the plane with parametric vector equation

    $$\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

11. Find the cartesian equation of the plane containing the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and parallel to the vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$.
12. Find the cartesian equation of the plane containing the points with position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.
13. Find the perpendicular distance from the plane $\mathbf{r} \cdot (2\mathbf{i} - 14\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}) = 10$ to the origin.
14. Find the perpendicular distance from the plane $2x + 3y - 6z = 21$ to the origin.
15. The plane Π contains the point A, position vector $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$, and is perpendicular to the vector $4\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 7\mathbf{k}$. Find the perpendicular distance from the plane Π to the origin.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

26. A plane Π is perpendicular to the vector $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and contains the point A, position vector $\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$. Find the position vector of the point where the line $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k})$ meets the plane Π.

27. Points D, E and F have position vectors $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$, $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}$ and $-\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ respectively. Find the equation of the plane containing D, E and F giving your answer both in parametric vector form and cartesian form.

28. Find the acute angle between the line $\dfrac{x-6}{5} = \dfrac{y-1}{-1} = z + 1$ and the plane $7x - y + 5z = -5$ giving your answer to the nearest degree.

29. The point A has position vector $3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and the plane Π_1 has vector equation $\mathbf{r} \cdot (3\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}) = 3\sqrt{2}$.

(a) Find in scalar product form, the vector equation of a plane Π_2 that is parallel to Π_1 and contains the point A.

(b) Find the perpendicular distance from A to the plane Π_1.

30. For each of the following find the perpendicular distance from the given point to the given plane.

(a) The point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and the plane $\mathbf{r} \cdot (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) = 6$,

(b) the point $(4, -1, 2)$ and the plane $2x - 2y + z = 21$.

31. The line L has vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})$ and the plane Π has vector equation $\mathbf{r} \cdot (6\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = -3$

(a) Show that the line L is parallel to plane Π.

(b) Obtain the scalar product vector equation of the plane that is parallel to Π and that contains the line L.

(c) Find the perpendicular distance from the line L to the plane Π.

32. Show that the line $\dfrac{x-2}{2} = \dfrac{y-2}{-1} = \dfrac{z-3}{3}$ is parallel to the plane $4x - y - 3z = 4$ and find the perpendicular distance from the line to the plane.

33. Find the cartesian equation of the line of intersection of the two planes $2x - 3y - z = 1$ and $3x + 4y + 2z = 3$

34. Two lines have vector equations $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \mu \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the position vector of the point of intersection of the two lines and the cartesian equation of the plane containing the two lines.

35. The four points A, B, C and D have position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively.

The perpendicular from D to the plane containing A, B and C meets the plane at E. Find

(a) the scalar product vector equation of the plane containing A, B and C,

(b) the vector equation of the straight line through D and E,

(c) the position vector of the point E.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

17.5 3 × 3 Matrices

In chapter 5 we saw that a linear transformation on 2 dimensional space has an associated 2 × 2 matrix. Similarly any linear transformation on 3 dimensional space has an associated 3 × 3 matrix. If under this transformation the points with position vectors $\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\\0\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\1\end{pmatrix}$ are transformed to the points with position vectors $\begin{pmatrix}a\\b\\c\end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix}d\\e\\f\end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix}g\\h\\i\end{pmatrix}$ respectively then the associated 3 × 3 matrix is $\begin{pmatrix}a & d & g\\b & e & h\\c & f & i\end{pmatrix}$.

Note that under a linear transformation on 3-D space the origin (0, 0, 0) is mapped onto itself: $\begin{pmatrix}a & d & g\\b & e & h\\c & f & i\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\0\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\0\end{pmatrix}$

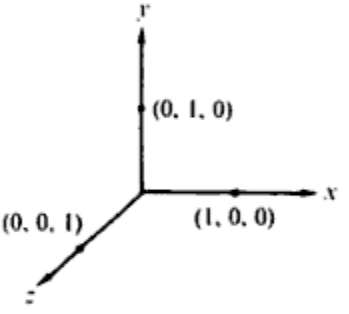
Example 28

Find the 3 × 3 matrix representing the transformation of 3-D space that reflects all points in the x–y plane (i.e. the plane $z = 0$)

Under this transformation

$$\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix}0\\1\\0\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}0\\1\\0\end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\1\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\-1\end{pmatrix}.$$

Thus the required matrix is $\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 0\\0 & 1 & 0\\0 & 0 & -1\end{pmatrix}$



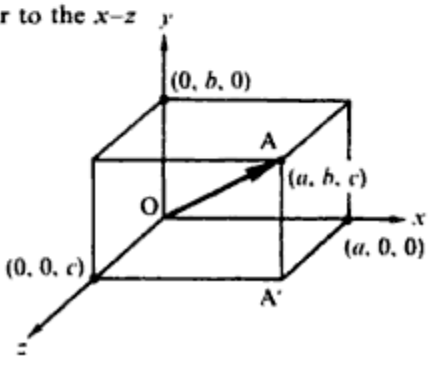
Example 29

Find the 3 × 3 matrix representing an orthogonal projection onto the x–z plane.

This projection maps any point A(a, b, c) onto the point A′(a, 0, c). Note that A′ lies in the x–z plane and is such that AA′ is perpendicular to the x–z plane—hence the term 'orthogonal' projection.

Thus $\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix}0\\1\\0\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\0\end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\1\end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\1\end{pmatrix}$

and the required matrix is $\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 0\\0 & 0 & 0\\0 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}$



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 30

Show that the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & -2 & -6 \\ -4 & 4 & 12 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points in 3-D space onto a line and find the cartesian equations of this line.

Under this transformation the points A(1, 0, 0), B(0, 1, 0) and C(0, 0, 1) have images A′, B′, C′, position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively, i.e. all the images are points whose position vectors are multiples of $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$. Thus this transformation maps all points onto the line passing through the origin and the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$.

The vector equation of this line will be $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$ giving the cartesian equations $-x = \frac{y}{2} = -\frac{z}{4} (= \lambda)$.

Example 31

Show that the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & 0 \\ -1 & 3 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points in 3-D space onto a plane and find the cartesian equation of this plane.

Under this transformation the points A (1, 0, 0), B (0, 1, 0) and C (0, 0, 1) are mapped onto A′(3, −1, 2), B′(−2, 3, −1) and C′(0, 7, 1). For these points A′, B′ and C′ to be coplanar there must exist values for λ and μ such that

$$\lambda\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 7 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Solving $3\lambda - 2\mu = 0$ and $-\lambda + 3\mu = 7$ simultaneously gives $\lambda = 2$ and $\mu = 3$ which is consistent with $2\lambda - \mu = 1$. Hence C′ lies in the plane containing A′ and B′ [and the origin O (0, 0, 0)]. Thus the transformation maps all points in 3-D space on to the plane containing the origin and the points (3, −1, 2) and (−2, 3, −1).

As the vectors $\overrightarrow{OA}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB}$ lie in this plane the parametric vector equation of the plane is $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$.

With $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}$ this gives the cartesian equation of the plane as $5x + y - 7z = 0$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The determinant of a 3 × 3 matrix

Just as for linear transformations in 2-dimensional space the determinant of the associated matrix gives the area scale factor then similarly the determinant of a 3 × 3 matrix gives the volume scale factor for the 3-dimensional transformation defined by that matrix.

Remembering that for the 2 × 2 matrix $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ we can write the determinant of **A** as det **A**, $|\mathbf{A}|$ or $\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix}$, the determinant of the 3 × 3 matrix $\mathbf{A} = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$ is defined as

$$\det \mathbf{A} = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_1\begin{vmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} - b_1\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + c_1\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

Example 32

If a solid of volume 8 cubic units is transformed using the matrix $\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & -2 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$ find the volume of the new solid.

Volume of new body = $|\det \mathbf{T}| \times 8$

Now
$$\det \mathbf{T} = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & -2 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \end{vmatrix}$$
$$= 3\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} - 1\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 \end{vmatrix} - 2\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$
$$= -9 + 4 - 4$$
$$= -9$$

Thus the volume of the new body is 9 × 8 = 72 cubic units.

Note: Just as a 2 × 2 matrix with zero determinant has no inverse then similarly a 3 × 3 matrix with zero determinant has no inverse and is said to be *singular*.

The inverse of a 3 × 3 matrix

If the 3 × 3 matrix **A** transforms a body **B** to its image **B′**, then $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ (i.e. the inverse of **A**) will transform **B′** back to **B**. By definition

$\mathbf{AA}^{-1} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}$ where, for 3 × 3 matrices, $\mathbf{I} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ but can $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ be determined from **A**?

One method, called the *adjoint* method, first requires an understanding of certain terms, namely the *minor* of an element of a matrix, the *cofactor* of an element of a matrix and the *adjoint* of a matrix.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Consider the matrix $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix}$

If we delete the row and column that contains the element a_1 and find the determinant of the 2×2 matrix that we are left with we obtain the *minor* of a_1.

Thus the minor of $a_1 = \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$, the minor of $b_1 = \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$ etc.

The *cofactor* of each element is then obtained by multiplying the minor by ± 1 according to the pattern $\begin{matrix} + & - & + \\ - & + & - \\ + & - & + \end{matrix}$. i.e. the cofactor is the minor with an appropriate sign attached to it.

Thus the cofactors of a_1, b_1 and c_1 are $\begin{vmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$, $-\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$, $\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$ respectively.

If we form a new 3×3 matrix by replacing each element of **A** by its cofactor and then transpose this new matrix, we obtain the *adjoint of* **A**, written adj **A**. By forming the product (adj **A**)**A**, or **A**(adj **A**), we can then determine $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ as the following example shows.

Example 33

Find the inverse of the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

Let the given matrix be **A** and first check that det **A** $\neq 0$. In this case det **A** $= -4$.

Then find the minors of each element: $\begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \\ -3 & -6 & 5 \end{matrix}$

and write the matrix of cofactors: $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & -3 \\ -1 & -2 & -1 \\ -3 & 6 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$

Hence obtain the adjoint of **A**: $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & -3 \\ -2 & -2 & 6 \\ -3 & -1 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$

and determine (adj **A**) $\times$ **A**: $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & -3 \\ -2 & -2 & 6 \\ -3 & -1 & 5 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$

Hence $\quad$ (adj **A**)**A** $= -4\mathbf{I}$

or $\quad -\frac{1}{4}$(adj **A**)**A** $= \mathbf{I}$

Thus $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ is given by $-\frac{1}{4}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & -3 \\ -2 & -2 & 6 \\ -3 & -1 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$ or $\frac{1}{4}\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 2 & -6 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

7. Show that each of the following matrices map any points in 3-D space onto a plane and find the cartesian equation of the plane in each case.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -2 & -2 \\ 1 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & 3 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 10 \\ 2 & -3 & -8 \\ -3 & 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

8. Find the determinants of the following matrices.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

(d) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 4 \\ -1 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ (e) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (f) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -2 & 3 \\ 1 & -2 & -3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

9. Find, where possible, the inverses of the following matrices.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & -4 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 3 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

(d) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (e) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ (f) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

10. The transformations $\mathbf{T}_1$ and $\mathbf{T}_2$ are defined by the matrices

$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively. If $\mathbf{T}_1$ transforms

a body S, volume 10 cubic units, to its image S′ and $\mathbf{T}_2$ transforms S′ to S″ find

(a) the single matrix that will transform S to S″,
(b) the single matrix that will transform S′ back to S,
(c) the volume of S′,
(d) the volume of S″.

11. Find the inverse of the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and *hence* solve the

equations $\begin{cases} -x - y + z = 1 \\ -y + 3z = 8 \\ 2x + y + 2z = 8 \end{cases}$

12. Find the inverse of the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 1 & 1 & -2 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and *hence* solve the

equations $\begin{cases} 2x - y + 3z = 0 \\ x + y - 2z = -1 \\ 3x + y + 2z = 5 \end{cases}$

13. (a) Find the inverse of the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -3 & -4 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(b) A point (x, y, z) in three-dimensional space is transformed to its image (x', y', z') according to the rule

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -3 & -4 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -7 \\ -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

Find the coordinates of the point in three dimensional space that is invariant under the transformation.

17.6 Sets of linear equations

In chapter 6 we saw that a pair of linear equations in two unknowns could be solved simultaneously by matrix methods to find the one set of values that satisfied both equations. In questions 11 and 12 of exercise 17E we used our ability to determine the inverse of a 3×3 matrix to solve a set of 3 linear equations in 3 unknowns. Matrix methods are not the only method of solution since the equations could be solved by progressively eliminating the variables.

Example 34

Solve the following simultaneous equations by eliminating the variables.

$$2x + y - 2z = -4 \quad \ldots [1]$$
$$2x + 3y + z = -2 \quad \ldots [2]$$
$$-x + 2z = 3 \quad \ldots [3]$$

$3 \times [1] - [2]$: $\quad 4x - 7z = -10 \quad \ldots [4]$

$4 \times [3]$: $\quad -4x + 8z = 12 \quad \ldots [5]$

$[4] + [5]$: $\quad z = 2 \quad \ldots [5]$

By substituting into [3] and then into [1], we obtain $x = 1$ and $y = -2$.
Thus the solution of the given set of equations is $x = 1$, $y = -2$ and $z = 2$.

The geometrical interpretation of this solution is that the point $(1, -2, 2)$ is the point that is common to the three planes
$2x + y - 2z = -4$, $2x + 3y + z = -2$ and $-x + 2z = 3$.

This method of eliminating the variables gives another method for determining the inverse of a matrix.

Suppose we wish to find the inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

First let $\quad \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix}$

$$-x + y + 3z = a \quad \ldots [1]$$

i.e.

$$2x + y + z = b \quad \ldots [2]$$
$$x + y + 2z = c \quad \ldots [3]$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 36

Solve the equations $\begin{cases} 2x - y + z = 5 \\ x - 3y + 2z = 2 \\ 2x + y + 4z = -3 \end{cases}$

Writing the equations in matrix form $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -3 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

$$\begin{array}{r} r_1: \\ \text{new } r_2 = 2r_2 - r_1: \\ \text{new } r_3 = r_3 - r_1: \end{array} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -5 & 3 \\ 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \\ -8 \end{pmatrix}$$

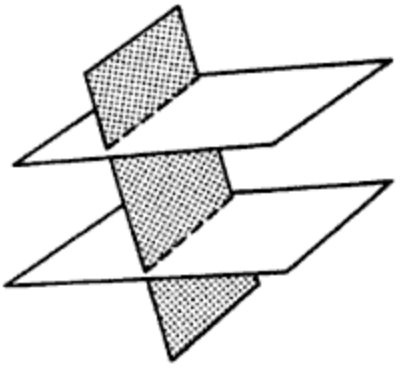
$$\begin{array}{r} r_1: \\ r_2: \\ \text{new } r_3 = 5r_3 + 2r_2: \end{array} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -5 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 21 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \\ -42 \end{pmatrix}$$

Row 3 gives $z = -2$.
Using this value in row 2 gives $-5y - 6 = -1$ i.e. $y = -1$
and these values in row 1 gives $2x + 1 - 2 = 5$ i.e. $x = 3$
Thus $x = 3$, $y = -1$ and $z = -2$ is the required solution.

Given three equations
$$\begin{aligned} a_1x + b_1y + c_1z &= p \\ a_2x + b_2y + c_2z &= q \\ a_3x + b_3y + c_3z &= r \end{aligned}$$
the geometrical interpretation of the solution $x = \alpha$, $y = \beta$ and $z = \gamma$ is that the three planes defined by the three equations have a common point (α, β, γ). However if the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix}$ is singular then the three equations do not have a unique solution. In such a situation the equations could either
have (a) no solutions, and the equations are said to be *inconsistent*,
or (b) an infinite number of solutions.

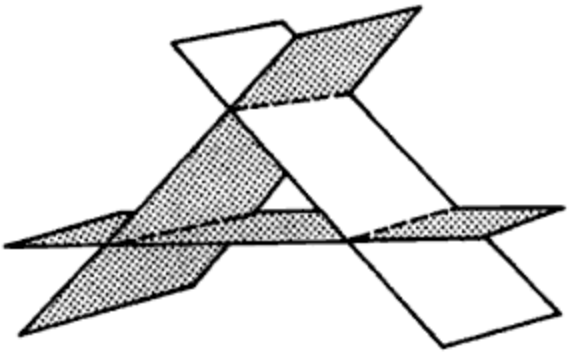
The geometrical interpretation of these two possibilities is as follows:

(a) *No solutions* (i.e. inconsistent equations).
This situation will arise when
1. two or more of the planes are parallel (but not coincident). In such cases there is no point common to all three planes.

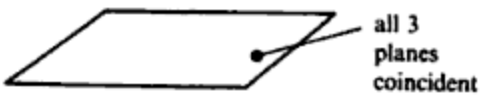


Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

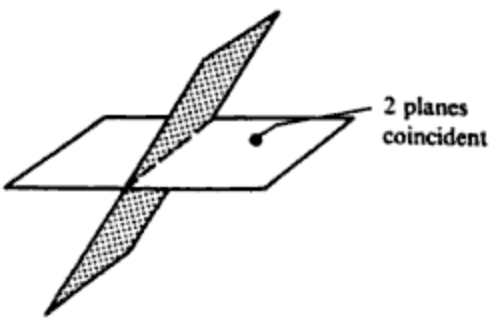
or 2. each plane is parallel to the line of intersection of the other two. Again there will be no point that is common to all three planes.



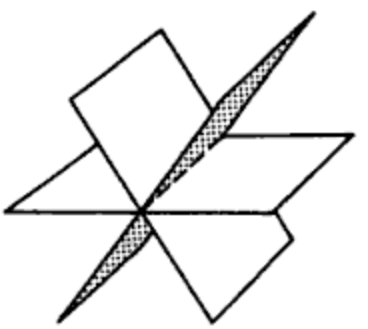
(b) *An infinite number of solutions.*
This situation will arise when
1. all three equations represent the same plane. (i.e. all 3 planes are coincident). Any point in the plane will provide a solution to the equation.



or 2. two of the three planes are coincident and the third plane is not parallel to these two. The planes will intersect in a line and any point on the line will provide a solution.



or 3. the three planes have a common line and any point on this line provides a solution to the equation.



Example 37

For what value of a does the equation $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -4 & 2 \\ 4 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & a & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$ not have a unique solution?

The equation will not have a unique solution if $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -4 & 2 \\ 4 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & a & 0 \end{vmatrix}$ is zero.

i.e. if $\quad -4a - 8 + 8a + 2 = 0$
giving $\quad a = 1\frac{1}{2}$
The equation will not have a unique solution if $a = 1\frac{1}{2}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 38

Discuss the solution of the following equations when (a) $a = 6$ and $b = 6$,
(b) $a = 5$ and $b = 0$,
giving a full geometric interpretation for each situation.

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - y + 3z &= 2 \\ -4x + 2y - bz &= -4 \\ 6x - 3y + 9z &= a \end{aligned}$$

(a) With $a = 6$ and $b = 6$ the equations become

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - y + 3z &= 2 \\ -4x + 2y - 6z &= -4 \quad \text{i.e.} \quad -2[2x - y + 3z = 2] \\ 6x - 3y + 9z &= 6 \quad \text{i.e.} \quad 3[2x - y + 3z = 2] \end{aligned}$$

These three equations represent the same plane, $2x - y + 3z = 2$ and so any point in the plane provides a solution to the equations. Thus there are an infinite number of solutions. Letting $x = \lambda$ and $y = \mu$ we can write these solutions in parametric form as $x = \lambda$, $y = \mu$, $z = \frac{1}{3}(2 - 2\lambda + \mu)$. This gives the parametric vector equation of the plane as

$$\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \frac{2}{3} \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -\frac{2}{3} \end{pmatrix} + \mu \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix}$$

(b) With $a = 5$ and $b = 0$ the equations become

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - y + 3z &= 2 && \ldots [1] \\ -4x + 2y &= -4 && \ldots [2] \\ 6x - 3y + 9z &= 5 && \ldots [3] \end{aligned}$$

Equations [1] and [3] represent parallel planes and so there will be no point common to all three planes. The equations have no solutions i.e. they are inconsistent.

Example 39

Discuss the solution of the following equations when (a) $a = 5$, (b) $a = -2$, giving a geometrical interpretation for each case.

$$\begin{aligned} -2x + y - 5z &= 4 \\ 3x - y + 2z &= -1 \\ -4x + y + z &= a \end{aligned}$$

These equations do not represent coincident or parallel planes whatever the value of a and so we attempt a solution by the diagonal matrix method:

$$\begin{array}{r} \mathbf{r}_1: \\ \mathbf{r}_2: \\ \mathbf{r}_3: \end{array} \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & -5 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 \\ -4 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \\ a \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} \mathbf{r}_1: \\ \text{new } \mathbf{r}_2 = 2\mathbf{r}_2 + 3\mathbf{r}_1: \\ \text{new } \mathbf{r}_3 = \mathbf{r}_3 - 2\mathbf{r}_1: \end{array} \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & -5 \\ 0 & 1 & -11 \\ 0 & -1 & 11 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 10 \\ a-8 \end{pmatrix}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$\begin{array}{r} r_1: \\ r_2: \\ \text{new } r_3 = r_3 + r_2: \end{array} \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & -5 \\ 0 & 1 & -11 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 10 \\ a+2 \end{pmatrix}$$

(a) for $a = 5$ row 3, $0 = a + 2$, gives a contradiction and so the equations are inconsistent. The equations have no solutions for $a = 5$ and this corresponds to the situation of each plane being parallel to the line of intersection of the other two.

(b) for $a = -2$ row 3 gives no contradiction and is true for any z. Using the parameter λ we let $z = \lambda$.
Then from row$_1$ $\quad -2x + y - 5z = 4$
and from row$_2$ $\quad y - 11z = 10$
we obtain $y = 10 + 11\lambda$ and $x = 3(1 + \lambda)$.
i.e. the solutions to the equations are all of the form $x = 3 + 3\lambda$, $y = 10 + 11\lambda$, $z = \lambda$. Thus the 3 given equations represent planes having a common line, cartesian equation $\dfrac{x-3}{3} = \dfrac{y-10}{11} = z$ or, in parametric vector form $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 10 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 11 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

Exercise 17F

1. Find, where possible, the inverses of the following matrices by the method of row reduction.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 4 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \\ -5 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & -4 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

(d) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -4 & 2 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ (e) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ (f) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & 2 \\ 2 & -2 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

2. Solve the following sets of equations by eliminating the variables.

(a) $x + y = 2$, $2y - z = -7$, $3x + z = 16$

(b) $2x + y - 3z = -5$, $x - 2y + 3z = -1$, $3x + y + z = 2$

(c) $x + y - z = -4$, $2x - 3y + 2z = 15$, $5x + 2y + z = 1$

3. Solve the following matrix equations by reducing each 3×3 matrix to a triangular matrix.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 7 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 3 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix}$

(c) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 13 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. If matrix $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ find the 3×3 matrices **B**, **C** and **D** such that

(a) $\mathbf{AB} = \begin{pmatrix} 10 & 8 & 2 \\ 8 & 5 & 2 \\ 7 & 6 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\mathbf{CA} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -4 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\mathbf{AD} + \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{B}$

5. Find the value of a for which the equation

$\begin{pmatrix} -3 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & -3 & 0 \\ a & 5 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$ does not have a unique solution.

6. For the set of equations
$$\begin{aligned} ax + by + z &= 2 \\ -x + 2y + 3z &= -2 \\ 3x - y + z &= 1 \end{aligned}$$
give a geometric interpretation for
(a) $a = 3, b = -1$ (b) $a = 5, b = -2$ (c) $a = 4, b = -1$.
(Give any solutions in parametric form where appropriate).

7. For the set of equations
$$\begin{aligned} -3x + ay - 6z &= b \\ x - y + 2z &= 1 \\ 2x - 2y + 4z &= 2 \end{aligned}$$
give a geometric interpretation for (a) $a = 3, b = 7$ (b) $a = 4, b - 2$.
(Give any solutions in parametric form).

8. For the set of equations
$$\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= -1 \\ 2x - 2y + z &= 5 \\ 3x - y + 2z &= a \end{aligned}$$
give a geometric interpretation for (a) $a = -1$ (b) $a = 4$.
(Give any solutions in parametric form).

9. For each of the following sets of equations find the value a must take for the equations to have solutions and find these solutions in parametric form.

(a)
$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 3z &= 2 \\ -x - 2y - 3z &= -2 \\ 2x + 4y + 6z &= a \end{aligned}$$
(b)
$$\begin{aligned} x + 3y - z &= -3 \\ x - 2y + z &= 4 \\ -2x + 4y - 2z &= a \end{aligned}$$
(c)
$$\begin{aligned} x + y + 3z &= -1 \\ 2x - y + 4z &= 1 \\ -x + 5y + z &= a \end{aligned}$$
(d)
$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 2y + z &= 3 \\ -3x + 3y + 2z &= -1 \\ 2x - 2y + 3z &= a \end{aligned}$$

10. For the set of equations
$$\begin{aligned} 2x + y - 3z &= 5 \\ x + 2y + 3z &= 1 \\ 2x - y + az &= b \end{aligned}$$
(a) Find the value of a for which the equations have no unique solution.
(b) With a taking this value find the value b must take for there to be an infinite number of solutions to the equations. Interpret this situation geometrically giving any relevant equations in cartesian form.

11. Show that the equations
$$\begin{aligned} x + y - z &= -1 \\ 5x + 3y + z &= 3 \\ 2x + y + z &= a \end{aligned}$$
are inconsistent for $a = 4$.
Find the value a must take for the equations to represent three planes that have a common line and find the vector equation of this line.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

12. Find the inverse of the 4×4 matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

Hence solve the equations $\begin{cases} x + 2y + t + 1 = 0 \\ x + y + 2z + t + 2 = 0 \\ 2x + y + 3z + t + 3 = 0 \\ x + 2z - t + 7 = 0 \end{cases}$

Exercise 17G Examination questions

1. The position vectors of the points A and B relative to an origin O are $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ respectively. Write down the vector $\overrightarrow{AB}$. Calculate the size of angle OAB. (A.E.B.)

2. The triangle ABC is such that $\mathbf{AB} = 3\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{AC} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$. Find $B\hat{A}C$ and the area of the triangle. (Cambridge)

3. Relative to an origin O, points A and B have position vectors $2\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k}$ and $6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$ respectively, $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{k}$ being orthogonal unit vectors. C is the point such that $\mathbf{OC} = 2\mathbf{OA}$ and D is the mid-point of AB. Find

(i) the position vectors of C and D;
(ii) a vector equation of the line CD;
(iii) the position vector of the point of intersection of CD and OB;
(iv) the angle AOB correct to the nearest degree. (S.U.J.B)

4. Find the angle between the lines with vector equations $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{b} + s\mathbf{d}$, where

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 5 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{d} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Show that these lines intersect, and find the position vector of P, the point of intersection. Express in the vector form $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{n} = k$ the equation of the plane which passes through the point P, and which is perpendicular to the line joining the two points with position vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. (Oxford)

5. The points P and Q have coordinates (1, 2, 3) and (4, 6, −2) respectively and the plane π has equation $x + y - z = 24$.

(i) Write down, in the form $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b}$ where $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}$, the equation of the line PQ, and find the coordinates of the point where PQ meets π.
(ii) Calculate the cosine of the angle that PQ makes with the normal to the plane π.
(iii) Find the equation of the plane perpendicular to π containing the line PQ. (Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

6. The point A has position vector $\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ referred to the origin O. The line L has vector equation $\mathbf{r} = t\mathbf{i}$. The plane Π contains the line L and the point A. Find
(a) a vector which is normal to the plane Π,
(b) a vector equation for the plane Π,
(c) the cosine of the acute angle between OA and the line L. (London)

7. The coordinates of the points A and B are (0, 2, 5) and (−1, 3, 1), respectively, and the equations of the line L are

$$\frac{x-3}{2} = \frac{y-2}{-2} = \frac{z-2}{-1}.$$

(i) Find the equation of the plane π which contains A and is perpendicular to L, and verify that B lies in π.
(ii) Show that the point C in which L meets π is (1, 4, 3), and find the angle between CA and CB.
(iii) Find the coordinates of the two points P and Q on L which are such that the volume of each of the tetrahedra PABC and QABC is 9.
(J.M.B.)

8. The lines l_1 and l_2 have the vector equations

$$l_1: \mathbf{r} = (1 + s)\mathbf{i} + (1 - s)\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k},$$
$$l_2: \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + (1 + t)\mathbf{j} - (2 - t)\mathbf{k},$$

where $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{k}$ are perpendicular unit vectors. Show that l_1 and l_2 meet in the point A with position vector $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$. Show also that the lines l_3 and l_4,

$$l_3: \mathbf{r} = (3 - u)\mathbf{i} - (1 - u)\mathbf{j} + (-2 + u)\mathbf{k},$$
$$l_4: \mathbf{r} = (1 + v)\mathbf{i} - (1 + 3v)\mathbf{j} - v\mathbf{k},$$

form the other two sides of a quadrilateral ABCD, and find the position vectors of B, C and D, which are the intersections of l_1 and l_3, l_3 and l_4, l_2 and l_4 respectively. Find the angle between the diagonals AC and BD. Determine whether or not the four points A, B, C and D lie in a plane, explaining your method carefully. (Oxford)

9. The planes p and q are given by the equations $3x + 2y + z = 4$ and $2x + 3y + z = 5$ respectively. The plane π containing the point A(2, 2, 1) is perpendicular to each of the planes p and q. Find
(a) the distance from the point A to the plane p,
(b) the cosine of the angle between the planes p and q,
(c) a cartesian equation for the plane π,
(d) cartesian equations for the line of intersection, l, of the planes p and q,
(e) the point P on line l, which is nearest to the point A. (A.E.B.)

10. Let $\mathbf{A}$ be matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 7 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 8 \end{pmatrix}.$$

By performing elementary row operations on the matrix $(\mathbf{A}|\mathbf{I})$ find $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$. Solve the equation $\mathbf{AX} = \mathbf{K}$, when

(i) $\mathbf{K} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (ii) $\mathbf{K} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (iii) $\mathbf{K} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

11. Find values of a, b, c, d, e, f, so that the linear transformation

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{M}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}$$

with matrix $\mathbf{M}$, where

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & d & e \\ c & e & f \end{pmatrix},$$

maps the points with position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$,

to the points with position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$,

respectively.
Find the inverse matrix $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$.
Show that the transformation with matrix $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$ maps points of the line $2x + y = 0, z = 0$ to points of the line $x = 0, 5y + 2z = 0$. (London)

12. Show that $x + a + y$ is a factor of the determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & x & y \\ x & a & y \\ x & y & a \end{vmatrix}.$$

Express the determinant as a product of three factors.
Hence find all the values of θ in the range $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi$ which satisfy the equation

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & \cos\theta & \cos 2\theta \\ \cos\theta & 1 & \cos 2\theta \\ \cos\theta & \cos 2\theta & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \qquad \text{(J.M.B.)}$$

13. Find the complete set of solutions of the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 3y + 4z &= 11, \\ 3x + 2y - z &= 9, \\ \lambda x + 12y - 11z &= \lambda \end{aligned}$$

(i) when $\lambda = 4$ (ii) when $\lambda = 5$. (Oxford)

14. Find all the solutions of the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 2z &= -1, \\ 3x + 2y + 10z &= 5, \\ 2x - y + 9z &= 8, \end{aligned}$$

and the particular solution for which $x + y + z = 0$.
Find also the solutions (if any) of the systems obtained
(a) by replacing the first equation by

$$5x + y + 19z = 0;$$

(b) by replacing the first two equations by

$$\begin{aligned} 4x - 2y + 18z &= 16. \\ -2x + y - 9z &= -8. \end{aligned}$$

(Oxford).

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

15. Show that the only values of λ for which the simultaneous equations

$$\begin{aligned} x + (\lambda - 4)y + 2z &= 0 \\ 2x - 6y + (\lambda + 3)z &= 0 \\ (\lambda - 5)x + 12y - 8z &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

have a solution in which x, y and z are not all zero are $\lambda = 1$ and $\lambda = 4$.

Show that, when $\lambda = 4$, the three planes represented by the above equations meet in a line L. Show also that L intersects the line whose equations are

$$\frac{x - 8}{4} = y + 1 = \frac{z - 2}{10}.$$

Interpret the three equations geometrically in the case when $\lambda = 1$.

(J.M.B.)

16. Show that the simultaneous equations

$$\begin{aligned} kx + y + z &= 1, \\ 2x + ky - 2z &= -1, \\ x - 2y + kz &= -2 \end{aligned}$$

have a unique solution except for three values of k which are to be found.

Show that, when $k = 1$, the planes represented by the equations meet at a point P which lies in the plane $y = 1$, and that, when $k = -1$, the planes meet in a line L which also lies in the plane $y = 1$. Find the perpendicular distance of P from L. (J.M.B.)

17. Find all the values of (x, y, z) which satisfy

$$\begin{bmatrix} 7 & 2 & 4 \\ 4 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix}$$

if (p, q, r) satisfies

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -7 & 5 \\ 6 & -9 & -1 \\ -4 & 5 & 2 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix}.$$

(Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

18
Algebra II

18.1 Partial fractions

We know that $\frac{1}{x+3} + \frac{2}{x-1}$ can be expressed as the single fraction $\frac{3x+5}{(x+3)(x-1)}$ but, if we were given $\frac{3x+5}{(x+3)(x-1)}$ how would we get back to $\frac{1}{x+3} + \frac{2}{x-1}$?

This reverse process is called expressing $\frac{3x+5}{(x+3)(x-1)}$ in partial fractions.

The method used is to assume that $\frac{3x+5}{(x+3)(x-1)} \equiv \frac{A}{x+3} + \frac{B}{x-1}$, where A and B are constants which have to be determined. Remember that the sign $\equiv$ means that the equality holds for *all* values of x.
The right hand side (RHS) of this identity is then expressed as a single fraction

i.e. $$\frac{A(x-1) + B(x+3)}{(x+3)(x-1)}$$

This fraction and the left hand side (LHS) of the identity now have the same denominators so their numerators must be identical

i.e. $$3x + 5 \equiv A(x-1) + B(x+3)$$

One, or both, of the following techniques is used to find A and B from this identity

(i) substituting suitable values of x in both sides of the identity,
(ii) equating the coefficients of particular powers of x.

It should be noted that the given fraction, $\frac{3x+5}{(x+3)(x-1)}$, is a proper fraction and so the partial fractions assumed, $\frac{A}{x+3} + \frac{B}{x-1}$, are also proper fractions. (Remember that an improper algebraic fraction is one for which the degree of the numerator is equal to or greater than the degree of the denominator, see page 7).

Thus, given $\frac{5x^2+13x+1}{(x+5)(x^2-2)}$, we would assume the partial fractions to be $\frac{A}{x+5} + \frac{Bx+C}{x^2-2}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The denominators of the algebraic fractions encountered will be of three basic types:

Type	Denominator of fraction	Example	Expression used
1.	has linear factors	$\dfrac{5}{(x-2)(x+3)}$	$\dfrac{A}{x-2}+\dfrac{B}{x+3}$
2.	has a quadratic factor which does not factorise	$\dfrac{2x+3}{(x-1)(x^2+4)}$	$\dfrac{A}{x-1}+\dfrac{Bx+C}{x^2+4}$
3.	has a repeated factor	$\dfrac{5x+3}{(x-2)(x+3)^2}$	$\dfrac{A}{x-2}+\dfrac{B}{x+3}+\dfrac{C}{(x+3)^2}$

Notes 1. When expressing an algebraic fraction in partial fractions, always factorise the denominator as far as possible first.

2. Given an improper algebraic fraction, we must first use the methods of page 7 to obtain an expression which does not contain any improper fractions (see examples 5 and 6).

3. For a fraction with a denominator having a repeated factor, e.g. $\dfrac{5x+3}{(x-2)(x+3)^2}$, we may initially think of using $\dfrac{A}{x-2}+\dfrac{Bx+C}{(x+3)^2}$ but this is not the simplest form because

$$\frac{Bx+C}{(x+3)^2}=\frac{B(x+3)}{(x+3)^2}+\frac{C-3B}{(x+3)^2}$$
$$=\frac{B}{x+3}+\frac{C'}{(x+3)^2}\quad\text{where } C'=C-3B.$$

Example 1 (denominator has linear factors)

Express $\dfrac{1}{x^3-9x}$ in partial fractions.

The denominator factorises to $x(x-3)(x+3)$

Assume $\dfrac{1}{x(x-3)(x+3)}\equiv\dfrac{A}{x}+\dfrac{B}{x-3}+\dfrac{C}{x+3}$

$$\text{R.H.S.}=\frac{A(x-3)(x+3)+B(x)(x+3)+C(x)(x-3)}{x(x-3)(x+3)}$$

$\therefore\quad 1\equiv A(x-3)(x+3)+B(x)(x+3)+C(x)(x-3)$

as L.H.S. and R.H.S. have the same denominators.

Put $x=0$, $\quad 1=A(-3)(+3)+B(0)+C(0)\qquad$ hence $A=-\frac{1}{9}$

Put $x=3$, $\quad 1=A(0)+B(3)(3+3)+C(0)\qquad$ hence $B=\frac{1}{18}$

Put $x=-3$, $\quad 1=A(0)+B(0)+C(-3)(-6)\qquad$ hence $C=\frac{1}{18}$

The partial fractions are $-\dfrac{1}{9x}+\dfrac{1}{18(x-3)}+\dfrac{1}{18(x+3)}$.

Example 2 (denominator has quadratic factor)

Express $\dfrac{5x^2-2x-1}{(x+1)(x^2+1)}$ in partial fractions.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Assume $$\frac{5x^2 - 2x - 1}{(x+1)(x^2+1)} \equiv \frac{A}{x+1} + \frac{Bx + C}{x^2+1}$$
$$\equiv \frac{A(x^2+1) + (Bx + C)(x+1)}{(x+1)(x^2+1)}$$

$\therefore$ $$5x^2 - 2x - 1 \equiv A(x^2+1) + (Bx + C)(x+1)$$

Put $x = -1$, $5(-1)^2 - 2(-1) - 1 = A(1+1) + 0$

$\therefore$ $5 + 2 - 1 = 2A$ hence $A = 3$

Put $x = 0$, $0 - 0 - 1 = A(1) + C$

$\therefore$ $-1 = 3 + C$ hence $C = -4$

Equating the coefficients of x^2 on the two sides of the identity:

$5 = A + B$ hence $B = 2$

The partial fractions are $\dfrac{3}{x+1} + \dfrac{2x-4}{x^2+1}$.

Example 3 (denominator has a repeated factor)

Express $\dfrac{x+4}{(x+1)(x-2)^2}$ in partial fractions.

Assume $$\frac{x+4}{(x+1)(x-2)^2} \equiv \frac{A}{x+1} + \frac{B}{x-2} + \frac{C}{(x-2)^2}$$

(Note carefully the form which the partial fractions will take in this case.)

$\therefore$ $x + 4 \equiv A(x-2)^2 + B(x+1)(x-2) + C(x+1)$

Put $x = 2$, $2 + 4 = A(0) + B(0) + C(2+1)$ hence $C = 2$

Put $x = -1$, $-1 + 4 = A(-1-2)^2 + B(0) + C(0)$ hence $A = \frac{1}{3}$

Equating coefficients of x^2 on both sides of the identity:

$0 = A + B$ hence $B = -\frac{1}{3}$

The partial fractions are $\dfrac{1}{3(x+1)} - \dfrac{1}{3(x-2)} + \dfrac{2}{(x-2)^2}$.

Example 4 (denominator has a repeated factor)

Express $\dfrac{4x+3}{(x-1)^2}$ in partial fractions.

METHOD 1 as for Example 3

Assume $$\frac{4x+3}{(x-1)^2} \equiv \frac{A}{x-1} + \frac{B}{(x-1)^2}$$

$\therefore$ $4x + 3 = A(x-1) + B$

Put $x = 1$, $4 + 3 = A(0) + B$

$B = 7$

Equating coefficients of x:

$4 = A$

METHOD 2

$$\frac{4x+3}{(x-1)^2} \equiv \frac{4(x-1)+7}{(x-1)^2}$$
$$= \frac{4(x-1)}{(x-1)^2} + \frac{7}{(x-1)^2}$$
$$= \frac{4}{x-1} + \frac{7}{(x-1)^2}$$

The partial fractions are $\dfrac{4}{(x-1)} + \dfrac{7}{(x-1)^2}$.

Example 5

Express $\dfrac{x(x+3)}{x^2+x-12}$ in partial fractions.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

22. $\dfrac{x^3 + 3x^2 + 10}{(x + 1)(x + 4)}$ 23. $\dfrac{2x^2 + 2x + 3}{x^2 - 1}$ 24. $\dfrac{x^4 - 3x^3 - 3}{x^2(x - 1)}$

Miscellaneous.

25. $\dfrac{7}{(2x - 3)(x + 2)}$ 26. $\dfrac{10 + 6x - 3x^2}{(2x - 1)(x + 3)^2}$ 27. $\dfrac{2x - 3}{x^2 - 1}$

28. $\dfrac{3x^2 - 1}{(x - 1)(2x - 1)^2}$ 29. $\dfrac{2x^2 - 7}{(x - 3)(2x + 5)}$ 30. $\dfrac{2x^3 + 11}{(x^2 + 4)(x - 3)}$

31. $\dfrac{37x - 81}{(x - 3)(x + 7)(2x - 3)}$ 32. $\dfrac{3x + 7}{(1 + 2x)(x^2 - x + 2)}$ 33. $\dfrac{2x^3 + 46}{(x - 1)^2(x + 3)}$

34. $\dfrac{3x^3 + 6x^2 - 11x + 1}{(1 + x)^3(x - 2)}$ 35. $\dfrac{3x^2 - 10x - 24}{x(x^2 - 4)}$ 36. $\dfrac{x^3 + 2x^2 + 61}{(x + 3)^2(x^2 + 4)}$

18.2 Partial fractions and series

Series expansions

Partial fractions can be used when finding the series expansions of some functions.

Example 7

Express $\dfrac{32x^2 + 17x + 18}{(2 - 3x)(1 + 2x)^2}$ in partial fractions and hence obtain its series expansion in ascending powers of x, stating the terms up to and including the term in x^3, the term in x^r and the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

Using the methods of the previous section, we find that $\dfrac{32x^2 + 17x + 18}{(2 - 3x)(1 + 2x)^2} = \dfrac{8}{2 - 3x} + \dfrac{5}{(1 + 2x)^2}$

Using the binomial expansion

$$\frac{8}{2 - 3x} = \frac{8}{2(1 - \frac{3}{2}x)}$$

$$= 4(1 - \tfrac{3}{2}x)^{-1} = 4\left[1 + (-1)(-\tfrac{3}{2}x) + \frac{(-1)(-2)}{1 \times 2}(-\tfrac{3}{2}x)^2 + \frac{(-1)(-2)(-3)}{1 \times 2 \times 3}(-\tfrac{3}{2}x)^3 + \ldots\right]$$

$$= 4[1 + \tfrac{3}{2}x + (\tfrac{3}{2}x)^2 + (\tfrac{3}{2}x)^3 + \ldots + (\tfrac{3}{2}x)^r + \ldots]$$

$$= 4 + 6x + 9x^2 + \tfrac{27}{2}x^3 + \ldots + \frac{3^r x^r}{2^{r-2}} + \ldots \qquad \ldots [1]$$

$$\frac{5}{(1 + 2x)^2} = 5(1 + 2x)^{-2} = 5\left[1 + (-2)(2x) + \frac{(-2)(-3)(2x)^2}{1 \times 2} + \frac{(-2)(-3)(-4)(2x)^3}{1 \times 2 \times 3} + \ldots\right]$$

$$= 5[1 - 2(2x) + 3(2x)^2 - 4(2x)^3 + \ldots + (-1)^r(r + 1)(2x)^r + \ldots]$$

$$= 5 - 20x + 60x^2 - 160x^3 + \ldots + (-2)^r 5(r + 1)x^r + \ldots \qquad \ldots [2]$$

Adding [1] and [2]:

$$\frac{8}{2 - 3x} + \frac{5}{(1 + 2x)^2} = 9 - 14x + 69x^2 - \tfrac{292}{2}x^3 + \ldots + [3^r 2^{2-r} + (-2)^r 5(r + 1)]x^r \ldots$$

Notice that, substituting $r = 0$ into the term in x^r gives the term in x^0, i.e. 9,
substituting $r = 1$ into the term in x^r gives the term in x^1, i.e. $-14x$ etc.

The expansion of $(1 - \frac{3}{2}x)^{-1}$ is valid for $|\frac{3}{2}x| < 1$ i.e. $|x| < \frac{2}{3}$ and
the expansion of $(1 + 2x)^{-2}$ is valid for $|2x| < 1$ i.e. $|x| < \frac{1}{2}$.
Thus if $|x| < \frac{1}{2}$, both of these conditions will be satisfied.

$$\therefore \frac{32x^2 + 17x + 18}{(2 - 3x)(1 + 2x)^2} = 9 - 14x + 69x^2 - \tfrac{292}{2}x^3 + \ldots + [3^r 2^{2-r} + (-2)^r 5(r + 1)]x^r \ldots$$

provided $|x| < \frac{1}{2}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 18B

Express each of the given functions in partial fractions and hence obtain the series expansion of each function, stating the terms up to and including the term in x^3, the term in x^r and the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

1. $\dfrac{2 + x}{(1 - x)(1 + 2x)}$
2. $\dfrac{7x + 1}{(1 + x)(1 + 3x)}$
3. $\dfrac{8x}{(1 + 5x)(1 - 3x)}$
4. $\dfrac{2}{(1 - x)(3 - x)}$
5. $\dfrac{4x}{(3 + 2x)(2x - 1)}$
6. $\dfrac{11x + 6}{(3 + x)(3 + 4x)}$
7. $\dfrac{1 + 2x - x^2}{(1 + x)^2(1 + 2x)}$
8. $\dfrac{6 - 14x - 7x^2}{(1 - 4x)(1 - x)(2 + 3x)}$
9. $\dfrac{x^2 - 4x - 8}{(2 + x)^2(1 + x)}$
10. Express $\dfrac{11x + 3}{(1 + x^2)(1 - 5x)}$ in partial fractions and hence obtain its series expansion in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3. State the range of values of x for which the expansion is valid.
11. Express $\dfrac{18 - x - x^2}{(1 + x + x^2)(2 - 3x)}$ in partial fractions and hence obtain the first four terms in the series expansion of the function in ascending powers of x.

Summation of series by the method of differences

Partial fractions enable us to sum certain series using the method of differences as the following examples show.

Example 8

(a) Express $\dfrac{2}{(2x - 1)(2x + 1)}$ in partial fractions.

(b) Find an expression for $\displaystyle\sum_{r=1}^{n} \frac{2}{(2r - 1)(2r + 1)}$ and state whether or not the series is convergent.

(a) Using the methods of 18.1 we obtain $\dfrac{2}{(2x - 1)(2x + 1)} = \dfrac{1}{2x - 1} - \dfrac{1}{2x + 1}$.

(b) $$\sum_{r=1}^{n} \frac{2}{(2r - 1)(2r + 1)} = \sum_{r=1}^{n} \left[\frac{1}{2r - 1} - \frac{1}{2r + 1}\right] = \begin{array}{rcl} \frac{1}{1} & - & \cancel{\frac{1}{3}} \\ + \cancel{\frac{1}{3}} & - & \cancel{\frac{1}{5}} \\ + \cancel{\frac{1}{5}} & - & \cancel{\frac{1}{7}} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ + \cancel{\frac{1}{2n - 1}} & - & \frac{1}{2n + 1} \end{array} = \frac{1}{1} - \frac{1}{2n + 1}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Then, if $\quad f(r) = g(r) - g(r+1)$

$$\sum_{r=1}^{n} f(r) = \sum_{r=1}^{n} [g(r) - g(r+1)] = \begin{array}{rcl} g(1) & - & \cancel{g(2)} \\ + \cancel{g(2)} & - & \cancel{g(3)} \\ + \cancel{g(3)} & - & \cancel{g(4)} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ + \cancel{g(n-1)} & - & \cancel{g(n)} \\ + \cancel{g(n)} & - & g(n+1) \end{array} = g(1) - g(n+1).$$

[Clearly Example 9 above is an extension of this basic technique and uses the relationship $f(r) = g(r) + g(r+1) - 2g(r+2)$.]

Example 10

(a) Show that $(x-3)^2 - (x-2)^2 \equiv 5 - 2x$.
(b) Use this identity from part (a) and the method of differences to obtain an expansion for $\sum_{r=1}^{n}(5-2r)$. Hence sum the series $3 + 1 - 1 - 3 - 5 \ldots - 35$.

(a) L.H.S. $= (x-3)^2 - (x-2)^2$
$= (x^2 - 6x + 9) - (x^2 - 4x + 4)$
$= x^2 - 6x + 9 - x^2 + 4x - 4$
$= -2x + 5 =$ R.H.S. as required.

(b) $$\sum_{r=1}^{n}(5-2r) = \sum_{r=1}^{n}[(r-3)^2 - (r-2)^2] = \begin{array}{rcl} (-2)^2 & - & \cancel{(-1)^2} \\ + \cancel{(-1)^2} & - & \cancel{(0)^2} \\ + \cancel{(0)^2} & - & \cancel{(1)^2} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ + \cancel{(n-4)^2} & - & \cancel{(n-3)^2} \\ + \cancel{(n-3)^2} & - & (n-2)^2 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \sum_{r=1}^{n}(5-2r) = 4 - (n-2)^2$$

$$3 + 1 - 1 - 3 - 5 \ldots - 35 = \sum_{r=1}^{20}(5-2r)$$
$$= 4 - (20-2)^2$$
$$= -320$$

Exercise 18C

1. Using the identity $2r + 1 \equiv (r+1)^2 - r^2$ obtain an expression for $\sum_{r=1}^{n}(2r+1)$.

2. (a) Show that $r(r+1)(r+2) - (r-1)(r)(r+1) \equiv 3r(r+1)$
   (b) Using the identity from part (a) and the method of differences obtain an expression for $\sum_{r=1}^{n} r(r+1)$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. (a) Express $\dfrac{1}{x(x+1)}$ in partial fractions.

(b) Show that $\displaystyle\sum_{r=1}^{n} \frac{1}{r(r+1)} = \frac{n}{n+1}$

(c) Find the sum of the series

$$\frac{1}{1\times 2} + \frac{1}{2\times 3} + \frac{1}{3\times 4} + \frac{1}{4\times 5} + \ldots + \frac{1}{15\times 16}$$

4. (a) Express $\dfrac{3}{(3x-1)(3x+2)}$ in partial fractions.

(b) Show that $\displaystyle\sum_{r=1}^{n} \frac{3}{(3r-1)(3r+2)} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3n+2}$

(c) Find the sum of the series

$\dfrac{1}{2\times 5} + \dfrac{1}{5\times 8} + \dfrac{1}{8\times 11} + \dfrac{1}{11\times 14} + \ldots \dfrac{1}{29\times 32}$ and find

$$\sum_{r=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(3r-1)(3r+2)}$$

5. (a) Express $\dfrac{2}{x(x+2)}$ in partial fractions.

(b) Show that $\displaystyle\sum_{x=1}^{n} \frac{1}{x(x+2)} = \frac{3}{4} - \frac{2n+3}{2(n+1)(n+2)}$

and determine $\displaystyle\sum_{x=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{x(x+2)}$.

(c) Find the sum of the series

$$\frac{1}{1\times 3} + \frac{1}{2\times 4} + \frac{1}{3\times 5} + \frac{1}{4\times 6} + \ldots + \frac{1}{9\times 11}$$

6. (a) Show that

$(r+1)(2r+1)(2r+3) - r(2r-1)(2r+1) \equiv 3(2r+1)^2$

(b) Using the identity from part (a) and the method of differences show that

$$\sum_{r=1}^{n} (2r+1)^2 = \frac{n}{3}(4n^2 + 12n + 11)$$

(c) Hence find the sum of the series $3^2 + 5^2 + 7^2 + \ldots + 21^2$.

7. Find the sums of the following series. [Express your answers in the form $a - f(n)$]

(a) $\dfrac{4}{1\times 5} + \dfrac{4}{5\times 9} + \dfrac{4}{9\times 13} + \dfrac{4}{13\times 17} + \ldots + \dfrac{4}{(4n-3)(4n+1)}$

(b) $\dfrac{1}{1\times 5} + \dfrac{1}{3\times 7} + \dfrac{1}{5\times 9} + \dfrac{1}{7\times 11} + \ldots + \dfrac{1}{(2n-1)(2n+3)}$

(c) $\dfrac{1}{1\times 2\times 3} + \dfrac{1}{2\times 3\times 4} + \dfrac{1}{3\times 4\times 5} + \dfrac{1}{4\times 5\times 6} + \ldots + \dfrac{1}{n(n+1)(n+2)}$

(d) $\dfrac{6}{1\times 2\times 4} + \dfrac{6}{2\times 3\times 5} + \dfrac{6}{3\times 4\times 6} + \dfrac{6}{4\times 5\times 7} + \ldots + \dfrac{1}{n(n+1)(n+3)}$

8. (a) Use partial fractions to show that

$$\frac{7}{1\times 2\times 3} + \frac{10}{2\times 3\times 4} + \frac{13}{3\times 4\times 5} + \ldots + \frac{3n+4}{n(n+1)(n+2)} = \frac{n(5n+9)}{2(n+1)(n+2)}$$

(b) State whether the series $\displaystyle\sum_{r=1}^{n} \frac{3r+4}{r(r+1)(r+2)}$ converges as $n \to \infty$ and,

if it does, find its sum to infinity.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9. (a) Use partial fractions to show that

$$\frac{2}{1\times3\times5}+\frac{3}{3\times5\times7}+\frac{4}{5\times7\times9}+\ldots+\frac{n+1}{(2n-1)(2n+1)(2n+3)}=\frac{n(5n+7)}{6(2n+1)(2n+3)}$$

(b) State whether the series $\sum_{r=1}^{n}\frac{r+1}{(2r-1)(2r+1)(2r+3)}$ converges as $n\to\infty$ and, if it does, find its sum to infinity.

18.3 Complex numbers

Page 1 discussed the extension of the basic ideas of number from positive and negative integers to rational numbers and eventually to irrational numbers. We can therefore solve equations like:

(i) $x^2 = 49$
$x = +7$ or -7

(ii) $x^2 = 6\frac{1}{4} = \frac{25}{4}$
$x = \frac{5}{2}$ or $-\frac{5}{2}$

(iii) $x^2 = 17$
$x = \sqrt{17}$ or $-\sqrt{17}$
i.e. $x = 4{\cdot}123\ldots$ or $-4{\cdot}123\ldots$

We now need to extend our ideas of number still further, since the equation

(iv) $x^2 = -16$

has no solution in terms of rational or irrational numbers.
We introduce, therefore, the concept of an imaginary number.
If we write i for $\sqrt{(-1)}$, then $x^2 = -16 = (16)(-1)$
and $x = \pm\sqrt{(16)}\sqrt{(-1)}$
or $x = \pm 4\text{i}$ i.e. $x = 4\text{i}$ or $x = -4\text{i}$

Thus, by the use of the imaginary number i, to stand for $\sqrt{(-1)}$, we have found two solutions of the equation $x^2 = -16$.

We say that $b\text{i}$, where $b \in \mathbb{R}$, is an *imaginary* number and that $a + \text{i}b$, where a and $b \in \mathbb{R}$, is a *complex* number.

The following points about complex numbers should be noted:
If we write $z = a + \text{i}b$, then
the real part of the complex number z is a, written $\text{Re}(z) = a$,
and the imaginary part of the complex number z is b, written $\text{Im}(z) = b$.
Two complex numbers are equal if, and only if, their real parts are equal and their imaginary parts are equal.
Thus $a + \text{i}b = c + \text{i}d \Rightarrow a = c$ and $b = d$.
Complex numbers are added (or subtracted) by adding (or subtracting) their real parts and also their imaginary parts.
The complex conjugate of $z = a + \text{i}b$ is $a - \text{i}b$ and is denoted by z^*.
It follows that the product zz^* is therefore a wholly real number, since

$$\begin{aligned} zz^* &= (a + \text{i}b)(a - \text{i}b) \\ &= a^2 - \text{i}ab + \text{i}ab - \text{i}^2b^2 \\ &= a^2 + b^2 \end{aligned}$$

The manipulation of complex numbers and their use is illustrated in the following examples.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 11

(a) Add $(4 - 2i)$ and $(3 + 7i)$ (b) Simplify $(5 + 4i) - (3 - 2i)$ (c) Find $z + z^*$ if $z = 3 - 7i$.

(a)
$$\begin{aligned}&(4 - 2i) + (3 + 7i)\\ &= (4 + 3) + (-2i + 7i)\\ &= 7 + 5i\end{aligned}$$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned}&(5 + 4i) - (3 - 2i)\\ &= 5 + 4i - 3 + 2i\\ &= 2 + 6i\end{aligned}$$

(c)
$$\begin{aligned}z &= 3 - 7i\\ \therefore\ z^* &= 3 + 7i\\ z + z^* &= 3 - 7i + 3 + 7i\\ &= 6\end{aligned}$$

Example 12

Multiply $(2 - 7i)$ by $(3 + 2i)$

$$\begin{aligned}&(2 - 7i)(3 + 2i)\\ &= 6 + 4i - 21i - 14i^2 && i^2 \text{ being written for } i \times i\\ &= 6 - 17i - 14(-1) && -1 \text{ being written for } i^2, \text{ since } i = \sqrt{(-1)}\\ &= 20 - 17i\end{aligned}$$

Example 13

Divide $(5 + 2i)$ by $(1 - 3i)$

$$\begin{aligned}(5 + 2i) \div (1 - 3i) &= \frac{5 + 2i}{1 - 3i}\\ &= \frac{(5 + 2i)}{(1 - 3i)} \times \frac{(1 + 3i)}{(1 + 3i)} && \text{The denominator } (z) \text{ is multiplied by } z^* \text{ so as to make it a real number.}\\ &= \frac{5 + 15i + 2i + 6i^2}{1 - 9i^2}\\ &= \frac{5 + 17i - 6}{1 - 9(-1)} \text{ since } i^2 = -1\\ &= \frac{1}{10}(-1 + 17i) \text{ or } -\frac{1}{10} + \frac{17}{10}i\end{aligned}$$

Example 14

Find the square roots of $(3 + 4i)$

Suppose the square root of $(3 + 4i)$ is $a + ib$ where a and $b \in \mathbb{R}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then}\quad 3 + 4i &= (a + ib)^2\\ &= a^2 + 2abi + i^2b^2\\ &= a^2 - b^2 + 2abi\\ \therefore\quad 3 &= a^2 - b^2 \text{ and } 4 = 2ab\end{aligned}$$

Solving simultaneously gives $a = 2$ and $b = 1$ or $a = -2$ and $b = -1$.
The square roots of $(3 + 4i)$ are $\pm(2 + i)$.

Equations

On page 11 we saw that many quadratic equations could be solved using the formula. With our extended idea of number, solutions can now be obtained for *all* quadratic equations.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 15

Solve $x^2 + 2x + 6 = 0$.

Using $x = \dfrac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$ with $a = 1$, $b = 2$ and $c = 6$,

$$x = \frac{-2 \pm \sqrt{(4 - 24)}}{2}$$
$$= \frac{-2 \pm \sqrt{(-20)}}{2}$$
$$= -1 \pm i\sqrt{5}$$

The solutions of the equation are $x = -1 + i\sqrt{5}$ or $x = -1 - i\sqrt{5}$. Thus, in the cases where $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, as in the above example, we can improve on our previous comment, in chapter 5, of 'no real roots,' by saying that the equation has 'two complex conjugate roots', i.e. one root is the complex conjugate of the other.

Example 16

Find the equation having roots of $(1 + 5i)$ and $(1 - 5i)$.

Sum of the roots of the equation $= 1 + 5i + 1 - 5i$
$= 2$

Product of the roots $= (1 + 5i)(1 - 5i)$
$= 26$

Thus, for $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, $\dfrac{c}{a} = 26$ and $-\dfrac{b}{a} = 2$, so the equation can be written as $x^2 - 2x + 26 = 0$.

Example 17

Solve $2x^3 - 12x^2 + 25x - 21 = 0$.

Consider $f(x) = 2x^3 - 12x^2 + 25x - 21$. Since $f(3) = 0$, then it follows by the factor theorem that $f(x)$ is divisible by $(x - 3)$,
hence if $2x^3 - 12x^2 + 25x - 21 = 0$
then $(x - 3)(2x^2 - 6x + 7) = 0$ [$2x^2 - 6x + 7$ obtained by long division]
$\therefore$ $x = 3$, or $2x^2 - 6x + 7 = 0$

Solving the quadratic $x = \dfrac{6 \pm \sqrt{(36 - 56)}}{4}$

$$= \frac{3}{2} \pm \frac{i\sqrt{5}}{2}$$

The roots of the cubic equation are $x = 3$, $x = \dfrac{3}{2} + \dfrac{i\sqrt{5}}{2}$, $x = \dfrac{3}{2} - \dfrac{i\sqrt{5}}{2}$ i.e. $x = 3, \dfrac{3}{2} \pm \dfrac{i\sqrt{5}}{2}$.

Note that the complex roots of polynomial equations occur in conjugate pairs. Thus if $a + ib$ is a root of $f(x) = 0$, then so is $a - ib$. It follows that a polynomial equation cannot have an odd number of complex roots.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 18

Given that $(2 - i)$ and $(1 + 3i)$ are roots of the equation $ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e = 0$, find (i) the other two roots and (ii) the sum, and the product, of the four roots of the equation.

(i) Complex roots occur in conjugate pairs, hence
since $x = 2 - i$ is a root of the equation, so also is $x = 2 + i$,
and since $x = 1 + 3i$ is a root of the equation, so also is $x = 1 - 3i$.

(ii) Sum of roots $= (2 - i) + (2 + i) + (1 + 3i) + (1 - 3i)$
$= 6$
Product of roots $= (2 - i)(2 + i)(1 + 3i)(1 - 3i)$
$= (4 - i^2)(1 - 9i^2)$
$= 50$
The roots are $(2 \pm i)$, $(1 \pm 3i)$; their sum is 6 and their product 50.

Exercise 18D

1. If $z = 3 - 4i$ find (a) $\text{Re}(z)$, (b) $\text{Im}(z)$, (c) z^*, (d) zz^*, (e) $(zz)^*$.

2. Simplify each of the following,
(a) $(3 + 4i) + (2 + 3i)$ (b) $(2 - 4i) - 3(5 - 3i)$ (c) $(2i)^2$ (d) i^4
(e) $\frac{1}{i^2}$ (f) $(2 + 3i)(2 - 3i)$ (g) $\frac{1}{(1 + i)(1 - i)}$ (h) $-\frac{1}{i}$

3. Simplify each of the following,
(a) $(2 + i)(3 - i)$ (b) $(5 - 2i)(6 + i)$ (c) $(4 - 3i)(1 - i)$
(d) $(3 + i)(2 - 5i)$ (e) $(3 + 4i)(1 - 2i)$ (f) $(2 + i)(2 - i)$
(g) $(6 + 9i)(4 - 6i)$ (h) $(2 + i)(1 - 2i)(1 + i)$

4. Express each of the following in the form $a + ib$.
(a) $\frac{20}{3 + i}$ (b) $\frac{4}{1 + i}$ (c) $\frac{2i}{1 - i}$ (d) $\frac{1}{1 - 2i}$
(e) $\frac{5i}{1 + 2i}$ (f) $\frac{5}{4 - 3i}$ (g) $\frac{2 + 3i}{1 - i}$ (h) $\frac{3 - i}{1 + 2i}$
(i) $\frac{3 + 2i}{3 - 2i}$ (j) $\frac{4i - 3}{2 + 3i}$

5. Simplify $\frac{a + ib}{b - ai}$

6. Solve the following equations,
(a) $x^2 + 25 = 0$ (b) $2x^2 + 32 = 0$ (c) $4x^2 + 9 = 0$
(d) $x^2 + 2x + 5 = 0$ (e) $x^2 - 4x + 5 = 0$ (f) $2x^2 + x + 1 = 0$.

7. Find the square roots of the following complex numbers,
(a) $5 + 12i$ (b) $15 + 8i$ (c) $7 - 24i$

8. Find the quadratic equations having roots,
(a) $3i, -3i$ (b) $1 + 2i, 1 - 2i$ (c) $2 + i, 2 - i$
(d) $2 + 3i, 2 - 3i$ (e) $3 + 4i\ 3 - 4i$ (f) $3 + 5i, 3 - 5i$

9. If $a + ib$ is a root of the quadratic equation $x^2 + cx + d = 0$ show that $a^2 + b^2 = d$ and $2a + c = 0$.

10. Solve the following equations (all have at least one real root).
(a) $x^3 - 7x^2 + 19x - 13 = 0$
(b) $2x^3 - 2x^2 - 3x - 2 = 0$
(c) $x^3 + 3x^2 + 5x + 3 = 0$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(d) $4x^4 - 20x^3 + 37x^2 - 31x + 10 = 0$
(e) $5x^4 + 8x^3 - 8x - 5 = 0$

11. If $5x^4 - 14x^3 + 18x^2 + 40x + 16 = (x^2 - 4x + 8)(ax^2 + bc + c)$ find a, b and c and hence find the four solutions of the equation $5x^4 + 18x^2 + 16 = 14x^3 - 40x$.

12. If $3 - 2i$ and $1 + i$ are two of the roots of the equation $ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e = 0$ find the values of a, b, c, d and e.

13. Given that $x^3 - 1 = (x - 1)(ax^2 + bx + c)$ find the values of a, b and c and hence find the three roots of the equation $x^3 = 1$
[These three roots can be referred to as 'the cube roots of unity' and are often written as 1, ω, ω^2].

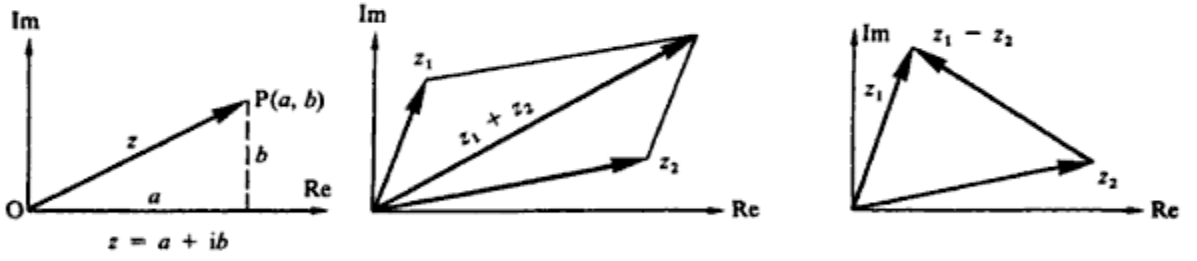
Geometrical representation

Complex numbers can be represented geometrically using the x and y axes as the Real (Re) and Imaginary (Im) axes. The plane of the axes is then referred to as the complex plane and a diagram showing complex numbers is said to be an Argand diagram.

On the Argand diagram, each complex number is represented by a line of a certain length in a particular direction. Thus each complex number is shown as a vector on the Argand diagram.

Thus if $P(a, b)$ is a point on the Argand diagram, the vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$ represents the complex number $(a + ib)$; a and b are the real and imaginary components of the complex number $(a + ib)$.

The sum and the difference of two complex numbers can be shown on an Argand diagram in the same way as we show vectors which are added or subtracted.

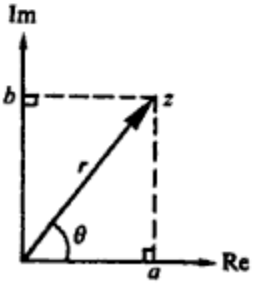


Modulus and argument of complex numbers

The modulus of a complex number, $z = a + ib$, is a measure of the magnitude of z, and it is written as $|z|$.

Thus modulus $z = |z| = \sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)}$.

The argument of a complex number, $z = a + ib$, is the magnitude in radians of the angle between the positive real axis and the line representing the complex number on the Argand diagram. For the complex number z shown in the diagram, the argument is θ where $\tan\theta = b/a$. Clearly we could also refer to $\theta \pm 2\pi$, $\theta \pm 4\pi$, $\theta \pm 6\pi$, etc, as being the argument of z. To avoid this complication, we say that the value of θ lying in the range $-\pi < \theta \leqslant \pi$ is the **principal** value of the argument. We use the abbreviation 'arg' for the principal argument.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 20

Prove that for the complex numbers z_1 and z_2, (a) $|z_1z_2| = |z_1||z_2|$
(b) $\arg(z_1z_2) = \arg z_1 + \arg z_2$. (Assume $\pi < \arg z_1 + \arg z_2 \leqslant \pi$).

Also, if $z_1 = 3\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{3} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ and $z_2 = 5\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{4} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ find $|z_1z_2|$ and $\arg(z_1z_2)$.

If $z_1 = r_1(\cos\theta_1 + i\sin\theta_1)$ and $z_2 = r_2(\cos\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_2)$

then
$$\begin{aligned} z_1z_2 &= r_1(\cos\theta_1 + i\sin\theta_1)r_2(\cos\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_2) \\ &= r_1r_2(\cos\theta_1\cos\theta_2 - \sin\theta_1\sin\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_1\cos\theta_2 + i\cos\theta_1\sin\theta_2) \\ &= r_1r_2[\cos(\theta_1 + \theta_2) + i\sin(\theta_1 + \theta_2)] \end{aligned}$$

thus $|z_1z_2| = r_1r_2 = |z_1||z_2|$

and $\arg(z_1z_2) = (\theta_1 + \theta_2) = \arg z_1 + \arg z_2$ as required.

For $z_1 = 3\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{3} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$, $|z_1| = 3$ and $\arg z_1 = \frac{\pi}{3}$

For $z_2 = 5\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{4} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$, $|z_2| = 5$ and $\arg z_2 = \frac{\pi}{4}$

$$\begin{aligned} |z_1z_2| &= |z_1||z_2| \\ &= 3 \times 5 \\ &= 15. \end{aligned} \qquad \begin{aligned} \arg(z_1z_2) &= \arg z_1 + \arg z_2 \\ &= \frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{4} \\ &= \frac{7\pi}{12}. \end{aligned}$$

Note: 1. The results $|z_1z_2| = |z_1||z_2|$ and $\arg(z_1z_2) = \arg z_1 + \arg z_2$ can also be proved using $z_1 = a_1 + ib_1$ and $z_2 = a_2 + ib_2$.

2. The assumption that $\pi < \arg z_1 + \arg z_2 \leqslant \pi$ is necessary as we use the abbreviation arg for the principal value of the argument. Thus for $\arg(z_1z_2) = \arg z_1 + \arg z_2$ we must have $-\pi < \arg z_1 + \arg z_2 \leqslant \pi$

3. Similar results to those obtained for $|z_1z_2|$ and $\arg(z_1z_2)$ can be obtained for $\frac{z_1}{z_2}$, namely $\left|\frac{z_1}{z_2}\right| = \frac{|z_1|}{|z_2|}$ and $\arg\left(\frac{z_1}{z_2}\right) = \arg z_1 - \arg z_2$.

The proofs of these are left as an exercise for the reader (Exercise 18E, number 9).

De Moivre's theorem

From the result that $z_1z_2 = r_1r_2[\cos(\theta_1 + \theta_2) + i\sin(\theta_1 + \theta_2)]$ it follows that $z^2 = r^2(\cos 2\theta + i\sin 2\theta)$.

This result can be extended to give the statement that

if $z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$ then $z^n = r^n(\cos n\theta + i\sin n\theta)$

i.e. $|z^n| = |z|^n$ and $\arg(z^n) = n\arg z$.

For $r = 1$, we have

$$\boxed{(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)^n \equiv \cos n\theta + i\sin n\theta}$$

and this is known as de Moivre's theorem.

This theorem can be proved by the method of induction and is set as an exercise for the reader (Exercise 18E, number 11).

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

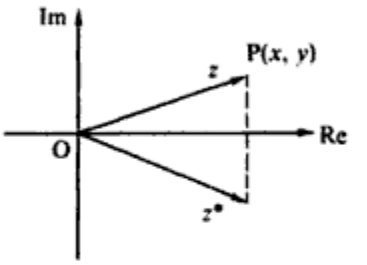
15. Use de Moivre's theorem to show that $\sin 3\theta \equiv 3 \sin \theta - 4 \sin^3 \theta$
and $\cos 3\theta \equiv 4 \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta$.
Obtain an expression for $\tan 3\theta$ in terms of $\tan \theta$.

16. Use de Moivre's theorem to show that $\sin 5\theta \equiv 16 \sin^5 \theta - 20 \sin^3 \theta + 5 \sin \theta$.

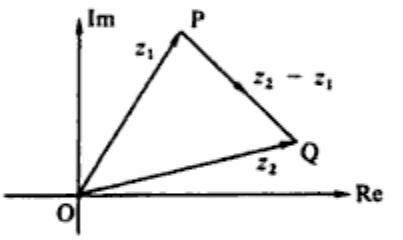
17. Use de Moivre's theorem to obtain an expression for $\tan 6\theta$ in terms of $\tan \theta$.

18. Given that $(\cos \theta + \mathrm{i} \sin \theta)^n = \cos (n\theta) + \mathrm{i} \sin (n\theta)$ for a positive integral value of n show that it is also true for n a negative integer. [Hint: For n negative let $n = -m$, m positive).

Further geometrical considerations

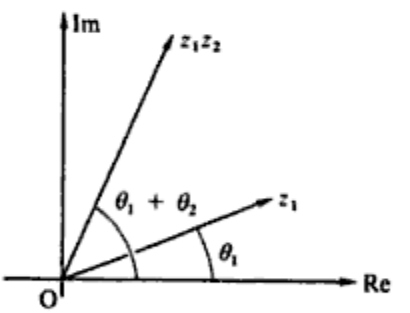


For the complex number $z = x + \mathrm{i}y$, there is an associated point P on the Argand diagram with coordinates (x, y). The vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$ then represents the complex number z. Since $z = x + \mathrm{i}y$, then z^* will be the reflection of z in the real axis.



Consider the complex numbers $z_1 = x_1 + \mathrm{i}y_1$ and $z_2 = x_2 + \mathrm{i}y_2$ represented by the vectors $\overrightarrow{OP}$ and $\overrightarrow{OQ}$ on the Argand diagram. $|z_2 - z_1|$ is then the length of the line PQ.

On page 466 we saw that if $z_1 = r_1(\cos \theta_1 + \mathrm{i} \sin \theta_1)$ and $z_2 = r_2(\cos \theta_2 + \mathrm{i} \sin \theta_2)$ then
$z_1 z_2 = r_1 r_2[\cos (\theta_1 + \theta_2) + \mathrm{i} \sin (\theta_1 + \theta_2)]$.

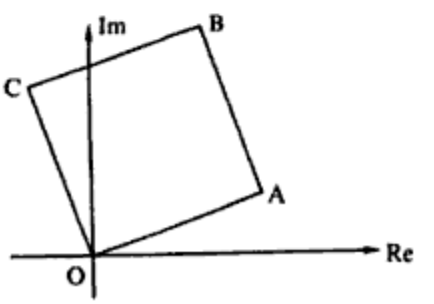


Thus the effect of multiplying some complex number z_1 by another complex number z_2, modulus r_2 and argument θ_2, is to rotate z_1 anticlockwise through an angle θ_2 and multiply its length by r_2.

In particular, multiplying a complex number by i ($|\mathrm{i}| = 1$, $\arg \mathrm{i} = \pi/2$) has the effect of rotating the original complex number through 90° anticlockwise.

Example 22

The diagram shows the square OABC on an Argand diagram. If $\overrightarrow{OA} = 5 + 2\mathrm{i}$, express the following vectors in the form $a + \mathrm{i}b$, (a) $\overrightarrow{CB}$, (b) $\overrightarrow{BC}$, (c) $\overrightarrow{OC}$.



$\overrightarrow{OA} = 5 + 2\mathrm{i}$

(a) $\overrightarrow{CB}$ is parallel to, and the same length as, $\overrightarrow{OA}$
$\overrightarrow{CB} = \overrightarrow{OA}$
$= 5 + 2\mathrm{i}$.

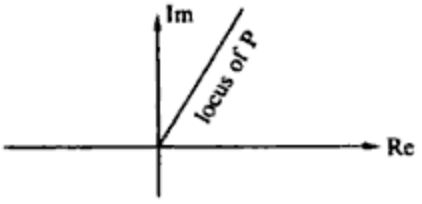
(b) $\overrightarrow{BC} = -\overrightarrow{CB}$
$= -5 - 2\mathrm{i}$.

(c) $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathrm{i}(\overrightarrow{OA})$
$= 5\mathrm{i} + 2\mathrm{i}^2$
$= -2 + 5\mathrm{i}$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) By geometry

If $\arg z = \frac{\pi}{3}$, then OP makes an angle of 60° with the Real axis.
Thus the locus is the set of all points such that the line joining them to the origin is at 60° to the x-axis.



By algebra

Suppose $z = x + iy$.

As $\arg z = \frac{\pi}{3}$ then

$$\frac{y}{x} = \tan\frac{\pi}{3} = \sqrt{3},$$

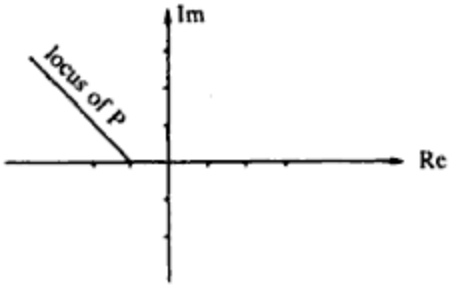
giving the line $y = x\sqrt{3}$ as the locus of P.

In fact, it is that part of $y = x\sqrt{3}$ for which $y \geqslant 0$, as for negative y points on the line have argument $-\frac{2\pi}{3}$.

(d) By geometry

Suppose $Z = z + 1$, then $\arg Z = \frac{3\pi}{4}$.

This is a line making an angle of $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ with the Real axis, through the point where $Z = 0$,
i.e. where $z + 1 = 0$ or $z = -1$.
The locus is the set of all points on the line through the point $(-1, 0)$ making an angle of $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ with the Real axis.



By algebra

Suppose $z = x + iy$.

As $\arg(z + 1) = \frac{3\pi}{4}$ then

$$\arg(x + 1 + iy) = \frac{3\pi}{4},$$

i.e. $$\frac{y}{x + 1} = \tan\frac{3\pi}{4} = -1,$$

giving the line $y = -x - 1$ as the locus of P.
As with (c) we must restrict the line to that part for which $y \geqslant 0$.

Exercise 18F

For questions **1** to **11**, find the locus of the point P corresponding to the complex number z where z obeys the given law.

For **1** to **6**, give *both* a geometrical interpretation and the cartesian equation for each locus.

1. $|z - 2i| = 4$
2. $|z - 1 - 3i| = 5$
3. $|z + 2 - 3i| = 4$
4. $|z| = |z - 2i|$
5. $|z - i| = |z - 1|$
6. $|z - 4 + i| = |z - 1 - 2i|$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

For questions **7** and **8**, give the cartesian equation for each locus.

7. $z = z^*$ **8.** $z + z^* = 0$

For questions **9**, **10** and **11**, show each locus on a separate Argand diagram.

9. $\arg z = \frac{\pi}{4}$ **10.** $\arg (z + 2) = \frac{\pi}{4}$ **11.** $\arg (z - \mathrm{i}) = \frac{3\pi}{4}$

12. If the point P in the complex plane corresponds to the complex number $z = x + \mathrm{i}y$ show that if $|z - 1| = 2|z + 2 - 3\mathrm{i}|$ then the locus of P is a circle centre at $-3 + 4\mathrm{i}$, and find the radius of the circle.

13. Find by drawing or calculation the vector $\overrightarrow{OX}$ where X is the point in the complex plane where the locus given by $|z - 3 - \mathrm{i}| = |z - 1 - 3\mathrm{i}|$ intersects with the locus given by $|z + 3\mathrm{i}| = |z + 2 - \mathrm{i}|$.

14. Find the cartesian equation for
(a) the locus given by $|z| = \sqrt{17}$,
(b) the locus given by $|z| = |z - 2|$.
Hence find the coordinates of the points in the complex plane where these two loci intersect. Show the two loci and their points of intersection on a sketch.

15. If z is the general complex number on an Argand diagram make a sketch of the Argand diagram and shade the region in which $|z + 1 - 4\mathrm{i}| \geqslant |z - 2 - \mathrm{i}|$.

16. If z is the general complex number on an Argand diagram sketch the Argand diagram and shade the region in which $2 \leqslant |z - \mathrm{i}| \leqslant 3$.

17. Show by shading on an Argand diagram the region in which both $|z| \leqslant 4$ and $|z - 3 - \mathrm{i}| \geqslant |z - 3 - 5\mathrm{i}|$.

Exercise 18G Examination questions

1. Given that

$$\frac{p}{2x + 3} + \frac{q}{3x + 2} \equiv \frac{1}{(2x + 3)(3x + 2)},$$

find the values of the constants p and q. (London)

2. Express $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{(1 - 2x)^2(1 - 3x)}$ in partial fractions.
Hence, or otherwise, find the expansion of $f(x)$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3. For what range of values of x is the expansion valid? (Oxford)

3. Show that $\dfrac{3}{(1 + x - 2x^2)}$ can be expressed as

$$\frac{1}{(1 - x)} + \frac{2}{(1 + 2x)}$$

Hence or otherwise expand $(1 + x - 2x^2)^{-1}$ as far as the term in x^4, the values of x being such as to make the expansion valid.
(a) By putting $x = -0{\cdot}02$, use your expansion to evaluate, correct to seven decimal places, $(0{\cdot}9792)^{-1}$,
(b) by giving x a suitable value, use your expansion to evaluate $(1{\cdot}0098)^{-1}$, to seven decimal places. (A.E.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. Express the function $f(x) = \dfrac{2x - 1}{(1 - x)(3 + x)}$ as the sum of partial fractions.
Obtain the expansion of $f(x)$ in ascending powers of x, in the form $f(x) = a + bx + cx^2 + \ldots$, and find the values of a, b and c. Show that, when $x = 0{\cdot}1$, the error caused by using only these three terms in evaluating $f(x)$ is slightly greater than 0·1%. (Oxford)

5. Express the function

$$f(x) = \frac{4 - 3x}{(1 - 2x)(2 + x)}$$

in partial fractions.
Find the first three terms in the expansion of $f(x)$ in ascending powers of x, and show that the coefficient of x^n is

$$\frac{4^n + (-1)^n}{2^n}.$$

(J.M.B.)

6. Express

$$\frac{x^2 + 5x + 2}{(x + 1)^2(x - 1)}$$

in the form

$$\frac{A}{(x + 1)} + \frac{B}{(x + 1)^2} + \frac{C}{(x - 1)},$$

where A, B, C are constants to be determined.
Obtain the expansion of

$$\frac{x^2 + 5x + 2}{(x + 1)^2(x - 1)}$$

in ascending powers of $\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)$ up to and including the term in $\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)^5$

Prove that if n is even the coefficient of $\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)^n$ is $n + 2$. Find the coefficient of $\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)^n$ if n is odd. (Cambridge)

7. Express $\dfrac{1}{r^2 - 1}$ in partial fractions and hence evaluate

$$\sum_{r=2}^{n} \frac{1}{r^2 - 1}.$$

(Cambridge)

8. Express

$$\frac{1}{(2r - 1)(2r + 3)}$$

in partial fractions.
By multiplying by $\dfrac{1}{2r + 1}$, or otherwise, prove that

$$\sum_{r=1}^{n} \frac{1}{(2r - 1)(2r + 1)(2r + 3)} = \frac{1}{12} - \frac{1}{4(2n + 1)(2n + 3)}.$$

(J.M.B.)

9. Show that

$$\frac{1}{r!} - \frac{1}{(r + 1)!} = \frac{r}{(r + 1)!}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

and find the corresponding expression for

$$\frac{1}{r!} - \frac{1}{(r+1)!}.$$

S_n and T_n are the sums of the first n terms of the series whose rth terms are

$$\frac{r}{(r+1)!} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{(-1)^r(r+2)}{(r+1)!},$$

respectively. Find S_{2n} and T_{2n}, and show that

$$S_{2n} = -T_{2n}.$$ (J.M.B.)

10. Given that $z_1 = 3 + 2\mathrm{i}$ and $z_2 = 4 - 3\mathrm{i}$,

(i) find z_1z_2 and $\frac{z_1}{z_2}$, each in the form $a + \mathrm{i}b$;

(ii) verify that $|z_1z_2| = |z_1||z_2|$. (Cambridge)

11. (a) Find $(2 - \mathrm{i})^3$, expressing your answer in the form $a + \mathrm{i}b$.

(b) Verify that $2 + 3\mathrm{i}$ is one of the square roots of $-5 + 12\mathrm{i}$. Write down the other square root. (Cambridge)

12. One root of the equation

$$z^2 + az + b = 0,$$

where a and b are real constants, is $2 + 3\mathrm{i}$. Find the values of a and b. (London)

13. Given that $2 + \mathrm{i}$ is a root of the equation

$$z^3 - 11z + 20 = 0,$$

find the remaining roots. (London)

14. Show that $1 + \mathrm{i}$ is a root of the equation $x^4 + 3x^2 - 6x + 10 = 0$. Hence write down one quadratic factor of $x^4 + 3x^2 - 6x + 10$, and find all the roots of the equation. (Oxford)

15. The complex number z satisfies $\frac{z}{z+2} = 2 - \mathrm{i}$. Find the real and imaginary parts of z, and the modulus and argument of z. (Oxford)

16. Expand $z = (1 + \mathrm{i}c)^6$ in powers of c and find the five real finite values of c for which z is real. (J.M.B.)

17. (a) If z_1 and z_2 are complex numbers, solve the simultaneous equations $4z_1 + 3z_2 = 23$, $z_1 + \mathrm{i}z_2 = 6 + 8\mathrm{i}$, giving both answers in the form $x + y\mathrm{i}$.

(b) If $(a + b\mathrm{i})^2 = -5 + 12\mathrm{i}$, find a and b given that they are both real. Give the two square roots of $-5 + 12\mathrm{i}$.

(c) In each of the following cases define the locus of the point which represents z in the Argand diagram. Illustrate each statement by a sketch.

(i) $|z - 2| = 3$, (ii) $|z - 2| = |z - 3|$. (S.U.J.B.)

18. In the Argand diagram, the point P represents the complex number z. Given that

$$|z - 1 - \mathrm{i}| = \sqrt{2},$$

sketch the locus of P.

Deduce the greatest and least values of $|z|$ for points P lying on the locus. (Cambridge)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

19. Prove that the non-real cube roots of unity are

$$-\frac{1}{2} \pm i\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}.$$

These roots are represented in an Argand diagram by the points A, B and the number $z = -2$ is represented by the point C. Show that the area of the sector of the circle with centre C through A and B which is bounded by CA, CB and the minor arc AB is $\frac{1}{2}\pi$. (J.M.B.)

20. By using de Moivre's theorem, or otherwise, find the roots of the equation $z^4 + 4 = 0$.
Hence, or otherwise, express $z^4 + 4$ as the product of two quadratic polynomials in z with real coefficients (Oxford)

21. State de Moivre's theorem, and hence express $\cos 5\theta$ as a polynomial in $\cos\theta$. By considering the roots of the equation $\cos 5\theta = 0$, prove that

$$\cos 5\theta = 16\cos\theta\left(\cos\theta - \cos\frac{\pi}{10}\right)\left(\cos\theta - \cos\frac{3\pi}{10}\right)\left(\cos\theta - \cos\frac{7\pi}{10}\right)\left(\cos\theta - \cos\frac{9\pi}{10}\right).$$

(Oxford)

22. Prove that, when n is a positive integer,

$$(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)^n = \cos n\theta + i\sin n\theta.$$

Given that

$$z = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta,$$

and assuming that the result above is also true for negative integers, show that

$$z^n - z^{-n} = 2i\sin n\theta.$$

Hence, or otherwise, prove that

$$16\sin^5\theta = \sin 5\theta - 5\sin 3\theta + 10\sin\theta.$$

Find all the solutions of the equation

$$4\sin^5\theta + \sin 5\theta = 0$$

which lie in the interval $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant 2\pi$. (J.M.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

19
Exponential and logarithmic functions

An exponential function is one in which the variable appears as an index. For example, $f(x) = 2^x$ or more generally, $f(x) = a^x$.

19.1 Differentiating the exponential function

If we wish to find $\frac{d}{dx}(a^x)$ we must use the basic definition of chapter 10, i.e.:

$$\frac{d}{dx}f(x) = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{f(x + \delta x) - f(x)}{\delta x}\right]$$

Thus
$$\frac{d}{dx}(a^x) = \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{a^{x+\delta x} - a^x}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left[\frac{a^x(a^{\delta x} - 1)}{\delta x}\right]$$
$$= a^x \lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left(\frac{a^{\delta x} - 1}{\delta x}\right)$$

The table below shows the values of $\left(\frac{a^{\delta x} - 1}{\delta x}\right)$, correct to four decimal places, for $a = 1, 2, 3$ and 4 as δx decreases.

	$\delta x = 1$	$\delta x = 0{\cdot}1$	$\delta x = 0{\cdot}01$	$\delta x = 0{\cdot}001$	$\delta x = 0{\cdot}0001$	$\delta x = 0{\cdot}00001$	$\delta x = 0{\cdot}000001$
$a = 1$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
$a = 2$	1	0·7177	0·6956	0·6934	0·6932	0·6931	0·6931
$a = 3$	2	1·1612	1·1047	1·0992	1·0987	1·0986	1·0986
$a = 4$	3	1·4870	1·3959	1·3873	1·3864	1·3863	1·3862

This table suggests that there exists a value of a between 2 and 3 for which $\lim_{\delta x \to 0}\left(\frac{a^{\delta x} - 1}{\delta x}\right) = 1$, i.e. for this value of a, $\frac{d}{dx}(a^x) = a^x$. If we call this number e, then $\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x}$

Thus the significance of the number e (lying between 2 and 3) is that the function e^x differentiates to give itself. It is possible to show that e is an irrational number and, correct to 5 decimal places, its value is 2·71828. The function $f(x) = e^x$ is known as *the* exponential function.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

We can then use this result when differentiating exponential functions:

$$\boxed{\text{If } \quad y = e^{f(x)}, \frac{dy}{dx} = f'(x) \times e^{f(x)}}$$

Example 3

Differentiate with respect to x:
(a) $y = e^{4x}$ (b) $y = 5e^{(x^2+1)}$ (c) $y = 5x^2 + 3/e^{x^2}$ (d) $y = e^x \sin 2x$

Using the above rule:

(a) $y = e^{4x}$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 4e^{4x}$$

(b) $y = 5e^{(x^2+1)}$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x \times 5e^{(x^2+1)}$$
$$= 10xe^{(x^2+1)}$$

(c) $y = 5x^2 + 3/e^{x^2}$
$= 5x^2 + 3e^{-x^2}$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 10x + (-2x)3e^{-x^2}$$
$$= 10x - \frac{6x}{e^{x^2}}$$

(d) $y = e^x \sin 2x$

Using the product rule,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = e^x(2 \cos 2x) + e^x \sin 2x$$
$$= e^x(2 \cos 2x + \sin 2x)$$

Integration of exponential functions

From the last section we know that if $y = e^{f(x)}$, then $\frac{dy}{dx} = f'(x)e^{f(x)}$.

Noticing that $e^{f(x)}$ features in both the expression for y and that for $\frac{dy}{dx}$, we must expect integration of $g(x)e^{f(x)}$ to feature $e^{f(x)}$. Thus when integrating $g(x)e^{f(x)}$ we first consider $\frac{d}{dx}e^{f(x)}$.

Example 4

Find the following indefinite integrals:

(a) $\int 10e^{5x}\,dx$ (b) $\int xe^{(x^2+1)}\,dx$ (c) $\int (\sin x + 2/e^x)\,dx$

(a) $\int 10e^{5x}\,dx$

Now $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{5x}) = 5e^{5x}$

$\therefore \int 10e^{5x}\,dx = 2e^{5x} + c$

(b) $\int xe^{(x^2+1)}\,dx$

Now $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{(x^2+1)}) = 2xe^{(x^2+1)}$

$\therefore \int xe^{(x^2+1)}\,dx = \frac{1}{2}e^{(x^2+1)} + c$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

(c) $\int (\sin x + 2e^{-x})\,dx$

Now $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{-x}) = -e^{-x}$

$\therefore \int (\sin x + 2e^{-x})\,dx = -\cos x - 2e^{-x} + c$

Example 5

Evaluate $\int_0^1 (4xe^{x^2} + 1)\,dx$, leaving your answer in terms of e.

Now $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{x^2}) = 2xe^{x^2}$, $\therefore$ $\int_0^1 (4xe^{x^2} + 1)\,dx = \left[2e^{x^2} + x\right]_0^1$

$= (2e + 1) - (2e^0 + 0)$

$= 2e - 1$

Thus $\int_0^1 (4xe^{x^2} + 1)\,dx = 2e - 1.$

Exercise 19A

Differentiate the following with respect to x.

1. e^x **2.** e^{3x} **3.** e^{2x} **4.** e^{x^2} **5.** $e^{(x^2+1)}$

6. $\frac{1}{e^x}$ **7.** $4e^{2x}$ **8.** $5e^{2x^2}$ **9.** $\frac{3}{e^{2x}}$ **10.** $e^{(5x+3)} + \frac{2}{x^2}$

11. $2e^{x^2} + 3e^x + \frac{4}{e^x}$ **12.** x^2e^x **13.** $3x^3e^{2x}$ **14.** $\frac{3x^2}{e^x}$

15. $\frac{e^x + 4}{x^2}$

Find the following indefinite integrals

16. $\int e^x\,dx$ **17.** $\int 5e^x\,dx$ **18.** $\int 2e^{2x}\,dx$ **19.** $\int 6e^{3x}\,dx$

20. $\int 2xe^{x^2}\,dx$ **21.** $\int 4xe^{(x^2+1)}\,dx$ **22.** $\int \left(-\frac{4}{e^{2x}}\right)dx$ **23.** $\int \frac{e^{(x+2)} + 4}{e^x}\,dx$

Evaluate the following giving your answers in terms of e.

24. $\int_1^3 e^x\,dx$ **25.** $\int_0^3 e^{-x}\,dx$ **26.** $\int_1^2 2e^{(2x+1)}\,dx$ **27.** $\int_{-1}^1 2e^{(1-2x)}\,dx$

28. Find the gradient of the curve $y = xe^{(x-3)}$ at the point (3, 3).

29. Find the equation of the curve that has a gradient function given by $e^x + 2x$ and that passes through the point (0, −3).

30. With the help of the sketch of $y = e^x$ on page 478 make sketch graphs of (a) $y = -e^x$ (b) $y = e^{-x}$ (c) $y = e^{x-1}$

31. Find the coordinates and nature of any turning points on the curve $y = xe^x$

32. Find the coordinates and nature of any turning points on the curve $y = x - e^x$

33. Sketch the graph of $y = x^2e^x$ indicating clearly the coordinates of any stationary points on the curve and of any points where the curve cuts the axes.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

34. If $y = -e^x \cos 2x$, show that $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 5e^x \sin(2x + \alpha)$ where $\alpha = \tan^{-1}(\frac{3}{4})$.

35. If $y = e^x \tan x$, show that $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = e^x(2\tan^3 x + 2\tan^2 x + 3\tan x + 2)$

19.2 The logarithmic function

In chapter 5, we saw that if $y = \log_e x$, which may also be written as $y = \ln x$, then

$$x = e^y$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dx}{dy} = e^y$$

but $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 1\Big/\left(\dfrac{dx}{dy}\right)$, (see page 324) Thus $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{e^y} = \dfrac{1}{x}$.

$$\boxed{\text{Thus, if } \quad y = \ln x, \quad \text{then } \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x}}$$

Alternatively, this result could be obtained from $x = e^y$ by differentiating implicitly.

Example 6

Make a sketch of the curve given by $y = \ln x$.

x-axis If $y = 0$, then $\ln x = 0$
i.e. $x = 1$.
Curve cuts x-axis at $(1, 0)$

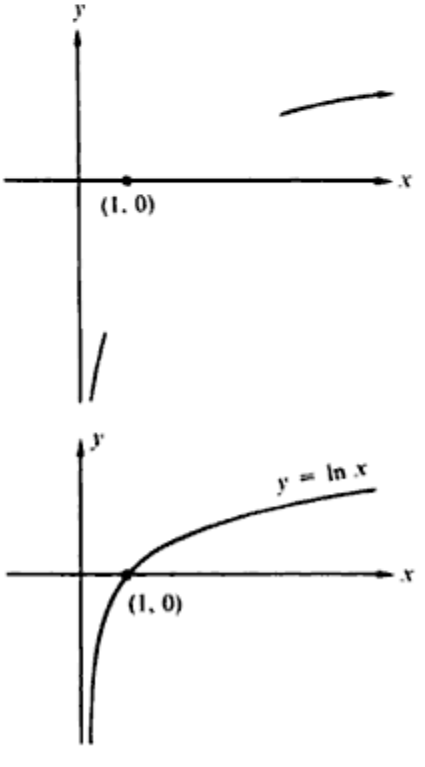
y-axis If $x = 0$, then $y = \ln 0$,
i.e. no value of y for $x = 0$
$\therefore$ curve does not cut y-axis.

$x \to \pm\infty$ $x \to +\infty$, y increases slowly
$x \to -\infty$ need not be considered as x cannot be negative.

y undefined y is undefined for negative x and for $x = 0$

max/min $y = \ln x \Rightarrow \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{x}$.
$\therefore$ no turning points.
Also, as x cannot be negative the gradient is always positive and as $x \to 0^+$, the gradient $\to +\infty$.

Thus the sketch can be completed.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 7

Differentiate $y = \ln(x^2 + 1)$ with respect to x.

$$y = \ln(x^2 + 1)$$

Let $u = x^2 + 1$ then $y = \ln u$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 2x \qquad \frac{dy}{du} = \frac{1}{u}$$

Using $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{dy}{du} \times \dfrac{du}{dx}$,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{u}2x$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2x}{x^2 + 1}.$$

Note: If we consider the more general case

$$y = \ln[f(x)]$$

and let $u = f(x)$ then $y = \ln u$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = f'(x) \qquad \frac{dy}{du} = \frac{1}{u}$$

thus $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{u}f'(x)$

or $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$

Thus we have a rule for differentiating functions of the type $\ln[f(x)]$:

$$\boxed{\text{If } \quad y = \ln[f(x)], \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}}$$

Example 8

Find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ for each of the following: (a) $y = \ln(5x^2 - 6)$ (b) $y = \ln(\sin 2x)$ (c) $y = \ln\left(\dfrac{x + 2}{x + 3}\right)$

Using the above rule:

(a) $y = \ln(5x^2 - 6)$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{10x}{5x^2 - 6}$$

(b) $y = \ln(\sin 2x)$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2\cos 2x}{\sin 2x}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2\cot 2x$$

(c) $y = \ln\left(\dfrac{x + 2}{x + 3}\right)$

$$= \ln(x + 2) - \ln(x + 3)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x + 2} - \frac{1}{x + 3}$$

$$= \frac{1}{(x + 2)(x + 3)}$$

Example 9

Find an expression for $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$, given that $y = 2^x$.

If $y = 2^x$

then $\ln y = x \ln 2$ ... [1]

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 15

Evaluate $\int_3^5 \frac{3}{x-2}\,dx$ giving your answer correct to 3 decimal places.

METHOD 1

$$\int_3^5 \frac{3}{x-2}dx = \Big[3\ln|x-2|\Big]_3^5$$
$$= 3\ln 3 - 3\ln 1$$
$$= 3{\cdot}296$$

METHOD 2

$(x-2)$ is positive for $3 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$,

$$\therefore \quad \int_3^5 \frac{3}{x-2}dx = \Big[3\ln(x-2)\Big]_3^5$$
$$= 3\ln 3 - 3\ln 1 = 3{\cdot}296$$

Example 16

Evaluate $\int_3^5 \frac{4}{1-x}dx$.

METHOD 1

$$\int_3^5 \frac{4}{1-x}dx = \Big[-4\ln|1-x|\Big]_3^5$$
$$= (-4\ln 4) - (-4\ln 2)$$
$$= 4\ln 2 - 4\ln 4$$
$$= 4\ln \tfrac{1}{2}$$
$$= -2{\cdot}773$$

METHOD 2

$(1-x)$ is negative for $3 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$,

$$\therefore \quad \int_3^5 \frac{4}{1-x}dx = \int_3^5 \frac{-4}{x-1}dx$$

Now, $(x-1)$ is positive for $3 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$,

$$\text{so} \quad \int_3^5 \frac{4}{1-x}dx = \Big[-4\ln(x-1)\Big]_3^5$$
$$= (-4\ln 4) - (-4\ln 2)$$
$$= 4\ln 2 - 4\ln 4$$
$$= -2{\cdot}773$$

Note: (i) $\int_a^b \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}dx$ is meaningless if $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ are of opposite sign because, in such cases, there will be a value c between a and b for which $f(c) = 0$ and so $\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$ is undefined.

For example: $\int_{-1}^2 \frac{1}{x}dx$ is meaningless because $\frac{1}{x}$ is undefined for $x = 0$, which lies between -1 and 2.

$\int_2^4 \frac{2}{2x-5}dx$ is meaningless because $\frac{2}{2x-5}$ is undefined for $x = 2\frac{1}{2}$ which lies between 2 and 4.

(ii) It can also be the case that $f(x) = 0$ for a value of x between a and b, even though $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ are of the same sign.

Consider $\int_0^5 \frac{2x-3}{x^2-3x+2}dx$. If $f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 2$, then $f(5)$ and $f(0)$ are both positive.

But $f(x) = 0$ for $x = 1$ and $x = 2$ and both of these values lie in the range 0 to 5.

So this integral is meaningless as the integrand is undefined at $x = 1$ and $x = 2$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

19.4 The logarithmic series

From the binomial expansion, we know that for $|x| < 1$

$$\frac{1}{1+x} = (1+x)^{-1} = 1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + \dots$$

Integrating both sides with respect to x gives

$$\ln(1+x) + c = \frac{x}{1} - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \dots$$

Substituting $x = 0$ in both sides gives $c = 0$

Thus for $|x| < 1$

$$\ln(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \dots + (-1)^{n+1}\frac{x^n}{n} + \dots$$

Notes: 1. This expansion depends on the assumption that the sum of the series obtained by integrating each term of a series is the integral of the sum of that series. Again the proof of this assumption is beyond the scope of this book.

2. It can be shown that the expansion is valid for $x = 1$ as well as for $|x| < 1$.

$$\boxed{\text{Thus: } \ln(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \dots + (-1)^{n+1}\frac{x^n}{n} + \dots \quad \text{for } -1 < x \leqslant 1}$$

Example 18

Find an expansion in x for $\ln(1-x)$ and state the range of values of x for which it is valid.

Since $\ln(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \dots + (-1)^{n+1}\frac{x^n}{n} + \dots$ for $-1 < x \leqslant 1$

substituting $(-x)$ for x gives

$$\ln(1-x) = -x - \frac{(-x)^2}{2} + \frac{(-x)^3}{3} - \frac{(-x)^4}{4} + \dots + (-1)^{n+1}\frac{(-x)^n}{n} + \dots \quad \text{for } -1 < -x \leqslant 1$$

i.e. $\ln(1-x) = -x - \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} - \dots - \frac{x^n}{n} - \dots$ for $-1 \leqslant x < 1$.

Example 19

Find an expansion, in ascending powers of x, for $\ln(2-5x)$ stating the terms up to and including the term in x^4 and the range of values of x for which the expansion is valid.

We know that $\ln(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \dots + (-1)^{n+1}\frac{x^n}{n} + \dots$ for $-1 < x \leqslant 1$

Now $\ln(2-5x) = \ln[2(1-\frac{5}{2}x)]$

$= \ln 2 + \ln(1-\frac{5}{2}x)$

thus $\ln(2-5x) = \ln 2 + [-\frac{5}{2}x - \frac{1}{2}(-\frac{5}{2}x)^2 + \frac{1}{3}(-\frac{5}{2}x)^3 - \frac{1}{4}(-\frac{5}{2}x)^4 \dots]$

$= \ln 2 - \frac{5}{2}x - \frac{25}{8}x^2 - \frac{125}{24}x^3 - \frac{625}{64}x^4 \dots$ for $-1 < -\frac{5}{2}x \leqslant 1$

or $-\frac{2}{5} \leqslant x < \frac{2}{5}$

Thus $\ln(2-5x) = \ln 2 - \frac{5}{2}x - \frac{25}{8}x^2 - \frac{125}{24}x^3 - \frac{625}{64}x^4 \dots$ for $-\frac{2}{5} \leqslant x < \frac{2}{5}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 20

Find an expansion in ascending powers of x for $\ln(1 - x - 6x^2)$, giving the terms up to and including that in x^4, and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

$$\begin{aligned}\ln(1 - x - 6x^2) &= \ln[(1 - 3x)(1 + 2x)] \\ &= \ln(1 - 3x) + \ln(1 + 2x) \\ &= \left(-3x - \frac{(-3x)^2}{2} + \frac{(-3x)^3}{3} - \frac{(-3x)^4}{4} \ldots\right) \\ &\qquad + \left(2x - \frac{(2x)^2}{2} + \frac{(2x)^3}{3} - \frac{(2x)^4}{4} + \ldots\right)\end{aligned}$$

Thus $\ln(1 - x - 6x^2) = -x - \frac{13}{2}x^2 - \frac{19}{3}x^3 - \frac{97}{4}x^4 \ldots$
The expansion for $\ln(1 - 3x)$ is valid for $-1 < -3x \leqslant 1$, i.e. $-\frac{1}{3} \leqslant x < \frac{1}{3}$.
The expansion for $\ln(1 + 2x)$ is valid for $-1 < 2x \leqslant 1$, i.e. $-\frac{1}{2} < x \leqslant \frac{1}{2}$.
As both expansions have been used, the expansion is valid for $-\frac{1}{3} \leqslant x < \frac{1}{3}$.
Thus $\ln(1 - x - 6x^2) = -x - \frac{13}{2}x^2 - \frac{19}{3}x^3 - \frac{97}{4}x^4 \ldots$ for $-\frac{1}{3} \leqslant x < \frac{1}{3}$

Example 21

Find an expansion in ascending powers of x for $\ln\left(\frac{1 + x}{1 - x}\right)$ and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

$$\ln\left(\frac{1 + x}{1 - x}\right) = \ln(1 + x) - \ln(1 - x)$$

Hence
$$\begin{aligned}\ln\left(\frac{1 + x}{1 - x}\right) &= \left(x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{x^5}{5} \ldots\right) - \left(-x - \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} - \frac{x^5}{5} - \ldots\right) \\ &= 2\left(x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} + \ldots\right)\end{aligned}$$

The two expansions used are valid for $-1 < x \leqslant 1$ and $-1 \leqslant x < 1$ respectively.
The combined expansion is then valid for $-1 < x < 1$.

Thus $\ln\left(\frac{1 + x}{1 - x}\right) = 2\left(x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} + \ldots\right)$ for $|x| < 1$.

Note: This expansion can be used to evaluate logarithms and since it converges so much more quickly than $\ln(1 + x)$, it is particularly useful for this purpose.
Using $\ln(1 + x)$, and substituting $x = 1$,
$\ln(1 + 1) = \ln 2 = 1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} - \ldots$ i.e. the fifth term is 0·2.

Using $\ln\left(\frac{1 + x}{1 - x}\right)$ and substituting $x = \frac{1}{3}$,

$$\begin{aligned}\ln\left(\frac{1 + \frac{1}{3}}{1 - \frac{1}{3}}\right) = \ln 2 &= 2\left(\frac{1}{3} + \frac{(\frac{1}{3})^3}{3} + \frac{(\frac{1}{3})^5}{5} + \ldots\right) \\ &= \frac{2}{3} + \frac{2}{81} + \frac{2}{1215} + \ldots \quad \text{i.e. the third term is 0·0016.}\end{aligned}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

6. Using an appropriate number of terms of the series expansion of $\ln(1 + x)$ find the value of $\ln(1{\cdot}1)$ and $\ln(0{\cdot}9)$ correct to four decimal places.

7. (a) Show that for $|x| < 1$, $\ln\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right) = 2\left(x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} + \frac{x^7}{7} + \dots\right)$

   (b) Using the result of part (a) evaluate (i) $\ln \frac{5}{3}$ correct to 4 decimal places,
   (ii) $\ln 3$ correct to 3 decimal places.

8. If $x > 1$ show that $\ln(1 + x) = \ln x + \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{2x^2} + \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1}{4x^4} + \dots$

9. Find the coefficient of x^r in the series expansions of the following

   (a) e^{2x} (b) $\ln\left(1 + \frac{x}{2}\right)$ (c) $(1 + x)e^x$ (d) $\left(2 - x - \frac{1}{x}\right)\ln(1 - x)$

10. Expand $e^{2x} - 3e^x - e^{-x}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^4.

11. Obtain the series expansion of $e^x/(1 + 2x)$ up to and including the term in x^3 and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

12. Obtain the series expansion of $[\ln(1 + x)]/(2 + x)$ up to and including the term in x^4 and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

13. Find the first four non-zero terms in the series expansion of each of the following in ascending powers of x, and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid

   (a) $e^x \ln(1 + x)$ (b) $e^{-x}\ln(1 + 2x)$ (c) $e^{6x}\ln\left(1 + \frac{x}{2}\right)^2$

   (d) $e^x \ln\sqrt{(1 - 2x)}$

14. Find the values of the positive constants a, b and c given that when x is sufficiently small for terms in x^4, and higher powers of x, to be neglected then $\frac{e^{ax}}{2 + bx} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{x^2}{4} - cx^3$ (assume $|bx| < 2$)

15. Find the values of a, b and c given that when x is sufficiently small for terms in x^4 and higher powers of x to be neglected then $e^{ax}\ln(1 + bx) = -3x - \frac{21}{2}x^2 + cx^3$ (assume $-1 < bx \leqslant 1$)

Exercise 19D Examination Questions

1. Sketch the curves $y = e^x$ and $y = e^{-2x}$, using the same axes. The line $y = 4$ intersects the first curve at A and the second curve at B. Calculate the length of AB to two decimal places. (A.E.B.)

2. Differentiate with respect to x

   (a) $\frac{e^{-x}}{x}$ (b) $\ln(1 + \sin x)$ (London)

3. Differentiate $x \log_e x$ with respect to x.

   Use your result to find $\int \log_e x\,dx$.

   Hence evaluate, to three significant figures, $\int_1^2 \log_e x\,dx$. (A.E.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

12. Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2x}{1 + x^2} - 2xe^{-x^2}$ and that $y = 0$ when $x = 0$, express y in terms of x.
Show that, for small values of $|x|$, $y \approx px^6 + qx^8$ finding the values of the constants p and q. (A.E.B.)

13. Write down, in ascending powers of y, the first four terms in the series for e^y. By taking $e^y = 2^x$, show that

$$2^x = 1 + x \log_e 2 + \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 (\log_e 2)^2 + \tfrac{1}{6}x^3 (\log_e 2)^3 + \ldots.$$

Given that $2^{3x} + 5(2^x) = 6 + Ax + Bx^2 + Cx^3 + \ldots$, for all real x, find the values of the constants A, B and C in terms of $\log_e 2$. (A.E.B.)

14. Find the first three non-zero terms in the expansion, in ascending powers of x, of

$$e^{2x} + e^{-2x}.$$

Given that x is so small that its fifth and higher powers may be neglected, find the numerical values of the constants a, b and c in the approximate formula

$$\log_e (e^{2x} + e^{-2x}) \approx a + bx^2 + cx^4.$$ (J.M.B.)

15. (a) Solve the equation $\log_3 x = \log_x 9$, giving your answers correct to three significant figures.

(b) Show that $\ln (1 + x + x^2) = \ln (1 - x^3) - \ln (1 - x)$. Hence obtain the expansion of

$$\ln (1 + x + x^2)$$

in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^5.
Show that the coefficient of x^n in this expansion is $-\frac{2}{n}$ or $\frac{1}{n}$ according as n is or is not a multiple of 3.
Write down the expansion of $\ln (1 - x + x^2)$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^5. (Cambridge)

16. Given that

$$f(x) = e^{-3x} \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) = (1 - x)^{-3},$$

find the first three non-zero terms in the expansions in ascending powers of x of

(i) $f(x) - g(x)$, (ii) $\log_e f(x) - \log_e g(x)$, (iii) $\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$.

In each of the expansions (i) and (ii) obtain the coefficient of x^n for $n > 1$. (J.M.B.)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

20
Calculus IV: Further integration

20.1 Change of variable

Suppose we want to integrate $x^2(2x^3 + 3)^5$ with respect to x. We could expand the bracket $(2x^3 + 3)^5$, multiply by x^2 and then integrate each term. It is, however, much better to notice that x^2 is a scalar multiple of $\frac{d}{dx}(2x^3 + 3)$ and then it follows that

$$\int x^2(2x^3 + 3)^5\,dx = \frac{1}{36}(2x^3 + 3)^6 + c.$$

If we fail to notice this 'function of a function', an alternative method is to change the variable from x to some other suitably chosen variable. This method depends on the following theory:

Suppose $\quad y = \int f(x)\,dx \quad$ where $\quad x = g(u) \quad$ i.e. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = f(x) \quad$ and $\quad f(x) = f[g(u)]$

Now $\quad \frac{dy}{du} = \frac{dy}{dx} \times \frac{dx}{du}$

$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{du} = f(x) \times \frac{dx}{du}$

integrating, with respect to u, gives

$$y = \int f(x)\frac{dx}{du}\,du$$

$$= \int f[g(u)]\frac{dx}{du}\,du \quad \text{but } y = \int f(x)\,dx$$

$$\boxed{\therefore \int f(x)\,dx = \int f[g(u)]\frac{dx}{du}\,du}$$

Thus, to integrate $f(x)$ with respect to x, dx is replaced by $\frac{dx}{du}du$ and the integrand is then expressed in terms of the new variable, u.

Example 1

Find $\int x^2(2x^3 + 3)^5\,dx$.

Let $\quad u = 2x^3 + 3 \quad$ then $\quad \frac{du}{dx} = 6x^2$

Thus $\quad \int x^2(2x^3 + 3)^5\,dx = \int x^2(2x^3 + 3)^5\frac{dx}{du}\,du$

$$= \int x^2(2x^3 + 3)^5\frac{1}{6x^2}\,du$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$= \int \frac{u^5}{6}\,du$$

$$= \frac{u^6}{36} + c$$

$$\therefore \quad \int x^2(2x^3 + 3)^5\,dx = \frac{1}{36}(2x^3 + 3)^6 + c$$

As was noted at the begining of the chapter, $x^2(2x^3 + 3)^5$ could be integrated by inspection. However, there are many cases for which the method of changing the variable enables us to integrate an expression which we could not integrate by inspection.

Example 2

Find $\int 2x(x + 2)^5\,dx$.

Let $\quad u = x + 2 \quad$ then $\quad \frac{du}{dx} = 1$

$$\int 2x(x + 2)^5\,dx = \int 2x(x + 2)^5 \frac{dx}{du}\,du$$

$$= \int 2(u - 2)u^5\,du$$

$$= \tfrac{2}{7}u^7 - \tfrac{2}{3}u^6 + c$$

$$= \tfrac{2}{21}u^6(3u - 7) + c$$

$$\therefore \int 2x(x + 2)^5\,dx = \tfrac{2}{21}(x + 2)^6(3x - 1) + c$$

Example 3

Find $\int x\sqrt{(3x - 2)}\,dx$

Let $\quad u = 3x - 2 \quad$ then $\quad \frac{du}{dx} = 3$

$$\int x\sqrt{(3x - 2)}\,dx = \int x\sqrt{(3x - 2)}\frac{dx}{du}\,du$$

$$= \int \left(\frac{u + 2}{3}\right)\sqrt{u}\,\frac{1}{3}\,du$$

$$= \int \left(\frac{u^{3/2}}{9} + \frac{2u^{1/2}}{9}\right)du$$

$$= \tfrac{2}{45}u^{5/2} + \tfrac{4}{27}u^{3/2} + c$$

$$= \tfrac{2}{135}u^{3/2}(3u + 10) + c$$

$$\therefore \int x\sqrt{(3x - 2)}\,dx = \tfrac{2}{135}(3x - 2)^{3/2}(9x + 4) + c$$

Example 4

Evaluate $\int_0^5 \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x + 4)}}\,dx$.

Let $\quad u = x + 4 \quad$ then $\quad \frac{du}{dx} = 1$

Notice, also, that when $x = 0$, $u = 4$ and when $x = 5$, $u = 9$.

$$\int_0^5 \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x + 4)}}\,dx = \int_{u=4}^{u=9} \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x + 4)}}\frac{dx}{du}\,du$$

$$= \int_4^9 \frac{u - 4}{\sqrt{u}}\,du$$

$$= \left[\frac{2}{3}u^{3/2} - 8u^{1/2}\right]_4^9$$

$$= (\tfrac{2}{3} \times 27 - 8 \times 3) - (\tfrac{2}{3} \times 8 - 8 \times 2)$$

$$\therefore \int_0^5 \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x + 4)}}\,dx = 4\tfrac{2}{3}$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

In chapter 15 we saw that $\int \frac{1}{(a^2 + x^2)} dx = \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + c$ and

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)}} dx = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + c.$$

However, as was indicated in chapter 15, for more difficult functions of this type, integration by change of variable is advisable. These more difficult integrations will be of the form $\int \frac{1}{a^2 + b^2x^2} dx$, $|b| \neq 1$ and

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2 - c^2x^2)}} dx, \ |c| \neq 1.$$

We can then substitute

either $u = bx$ or $x = \frac{a}{b} \tan u$ into $\int \frac{1}{a^2 + b^2x^2} dx$

and either $u = cx$ or $x = \frac{a}{c} \sin u$ into $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2 - c^2x^2)}} dx$.

Example 5

Use a suitable substitution to find

(a) $\int \frac{1}{25 + 16x^2} dx$ (b) $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2 - 9x^2)}} dx$.

METHOD 1

(a) Let $u = 4x$ then $\frac{du}{dx} = 4$

$$\int \frac{1}{25 + 16x^2} dx = \int \frac{1}{25 + u^2} \times \frac{1}{4} du$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{1}{25 + u^2} du$$

$$= \frac{1}{20} \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{u}{5}\right) + c$$

$$\therefore \int \frac{1}{25 + 16x^2} dx = \frac{1}{20} \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{4x}{5}\right) + c$$

(b) Let $u = 3x$ then $\frac{du}{dx} = 3$

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2 - 9x^2)}} dx = \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2 - u^2)}} \times \frac{1}{3} du$$

$$= \frac{1}{3} \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2 - u^2)}} du$$

$$= \frac{1}{3} \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{u}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + c$$

$$\therefore \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2 - 9x^2)}} dx = \frac{1}{3} \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{3x}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + c$$

METHOD 2

Let $x = \frac{5}{4} \tan u$ then $\frac{dx}{du} = \frac{5}{4} \sec^2 u$

$$\int \frac{1}{25 + 16x^2} dx = \int \frac{1}{25(1 + \tan^2 u)} \times \frac{5}{4} \sec^2 u \, du$$

$$= \frac{1}{20} \int du$$

$$= \frac{u}{20} + c$$

$$\int \frac{1}{25 + 16x^2} dx = \frac{1}{20} \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{4x}{5}\right) + c$$

Let $x = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} \sin u$ then $\frac{dx}{du} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} \cos u$

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2 - 9x^2)}} dx = \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{[2(1 - \sin^2 u)]}} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} \cos u \, du$$

$$= \frac{1}{3} \int du$$

$$= \frac{1}{3} u + c$$

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2 - 9x^2)}} dx = \frac{1}{3} \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{3x}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + c$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 6

Evaluate $\int_0^1 \sqrt{(1 - x^2)}\,dx$.

For integrations of the type $\sqrt{(a^2 - b^2x^2)}$, $x = \frac{a}{b}\sin u$ is a useful substitution.

Thus, for $\int_0^1 \sqrt{(1 - x^2)}\,dx$, we let $x = \sin u$ then $\frac{dx}{du} = \cos u$.

Notice also that when $x = 0$, $u = 0$ and when $x = 1$, $u = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 \sqrt{(1 - x^2)}\,dx &= \int_{u=0}^{u=\pi/2} \sqrt{(1 - \sin^2 u)}\cos u\,du \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^2 u\,du \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2}(\cos 2u + 1)\,du \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{1}{2}\sin 2u + u\right]_0^{\pi/2} \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(\tfrac{1}{2}\sin \pi + \pi/2) - \tfrac{1}{2}(\tfrac{1}{2}\sin 0 + 0)\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \quad \int_0^1 \sqrt{(1 - x^2)}\,dx = \frac{\pi}{4}$$

This method of substituting in order to change the variable can also be used to integrate expressions of the type $\int \frac{1}{ax^2 + bx + c}\,dx$ when $(ax^2 + bx + c)$ does not factorise.

Example 7

Find $\int \frac{1}{x^2 - 4x + 29}\,dx$.

Now $\int \frac{1}{x^2 - 4x + 29}\,dx = \int \frac{1}{(x - 2)^2 + 25}\,dx$

Let $u = x - 2$ then $\frac{du}{dx} = 1$

and $\therefore$ $\int \frac{1}{x^2 - 4x + 29}\,dx = \int \frac{1}{u^2 + 25}\,du$

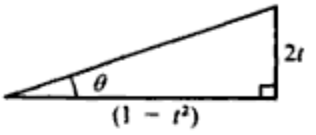
$$= \frac{1}{5}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{u}{5}\right) + c$$

$$\therefore \quad \int \frac{1}{x^2 - 4x + 29}\,dx = \frac{1}{5}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x - 2}{5}\right) + c$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

The substitution $t = \tan \frac{1}{2}\theta$

If we let $t = \tan \frac{1}{2}\theta$ then, from $\tan 2A = \dfrac{2 \tan A}{1 - \tan^2 A}$, it follows that $\tan \theta = \dfrac{2t}{(1 - t^2)}$.
It also follows, from the right angled triangle shown,
that $\sin \theta = \dfrac{2t}{(1 + t^2)}$ and that $\cos \theta = \dfrac{(1 - t^2)}{(1 + t^2)}$.
This substitution can be useful in finding some integrals.



Example 8

Use the substitution, $t = \tan \dfrac{\theta}{2}$, to evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{4}{3 + 5 \sin \theta} d\theta$.

Let $t = \tan \dfrac{\theta}{2}$ then $\sin \theta = \dfrac{2t}{(1 + t^2)}$ and $\dfrac{dt}{d\theta} = \frac{1}{2} \sec^2 \dfrac{\theta}{2} = \dfrac{1 + t^2}{2}$.

Notice also that when $\theta = 0$, $t = 0$ and when $\theta = \dfrac{\pi}{2}$, $t = 1$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Thus} \quad \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{4}{3 + 5 \sin \theta} d\theta &= \int_{t=0}^{t=1} \frac{4}{[3 + 10t/(1 + t^2)]} \times \frac{2}{(1 + t^2)} dt \\
&= \int_0^1 \frac{8}{3t^2 + 10t + 3} dt \\
&= \int_0^1 \left(\frac{3}{3t + 1} - \frac{1}{t + 3} \right) dt \\
&= \Big[\ln (3t + 1) - \ln (t + 3) \Big]_0^1 \\
&= (\ln 4 - \ln 4) - (\ln 1 - \ln 3) \\
&= \ln 3
\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \quad \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{4}{3 + 5 \sin \theta} d\theta = \ln 3.$$

Exercise 20A

Find the following indefinite integrals, in terms of x, using the suggested substitution

1. $\displaystyle\int 6x \sin (x^2 - 4)\, dx$, $u = x^2 - 4$
2. $\displaystyle\int 5x \cos (5 - x^2)\, dx$, $u = 5 - x^2$
3. $\displaystyle\int 3x\sqrt{(1 + x^2)}\, dx$, $u = 1 + x^2$
4. $\displaystyle\int 3x (x^2 + 6)^5\, dx$, $u = x^2 + 6$
5. $\displaystyle\int x(x + 2)^9\, dx$, $u = x + 2$
6. $\displaystyle\int 5x^2(x - 3)^8\, dx$, $u = x - 3$
7. $\displaystyle\int 9x(3x + 2)^3\, dx$, $u = 3x + 2$
8. $\displaystyle\int 7x(2x + 3)^5\, dx$, $u = 2x + 3$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9. $\int \frac{3x}{\sqrt{(2x+3)}}dx,\ u = 2x + 3$

10. $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)}}dx,\ x = \sin u$

11. $\int \frac{1}{4+9x^2}dx,\ x = \frac{2}{3}\tan u$

12. $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(25-4x^2)}}dx,\ x = \frac{5}{2}\sin u$

13. $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(4-9x^2)}}dx,\ x = \frac{2}{3}\sin u$

14. $\int \frac{1}{4+5x^2}dx,\ x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}\tan u$

15. $\int \sqrt{(25-x^2)}\,dx,\ x = 5\sin\theta$

16. $\int \sqrt{(1-4x^2)}\,dx,\ x = \frac{1}{2}\sin\theta$

17. Given that $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2-x^2)}}dx = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + c$ and

$\int \frac{a}{a^2+x^2}dx = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + c$ find the following indefinite integrals using the suggested substitution

(a) $\int \frac{1}{1+16x^2}dx,\ u = 4x$

(b) $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(9-16x^2)}}dx,\ u = 4x$

(c) $\int \frac{1}{4+5x^2}dx,\ u = x\sqrt{5}$

(d) $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(5-2x^2)}}dx,\ u = x\sqrt{2}$

18. Use the method of example 7 to find the following integrals

(a) $\int \frac{3}{x^2-2x+10}dx$ (b) $\int \frac{1}{x^2+6x+13}dx$ (c) $\int \frac{3}{4x^2-12x+13}dx$

Find the following indefinite integrals by using some suitable substitution.

19. $\int (x+2)(2x-3)^6\,dx$

20. $\int x\sqrt{(2x+1)}\,dx$

21. $\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{(2x+1)}}dx$

22. $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(25-4x^2)}}dx$

23. $\int \sqrt{(9-x^2)}\,dx$

24. $\int \frac{4}{x^2+2x+17}dx$

Evaluate the following definite integrals by using some suitable substitution.

25. $\int_0^3 x\sqrt{(x+1)}\,dx$

26. $\int_1^2 (x+2)(x-1)^5\,dx$

27. $\int_1^2 x^2(x-1)^5\,dx$

28. $\int_1^2 x(2x-3)^4\,dx$

29. $\int_0^1 4x(2x-1)^4\,dx$

30. $\int_0^{1/2} \frac{1}{1+4x^2}dx$

31. $\int_0^{3/2} \sqrt{(9-4x^2)}\,dx$

Find the following definite integrals using the substitution $t = \tan\frac{1}{2}\theta$

32. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{3}{1+\sin\theta}d\theta$

33. $\int_0^{2\pi/3} \frac{3}{5+4\cos\theta}d\theta$

34. $\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \frac{3}{4+5\cos\theta}d\theta$

35. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{5}{3\sin\theta+4\cos\theta}d\theta$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

20.2 Integration by parts

In section 13.5 we obtained a rule for differentiating the product of u and v, two functions of x.
From this rule we can obtain a result which enables us to integrate certain products.
If u and v are functions of x, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}(uv) = u\frac{dv}{dx} + v\frac{du}{dx}$$

integrating both sides of this equation, with respect to x

$$\int \frac{d}{dx}(uv)\,dx = \int u\frac{dv}{dx}dx + \int v\frac{du}{dx}dx$$

$$uv = \int u\frac{dv}{dx}dx + \int v\frac{du}{dx}dx$$

$$\boxed{\text{i.e.} \quad \int u\frac{dv}{dx}dx = uv - \int v\frac{du}{dx}dx}$$

This is known as the formula for integration by parts.

Example 9

Find $\int x(3x - 2)^4\,dx$, using the method of integration by parts.

[Note that this integral could be found by expanding the integrand, or by means of a substitution.]

Let $\quad u = x \quad$ and $\quad \frac{dv}{dx} = (3x - 2)^4$

then $\quad \frac{du}{dx} = 1 \quad$ and $\quad v = \frac{1}{15}(3x - 2)^5$

Using $\quad \int u\frac{dv}{dx}dx = uv - \int v\frac{du}{dx}dx,$

$$\int x(3x - 2)^4\,dx = \frac{x}{15}(3x - 2)^5 - \int \frac{1}{15}(3x - 2)^5\,dx$$

$$= \frac{x}{15}(3x - 2)^5 - \frac{1}{15 \times 18}(3x - 2)^6 + c$$

$$\therefore \quad \int x(3x - 2)^4\,dx = \frac{1}{270}(3x - 2)^5(15x + 2) + c$$

Note: The choice to substitute u for x is made, since when differentiated this function becomes 1; thus the expression, $\int v\frac{du}{dx}dx$, will no longer be a product of two functions of x.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 10

Find $\int x \ln x \, dx$.

We know that we shall have to differentiate one, and integrate the other, function (x or $\ln x$) with respect to x. Although we would like to put $u = x$, because the differential $\frac{du}{dx} = 1$, we cannot do this since it would then mean integrating $\ln x$.

Let $\quad u = \ln x \quad$ and $\quad \frac{dv}{dx} = x$

then $\quad \frac{du}{dx} = \frac{1}{x} \quad$ and $\quad v = \frac{1}{2}x^2$

Using $\quad \int u\frac{dv}{dx}dx = uv - \int v\frac{du}{dx}dx,$

$$\therefore \quad \int x \ln x \, dx = \ln x\left(\frac{x^2}{2}\right) - \int \frac{x^2}{2} \times \frac{1}{x}dx$$

$$\therefore \quad \int x \ln x \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2}\ln x - \frac{x^2}{4} + c$$

Example 11

Find $\int \ln x \, dx$.

This is not seemingly a product, but we write it as one so that we can then choose to differentiate $\ln x$.

Writing $\int \ln x \, dx$ as $\int 1 \times \ln x \, dx$

Let $\quad u = \ln x \quad$ and $\quad \frac{dv}{dx} = 1$

then $\quad \frac{du}{dx} = \frac{1}{x} \quad$ and $\quad v = x$

Using $\quad \int u\frac{dv}{dx}dx = uv - \int v\frac{du}{dx}dx,$

$$\int \ln x \, dx = (\ln x)x - \int x\frac{1}{x}dx$$

$$= x \ln x - \int dx$$

$$\therefore \quad \int \ln x \, dx = x \ln x - x + c.$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$\int e^x \sin x\,dx$$

Let $\quad u = e^x \quad$ and $\quad \dfrac{dv}{dx} = \sin x$

then $\quad \dfrac{du}{dx} = e^x \quad$ and $\quad v = -\cos x$

Using $\quad \displaystyle\int u\frac{dv}{dx}dx = uv - \int v\frac{du}{dx}dx,$

$$\int e^x \sin x\,dx = e^x(-\cos x) - \int (-\cos x)e^x\,dx$$

$$= -e^x \cos x + \int e^x \cos x\,dx$$

Using this result in [1] above:

$$\int e^x \cos x\,dx = e^x \sin x + e^x \cos x - \int e^x \cos x\,dx$$

$$\therefore \quad 2\int e^x \cos x\,dx = e^x \sin x + e^x \cos x$$

$$\therefore \quad \int e^x \cos x\,dx = \frac{1}{2}e^x(\sin x + \cos x) + c$$

Exercise 20B

Use the method of integration by parts to find the following indefinite integrals

1. $\displaystyle\int x(x+1)^4\,dx$ **2.** $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{(x-3)}\,dx$ **3.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x+3)}}dx$

4. $\displaystyle\int x \sin x\,dx$ **5.** $\displaystyle\int x^2 \sin x\,dx$ **6.** $\displaystyle\int 2x \sin(3x-1)\,dx$

7. $\displaystyle\int x^2 \ln x\,dx$ **8.** $\displaystyle\int (x+1)\ln x\,dx$ **9.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x^3}\ln x\,dx$

10. $\displaystyle\int e^x \sin x\,dx$ **11.** $\displaystyle\int xe^x\,dx$ **12.** $\displaystyle\int x^2e^{3x}\,dx$

13. $\displaystyle\int e^x \cos 2x\,dx$ **14.** $\displaystyle\int \ln(2x+1)\,dx$ **15.** $\displaystyle\int \tan^{-1} x\,dx$

16. $\displaystyle\int \sin^{-1} x\,dx$ **17.** $\displaystyle\int 2x \ln(x+1)\,dx$ **18.** $\displaystyle\int x \ln(x-2)\,dx$

Evaluate the following definite integrals using the method of integration by parts.

19. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 x(x-1)^5\,dx$ **20.** $\displaystyle\int_3^6 \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x-2)}}dx$ **21.** $\displaystyle\int_0^2 x(x-2)^4\,dx$

22. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4} x \cos 2x\,dx$ **23.** $\displaystyle\int_2^4 (x-1)\ln(2x)\,dx$ **24.** $\displaystyle\int_1^4 \frac{\ln x}{x^2}dx$

25. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 x^3e^x\,dx$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. Is the integrand a quotient? If so,

(a) those of the type $\int \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}dx$ can be integrated to give $\ln |f(x)| + c$,

(b) those of the type $\int \frac{f'(x)}{[f(x)]^n}dx$ can be integrated by inspection or by change of variable:

e.g. $\int \frac{2x}{(x^2 + 4)^7}dx$ is $-\frac{1}{6}(x^2 + 4)^{-6} + c$ by inspection or by the substitution $u = x^2 + 4$,

(c) remember that expressing the integrand in partial fractions can enable some integrations to be carried out:

e.g. $$\int \frac{x^3 - 3x - 5}{(x + 1)(x - 2)}dx = \int \left(x + 1 + \frac{1}{x + 1} - \frac{1}{x - 2}\right)dx$$
$$= \frac{x^2}{2} + x + \ln \left|\frac{x + 1}{x - 2}\right| + c,$$

(d) writing the integrand as two (or more) fractions by 'splitting' the numerator makes some integrations possible:

e.g. $$\int \frac{x + 1}{x^2 + 1}dx = \int \left(\frac{x}{x^2 + 1} + \frac{1}{x^2 + 1}\right)dx$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2} \ln (x^2 + 1) + \tan^{-1} x + c$$

4. Remember the standard techniques for integrating odd and even powers of $\sin x$ and $\cos x$, and that there are seven functions for which integration is straightforward, provided that you remember the initial rearrangement.
Note, particularly, parts (vi) and (vii) below, which have not been encountered earlier in this book:

(i) $\int \tan x\,dx$: write as $\int \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}dx$, which integrates to give a log function.

(ii) $\int \cot x\,dx$: write as $\int \frac{\cos x}{\sin x}dx$, which integrates to give a log function.

(iii) $\int \ln x\,dx$: write as $\int 1 \times \ln x\,dx$ and integrate by parts.

(iv) $\int \sin^{-1} x\,dx$: by a similar method to that used for $\int \ln x\,dx$.

(v) $\int \cos^{-1} x\,dx$: by a similar method to that used for $\int \ln x\,dx$.

(vi) $\int \sec x\,dx$: write as $\int \frac{\sec x(\sec x + \tan x)}{(\sec x + \tan x)}dx$ to give $\ln |\sec x + \tan x| + c$.

(vii) $\int \operatorname{cosec} x\,dx$: write as $\int \frac{\operatorname{cosec} x(\operatorname{cosec} x - \cot x)}{(\operatorname{cosec} x - \cot x)}dx$ to give $\ln |\operatorname{cosec} x - \cot x| + c$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

5. If consideration of points 1 to 4 above do not yield a solution, try rearranging the integrand or making a suitable substitution:

   e.g. $\int 2 \sin 8x \cos 4x \, dx$ rearranges to $\int (\sin 12x + \sin 4x) \, dx$

   to give $-\frac{1}{12} \cos 12x - \frac{1}{4} \cos 4x + c$.

Exercise 20C

Find the following indefinite integrals

1. $\int (3x^2 - 6) \, dx$
2. $\int \tan x \, dx$
3. $\int \sin 2x \, dx$
4. $\int \frac{2}{x^2 - 1} dx$
5. $\int 3e^x \, dx$
6. $\int e^{3x} \, dx$
7. $\int \frac{1}{x^2} dx$
8. $\int \frac{1}{x} dx$
9. $\int \cos^3 2x \, dx$
10. $\int \frac{2}{(2x - 3)^3} dx$
11. $\int \frac{2}{2x + 3} dx$
12. $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)}} dx$
13. $\int x(x - 1)^6 \, dx$
14. $\int \frac{1}{4 + x^2} dx$
15. $\int \frac{8x}{(x^2 - 4)^5} dx$
16. $\int 2 \sin 5x \cos 4x \, dx$
17. $\int (x + 3)(x + 7)^5 \, dx$
18. $\int \frac{1 + x}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)}} dx$
19. $\int x \cos x \, dx$
20. $\int 4x(3x - 5) \, dx$
21. $\int \frac{10}{25 + x^2} dx$
22. $\int 9 \cos 3x \, dx$
23. $\int x^3 \ln x \, dx$
24. $\int 2^x \, dx$
25. $\int x\sqrt{(2x + 3)} \, dx$
26. $\int \frac{2x}{x^2 + 4} dx$
27. $\int \frac{6 - 2x}{(x + 1)(x^2 + 3)} dx$
28. $\int \ln x \, dx$
29. $\int 30 \cos 4x \cos x \, dx$
30. $\int 4 \sec^2 x \, dx$
31. $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(x + 5)}} dx$
32. $\int \sin^7 x \, dx$
33. $\int \cos^4 2x \, dx$
34. $\int \frac{\sin x}{\cos^2 x} dx$
35. $\int \frac{x}{x + 10} dx$
36. $\int (2x + 3)(x - 2) \, dx$
37. $\int xe^{-x} \, dx$
38. $\int \frac{2x^3 + 7x^2 + 2x - 10}{(x + 3)(2x - 1)} dx$
39. $\int \frac{1}{9 + 4x^2} dx$
40. $\int \frac{\sin 2x}{\cos x} dx$
41. $\int \frac{\sin 2x}{\cos 2x} dx$
42. $\int \frac{x + 2}{x^2 + 4x + 7} dx$
43. $\int \cos 7x \sin 5x \, dx$
44. $\int \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{3}\right) dx$
45. $\int \sec 4x \, dx$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 13

If the general equation of a family of curves is given by $y = Ax^2$, find the corresponding differential equation for the family, giving your answer independent of the constant A.

$$y = Ax^2$$
$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = 2Ax$$

but $A = \dfrac{y}{x^2}$ $\quad \therefore \quad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2y}{x}$ is the required differential equation.

Solving first order differential equations

Any first order differential equation that can be expressed in the form

$$f(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = g(x),$$

can be solved by separating the variables:

Suppose $$f(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = g(x)$$

Integrating both sides with respect to x $$\int f(y)\frac{dy}{dx}dx = \int g(x)\,dx$$

Earlier in this chapter we saw that the operation $\ldots \dfrac{dy}{dx}dx$ can be replaced by $\ldots dy$.

$$\therefore \quad \int f(y)dy = \int g(x)\,dx$$

Thus, if $f(y)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = g(x)$, it follows that $\displaystyle\int f(y)dy = \int g(x)dx$.

This result is easily remembered if we think of $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ as a 'fraction' and view the rearrangement from $f(y)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = g(x)$ to $f(y)dy = g(x)dx$ as 'putting the x's with the dx and the y's with the dy'. It is important to realise, though, that this is simply a useful way of remembering what to do; in fact, $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ is not a fraction and the method really depends on $\ldots \dfrac{dy}{dx}dx$ being equivalent to $\ldots dy$.

The simplest case of $f(y)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = g(x)$ is for $f(y) = 1$, in which case we have $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = g(x)$ which we can integrate directly to obtain y (see examples 14 and 15).

Remember also that integration gives rise to a constant c, and so we obtain the *general* solution of the differential equation. Only if we are given additional information, can we find a *particular* solution.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 14

Find the general solution of the differential equation, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2 - 4$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2 - 4$$

By direct integration:

$$y = x^3 - 4x + c$$

or separating the variables and integrating:

$$\int dy = \int (3x^2 - 4)\,dx$$

$$y = x^3 - 4x + c$$

Thus $y = x^3 - 4x + c$ is the required general solution of the differential equation.

Example 15

Solve the differential equation, $\frac{dy}{dx} + 5 = 6x$, given that when $x = 1$, $y = 2$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + 5 = 6x$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = 6x - 5$$

$$y = 3x^2 - 5x + c$$

but when $x = 1$, $y = 2$ $\quad \therefore \quad 2 = 3(1)^2 - 5(1) + c$ giving $c = 4$

Thus $y = 3x^2 - 5x + 4$ is the required solution.

Example 16

Solve the differential equation, $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2}{\sin y}$, giving y in terms of x.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2}{\sin y}$$

$$\therefore \quad \int \sin y\,dy = \int 2dx$$

$$-\cos y = 2x + c$$

thus $\quad y = \cos^{-1}(-2x - c)$.

Note As c is the arbitrary constant which can take either positive or negative values, we lose no generality by writing this solution as $y = \cos^{-1}(c - 2x)$.

Example 17

Solve the equation, $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x^2 y}$, given that when $x = 1$, $y = 2$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x^2 y}$$

$$\therefore \quad \int y\,dy = \int \frac{1}{x^2}\,dx$$

$$\frac{y^2}{2} = -\frac{1}{x} + c$$

but when $x = 1$, $y = 2$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{4}{2} = -\frac{1}{1} + c \quad \text{giving } c = 3.$$

Thus $y^2 = 6 - \frac{2}{x}$ is the required solution.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 20D

1. From each of the following equations obtain a first order differential equation that does not contain the arbitrary constant A. (For (g), (h) and (i) use implicit differentiation).

(a) $y = 3x^2 + Ax$ (b) $y = \dfrac{A}{x}$ (c) $y = 4x^2 - A$

(d) $y = Ae^{x^2}$ (e) $y = A \ln x$ (f) $y = A \cos x$

(g) $x^2 + 4y^2 = A$ (h) $y^3 = A(x^2 + 1)$ (i) $y^2 = xy + A$

Find the general solutions to the following differential equations, giving y in terms of x, in each case.

2. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = x + 2$ **3.** $2y\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2$ **4.** $x^5\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 4y^2$

5. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} - e^x y^2 = 0$ **6.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{\cos x}{y}$ **7.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{1 - x}$

8. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2x \operatorname{cosec} y = 0$ **9.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2y$ **10.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2(3 + y)$

11. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \sec y$ **12.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2x(1 + y^2)$ **13.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 4xe^{-y}$

14. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{y}{x + 1}$ **15.** $(x + 1)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = x(y + 3)$ **16.** $2\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2(y^2 - 1)$

Solve the following differential equations, giving y in terms of x, in each case.

17. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 4 = 12x$; when $x = -2$, $y = 30$.

18. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^2$; when $x = 3$, $y = -1$.

19. $3y^2\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2x + 1$; when $x = 2$, $y = 2$.

20. $(\cos y)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = x^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 y$; when $x = \frac{1}{2}$, $y = \dfrac{\pi}{2}$.

21. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2$; $x > 0$ and when $x = 1$, $y = -3$.

22. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2 + \dfrac{dy}{dx}$; $x > 1$ and when $x = 2$, $y = 1$.

23. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 4xy$; when $x = 0$, $y = 4$.

24. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 6x(y + 1)$; when $x = 0$, $y = 3$.

25. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (y - 3)(4x + 3)$; when $x = -1$, $y = 3(e^{-1} + 1)$.

26. $e^y\dfrac{dy}{dx} + \sin x = 0$; when $x = \dfrac{\pi}{2}$, $y = 1$.

27. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y^2 = 0$; $x > 0$ and when $x = 1$, $y = \frac{1}{2}$.

28. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y + 2$; when $x = 3$, $y = 7$.

29. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 3 = y - 4\dfrac{dy}{dx}$; when $x = 1$, $y = 13$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

30. $2x\frac{dy}{dx} + 1 = y^2$; when $x = \frac{1}{3}$, $y = 2$.

31. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x^2y + y}{x^2 - 1}$; when $x = 0$, $y = 2$.

32. $(x^2 + 1)\frac{dy}{dx} = 2(y + 1)(x^2 + x + 1)$; when $x = 0$, $y = 3$.

33. Use the substitution $y = vx$, where v is a function of x, to solve $x\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x - y$, stating
(a) the general solution and
(b) the particular solution for which $y = 5$ when $x = 1$.

34. Use the substitution $4x + y = z$ to solve $\frac{dy}{dx} = 4x + y$ given that $y = 2$ when $x = 0$.

35. Use the substitution $z = 2x - 3y$ to solve $(2x - 3y + 3)\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x - 2y + 1$ given that $y = 1$ when $x = 1$.

36. Use the substitution $y = vx$, where v is a function of x, to solve $x^2 - y^2 + 2xy\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$, stating (a) the general solution and
(b) the particular solution for which $y = 4$ when $x = 2$.

37. Use the substitution $y = vx$, where v is a function of x, to find the general solution of $(x - y)\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x + y$

38. Use the substitution $y = vx$, where v is a function of x, to find the general solution of $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x^2 + y^2}{x(x + y)}$

39. By substituting $x = X - 1$ and $y = Y + 3$ reduce the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{4x - y + 7}{2x + y - 1}$ to a homogeneous equation and hence find the general solution in terms of x and y.

40. Find the general equation of the family of curves for which the gradient at any point on the curve is the same as the y-coordinate at that point.

41. The rate at which a body loses speed at any given instant as it travels through a resistive medium is given by kv m/s² where v is the speed of the body at that instant and k is a positive constant. If its initial speed is u m/s show that the time taken for the body to decrease its speed to $\frac{1}{2}u$ m/s is $\frac{1}{k}\ln 2$ seconds.

42. The rate at which a body loses temperature at any instant is proportional to the amount by which the temperature of the body, at that instant, exceeds the temperature of its surroundings. A container of hot liquid is placed in a room of temperature 18°C and in 6 minutes the liquid cools from 82°C to 50°C. How long does it take for the liquid to cool from 26°C to 20°C?

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 25

Find the general solution to the differential equation $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 4\frac{dy}{dx} + 3y = 0$

We try $y = e^{px}$, from which $\frac{dy}{dx} = pe^{px}$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = p^2e^{px}$.
Substitution in the differential equation gives

$$p^2e^{px} - 4pe^{px} + 3e^{px} = 0$$
$$p^2 - 4p + 3 = 0$$

i.e. $(p - 3)(p - 1) = 0$ giving $p = 3$ or 1.
The general solution to the differential equation is $y = Ae^{3x} + Be^{x}$.

Example 26

Find the general solution to the differential equation $2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - \frac{dy}{dx} - 3y = e^{2x}$

We first find the complementary function by solving the equation
$2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - \frac{dy}{dx} - 3y = 0.$
Try $y = e^{px}$ then substitution in the differential equation gives

$$2p^2e^{px} - pe^{px} - 3e^{px} = 0$$
$$2p^2 - p - 3 = 0$$

i.e. $(2p - 3)(p + 1) = 0$ giving $p = \frac{3}{2}$ or -1
Thus the complementary function is $y = Ae^{3x/2} + Be^{-x}$.
To find a particular solution we try a solution of the form of the R.H.S. of the differential equation i.e. $y = Ce^{2x}$
Substitution in the differential equation gives

$$2 \times 2^2Ce^{2x} - 2Ce^{2x} - 3Ce^{2x} = e^{2x}$$

giving $C = \frac{1}{3}$
Thus a particular solution is $y = \frac{1}{3}e^{2x}$ and the general solution to the differential equation is $y = Ae^{3x/2} + Be^{-x} + \frac{1}{3}e^{2x}$.

Example 27

Find the general solution to the differential equation $4\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 4\frac{dy}{dx} + y = 3x + 4.$

To find the complementary function we solve $4\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 4\frac{dy}{dx} + y = 0$ by trying $y = e^{px}$

$$4p^2e^{px} + 4pe^{px} + e^{px} = 0$$
$$4p^2 + 4p + 1 = 0$$

i.e. $(2p + 1)^2 = 0$ giving $p = -\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}$ a repeated root.
Thus the complementary function is $y = (A + Bx)e^{-x/2}$.
To find a particular solution we try a solution of the form of the R.H.S. of the differential equation i.e. $y = Cx + D$.
Substitution in the differential equation gives $4(0) + 4C + (Cx + D) = 3x + 4$
Equating coefficients gives $C = 3$ and $D = -8$.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. Use the standard results quoted on page 519 to write down the general solutions of the following differential equations

(a) $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 36y = 1$ (b) $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 9y = 18$

(c) $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 9y = 18$ (d) $4\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 9y = 36$

9. Use the standard results quoted on page 519 to solve the following differential equations

(a) $\frac{1}{4}\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + y = 2$ given that when $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$, $y = 1$ and when $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$, $y = -1$.

(b) $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - y = 2$ given that when $x = 0$, $y = 2$ and $\frac{dy}{dx} = 6$.

(c) $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{1}{4}y = 4$ given that when $x = \pi$, $y = 19$ and $\frac{dy}{dx} = -1$.

(d) $4\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - y = 4$ given that when $x = 0$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{3}{2}$.

Exercise 20F Examination Questions

1. Evaluate

(a) $\int_0^{\pi} \sin\frac{3x}{2}\,dx$, (b) $\int_0^{a} e^{-2x}\,dx$, where $a = \log_e 2$, (c) $\int_1^2 \frac{1}{3x+2}\,dx$.

(A.E.B.)

2. Evaluate the integrals

(a) $\int_0^{3/4} x\sqrt{(1+x^2)}\,dx$, (b) $\int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^2 x\,dx$,

(c) $\int_0^{\pi} x\sin x\,dx$, (d) $\int_3^4 \frac{1}{x^2-3x+2}\,dx$.

Express your answer to (d) as a natural logarithm. (London)

3. Find

(a) $\int x\ln x\,dx$ (b) $\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x-2)}}\,dx$. (London)

4. Using the substitution $t = \sin x$, evaluate to two decimal places the integral

$$\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2} \frac{4\cos x}{3+\cos^2 x}\,dx.$$ (A.E.B.)

5. Evaluate the integrals

(i) $\int_0^1 \frac{2x-1}{(x-3)^3}\,dx$ (by substitution or otherwise),

(ii) $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sin^2 3x\,dx$. (Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

6. (a) Find the indefinite integrals of

(i) $(x - 2/x)^2$ (ii) $\cot 2x$ (iii) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - 2x)}}$ (iv) $x \log_e 2x$

(b) Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^3 x\, dx$.

(c) Using the substitution $t = \log_e x$ evaluate $\displaystyle\int_e^{e^2} \frac{dx}{x(\log_e x)^2}$. (S.U.J.B.)

7. Write down, or obtain, the derivative of $\tan^{-1} 2x$.

Find (i) $\displaystyle\int \frac{x + 2}{4x^2 + 1} dx$, (ii) $\displaystyle\int \frac{4x}{4x^4 + 1} dx$.

(J.M.B.)

8. Find the volume generated when the region bounded by the curve

$$y = \left(\frac{1 - x^2}{1 + x^2}\right)^{1/2}$$

and the x-axis is rotated through four right-angles about the x-axis.

(Oxford)

9. Find y in terms of x given that

$$x\frac{dy}{dx} = y(y + 1)$$

and $y = 4$ when $x = 2$. (London)

10. Given that

$$\frac{dy}{dx} - 2xy = 0$$

and that $y = 1$ when $x = 1$, show that $y \geqslant \dfrac{1}{e}$ for all values of x.

(Cambridge)

11. Solve the differential equation $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{y^2 - 1}{2 \tan x}$, given that $y = 3$ when $x = \dfrac{\pi}{2}$.

Hence express y in terms of x. (A.E.B.)

12. For all positive values of x the gradient of a curve at the point (x, y) is $\dfrac{y}{x^2 + x}$. The point $A(3, 6)$ lies on this curve.

(i) Calculate the equation of the normal to the curve at A.

(ii) Find the equation of the curve in the form $y = f(x)$. (A.E.B.)

13. Find the general solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y^2}{(x^2 - x - 2)}$$

in the region $x > 2$. Find also the particular solution which satisfies $y = 1$ when $x = 5$. (Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

18. (a) Find the solution of the differential equation

$$x\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x - 2y, \quad \text{for} \quad x > 0$$

given that $y = \frac{3}{4}$ when $x = 1$

(b) For the differential equation $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 3\frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = 6e^{-3x} - 1$

find (i) the general solution

(ii) the limit to which y tends as x tends to infinity.

19. Prove that

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(a + b - t)\,dt.$$

Hence prove that, if $0 < \beta < \frac{1}{2}\pi$,

$$\int_\beta^{\pi-\beta} \frac{\theta\,d\theta}{\sin\theta} = \pi \ln \cot\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\beta\right).$$ (Oxford)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$\therefore \quad \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \approx \tfrac{1}{3}h\left[y_0 + 4y_1 + 2y_2 + 4y_3 + 2y_4 + \ldots + 2y_{n-2} + 4y_{n-1} + y_n\right]$$

and this is known as the approximation from Simpson's rule.

Note that in order to apply this rule, the interval is divided into an *even* number of strips, i.e. there are an *odd* number of ordinates.
Numerical methods of integration can be particularly useful when the function to be integrated is one that does not integrate readily, or one for which we know the coordinates of various points on the graph of the function, but we do not know the equation of the function (as in Example 2 below).

Example 2

Given that $y = f(x)$ and that for the given values of x, the corresponding values of y are as shown in the table, use Simpson's rule with nine ordinates to find an approximate value for $\int_{-1}^{7} f(x)\,dx$.

x	-1	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
y	17	10	5	2	1	2	5	10	17

Applying Simpson's rule, with $h = 1$, and $y_0 = 17$, $y_1 = 10$, etc.

$$\int_{-1}^{7} f(x)\,dx \approx \tfrac{1}{3}\left[17 + 4(10) + 2(5) + 4(2) + 2(1) + 4(2) + 2(5) + 4(10) + 17\right]$$

$$\approx \tfrac{152}{3} = 50{\cdot}7 \quad \text{to one decimal place.}$$

Exercise 21A

In this exercise give your answers correct to 4 significant figures unless told otherwise.

1. Given that $y = f(x)$ and for the given values of x the corresponding values of y are as shown in the table below, use the trapezium rule to find an approximate value for $\int_1^5 f(x)\,dx$.

x	1	2	3	4	5
y	0	3	4	7	4

2. Find an approximate value for $\int_0^1 e^x\,dx$ using the trapezium rule with 5 strips.

3. Find approximate values for $\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x}\,dx$ using the trapezium rule with
   (a) 5 strips (b) 10 strips.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

4. Given that $y = f(x)$ and for the given values of x the corresponding values of y are as shown in the table below, use Simpson's rule with eleven ordinates to find an approximate value for $\int_0^{10} f(x)\,dx$

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
y	2	3	5	6	7	7	8	4	3	5	7

5. Use Simpson's rule with 10 strips to find an approximation for $\int_0^1 \frac{1}{1+x}\,dx$.

6. Use Simpson's rule with (a) 5 ordinates, (b) 10 ordinates to find approximations for $\int_0^2 \frac{1}{1+x^2}\,dx$.

(Give your answers to 4 decimal places in each case).

7. Find an approximate value for $\int_0^1 e^{x^2}\,dx$ by (a) the trapezium rule and (b) Simpson's rule, using 8 strips in each case.

8. Find an approximate value for $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x\,dx$ by (a) the trapezium rule and (b) Simpson's rule, using 8 strips in each case.

9. If $A = \int_0^{0\cdot6} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)}}\,dx$

(a) find A by integration,
(b) estimate A using the trapezium rule and six strips
(c) estimate A using Simpson's rule and six strips
(d) estimate A by integrating the first four terms of the series expansion of $(1-x^2)^{-1/2}$.

21.3 Taylor's theorem

If $f(x+h) = (x+h)^n$, we can use the binomial expansion to obtain a series expansion of $f(x+h)$ in powers of x. However, can we obtain a power series expansion when $f(x+h)$ is not of the form $(x+h)^n$? Let us suppose that such a series expansion does exist.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{i.e.}\quad f(x+h) &= c_0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + c_3x^3 + c_4x^4 + \ldots\\
\text{then}\quad f'(x+h) &= c_1 + 2c_2x + 3c_3x^2 + 4c_4x^3 + \ldots\\
f''(x+h) &= 2c_2 + 3\times 2c_3x + 4\times 3c_4x^2 + \ldots\\
f'''(x+h) &= 3\times 2c_3 + 4\times 3\times 2c_4x + \ldots\\
f''''(x+h) &= 4\times 3\times 2c_4 + \ldots
\end{aligned}$$

and so on.

Now if $x = 0$, then the above equations give:

$$c_0 = f(h)$$
$$c_1 = f'(h)$$
$$2c_2 = f''(h) \quad \text{i.e.} \quad c_2 = \frac{1}{2!}f''(h)$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 4

Use Maclaurin's theorem to find the first three non-zero terms in the expansion of $\sin x$. Hence find $\sin (0{\cdot}1)^{\text{rad}}$ correct to seven decimal places.

In this case
$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \sin x, & f(0) &= \sin 0 &= 0 \\ f'(x) &= \cos x & f'(0) &= \cos 0 &= 1 \\ f''(x) &= -\sin x & f''(0) &= -\sin 0 &= 0 \\ f'''(x) &= -\cos x & f'''(0) &= -\cos 0 &= -1 \\ f''''(x) &= \sin x & f''''(0) &= \sin 0 &= 0 \\ f'''''(x) &= \cos x & f'''''(0) &= \cos 0 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

By Maclaurin's theorem
$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= f(0) + \frac{x}{1!}f'(0) + \frac{x^2}{2!}f''(0) + \frac{x^3}{3!}f'''(0) + \frac{x^4}{4!}f''''(0) + \frac{x^5}{5!}f'''''(0) + \ldots \\ &= 0 + x(1) + \frac{x^2}{2!}(0) + \frac{x^3}{3!}(-1) + \frac{x^4}{4!}(0) + \frac{x^5}{5!}(1) + \ldots \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$ $\sin x = \dfrac{x}{1!} - \dfrac{x^3}{3!} + \dfrac{x^5}{5!}$ ... which is the required expansion.

Thus
$$\begin{aligned} \sin (0{\cdot}1 \text{ rad}) &\approx \frac{(0{\cdot}1)}{1!} - \frac{(0{\cdot}1)^3}{3!} + \frac{(0{\cdot}1)^5}{5!} \\ &= 0{\cdot}1 - 0{\cdot}00016667 + 0{\cdot}00000008 \\ &= 0{\cdot}09983341 \end{aligned}$$

i.e. $\sin (0{\cdot}1 \text{ rad}) = 0{\cdot}0998334$ correct to seven decimal places.

Exercise 21B

1. Use Maclaurin's theorem to find series expansions for each of the following giving all terms up to and including that in x^5.
   (a) $\cos x$, (b) e^x, (c) $(1 + x)^n$, (d) $\ln (1 + x)$, (e) a^x, (f) $\sin^{-1} x$.
   Use your answer to (a) to determine $\cos (0{\cdot}1 \text{ rads})$ correct to six decimal places. Use your answer to (f) to determine $\sin^{-1} (0{\cdot}2)$ correct to four decimal places.
2. Use Maclaurin's theorem to find the series expansion of $\tan x$ giving all terms up to and including that in x^5. Hence show that if x is sufficiently small for terms in x^6 and higher powers to be neglected then
   $\dfrac{\tan x}{(1 + x)} = x - x^2 + \dfrac{4}{3}x^3 - \dfrac{4}{3}x^4 + \dfrac{22}{15}x^5.$
3. Using Taylor's theorem obtain a series expansion for $\sin (\theta + x)$ where θ, an acute angle, is measured in radians and is such that $\sin \theta = \frac{4}{5}$ (give the first five non-zero terms).
   Hence find $\sin (\theta + 0{\cdot}1 \text{ rad})$ correct to four decimal places.
4. Using Taylor's theorem obtain a series expansion for $\tan \left(\dfrac{\pi}{4} + x\right)$, stating the terms up to and including that in x^3.
   Hence find $\tan 46^\circ$ correct to four decimal places.

21.5 Solution of equations

In some instances it may be almost impossible to use an exact method to solve an equation. In such cases we may be able to use other techniques which give good approximations to the solution.
Two such approaches, graphical and iterative, are explained overleaf.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Iterative methods

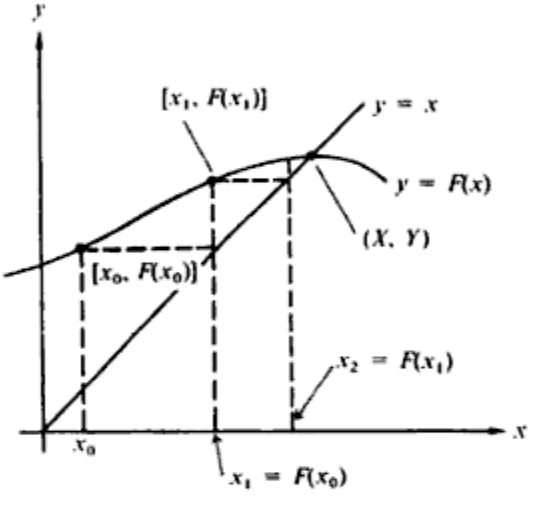
A darts player will frequently use the first of his three darts as a 'marker'. He will then adjust the throwing of the second and third dart dependent upon where the first dart landed on the board. In a similar way a bowls player will use the first wood to gauge the distance of the jack and the speed of the green. Thus we can learn from one trial, or guess, so that our second attempt is an improvement upon the first. We can use similar methods to help us to obtain increasingly accurate approximations to the solutions of equations from an initial educated guess.

If we wish to solve an equation $f(x) = 0$ by an iterative method, we need to find a relationship $x_{r+1} = F(x_r)$ such that x_{r+1} is a better approximation to the solution of the equation than is x_r.

Suppose we can rearrange $f(x) = 0$ into the form $x = F(x)$, e.g. $x^2 - 3x + 1 = 0$ can be written as $x(x - 3) + 1 = 0$ to give $x = \dfrac{1}{3 - x}$, or alternatively $x = 3 - \dfrac{1}{x}$, both of which are rearrangements into the form $x = F(x)$.

Suppose that the graphs of $y = x$ and $y = F(x)$ are as shown, $x = X$ is the solution to $F(x) = x$, and that our initial guess is x_0. From the graph we see that $x_1 = F(x_0)$ gives a better approximation than x_0, $x_2 = F(x_1)$ gives a better approximation than x_1, and so on.

In this way we can obtain a value x_r which is as close to X as is required.



Example 6

Show that the equation $x^2 - 3x + 1 = 0$ has a root between $x = 2$ and $x = 3$. Using the rearrangement $x = 3 - \dfrac{1}{x}$, and an initial value of $x = 3$, use an iterative method to find this root correct to two decimal places.

If $f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 1$ then $f(2) = -1$
and $f(3) = 1$.

The change in sign of $f(x)$ between $x = 2$ and $x = 3$ shows that there is some value of x between 2 and 3 for which $f(x) = 0$, i.e. a solution to the equation $x^2 - 3x + 1 = 0$ lies between $x = 2$ and $x = 3$.

From the rearranged form $x = 3 - \dfrac{1}{x}$, we use the iterative formula $x_{r+1} = 3 - \dfrac{1}{x_r}$, with $x_0 = 3$.

$$x_1 = 3 - \frac{1}{3} = 2{\cdot}6667 \quad \left(\text{i.e. } x_1 = 3 - \frac{1}{x_0}\right)$$

$$x_2 = 3 - \frac{1}{2{\cdot}6667} = 2{\cdot}6250 \quad \left(\text{i.e. } x_2 = 3 - \frac{1}{x_1}\right)$$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

$$x_3 = 3 - \frac{1}{2{\cdot}6250} = 2{\cdot}6190$$
$$x_4 = 3 - \frac{1}{2{\cdot}6190} = 2{\cdot}6182$$
$$x_5 = 3 - \frac{1}{2{\cdot}6182} = 2{\cdot}6181$$

Thus the required root is $x = 2{\cdot}62$, correct to two decimal places.

Note: It should not be assumed that this method will always work. In some cases the values $x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3 \ldots$ diverge. For example $x^3 + 2x - 4 = 0$ has a solution near $x = 1$. Using the rearranged form $x_{r+1} = \frac{1}{2}[4 - (x_r)^3]$, we do not obtain converging values for $x_0, x_1, x_2 \ldots$, but using $x_{r+1} = \sqrt[3]{(4 - 2x_r)}$ we obtain $x = 1{\cdot}18$, correct to two decimal places, as is shown below:

$$x_{r+1} = \sqrt[3]{(4 - 2x_r)}$$

if $x_0 = 1$,

$$\begin{aligned}
x_1 &= \sqrt[3]{2} &&= 1{\cdot}2599\\
x_2 &= \sqrt[3]{[4 - 2(1{\cdot}2599)]} &&= 1{\cdot}1397\\
x_3 &= \sqrt[3]{[4 - 2(1{\cdot}1397)]} &&= 1{\cdot}1983\\
x_4 &= \sqrt[3]{[4 - 2(1{\cdot}1983)]} &&= 1{\cdot}1704\\
x_5 &= \sqrt[3]{[4 - 2(1{\cdot}1704)]} &&= 1{\cdot}1839\\
x_6 &= \sqrt[3]{[4 - 2(1{\cdot}1839)]} &&= 1{\cdot}1774
\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \quad x = 1{\cdot}18$ correct to two decimal places.

$$x_{r+1} = \tfrac{1}{2}[4 - (x_r)^3]$$

if $x_0 = 1$,

$$\begin{aligned}
x_1 &= \tfrac{1}{2}(4 - 1) &&= 1{\cdot}5\\
x_2 &= \tfrac{1}{2}[4 - (1{\cdot}5)^3] &&= 0{\cdot}3125\\
x_3 &= \tfrac{1}{2}[4 - (0{\cdot}3125)^3] &&= 1{\cdot}9847\\
x_4 &= \tfrac{1}{2}[4 - (1{\cdot}9847)^3] &&= -1{\cdot}9089\\
x_5 &= \tfrac{1}{2}[4 - (-1{\cdot}9089)^3] &&= 5{\cdot}4779
\end{aligned}$$

i.e. $x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3 \ldots$ do not converge.

The Newton-Raphson method

Suppose that $x \doteq x_r$ is a good approximation for the solution of $f(x) = 0$ and that the exact solution is $x = X$

$$= x_r + \varepsilon \quad \text{for some small } \varepsilon.$$

By Taylor's theorem

$$f(x_r + \varepsilon) = f(x_r) + \varepsilon f'(x_r) + \ldots$$

thus $\quad f(X) \approx f(x_r) + \varepsilon f'(x_r)$

but $\quad f(X) = 0, \quad$ so $\quad \varepsilon \approx -\dfrac{f(x_r)}{f'(x_r)}$

Thus, if x_r is a good approximation for a root of $f(x) = 0$, then $x_r - \dfrac{f(x_r)}{f'(x_r)}$ is a better approximation. The Newton-Raphson iterative method is based on this statement,

i.e. If x_r is a good approximation for a root of $f(x) = 0$, then $x_{r+1} = x_r - \dfrac{f(x_r)}{f'(x_r)}$ is a better approximation.

Note that this is sometimes simply referred to as Newton's method.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Example 7

Use the Newton-Raphson method to determine the root of the equation $x^3 - x = 2$ lying in the range $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$, giving your answer correct to three decimal places.

If $f(x) = x^3 - x - 2$, then
$$\begin{aligned} f(-2) &= -8 + 2 - 2 = -8 \\ f(-1) &= -1 + 1 - 2 = -2 \\ f(0) &= 0 - 0 - 2 = -2 \\ f(1) &= 1 - 1 - 2 = -2 \\ f(2) &= 8 - 2 - 2 = 4 \end{aligned}$$

The change of sign of $f(x)$ between $f(1)$ and $f(2)$ indicates that $x^3 - x = 2$ has a root between $x = 1$ and $x = 2$.

If $f(x) = x^3 - x - 2$, $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 1$, thus using $x_{r+1} = x_r - \dfrac{f(x_r)}{f'(x_r)}$,

$$x_{r+1} = x_r - \left(\frac{x_r^3 - x_r - 2}{3x_r^2 - 1}\right)$$

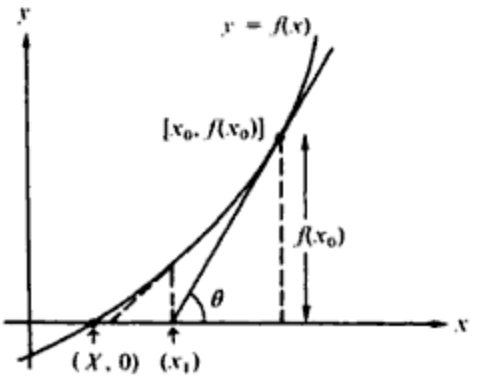
if $x_0 = 1$,
$$x_1 = 1 - \left(\frac{1 - 1 - 2}{3(1)^2 - 1}\right) = 1 + 1 = 2$$
$$x_2 = 2 - \left(\frac{2^3 - 2 - 2}{3(2)^2 - 1}\right) = 2 - \frac{4}{11} = 1{\cdot}63636$$
$$x_3 = 1{\cdot}63636 - \left[\frac{(1{\cdot}63636)^3 - 1{\cdot}63636 - 2}{3(1{\cdot}63636)^2 - 1}\right] = 1{\cdot}63636 - 0{\cdot}10597 = 1{\cdot}53039$$
$$x_4 = 1{\cdot}53039 - \left[\frac{(1{\cdot}53039)^3 - 1{\cdot}53039 - 2}{3(1{\cdot}53039)^2 - 1}\right] = 1{\cdot}53039 - 0{\cdot}00895 = 1{\cdot}52144$$
$$x_5 = 1{\cdot}52144 - \left[\frac{(1{\cdot}52144)^3 - 1{\cdot}52144 - 2}{3(1{\cdot}52144)^2 - 1}\right] = 1{\cdot}52144 - 0{\cdot}00006 = 1{\cdot}52138$$

Thus the required root, correct to three decimal places, is 1·521.

Note When using the Newton-Raphson method, it can be assumed that the error obtained when finding x_{r+1} is less than the correction $\dfrac{f(x_r)}{f'(x_r)}$ used to obtain x_{r+1} from x_r. Thus in Example 7, the error in $x_5 = 1{\cdot}52138$ is less than 0·00006. Therefore an answer of 1·521 is indeed correct to three decimal places.

In order to picture the Newton-Raphson method for solving $f(x) = 0$, consider the graph of $y = f(x)$.

Suppose that the exact solution is $x = X$ and that our initial, close estimate is x_0.
Drawing the tangent at $[x_0, f(x_0)]$, we can see that a better solution will be $x_1 = x_0 - \dfrac{f(x_0)}{\tan\theta}$.
However, $\tan\theta$ is the gradient of the curve at $[x_0, f(x_0)]$, i.e. $\tan\theta = f'(x_0)$. Thus if x_0 is our initial estimate, a better approximation is $x_1 = x_0 - \dfrac{f(x_0)}{f'(x_0)}$.
Continuing this, $x_2 = x_1 - \dfrac{f(x_1)}{f'(x_1)}$, $x_3 = x_2 - \dfrac{f(x_2)}{f'(x_2)}$ etc.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Thus we obtain the general rule $x_{r+1} = x_r - \dfrac{f(x_r)}{f'(x_r)}$ as before.

Again, it is important to realise that this method will not always work as the values $x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3 \ldots$ will not always converge to X. The following diagrams illustrate situations for which the method would fail.

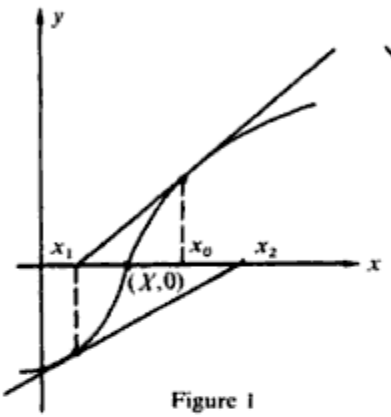


Figure 1

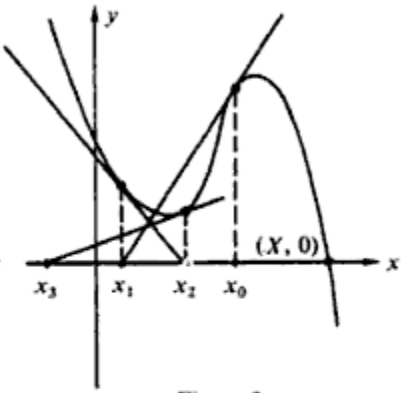


Figure 2

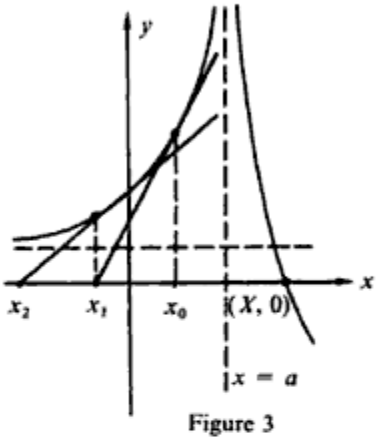


Figure 3

In Fig. 1, the values $x_0, x_1, x_2 \ldots$ diverge.
In Fig. 2, the first value x_0 was not chosen close enough to $(X, 0)$.
In Fig. 3, $y = f(x)$ has a discontinuity at $x = a$ and x_0 needs to be on the same side of $x = a$ as $(X, 0)$.

Note With the use of a calculator and particularly a programmable calculator, it is no longer so tedious to determine the root of an equation by substituting successive values of x into the equation. Again, we use the fact that if $f(a) = 0$ then, as x varies, $f(x)$ will change sign as x passes through the value $x = a$.

Thus to determine the root of $x^3 - x = 2$, lying in the range $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$, (see Example 7) we could proceed as follows:

Let $f(x) = x^3 - x - 2$

x	$f(x)$
-2	$-$ve
-1	$-$ve
0	$-$ve
1	$-$ve
2	$+$ve

x	$f(x)$
1·1	$-$ve
1·2	$-$ve
1·3	$-$ve
1·4	$-$ve
1·5	$-$ve
1·6	$+$ve
1·7	
1·8	
1·9	

x	$f(x)$
1·51	$-$ve
1·52	$-$ve
1·53	$+$ve
1·54	
1·55	
1·56	
1·57	
1·58	
1·59	

x	$f(x)$
1·521	$-$ve
1·522	$+$ve
1·523	
1·524	
1·525	
1·526	
1·527	
1·528	
1·529	

x	$f(x)$
1·5211	$-$ve
1·5215	$+$ve
1·5219	

Thus the solution correct to three decimal places is 1·521.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Exercise 21C

1. Copy and complete the following table for $y = e^x$.

x	-3	$-2{\cdot}5$	-2	$-1{\cdot}5$	-1	$-0{\cdot}5$	0	0·5	1	1·5	2
y (correct to 2 d.p's)	0·05	0·08	0·14								

On the same pair of axes draw the lines $y = e^x$ and $y = x + 2$ for $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$ and hence find approximate values for all the solutions to the equation $e^x - x = 2$ lying in the range $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$.

2. The equation $x^2 + 4x = 2$ has two roots, one near $x = 0$ and the other near $x = -4$.

(a) Using $x_{r+1} = \dfrac{2}{x_r + 4}$ with $x_0 = 0$ find the root near $x = 0$, correct to 2 decimal places.

(b) Why could we not use the formula $x_{r+1} = \dfrac{2}{x_r + 4}$ with $x_0 = -4$?

(c) Using $x_{r+1} = \dfrac{2}{x_r} - 4$ with $x_0 = -4$ find the root near $x = -4$ correct to 2 decimal places.

(d) Check your answers to (a) and (c) using the quadratic formula.

3. Show that the equation $x^3 - x + 3 = 0$ has a root in the range $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$. Use the rearranged form $x = \sqrt[3]{(x - 3)}$ to obtain this root correct to two decimal places.

For questions **4** to **11**, use the Newton-Raphson iterative method to obtain a root for each equation using the given initial value, x_0, and giving your answer correct to the required degree of accuracy.

4. $x^2 = 5$; $x_0 = 2$, to 3 d.p.

5. $x^2 - 2x - 5 = 0$; $x_0 = 4$, to 4 d.p.

6. $x^3 - 5x - 2 = 0$; $x_0 = 2$, to 3 d.p.

7. $x^3 - 3x + 3 = 0$; $x_0 = -2$, to 3 d.p.

8. $\ln x = 2 - x$; $x_0 = 2$, to 3 d.p.

9. $x \ln x = 1$; $x_0 = 2$, to 4 d.p.

10. $e^x = 3 - x$; $x_0 = 1$, to 5 d.p.

11. $\sin x = x - \frac{1}{2}$, (x is in rads); $x_0 = 1$, to 4 d.p.

21.6 e^z, cos z and sin z for complex z.

Having obtained the series expansions for $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ in section 21.4, i.e. $\sin x = x - \dfrac{x^3}{3!} + \dfrac{x^5}{5!} \ldots$ and $\cos x = 1 - \dfrac{x^2}{2!} + \dfrac{x^4}{4!} \ldots$, we will now conclude by mentioning how these ideas can be used to assign a meaning to the exponential, sine and cosine functions of a complex number z.

If we are to assign some meaning to the idea of a complex index, it would be useful if our definition is compatible with the existing laws of indices i.e. $e^a \times e^b = e^{a+b}$, $e^a \div e^b = e^{a-b}$, and $(e^a)^b = e^{ab}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Now we know from earlier work that $e^x = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} \dots$

If we define e^z, where z is a complex number, by a similar series

i.e. $$e^z = 1 + \frac{z}{1!} + \frac{z^2}{2!} + \frac{z^3}{3!} + \frac{z^4}{4!} + \frac{z^5}{5!} \dots$$

it will follow that $$e^{i\theta} = 1 + i\theta - \frac{\theta^2}{2!} - \frac{i\theta^3}{3!} + \frac{\theta^4}{4!} + \frac{i\theta^5}{5!} \dots$$

$$= \left(1 - \frac{\theta^2}{2!} + \frac{\theta^4}{4!} \dots\right) + i\left(\theta - \frac{\theta^3}{3!} + \frac{\theta^5}{5!} \dots\right)$$

$$= \cos\theta + i\sin\theta$$

Thus $$e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta \qquad \dots[1]$$

Similarly $$e^{-i\theta} = \cos\theta - i\sin\theta \qquad \dots[2]$$

However, as was mentioned earlier, we require that this definition of $e^{i\theta}$ is compatible with the existing laws of indices. The following example and question 1 of Exercise 21D show this to be the case.

Example 8

Using the definition $e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta$ prove that $e^{i\alpha}e^{i\beta} = e^{i(\alpha+\beta)}$

$$\begin{aligned} e^{i\alpha} \times e^{i\beta} &= (\cos\alpha + i\sin\alpha)(\cos\beta + i\sin\beta) \\ &= (\cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta) + i(\sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta) \\ &= \cos(\alpha+\beta) + i\sin(\alpha+\beta) \\ &= e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} \quad \text{as required.} \end{aligned}$$

Let us consider equations [1] and [2]: $$e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta$$ $$e^{-i\theta} = \cos\theta - i\sin\theta$$

Adding these two equations gives $e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta} = 2\cos\theta$ i.e. $\cos\theta = \frac{e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}}{2}$

and subtracting gives $e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta} = 2i\sin\theta$ i.e. $\sin\theta = \frac{e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}}{2i}$

Thus we can now attribute a meaning to the functions $\sin z$ and $\cos z$ for complex values of z:

$$\cos z = \frac{e^{iz} + e^{-iz}}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin z = \frac{e^{iz} - e^{-iz}}{2i}$$

Example 9 below and Exercise 21D question 2 show that, with these definitions, the existing trigonometric identities for $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ also hold for $\sin z$ and $\cos z$.

Example 9

Using the definitions $\cos z = \frac{e^{iz} + e^{-iz}}{2}$ and $\sin z = \frac{e^{iz} - e^{-iz}}{2i}$, prove that $\cos^2 z + \sin^2 z = 1$

$$\cos^2 z = \left(\frac{e^{iz} + e^{-iz}}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{e^{2iz} + 2e^{iz}e^{-iz} + e^{-2iz}}{4} = \frac{1}{4}e^{2iz} + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4}e^{-2iz}$$

$$\sin^2 z = \left(\frac{e^{iz} - e^{-iz}}{2i}\right)^2 = \frac{e^{2iz} - 2e^{iz}e^{-iz} + e^{-2iz}}{-4} = -\frac{1}{4}e^{2iz} + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{4}e^{-2iz}$$

$\therefore \quad \cos^2 z + \sin^2 z = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1$ as required.

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Answers

page 4 ***Exercise A***

1. (a) F (b) F (c) T (d) T (e) F (f) T (g) T (h) F (i) T (j) F (k) T (l) F
(m) T (n) F (o) T (p) F

2. (a) $\{-1, 0, 1, 2, 3\}$ (b) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$ (c) $\{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1\}$
(d) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$ (e) $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ (f) $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$

3. For (a) (b) and (c) there are other possible inequality statements.
(a) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}: -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\}$ (b) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}: -5 \leqslant x \leqslant -1\}$ (c) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}: x \leqslant 1\}$
(d) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \geqslant -1\}$ (e) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x > -1\}$ (f) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \leqslant 1\}$
(g) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x < -2\}$ (h) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -1 \leqslant x \leqslant 3\}$ (i) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -4 < x < 2\}$
(j) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -1 \leqslant x < 2\}$

4. (a) $x \leqslant 3$ (b) $x < 2$ (c) $x \geqslant 4$
(d) $x > -2$ (e) $x < -1$ (f) $x \geqslant 1\frac{1}{2}$
(g) $x \leqslant 2$ (h) $x < 5$ (i) $-1 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$
(j) $-3 \leqslant x \leqslant 1$ (k) $-3 < x < 2$ (l) $-2 < x < 3$
(m) $-5 < x \leqslant -2$ (n) $1 \leqslant x < 6$

5. (a) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 7\}$ (b) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -2 \leqslant x \leqslant 3\}$ (c) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x < -1 \text{ or } x > 6\}$
(d) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -3\frac{1}{2} < x < 4\}$ (e) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \leqslant -\frac{1}{3} \text{ or } x \geqslant 1\}$ (f) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x < -1\frac{1}{3} \text{ or } x > 2\}$

page 7 ***Exercise B***

1. (a) $11x + 6y$ (b) $3x - 8$ (c) $2p^2 + 8p - 3$ (d) $4x^2y + 2xy^2$
(e) $8a^2 - 2ab$

2. (a) $3x^2 - 12x$ (b) $x + 24$ (c) $13x + 3$ (d) $5xy - 6x - 4y$
(e) $x^2 - 2x - 15$ (f) $2x^2 - 5x - 12$ (g) $4x^2 - 12x + 9$ (h) $27x^3 - 27x^2 + 9x - 1$
(i) $5x^3 - 17x^2 - 32x - 18$

3. (a) $8x(2x + 3y)$ (b) $5x(3x + 2y + 4)$ (c) $(x + 5)(x - 2)$ (d) $(x + 7)(x - 2)$
(e) $(2x + 3)(x - 5)$ (f) $(3x - 2)(2x + 1)$ (g) $(2x + 5)(2x - 3)$ (h) $(x + 3)(x - 3)$
(i) $(4x + 7y)(4x - 7y)$ (j) $2x(x + 3)(x - 3)$ (k) $(a + 3)(x + 2)$ (l) $(a - 2b)(x + y)$

4. (a) $x^2 + 3x + 2$ (b) $x^2 + 6x + 7$ (c) $x^2 + 2x - 1$ (d) $3x^2 + 7x - 3$

5. (a) $13x - 13$ (b) $x - 3$ (c) $8x^2 + 11x + 10$ (d) -20

6. (a) $\frac{11}{12}x$ (b) $\frac{8x - 5}{15}$ (c) $\frac{x + 10}{6}$ (d) $\frac{x + 7}{3(x + 1)}$
(e) $\frac{17 - 2x}{4(2x + 3)}$ (f) $\frac{-3x - 5}{(x + 2)^2}$ (g) $\frac{x + 12}{x(x + 4)}$ (h) $\frac{x^2 + 9x + 26}{2(x + 4)^2}$
(i) $\frac{x^2 + 3x + 20}{2(x + 4)^2}$ (j) $\frac{14}{3}$ (k) $\frac{2}{5(x - 4)}$ (l) $\frac{5}{6x}$
(m) $\frac{2(2x - 3)}{x(x - 4)}$ (n) $\frac{3x - 5}{x(x - 1)}$ (o) $\frac{(4 - x)(x + 12)}{x^2}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

7. (a) $1 + \dfrac{2x - 3}{x^2 + 4x + 1}$ (b) $2 + \dfrac{3}{x^2 + 1}$ (c) $5 - \dfrac{3x + 1}{x^2 + x - 2}$
(d) $x - 3 + \dfrac{2}{x^2 - 2x + 3}$

8. (a) $1 + \dfrac{3x - 1}{x^2 + 4}$ (b) $1 - \dfrac{3}{x + 5}$ (c) $2 - \dfrac{5}{x^2 - 2x + 8}$
(d) $2 - \dfrac{5}{2x + 3}$ (e) $x + 1 + \dfrac{2}{x^2 + 3}$ (f) $x - 3 + \dfrac{2}{x + 1}$
(g) $x + 1 - \dfrac{3x}{x^2 + 2x - 4}$ (h) $x^2 + x - 2 + \dfrac{3x}{x^2 + 7}$

page 10 *Exercise C*

1. (a) $2\sqrt{3}$ (b) $7\sqrt{3}$ (c) $11\sqrt{2}$ (d) $8\sqrt{3}$ (e) $\sqrt{5}$ (f) 1 (g) 13 (h) -6

2. (a) $\sqrt{12}$ (b) $\sqrt{12}$ (c) $\sqrt{20}$ (d) $\sqrt{18}$ (e) $2\sqrt{5}$ (f) 36 (g) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ (h) $\sqrt{12}$
(i) $\dfrac{5}{\sqrt{2}}$

3. (a) $5 + 2\sqrt{6}$ (b) $23 + 4\sqrt{15}$ (c) $7 - 2\sqrt{6}$

4. (a) $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$ (b) $3\sqrt{3}$ (c) $\dfrac{8\sqrt{2}}{3}$ (d) $\dfrac{3 + \sqrt{2}}{7}$ (e) $\dfrac{5(3 + \sqrt{5})}{4}$
(f) $4 + \sqrt{15}$ (g) $-7 - 4\sqrt{3}$ (h) $\dfrac{11 + 4\sqrt{6}}{5}$ (i) $\dfrac{2 - 3\sqrt{2}}{7}$

page 12 *Exercise D*

1. (a) $-3, 4$ (b) $-8, 3$ (c) $4, 9$ (d) $-1\frac{1}{2}, 2$ (e) $-\frac{1}{2}, 4$ (f) $-3, 1\frac{1}{3}$ (g) $-6, 1$
(h) $\frac{1}{2}, 1\frac{1}{2}$ (i) $-2, 5$ (j) $-6, 4$ (k) $\frac{1}{3}, 3$ (l) $-1\frac{1}{2}, 8$

2. (a) 0·38, 2·62 (b) $-1·56$, 2·56 (c) $-6·19$, $-0·81$
(d) $-1·78$, 0·28 (e) 0·42, 1·58 (f) $-0·43$, 1·18

3. (a) $\frac{1}{2}(3 \pm \sqrt{5})$ (b) $\frac{1}{2}(3 \pm \sqrt{7})$ (c) $\frac{1}{3}(3 \pm \sqrt{6})$

4. (a) $-3 \pm \sqrt{10}$ (b) $-2 \pm \sqrt{7}$ (c) $\frac{1}{2}(-1 \pm \sqrt{5})$ (d) $\frac{1}{2}(1 \pm \sqrt{13})$
(e) $\frac{1}{2}(3 \pm \sqrt{29})$ (f) $\frac{1}{2}(3 \pm \sqrt{7})$ (g) $\frac{1}{3}(2 \pm \sqrt{10})$ (h) $\frac{1}{4}(3 \pm \sqrt{5})$
(i) $\frac{1}{3}(3 \pm 2\sqrt{3})$

5. (a) MIN (b) -7 (c) -2 **6.** (a) MIN (b) -8 (c) 3
7. (a) MAX (b) 4 (c) -1 **8.** (a) MIN (b) $-5\frac{1}{2}$ (c) $2\frac{1}{2}$
9. (a) MAX (b) 6 (c) 1 **10.** (a) MAX (b) 22 (c) 4
11. (a) MIN (b) $-\frac{1}{8}$ (c) $-\frac{3}{4}$ **12.** (a) MIN (b) $1\frac{2}{3}$ (c) $-\frac{1}{3}$
13. (a) MAX (b) $4\frac{1}{8}$ (c) $-1\frac{1}{4}$

page 16 *Exercise E*

1. (a) $\sin 50°$ (b) $-\cos 50°$ (c) $-\tan 50°$ (d) $\sin 40°$
(e) $-\cos 10°$ (f) $-\cos 20°$ (g) $-\tan 80°$ (h) $\sin 85°$

2. (a) $\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (c) 1 (d) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ (e) $\sqrt{3}$ (f) 1 (g) 0 (h) $\frac{1}{2}$
(i) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ (j) $-\frac{1}{2}$ (k) 0 (l) -1 (m) -1 (n) $-\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (o) $-\sqrt{3}$ (p) $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

4. (a) 0·342 (b) 0·342 (c) $-0·342$
5. (a) 0·766 (b) 0·643 (c) 0·643 (d) 0·766 (e) $-0·766$ (f) $-0·643$
6. 4·9 **7.** 3·18 **8.** (a) $\frac{4}{5}$ (b) $\frac{3}{4}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 57 *Exercise 2B*

1. $\overrightarrow{OA} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, $\overrightarrow{OB} = 3\mathbf{i}$, $\overrightarrow{OC} = -\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, $\overrightarrow{OD} = -3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, $\overrightarrow{OE} = -2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$, $\overrightarrow{OF} = -2\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$, $\overrightarrow{OG} = -2\mathbf{j}$, $\overrightarrow{OH} = 3\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$
2. (a) (i) $4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ (ii) 5 units (iii) 36·8° (b) (i) $-4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ (ii) 4·12 units (iii) 14° (c) (i) $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ (ii) 3·61 units (iii) 56·3°
3. 4 **4.** $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$ **5.** $\frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}(3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$ **6.** $15\mathbf{i} + 36\mathbf{j}$ **7.** $6\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$
8. $\frac{2}{3}(4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j})$ **9.** (a) $5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ (b) $-5\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ **10.** (a) $-2\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}$ (b) $2\mathbf{i} - 8\mathbf{j}$
11. $2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ **12.** $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$
13. $\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$, $\frac{3}{11}\mathbf{a} + \frac{22}{11}\mathbf{b}$ **14.** (a) $\sqrt{10}$ (b) $\sqrt{5}$ (c) $5\mathbf{i}$ (d) 5
15. (a) $\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) 5 (c) $\begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$ (d) $\sqrt{58}$ **16.** $6\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ **17.** $\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$
18. (a) $1\frac{8}{9}\mathbf{i} + 2\frac{4}{9}\mathbf{j}$ (b) $-5\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$ **21.** C, E and F

page 62 *Exercise 2C*

1. **b** and **d** **2.** **g** and **h** **3.** 14° **4.** 68° **5.** 143° **6.** -4 or 1
7. (a) $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ (b) $2x + y = 0$ (c) $x = 2y$ (d) $4x + y = 9$ **10.** 1
11. $x = 5, y = 2$; $x = -5, y = 12$ **12.** (a) $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{5} \\ -\frac{4}{5} \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\pm\begin{pmatrix} \frac{4}{5} \\ \frac{3}{5} \end{pmatrix}$ **13.** (a) $\begin{pmatrix} 7\sqrt{2} \\ -\sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\pm\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 21 \end{pmatrix}$
14. (a) $-3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ (b) $-6\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ (c) $9\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ (d) 35°, 117°, 28° **17.** (b) 23 **18.** 131°
19. 4 **20.** $\frac{13}{3}\sqrt{13}$ **21.** $\frac{8}{5}\sqrt{5}$ **22.** (b) $k\sqrt{7}$, $2k\sqrt{21}$

page 64 *Exercise 2D*

1. (a) $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}$ (b) $\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c})$ (c) $\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{a})$ (d) $\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c})$
3. (a) $\frac{1}{3}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})$ (b) $\frac{1}{3}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})$ (c) $\frac{1}{3}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})$

page 67 *Exercise 2E*

1. $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j})$ **2.** $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$ **3.** $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$
4. $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ **5.** $5\mathbf{i} + 10\mathbf{j}$ **6.** $\pm(4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$ **8.** B and C
9. D and F **10.** 4 **11.** (a) $\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ (b) $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$
12. (a) not parallel, $4\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$ (b) parallel (c) parallel (d) not parallel, $9\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$
13. $\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ **14.** 77° **15.** $7\mathbf{a} - 12\mathbf{b}$ **16.** $6\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$, $6\sqrt{2}$ units
17. (a) $\sqrt{5}$ units (b) 2 units (c) $\sqrt{10}$ units

page 68 *Exercise 2F*

1. (a) (i) $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ (ii) $-\mathbf{a}$ (iii) $\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}$ (iv) $\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b})$ (v) $-\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})$ (b) (i) $4\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$, $\sqrt{41}$ (ii) $2\sqrt{58}$
2. 1 : 2, $6\mathbf{q} - 4\mathbf{p}$, $5\mathbf{p} - 3\mathbf{q}$
3. $\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}$, $\frac{1}{10}(5\mathbf{b} - 3\mathbf{a})$ (i) $\frac{n}{10}(5\mathbf{b} - 3\mathbf{a})$ (ii) $-\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + (\frac{1}{2} + k)\mathbf{b}$, $\frac{5}{3}$, $\frac{1}{3}$
4. (a) $\frac{1}{2}(3\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a})$ (b) $\frac{1}{4}(3\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})$ (d) 1 : 1

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 92 ***Exercise 3H***

1. 1·8, 32 (a) 176°F (b) 104°F (c) −40°F **2.** 0·4, 10; £62 **3.** 1·5 ohm
4. 0·37, 100 (a) 100 cm³ (b) 111 cm³ **5.** 20, 0·4; 110N **6.** 2·4, 3·6
8. 2, 5; 10 **9.** 36, 7; 11 **10.** 1, 1; 2550

page 96 ***Exercise 3I***

1. (a) (4, −1) (b) (2, 1) (c) (2, 3) (d) (3, 5) (e) (1, 1), (−4, 16) (f) (2, 14), (−6, 6)
(g) (1, 1), (5, 9) (h) ($\frac{1}{2}$, $1\frac{1}{4}$), (2, 5) (i) (0, −1), (4, 19) (j) ($\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{6}$), (−2, 11)
(k) (1, 2), (−4, −3) (l) (−2, −5), (4, 1) **2.** (a) (4, 3) **4.** 3 **5.** Parallel lines, grad. 2
6. (a) No (b) Yes (c) Yes **7.** (1, 6) **8.** (−1, 4), (5, 10), $6\sqrt{2}$
9. (a) $3y + x = 21$ (b) (3, 6) (c) $2\sqrt{10}$ **10.** (a) $3y + 4x = 28$ (b) 5 units
11. $y = 3x$ **12.** (0, −1), (6, 5), (9, 2) **13.** −1, −4, (−1, 0)
14. (a) $x + y = 8$ (b) (4, 4) (c) $3\sqrt{2}$

page 97 ***Exercise 3J***

1. (i) $y = 3x - 6$ (ii) (2, 0) **2.** 9 **3.** $\frac{2}{3}$, $5\frac{1}{2}$ units, $7\frac{1}{3}$ units, $20\frac{1}{6}$ sq. units
4. (i) (6, −3) (ii) $4y + 5x = 18$ **5.** (−3, 5), $3y = 2x + 8$ **6.** 28°
7. (i) $8y = x + 15$, $2y + x + 5 = 0$ (ii) (−7, 1) (iv) 30 sq. units (v) $\frac{8}{13}\sqrt{65}$
8. $2\sqrt{5}$, $4\sqrt{5}$ **9.** $y^2 - 3x^2 + 6x - 6y + 18 = 0$ **10.** (−4, −7), (7, 4) **11.** (6, 2)
12. 140, 0·35 **13.** (i) $\frac{1}{4}$, 9 (ii) 2·7

page 104 ***Exercise 4A***

1. (a) 1st (b) 3rd (c) 4th (d) 2nd (e) 3rd
2. (a) sin 20° (b) −sin 40° (c) cos 50° (d) tan 20° (e) −sin 10° (f) −tan 10°
(g) −cos 40° (h) −sin 40° (i) cos 50° (j) tan 50° (k) −sin 10° (l) −cos 20°
(m) −sin 50° (n) sin 40° (o) −cos 80° (p) tan 20°
3. (a) $\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (c) $\frac{1}{2}$ (d) $-\frac{1}{2}$ (e) $-\sqrt{3}$ (f) 1 (g) −1 (h) 0 (i) $-\frac{1}{2}$
(j) 1 (k) $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (l) $-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$
4. (a) (i) 1, 90° (ii) −1, 270° (b) (i) 2, 90° (ii) −2, 270° (c) (i) 3, 0° (ii) −3, 180°
(d) (i) 3, 90° (ii) 1, 270° (e) (i) 4, 180° (ii) 2, 0° (f) (i) 5, 90° (ii) 1, 270°
(g) (i) 1, 45° (ii) −1, 135° (h) (i) 0, 0° (ii) −2, 90°

5. (a)

x	0	30°	45°	60°	90°	120°	135°	150°	180°	210°	225°	240°	270°	300°	315°	330°	360°
y	1	0·87	0·71	0·5	0	−0·5	−0·71	−0·87	−1	−0·87	−0·71	−0·5	0	0·5	0·71	0·87	1

6. (a)

x	0	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°	80°	90°	100°	110°	120°
y	0	0·5	0·87	1	0·87	0·5	0	−0·5	−0·87	−1	−0·87	−0·5	0

(c) (i) 12°, 48° (ii) 72°, 108° (iii) 15°, 45°

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

7. (a)

x	0	15°	30°	45°	60°	75°	90°	105°	120°	135°	150°	165°	180°
y	2	1·87	1·5	1	0·5	0·13	0	0·13	0·5	1	1·5	1·87	2

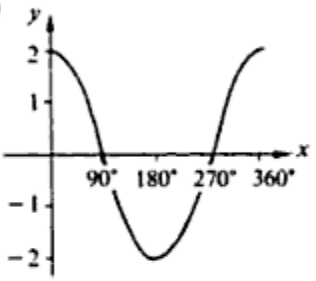
(c) (i) 36°, 144° (ii) 51°, 129° (iii) 67°, 113°

8. (b) 27°, 207° **9.** (b) (i) 104°, 256° (ii) 76°, 284° (iii) 37°, 270°
10. (b) (i) 37°, 143° (ii) 17°, 163° (iii) 24°, 246°

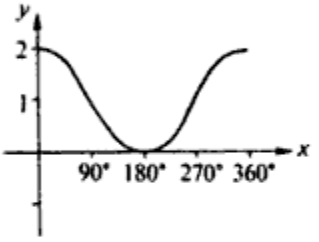
page 108 ***Exercise 4B***

1. (a) (v) (b) (i) (c) (iii) (d) (ii) (e) (vi) (f) (iv)
2. (a) (ii) (b) (iii) (c) (i)

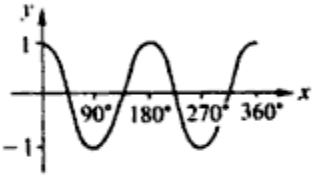
3. (a)



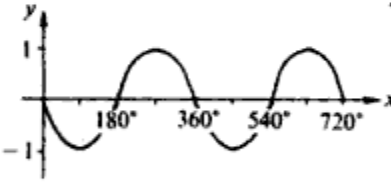
(b)



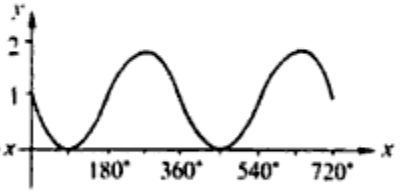
(c)



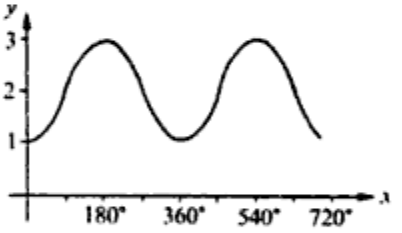
4. (a)



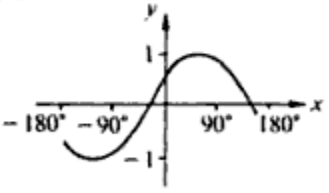
(b)



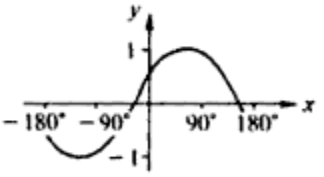
(c)



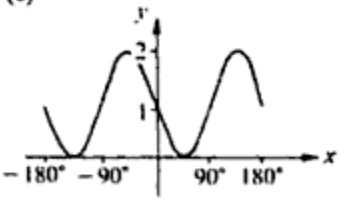
5. (a)



(b)



(c)



6. 2 **7.** 2 **8.** 1

page 114 ***Exercise 4C***

1. (a) 30°, 150° (b) 120°, 240° (c) 45°, 225° (d) 135°, 315° (e) 240°, 300° (f) 45°, 315°
2. (a) −30°, −150° (b) ±60° (c) 60°, 120° (d) −120°, 60° (e) ±135° (f) ±150°

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. 17·5°, 162·5° **4.** 134·4°, 225·6° **5.** 143·1°, 323·1° **6.** 60°, 120°, 240°, 300°
7. 63·4°, 243·4° **8.** 56·3°, 236·3° **9.** 120°, 150°, 300°, 330° **10.** 30°, 150°, 210°, 330°
11. 220°, 280° **12.** 75°, 255° **13.** 48·2°, 311·8° **14.** 0, 60°, 180°, 300°, 360°
15. 90°, 153·4°, 270°, 333·4° **16.** 0, 120°, 180°, 240°, 360° **17.** 48·6°, 90°, 131·4°, 270°
18. 90°, 104·5°, 255·5°, 270° **19.** 0, 75·5°, 180°, 284·5°, 360° **20.** 30°, 150°, 270°
21. 90°, 210°, 330° **22.** 63·4°, 123·7°, 243·4°, 303·7° **23.** 45°, 153·4°, 225°, 333·4°
24. ±30°, ±150° **25.** −148·3°, −58·3°, 31·7°, 121·7° **26.** −115°, 155°
27. ±90° **28.** 0, 33·7°, −146·3°, ±180° **29.** ±60°
30. (a) $(2\sin\theta + 1)(3\cos\theta + 2)$ (b) −30°, ±131·8°, −150°
31. (a) $(\cos\theta - 1)(3\sin\theta + 2)$ (b) 0, 221·8°, 318·2°, 360°

page 117 *Exercise 4D*

1. (a) $\sqrt{2}$ (b) 1 (c) 2 (d) 2 (e) $\sqrt{2}$ (f) −2 (g) −2 (h) −2 (i) 1
(j) 2 (k) −2 (l) $-\sqrt{2}$
2. (a) $\cos A$ (b) $\sec\theta$ (c) 1 (d) $\cos\theta$
5. (a) $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ (b) $xy = 3$ (c) $100x^2 + y^2 = 4$ (d) $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 8 = 0$
(e) $x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 2y + 4 = 0$
6. (a) 0, 14·5°, 165·5°, ±180° (b) ±180° (c) 0, ±48·2° (d) 19·5°, 160·5° (e) ±45°, ±135°
(f) −63·4°, 0, 116·6°, ±180°
7. (a) 60°, 300° (b) 55·9°, 145·9°, 235·9°, 325·9°
(c) 60°, 120°, 240°, 300° (d) 120°, 240° (e) 26·6°, 135°, 206·6°, 315°
(f) 68·2°, 135°, 248·2°, 315° (g) 194·5°, 345·5°
(h) 26·6°, 45°, 206·6°, 225° (i) 70·5°, 289·5°

page 120 *Exercise 4E*

1. (a) 1 (b) $\frac{1}{2}$ **2.** (a) $\sin 3A$ (b) $\sin\theta$ (c) $\cos 5\theta$ (d) 1 (e) 2
3. (a) $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} + 1)$ (b) $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$ (c) $-2 - \sqrt{3}$
4. (a) (i) 1, 70° (ii) −1, 250° (b) (i) 1, 110° (ii) −1, 290° (c) (i) 1, 320° (ii) −1, 140°
5. (a) $\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\frac{3}{2}$ (c) $\frac{4}{7}$ **6.** (a) $\frac{33}{65}$ (b) $\frac{33}{56}$ **7.** (a) $-\frac{20}{65}$ (b) $\frac{63}{65}$
8. (a) 200°, 320° (b) 26·4°, 253·6° (c) 45°, 225°

page 122 *Exercise 4F*

1. (a) 2 sin A (b) sin 2A (c) 1 **2.** $-\frac{1}{6}$ **3.** (a) $\frac{4}{5}$ (b) $\frac{3}{5}$ (c) $\frac{24}{25}$ (d) $-\frac{7}{25}$
4. (a) $\frac{4}{5}, \frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{3}$ (b) $-\frac{4}{5}, \frac{3}{5}, -\frac{4}{3}$
5. (a) $x + 2y^2 = 0$ (b) $x = 2y^2 + 4y + 1$ (c) $2x^2 - 8x + y + 4 = 0$
6. (a) $\frac{1}{5}$ (b) $\frac{24}{25}$ (c) $\frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}$ **7.** (a) $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{4}$ (b) $\frac{\sqrt{11}}{4}$
8. (a) $3\sin\theta - 4\sin^3\theta$ (b) $\frac{11}{16}$ **9.** (a) $4\cos^3\theta - 3\cos\theta$ (b) $-\frac{2\sqrt{5}}{25}$
13. (a) 0, ±120°, ±180° (b) −135°, 45°, ±90° (c) ±70·5°, ±120° (d) 0, ±45°, ±135°, ±180°
14. (a) 22·5°, 112·5°, 202·5°, 292·5° (b) 9·6°, 90°, 170·4°, 270° (c) 30°, 90°, 150°
(d) 14·5°, 165·5°
17. (a) 2, 1, 1 (b) −1, 2, −2 (c) −3, 1, 2

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 125 *Exercise 4G*

1. (a) $180°$ (b) $30°$ (c) $270°$ (d) $120°$ (e) $330°$

2. (a) 2π (b) $\frac{\pi}{3}$ (c) $\frac{\pi}{4}$ (d) $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ (e) $\frac{\pi}{2}$

3. (a) 1 (b) 0 (c) 1 (d) -1 (e) -1
(f) $\frac{1}{2}$ (g) $\frac{1}{2}$ (h) $-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (i) -1 (j) $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

4. (a) 1·22 (b) 4·36 **5.** (a) $172°$ (b) $143°$

6. (a) 0·84 (b) $-0{\cdot}14$ (c) $-0{\cdot}74$

7. (a) (i) 5 cm (ii) 12·5 cm² (b) (i) 2 cm (ii) 4 cm² (c) (i) 12 m (ii) 24 m²

8. (a) $\frac{\pi}{3}$ (b) $\frac{5\pi}{3}$ (c) π cm (d) 5π cm

9. 1 rad **10.** 8 cm² **11.** 1·5 rad **12.** 12 cm

13. (a) $\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}$ (b) $\frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{4\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3}$ (c) $\frac{3\pi}{8}, \frac{7\pi}{8}, \frac{11\pi}{8}, \frac{15\pi}{8}$
(d) $0, \pi, \frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{11\pi}{6}, 2\pi$ (e) $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (f) $0, \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3}, 2\pi$

14. 6 cm² **15.** (a) 9 cm² (b) 0·42 cm² **16.** (a) 1·70 rad (b) 13·6 cm²

18. (a) $2\frac{1}{4}$ m² (b) 0·47 m² **19.** (a) 1·55 (b) 1·19 (c) 7·66 cm² **20.** (c) (i) 1·7 (ii) 1·25

21. (c) 2·5 (d) 2·475

page 128 *Exercise 4H*

2. (a) $-146{\cdot}3$, 33·7 (b) $30°$, $150°$ **3.** $48{\cdot}6°$, $131{\cdot}4°$, $210°$, $330°$

4. (a) (i) $-\frac{24}{7}$ (ii) $-\frac{33}{65}$ (iii) $\frac{33}{65}$ **5.** (a) $-\frac{1}{3}$ (b) $-\frac{4}{9}\sqrt{2}$ (c) $-\frac{7}{9}$ (d) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

6. (i) $45°, 135°, 210°, 225°, 315°, 330°$ (ii) $100{\cdot}9°, 280{\cdot}9°$

7. (i) $56{\cdot}3°, 135°, 236{\cdot}3°, 315°$ (ii) $26{\cdot}6°, 63{\cdot}4°, 206{\cdot}6°, 243{\cdot}4°$

8. (a) $x = 4y^2(1 - y^2)$ (b) $26{\cdot}6°, 135°$

9. (a) $\frac{1}{15}(8 + 3\sqrt{5}), \frac{2}{15}(2\sqrt{5} - 3)$, acute (b) $\pm 35{\cdot}3°, \pm 144{\cdot}7°$

11. 1, 4, 3 **12.** (i) $123°, 303°$ (ii) $32{\cdot}1°, 147{\cdot}9°$ (iii) $\frac{1 + \tan\theta}{1 - \tan\theta}$, $45°, 225°$

14. 4 **15.** (a) $\frac{2}{3}\pi, \frac{4}{3}\pi$ (b) $\frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{4}{3}\pi$ (c) $\frac{3}{4}\pi, \frac{7}{4}\pi$

16. (i) 21·4 cm (ii) 13·6 cm² **17.** (a) $\pm\frac{1}{3}\pi, \pm 2{\cdot}3$ rads (b) 1·97 rads

page 132 *Exercise 5A*

1. 27	**2.** 128	**3.** 25	**4.** 49	**5.** 1	**6.** 1	**7.** 2	**8.** 4
9. 12	**10.** 3	**11.** 2	**12.** 64	**13.** $\frac{1}{25}$	**14.** $\frac{1}{7}$	**15.** $\frac{1}{100}$	**16.** $\frac{1}{2}$
17. $\frac{1}{8}$	**18.** $\frac{1}{2}$	**19.** 9	**20.** $\frac{1}{16}$	**21.** $\frac{1}{81}$	**22.** $\frac{1}{64}$	**23.** 4	**24.** $\frac{1}{4}$
25. $\frac{1}{16}$	**26.** $\frac{4}{9}$	**27.** 1	**28.** $1\frac{9}{16}$	**29.** $6\frac{1}{4}$	**30.** $\frac{1}{4}$	**31.** $1\frac{1}{3}$	**32.** $\frac{2}{3}$
33. $15\frac{5}{8}$	**34.** $\frac{8}{27}$	**35.** $\frac{4}{9}$	**36.** 2^6	**37.** 2^4	**38.** 2^6	**39.** 2^{11}	**40.** 2^2
41. 2^3	**42.** 2^7	**43.** 2^6	**44.** x^7	**45.** x^6	**46.** $18x^6$	**47.** $24x^3y$	**48.** $3x^2$
49. $5x^3$	**50.** x^2	**51.** $30x^4y^3$	**52.** $12x^4y^3$	**53.** a^{-1}	**54.** $a^{-1/2}$	**55.** a^{-1}	**56.** a^5
57. $a^{1/2}$	**58.** $a^{-1/2}$	**59.** a^6	**60.** $a^{3/2}$	**61.** $a^{7/2}$	**62.** $a^{5/2}$	**63.** 6	**64.** 0
65. -1	**66.** -2	**67.** -2	**68.** 11	**69.** 3	**70.** 8	**71.** 4	**72.** 3
73. -2	**74.** 6	**75.** 6	**76.** 9				

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 135 **Exercise 5B**

1. (a) $y = kx$ (b) $y = kx^3$ (c) $y = k\sqrt[3]{x}$ (d) $y = \frac{k}{x}$ (e) $y = \frac{k}{\sqrt{x}}$ (f) $y = kxz^2$
(g) $y = \frac{kx^2}{z}$ (h) $y = \frac{kwx}{z}$ (i) $y = k_1x + k_2z$ (j) $y = k_1x^2 + k_2z$ (k) $y = k_1\sqrt{x} + \frac{k_2}{z^2}$

2. (a) $y = \frac{5}{x^2}$ (b) 80 **3.** (a) $y = 3z^2 - \frac{5}{2}x$ (b) $\frac{1}{2}$ **4.** $F = \frac{50}{3}x$, 0·48 m

5. $T = 2\sqrt{l}$, 0·25 m **6.** $F = \frac{3v^2}{2r}$, 12N **7.** $C = 13 + \frac{u}{20}$, £35·50

8. $v = \sqrt{\frac{E}{\rho}}$, 5200 m/s

page 139 **Exercise 5C**

1. (a) $m^d = c$ (b) $b^q = p$ (c) $10^t = s$ (d) $e^r = z$
2. (a) 3 (b) 4 (c) 6 (d) 256 (e) $\frac{1}{100}$ (f) 2048
(g) $1\frac{1}{3}$ (h) $1\frac{1}{2}$ (i) $\frac{1}{8}$
3. (a) 5 (b) 2 (c) 4 (d) -1 (e) -2 (f) 0 (g) 1 (h) $\frac{1}{3}$
(i) $-\frac{1}{3}$ (j) $\frac{1}{3}$ (k) $\frac{2}{3}$ (l) $-\frac{2}{3}$
4. (a) $\log a + \log b + \log c$ (b) $2 \log a + \log b + \log c$ (c) $3 \log a + 2 \log b + \log c$
(d) $\log a + \frac{1}{2} \log b$ (e) $\log a + \log b - \log c$ (f) $2 \log a - \log b - 3 \log c$
(g) $-\log a - \log b$ (h) $\log a + \frac{1}{2} \log b - \frac{3}{2} \log c$ (i) $1 + \log a + 2 \log b$
(j) $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \log a - 2 \log b$
5. (a) $\log_a 10$ (b) $\log_a 3$ (c) $\log_a 2$ (d) $\log_a 20$
6. (a) $\log_a x^2$ (b) $\log_a [x(x + 3)]$ (c) $\log_a \left(\frac{x + 1}{2}\right)$ (d) $\log_a (x - 1)$
(e) $\log_a \left(\frac{x}{x + 1}\right)$ (f) $\log_a [x^3(x + 1)]$ (g) $\log_a \left(\frac{x^2}{1 + x}\right)$ (h) $\log_a [x^2(x + 1)]$
7. (a) 6 (b) 3 (c) 256
8. (a) 1·36 (b) 3·14 (c) 2·09 (d) 25·12 (e) 0·22 (f) 22·20 (g) 1·14 (h) 0·64
9. (a) 0·4 (b) 0·6 (c) 1·4 (d) 1·5 (e) $-0·3$ (f) $2\frac{1}{3}$ (g) $1\frac{3}{7}$
10. (a) 6·4 (b) 4 (c) 0·8 (d) 5·6 (e) $-1·6$ (f) $-3·2$ (g) 1·5

11. (a)

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2
y	0·125	0·25	0·5	1	2	4

(b)

x	0·2	0·4	0·6	0·8	1	2	3	4
y	$-2·32$	$-1·32$	$-0·74$	$-0·32$	0	1	1·58	2

12. (a) 6 (b) 12 (c) 9
13. (a) 1·6 (b) 4·1
14. 2·5, 1·4 **15.** 2·3, 6 **16.** 2, 1·5 **17.** 3, 0·5
18. (a) 2·32 (b) 2·58 (c) 1·43 (d) 1·79 (e) 5·37 (f) $-2·71$ (g) 0·326 (h) $-1·95$ (i) 0·287
19. (a) 2 (b) 1 (c) ± 1 (d) 2·16 (e) 1 or 0·585 (f) $\frac{1}{16}$ or 8
20. (a) 15 (b) 56 (c) 3 (d) 13·5 (e) 64 (f) 5 or 25
21. (a) $x = 16, y = 4$ (b) $x = \sqrt{3}, y = 9$
(c) $x = 12, y = 4$ (d) $x = \frac{1}{2}, y = \frac{1}{2}; x = 8, y = 2$
(e) $x = 3, y = 2$ (f) $x = 4, y = 4; x = 48, y = \frac{1}{3}$
(g) $x = 9, y = 6$ (h) $x = 12, y = 10$

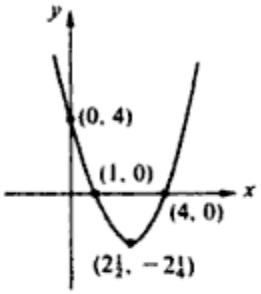
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

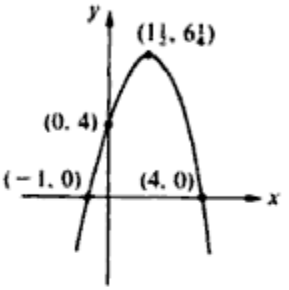
page 144 *Exercise 5D*

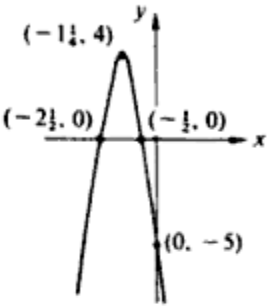
1. (a) $(0, 4)$
(b) $(1, 0)(4, 0)$
(c) $(2\frac{1}{2}, -2\frac{1}{4})$ min

2. (a) $(0, 4)$
(b) $(-1, 0)(4, 0)$
(c) $(1\frac{1}{2}, 6\frac{1}{4})$ max

3. (a) $(0, -5)$
(b) $(-\frac{1}{2}, 0)$
$(-2\frac{1}{2}, 0)$
(c) $(-1\frac{1}{2}, 4)$ max







4. $a = 2, b = 2, c = 1$ **5.** $a = 1\frac{1}{2}, b = 3, c = -2$ **6.** $a = 3, b = 2, c = 2$
7. (a) $x \leqslant -3, x \geqslant 5$ (b) $3 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$ (c) $x \leqslant -1, x \geqslant 5$ (d) $x \leqslant -\frac{1}{2}, x \geqslant 3$
(e) $\frac{1}{3} \leqslant x \leqslant 6$ (f) $-2\frac{1}{2} \leqslant x \leqslant 1$
8. (a) $-6 \leqslant x \leqslant 1$ (b) $x \leqslant -4, x \geqslant -3$ (c) $5 < x < 7$ (d) $x \leqslant 2\frac{1}{3}, x \geqslant 5$
(e) $x < -1\frac{1}{2}, x > 1\frac{2}{3}$ (f) $-\frac{1}{3} \leqslant x \leqslant \frac{1}{2}$
9. (a) $x \leqslant -\sqrt{3} - 2, x \geqslant \sqrt{3} - 2$ (b) $\frac{1}{2}(5 - \sqrt{13}) \leqslant x \leqslant \frac{1}{2}(5 + \sqrt{13})$ (c) $\mathbb{R}$
(d) $\frac{1}{4}(3 - \sqrt{17}) \leqslant x \leqslant \frac{1}{4}(3 + \sqrt{17})$ (e) $\mathbb{R}$ (f) $x \leqslant -\frac{1}{3}(\sqrt{7} + 1), x \geqslant \frac{1}{3}(\sqrt{7} - 1)$
12. $k > 5$ **13.** $-1 < k < 3$

page 148 *Exercise 5E*

1. (a) $g(x) = 0$ (b) $f(x) = 0$ (c) $h(x) = 0$ (d) $f(x), g(x)$ (e) $h(x)$
2. (a) 129, real distinct (b) -3, no real roots (c) 57, real distinct (d) 0, repeated root
(e) 37, real distinct (f) -7, no real roots (g) 0, repeated root (h) -19, no real root
(i) 261, real distinct
3. (a) $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \geqslant -6\}$ (b) $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \geqslant 2\frac{3}{4}\}$ (c) $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \leqslant 6\}$ (d) $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \geqslant -5\}$
(e) $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \leqslant 2\frac{1}{8}\}$
4. 8 **5.** ± 20 **6.** $|b| > 12$ **7.** $k \leqslant -3, k \geqslant 1$ **8.** $k < -1, k > 15$
9. (a) $-4 \leqslant k \leqslant 1$ (b) $-\frac{1}{2} < k < 4\frac{1}{2}$ except $k = 0$ (c) $\{k \in \mathbb{R}: k \neq 0\}$
(d) $k \geqslant 3, k \leqslant \frac{1}{3}$ (e) $k < 2$ except $k = 0$ (f) $k < 0, k \geqslant 1$
10. $0 < \beta < \frac{4}{25}$ **11.** $(3, 0)$ **12.** $(1\frac{1}{2}, -3)$ **13.** (a) (ii), (b) (iii), (c) (i), (d) (iii)

page 151 *Exercise 5F*

1. (a) $-9, 4$ (b) $2, -5$ (c) $7, 2$ (d) $9, -3$ (e) $3\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}$ (f) $-\frac{1}{4}, -\frac{1}{4}$ (g) $-3\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{2}{3}$ (h) $-2, \frac{1}{3}$
2. (a) $x^2 + 3x - 1 = 0$ (b) $x^2 - 6x - 4 = 0$ (c) $x^2 - 7x - 5 = 0$
(d) $3x^2 + 2x - 7 = 0$ (e) $2x^2 + 5x - 4 = 0$ (f) $2x^2 + 3x - 10 = 0$
(g) $12x^2 + 3x - 4 = 0$ (h) $6x^2 + 10x + 3 = 0$
3. (a) 2 (b) -11 (c) 121 (d) 117 (e) 14 (f) -22
4. (a) $\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $2\frac{1}{2}$ (c) $6\frac{3}{4}$ (d) $3\frac{3}{4}$ (e) $2\frac{3}{8}$ (f) 5
5. (a) $-2\frac{2}{3}$ (b) $4\frac{5}{6}$ (c) 3 (d) $-2\frac{2}{3}$ (e) $-\frac{29}{54}$ (f) $4\frac{8}{27}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 161 ***Exercise 6A***

1. (a) $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} -7 & -6 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & -6 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (d) Impossible (e) $\begin{pmatrix} 13 & 9 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

(f) $\begin{pmatrix} -12 & -6 \\ 8 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ (g) $\begin{pmatrix} -3 & -15 \\ -1 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$ (h) $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$ (i) Impossible (j) $\begin{pmatrix} 12 & 6 \\ 12 & 6 \\ -14 & -7 \end{pmatrix}$

(k) Impossible (l) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 5 & -2 \\ -4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ (m) $\frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ (n) No inverse, **B** is singular

(o) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ -3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (p) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 3 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

2. $\mathbf{AB} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ $\mathbf{AD} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 4 & -1 \\ 5 & -2 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$ $\mathbf{BC} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 6 \\ -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ $\mathbf{CD} = (1 \quad 6 \quad 1)$

$\mathbf{CA} = (8 \quad -5)$ $\mathbf{CB} = (1)$

3.

$$\begin{array}{c} \\ \mathbf{A} \\ \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{C} \\ \mathbf{D} \\ \mathbf{E} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccc} \text{Won} & \text{Drawn} & \text{Lost} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 6 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

A, C, E, B, D; C, A, E, B, D.

4. (a) $-4, 11$ (b) $-2, -3$ (c) $2, 4$ (d) $4, 3$ (e) $2, -1$ (f) $5, 19$ (g) $-1, 4$ (h) $2, -1$
(i) $-3, 2$ (j) $-3, 1\frac{1}{2}$

6. $\mathbf{X} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ $\mathbf{Y} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 2 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$ $\mathbf{Z} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ **7.** $4, -11$ **8.** $-\frac{1}{2}$ or 3

9. (a) $x = 3, y = -2$ (b) $x = 1, y = -\frac{2}{3}$ (c) $x = 1\frac{1}{2}, y = \frac{1}{2}$ **10.** $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, -1, 2, 1.$

page 168 ***Exercise 6B***

1. $(9, -3), (-3, -13), (6, -13), (3, 4)$ **2.** (a) $(4, 1)$ (b) $(5, 10)$ (c) $(3, -1)$ (d) $(-5, 2)$

3. $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}, (-5, 9), (2, -2)$

4. (a) $(5, -3), (15, -9), (13, -7), (3, -1)$ (b) 8 sq. units (c) $\frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$

5. $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

6. (a) (i) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{array}{l} x' = x + 2y \\ y' = y \end{array}$ (b) (i) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{array}{l} x' = x \\ y' = 3x + y \end{array}$

7. $\begin{pmatrix} 18 & 14 \\ 6 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$, 10 sq. units, 30 sq. units

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

8. (a) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (d) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (e) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

(f) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (g) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (h) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ (i) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -\frac{1}{2} \\ 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

9. (a) reflection in $y = x$ (b) enlargement ($\times$ 5) centre (0, 0)
(c) stretch ($\times$ 3) parallel to x-axis, y-axis fixed (d) mapping onto (0, 0)
(e) mapping onto x-axis (f) mapping onto $y = x$
(g) enlargement ($\times$ 3) centre (0, 0) and reflection in $y = x$
(h) shear with y-axis fixed and $(1, 0) \to (1, 2)$ (i) mapping onto $y = 4x$
(j) shear with $y = x$ fixed and $(1, 0) \to (-2, -3)$

10. $2x + 3y = 0$ **12.** (a) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{matrix} x' = -x + 2 \\ y' = y + 3 \end{matrix}$

13. (a) $(-1, -1)$ (b) $(-3, 2)$ (c) $(-1, 2)$

page 176 Exercise 6C

1. (a) $(-4, -2)$ (b) $(-3, 2)$ (c) $(4\frac{1}{2}, 1)$

2. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -3 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -8 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$,
$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$
(a) $(\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{2}{3})$ (b) $(2, -1)$ (c) $(2, 0)$ (d) $(1, -1)$

3. $7y = 5x + 6$, $x = 3y + 2$ **4.** $y = 3x - 4$ **5.** $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

6. $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $x + 7y = 0$, $4x + y = 27$, $y = 3$ **7.** $y = x + 1$ **8.** $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

9. (a) $3y = 10x + 8$, $y = 5x + 21$ **13.** $\begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix}$ **14.** $-2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ **15.** $(-1, 1)$

16. (a) $y = x$, $y = 2x$ (b) $3y = x$, $y + x = 0$ (c) $y = \pm 2\sqrt{2x}$

17. $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -4 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$, $y = x$, $2y = x$; $y = x$ **18.** 8, $y = 2x$

19. (a) $y = x + 6$, $3y = 2x + 12$ (b) $y + 4x = 1$, $y = x + 1$ (c) $y = 2$, $y = 2x - 6$
(d) $y = x - 1$ (e) $y = 3x - 9$

page 182 Exercise 6D

1. (a) $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$

2. (a) $\begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{4}{5} \\ \frac{4}{5} & \frac{3}{5} \end{pmatrix}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

3. (a) rotation of 53·1° anticlockwise about origin (b) reflection in $2y = x$
(c) rotation of 53·1° anticlockwise about origin and enlargement ($\times$ 5), centre the origin

4. (a) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

(c) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (d) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

(e) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$

5. (a) $x' = -y$, $y' = x - 2$ (b) $x' = 2x + 1$, $y' = 2y - 3$ (c) $x' = y + 5$, $y' = -x + 3$ (d) $x' = -y + 3$, $y' = -x + 3$
(e) $x' = -y + 6$, $y' = -x$

7. (a) 90° rotation anticlockwise about (4, −1) (b) reflection in the line $y = x - 3$
(c) glide reflection in $y = 1$ with $(0, 1) \to (-6, 1)$ (d) enlargement ($\times$5) centre (1, 4)
(e) 180° rotation about $(1, -1\frac{1}{2})$ (f) 90° rotation clockwise about $(-\frac{1}{2}, -3\frac{1}{2})$
(g) 90° rotation anticlockwise about $(\frac{1}{2}, 2\frac{1}{2})$ and an enlargement ($\times$3) centre $(\frac{1}{2}, 2\frac{1}{2})$

8. (a) (3, −2) (b) $y = x - 5$, $y + x = 1$
(c) enlargement ($\times$2) centre (3, −2) and a reflection in the line $y + x = 1$

page 183 ***Exercise 6E***

1. $\frac{8}{3}$, −5

2. (a) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 3 & 4 \\ 14 & 0 & 21 & 28 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (i) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{pmatrix} 10 & 5\frac{1}{2} \\ -10 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$

3. (a) (i) $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (iii) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

(b) $BA = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 4 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ $AC = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 \\ 0 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$ $EA = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

4. (a) $-\frac{2}{3}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ $x = 2, y = -1, z = 3$

5. (a) $x = 3\frac{2}{3}, y = 6\frac{1}{3}$ (b) $\frac{1}{7}\begin{pmatrix} -2 & -3 & 8 \\ 1 & 5 & -4 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$

6. (c) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (iii) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ (iv) (−5, 2) (v) (−4, 6)

7. (1, 2), (−2, 1), $\begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{4}{5} \\ \frac{4}{5} & \frac{3}{5} \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{4}{5} & \frac{3}{5} \\ \frac{3}{5} & -\frac{4}{5} \end{pmatrix}$

8. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$
(i) $(a + 6, -b)$ (ii) $(a, 4 - b)$ (iii) $(6 - a, -b)$ (iv) $(-a, b)$ (v) (a, b)
(i) no values (ii) any points for which $b = 2$ (iii) $a = 3, b = 0$
(iv) any points for which $a = 0$ (v) all values of a and b

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

9. (i) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{1-x}{y} \\ -1 & \frac{x}{y} \end{pmatrix}$ (a) $\frac{1}{2}, -1\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\frac{3}{4}, -\frac{1}{2}$ (ii) $x = 1, 2y = x + 3$

10. $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $y = 2x$

11. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{4}{5} & -\frac{3}{5} \\ \frac{3}{5} & \frac{4}{5} \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -\frac{8}{5} & \frac{12}{5} \\ \frac{12}{5} & \frac{8}{5} \end{pmatrix}$, $(-15, 45)$

12. (i) enlargement, scale factor $\frac{1}{2}$, centre (0, 0); reflection in the line $y = x$; rotation of 120°, anticlockwise about (0, 0) (ii) 2, 3 (iii) enlargement, scale factor 2, centre (0, 0); reflection in the line $y = x$; rotation of 120° clockwise about the origin.

13. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3} \\ \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$, a rotation of 60° anticlockwise about (0, 0), reflection in $x = y\sqrt{3}$

14. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$, 13 **15.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **16.** $x = \frac{1}{2}$, glide reflection in $x = \frac{1}{2}$ with $(\frac{1}{2}, 0) \to (\frac{1}{2}, 3)$

17. $(1\frac{2}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})$, 90° rotation anticlockwise about $(1\frac{2}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})$ and an enlargement, scale factor 2, centre $(1\frac{2}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})$. $\begin{matrix} x' = -y + 1 \\ y' = -x + 1 \end{matrix}$, $\begin{matrix} x' = -2x + 4 \\ y' = 2y \end{matrix}$, centre $(\frac{4}{3}, 0)$, scale factor 2.

18. $2y = x$

page 193 Exercise 7A

1. (a) 56 (b) 1008 (c) 600 (d) 4

2. (a) 5! (b) 3 × 5! (c) 5! (d) $\frac{5!}{5}$ (e) 5 × 5! (f) 9 × 5! (g) 2 × 5! (h) 36 × 5! (i) 55 × 5!

3. 18 **4.** 10! **5.** 8! **6.** 24 **7.** 120 **8.** 24, 256 **9.** (a) 81 (b) 256 **10.** 8!
11. 720, 120 **12.** 24 **13.** 48 **14.** 72 **15.** 12 **16.** 10 080 **17.** 80 640
18. (a) 14! (b) 11! (c) 11! × 4! **19.** 1440, 240 **20.** 2520 **21.** 30 240 **22.** 42
23. (a) 12 (b) 12 **24.** 120 (a) 48 (b) 72 (c) 12 **25.** 96 **26.** 1296

page 197 Exercise 7B

1. 30 **2.** 151 200 **3.** 6720 **4.** 120
5. (a) 24 (b) 64 **6.** (a) 6 (b) 16 **7.** 36 **8.** 2730
9. 2 522 520 **10.** 3360 **11.** 453 600, 10 080
12. (a) 20 160 (b) 5040 (c) 15 120 **13.** 18
14. 60, 40 **15.** 1260 **16.** 528 **17.** 42
18. 151 (a) 73 (b) 78 (c) 13 (d) 138 **19.** 19 958 400 (a) 3 628 800 (b) 302 400
20. 2 494 800 (a) 453 600 (b) 60 480 **21.** 5472 **22.** 1596, 198

page 201 Exercise 7C

1. 120 **2.** 126 **3.** 10 **4.** 330 **5.** 10 **6.** 4845
7. 22 100 **8.** 210, 210 **9.** 1960 **10.** 286 **11.** 150 **12.** 60
13. 2016 **14.** (a) 126 (b) 105 **15.** (a) 15 (b) 1 **16.** (a) 20 (b) 4 **17.** (a) 13 (b) 5
18. (a) 24 (b) 7 (c) 13 **19.** 37 **20.** 6 300 **21.** (a) 5 (b) 85 (c) 365 **22.** 175
23. (a) 105 (b) 21 (c) 231 **24.** 100 **25.** (a) 1 (b) 56 (c) 1231 (d) 1230 **26.** 120
27. 3360, 1200 **28.** 30 240, 12 600 **29.** 7560, 3150

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 205 ***Exercise 7D***

1. 630 630 **2.** 127 **3.** 63 **4.** 330 **5.** 7920 **6.** 60 060 **7.** 63
8. 64 **9.** 255 **10.** 47 **11.** 31 **12.** 255 **13.** 39
14. $(p + 1)(q + 1)\, 2^{n-p-q} - 1$ **15.** (a) 126 (b) 280 **16.** 5775 **17.** 126 126
18. 25 740 **19.** 23

page 206 ***Exercise 7E***

1. 816 **2.** 286 **3.** 6 **4.** 360 (a) 180 (b) 240 **5.** 100 **6.** (a) 495 (b) 225 (c) 15
7. 25 **8.** 840, 96 **9.** 3528, 8624 **10.** 154 **11.** 10 080, 30 **12.** $(n - 2)!(n - 3)$
13. 120, 24 **14.** 480, 172 800, 462, 425
15. (a) 38 760 (i) 12 320 (ii) 5320 (b) 86 400, 172 800

page 210 ***Exercise 8A***

1. (a) 10, 13 (b) 49, 64 (c) 0·00001, 0·000001, (d) $5\frac{1}{4}$, 6
2. (a) 8, 3 (b) 23, 2 (c) 19, -3 (d) $13\frac{1}{2}$, $1\frac{1}{2}$
(e) $-11{\cdot}5$, 2·5 (f) $6\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{2}$ (g) -8, 1 (h) 6, -3
3. (a) 20 (b) 102 (c) 45 (d) 32 **4.** 56 **5.** 24 **6.** -9 **7.** 13, -15
8. (a) $2 + 3n$, 302 (b) $8 - 3n$, -292 (c) $\frac{1}{2}(18 + 7n)$, 359
9. (a) 200th (b) 411th **10.** (a) 122nd (b) 64th
11. (a) 2, 4, 288 (b) 10, -2, -60 (c) 4·5, 1·5, 342 (d) 15, -2, 0
(e) 7, -4, -620 (f) $-6\frac{1}{2}$, $+1\frac{1}{2}$, 21 (g) -9, 2, 96
12. (a) 5402 (b) 1000 (c) 9464 (d) $13\frac{1}{2}$
13. 2, $1\frac{1}{2}$, $87\frac{1}{2}$ **14.** $6\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, 66 **15.** 21, -2, 0 **16.** -10, 3, 18
17. -15, 3, 0 **18.** $13\frac{1}{2}$, $-3\frac{1}{2}$, $-14\frac{1}{2}$ **19.** 0, $\frac{1}{2}$, $9\frac{1}{2}$ **20.** 2160
21. $1575d$ **22.** 20 **23.** 32 **24.** 24 **25.** 28
26. (a) $23n - 20 - 3n^2$ (b) $20 - 6n$ (c) 14, -6
27. 7, 12, 17 **28.** 2·5 **29.** $\log_e 3$, $\log_e 3^n$, $\frac{1}{2}n(n + 1)\log_e 3$
30. $\log_e(ab^n)$, $\frac{1}{2}n\log_e(a^2b^{n+1})$

page 216 ***Exercise 8B***

1. (a) 5, 2500, 12 500 (b) $\frac{1}{2}$, 3, $1\frac{1}{2}$ (c) $\frac{1}{3}$, $1\frac{2}{3}$, $\frac{5}{9}$ **2.** 59 048 **3.** $12\frac{1}{8}$, $11\frac{13}{16}$, $-\frac{9}{16}$
4. (a) $2047\frac{7}{8}$ (b) $1228\frac{7}{8}$ **5.** 3 **6.** $-\frac{1}{4}$ **7.** $\pm 1\frac{1}{2}$ **8.** 2, $\frac{3}{4}$; -2, $-\frac{3}{4}$ **9.** 31 **10.** 2186
11. (a) 14 (b) -3 (c) 4 (d) 7·5 **12.** (a) 8 (b) 12 (c) 2·5 (d) 3·5 **13.** 24
14. (a) divergent (b) convergent, 32 (c) convergent, 56 (d) convergent, $156\frac{1}{4}$
(e) divergent (f) convergent, $51\frac{1}{3}$
15. (a) $|x| < 1$ (b) $|x| < 3$ (c) $|x| > 1$ (d) $-\frac{1}{2} < x < \frac{1}{2}$ **16.** $20\frac{1}{4}$
17. $2\frac{1}{2}$, $1\frac{1}{2}$ **18.** 2, 3 **19.** 6 **20.** £11 million **21.** $\frac{2}{3}$
22. 16 **23.** $\frac{5}{8}$ **24.** $\frac{4}{3}$, 5 **25.** 8 **26.** 7
27. (a) $\frac{7}{9}$ (b) $\frac{50}{99}$ (c) $\frac{254}{462}$ (d) $\frac{40}{111}$

page 220 ***Exercise 8C***

1. (a) $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5$ (b) $1 + 4 + 9 + 16 + 25$ (c) $13 + 15 + 17$
(d) $504 + 420 + 360 + 315 + 280 + 252$
(e) $-1 + 2 - 3 + 4 - 5$ (f) $1 - 2 + 3 - 4 + 5$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

2. (a) $\sum_{r=1}^{50} r$ (b) $\sum_{r=1}^{50} r^3$ (c) $\sum_{r=1}^{6} 5r$ (d) $\sum_{r=1}^{6} (2r+1)$

(e) $\sum_{r=1}^{6} (-1)^{r+1}3r$ (f) $\sum_{r=1}^{13} (-1)^r r^2$

4. (a) $\sum_{r=1}^{100} r = 5050$ (b) $\sum_{r=1}^{22} r^2 = 3795$ (c) $\sum_{r=1}^{15} r^3 = 14\,400$

(d) $\sum_{r=1}^{51} (2r-1) = 2601$ (e) $\sum_{r=1}^{20} r(r+2) = 3290$ (f) $\sum_{r=1}^{13} r(2r-1) = 1547$

5. (a) 90 000 (b) 14 400 (c) 75 600 **6.** (a) $\frac{1}{3}n(n+1)(n+2)$ (b) 8120

7. (a) $\frac{1}{4}n(n+1)(n+2)(n+3)$ (b) 53 130 **8.** (a) $\frac{1}{6}n(4n^2+15n+17)$ (b) 6390

10. (a) $n(2n+1)$ (b) $\frac{1}{6}(n+1)(n+2)(2n+3)$ (c) $n^2(2n+1)^2$ (d) $4n(n+3)$ (e) $2n^2(n+1)^2$
(f) $8n^2(2n+1)^2$ (g) $\frac{1}{3}n(n+1)(n+5)$ (h) $\frac{1}{12}n(n+1)(n+2)(3n+5)$
(i) $\frac{1}{3}n(n+1)(4n-1)$ (j) $\frac{1}{6}n(n+1)(3n^2+n-1)$

page 226 *Exercise 8D*

1. (a) $27 + 27x + 9x^2 + x^3$ (b) $125 + 150x + 60x^2 + 8x^3$
(c) $16 + 32x + 24x^2 + 8x^3 + x^4$ (d) $16 - 32x + 24x^2 - 8x^3 + x^4$
(e) $32y^5 + 80y^4x + 80y^3x^2 + 40y^2x^3 + 10yx^4 + x^5$
(f) $32x^5 - 240x^4y + 720x^3y^2 - 1080x^2y^3 + 810xy^4 - 243y^5$
(g) $x^4 - 4x^2 + 6 - \frac{4}{x^2} + \frac{1}{x^4}$ (h) $x^5 - 10x^3 + 40x - \frac{80}{x} + \frac{80}{x^3} - \frac{32}{x^5}$

2. (a) $1 + 12x + 54x^2 + 108x^3 + 81x^4$ (b) $16x^4 + 32x^3y + 24x^2y^2 + 8xy^3 + y^4$
(c) $64 - 576x + 2160x^2 - 4320x^3 + 4860x^4 - 2916x^5 + 729x^6$
(d) $32x^5 + 240x^3 + 720x + \frac{1080}{x} + \frac{810}{x^3} + \frac{243}{x^5}$

3. $1 + 12x + 66x^2 + 220x^3$ **4.** $a^{12} + 12a^{11}x + 66a^{10}x^2 + 220a^9x^3$

5. $a^{10} - 30a^9x + 405a^8x^2 - 3240a^7x^3$ **6.** $1 + 10x + \frac{95}{2}x^2 + \frac{285}{2}x^3 + \frac{4845}{16}x^4$

7. $32 + 80x + 80x^2 + 40x^3 + 10x^4 + x^5$ (a) 40·84101 (b) 24·76099

8. (a) $1 - 8x + 25x^2 - 30x^3$ (b) $1 + 3x - 3x^2 - 25x^3$ (c) $1 - 16x + 113x^2 - 464x^3$
(d) $1 + 3x + 3x^2 + 2x^3$ (e) $1 + 16x + 111x^2 + 434x^3$ (f) $1 - 14x + 76x^2 - 195x^3$

9. (a) $1 + 6x + 21x^2 + 50x^3$ (b) $1 + 10x + 35x^2 + 40x^3$ (c) $1 - 16x + 144x^2 - 896x^3$

10. $1 - 11x + 55x^2 - 165x^3 + 330x^4$, 0·801 **11.** $1 + 15x + 105x^2 + 455x^3$, 1·161

12. $1 + 24x + 264x^2$, 1·3 **13.** $128 + 448x + 672x^2 + 560x^3$, 132·548

14. (a) 1·0937 (b) 0·9860837 (c) 0·9044 (d) 973·9

15. $\frac{1}{2}$, 1, 5, $11\frac{1}{4}$ **16.** 16, $\frac{1}{8}$ **17.** $1 - x - 11x^2$

page 228 *Exercise 8E*

1. ${}^{12}C_8 \times 4^4 \times x^8$ **2.** ${}^{8}C_5 \times 3^3 \times 2^5 \times x^5$ **3.** $-{}^{9}C_3 \times 2^6 \times x^3$

4. (a) ${}^{8}C_3 \times 5^5 \times 3^3$ (b) $-{}^{7}C_3 \times 7^4 \times 2^3$ **5.** ${}^{7}C_5 \times 3^2 \times 2^5 x^{10}$

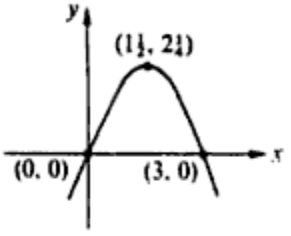
6. (a) ${}^{10}C_5 \times 3^5$ (b) ${}^{12}C_8 \times 4^{10}$ (c) ${}^{6}C_4 \times 3^2 \times 2^4$ (d) $2^4(2 \times {}^{10}C_5 + {}^{10}C_6)$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

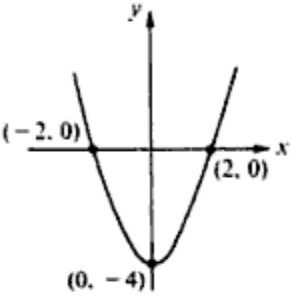
page 268 *Exercise 10D*

1. Min at $(-5, -15)$ **2.** Max at $(1\frac{1}{2}, 7)$ **3.** Max at $(-2, 28)$ Min at $(4, -80)$
4. Min at $(-3, -156)$, Max at $(5,100)$ **5.** Max at $(-2, 32)$, Min $(2, -32)$ **6.** Min at $(0, 3)$
7. Min at $(-2, -32)$, Max at $(0, 0)$, Min at $(2, -32)$
8. Min at $(-3, -162)$, Infl at $(0, 0)$, Max at $(3, 162)$

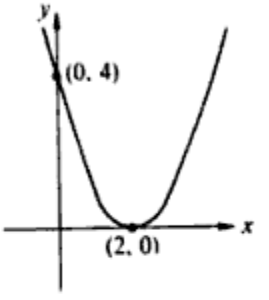
9.



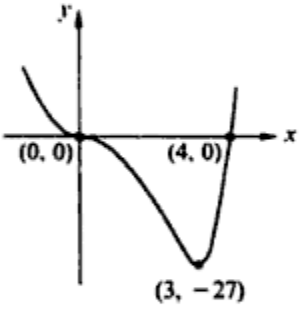
10



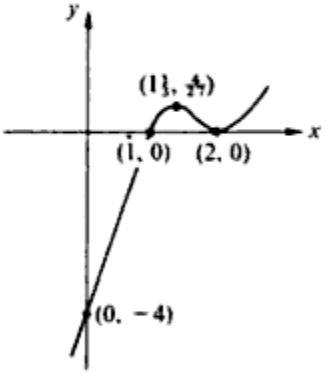
11.



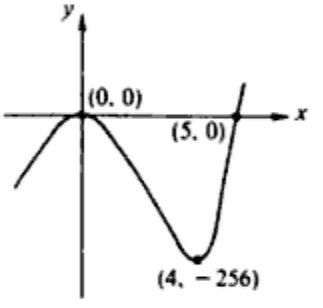
12.



13.



14.



15. (a) Min $(2, 2)$, Max $(-1, 15\frac{1}{2})$ (b) $15\frac{1}{2}$ (c) $-10\frac{1}{2}$
16. (a) Min $(-3, -81)$, Max $(2, 44)$ (b) $-145, 44$
17. $\frac{3}{4}, 1\frac{1}{4}$ **18.** $37\frac{1}{2}, 2\frac{1}{2}$ **19.** 250, 25, 10 **20.** 10, 1, 2 **21.** 90 000 m², 300 m square
22. 2 m, 4 m³ **23.** 30 cm, 30 cm **24.** 15 cm **25.** 20 km/h

page 271 *Exercise 10E*

1. 0·2 **2.** 0·03 **3.** 0·02 **4.** 8% **5.** 40π cm³ **6.** 6%
7. 0·01 cm **8.** (800 ± 16) cm² **9.** 2% **10.** $1{\cdot}8\pi$ cm² **11.** 126·5 **12.** 4·02

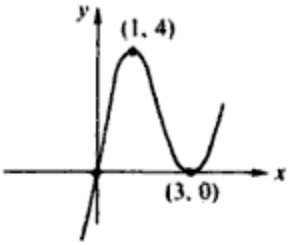
page 273 *Exercise 10F*

1. $(0, 0)$ horizontal, $(1, -1)$ **2.** $(0, 0)$ **3.** $(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{11}{2})$ **4.** $(\frac{1}{3}, 8\frac{23}{27})$
5. $(1, -3)$ horizontal **6.** $(1, 0)$ horizontal **7.** $(4, 2)$ **8.** $(0, -5)$ horizontal
9. $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{16}{27})$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 273 ***Exercise 10G***

1. 1 **2.** $y = 8x - 11$, $(1\frac{3}{8}, 0)$ **3.** $2y + x + 3 = 0$, $(-3, 0)$, $(0, -1\frac{1}{2})$
4. (a) $18x + 9\sqrt{x} + 1$ (b) $\pm\frac{1}{2}$ **5.** 6, 15 **6.** -3, max **7.** -2, 8, 10
8.



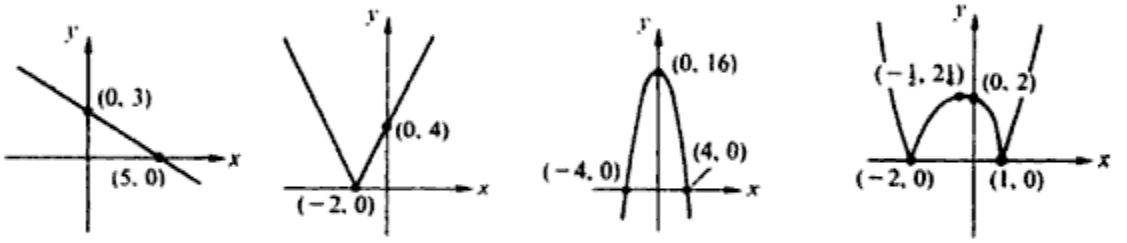
9. (i) (a) 5 cm × 5 cm × 5 cm (b) 125 cm³
(ii) $8x - \frac{27}{x^2}$, $1\frac{1}{2}$, min

10. $300r - \pi r^3$, $300 - 3\pi r^2$, $-6\pi r$, $\frac{10}{\sqrt{\pi}}$, 2 : 1

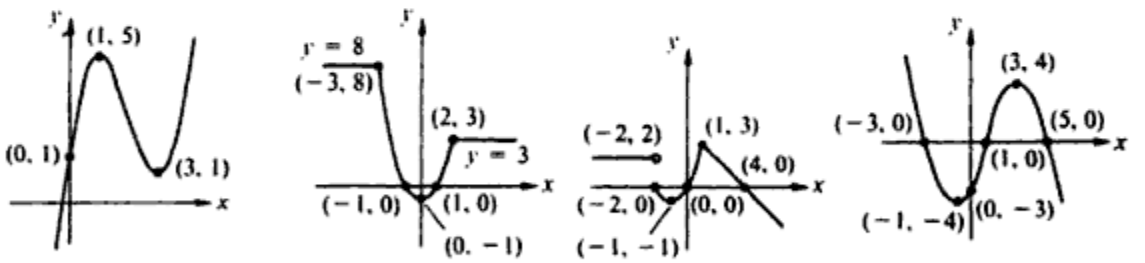
12. $6x^2 - 14x$ (i) $y + 4x = 11$ (ii) 0·12 decrease
13. $\frac{31}{30}$ **14.** (i) (2, 4), 4 (ii) 1%

page 281 ***Exercise 11A***

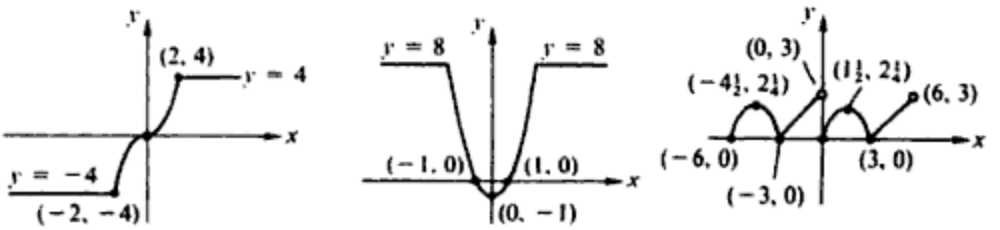
1. (a), (c), (e)
2. A(0, 6), B(3, 0); C(−3, 0), D(1, 0), E(0, −3), F(−1, −4); G(−4, 0), H(2, 0), I(0, 8), J(−1, 9)
3. A(−2, 0), $a = 2$; B(2, 0), $b = 1$; C(−2, 0), D(2, 0), $c = -3$
4. (a) (b) (c) (d)



5. **6.** (a) (b) (c)

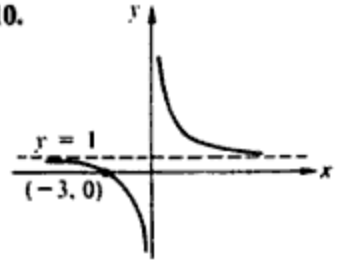


7. **8.** **9.**

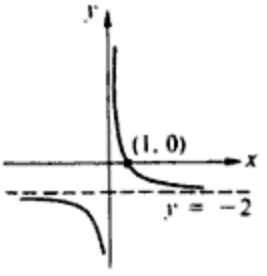


Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

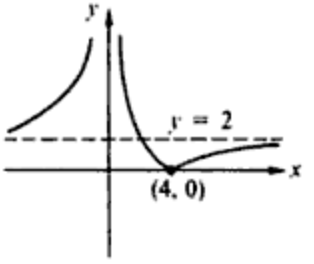
10.



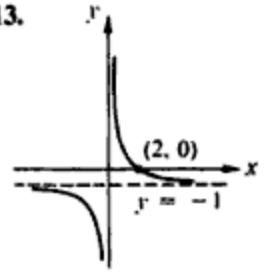
11.



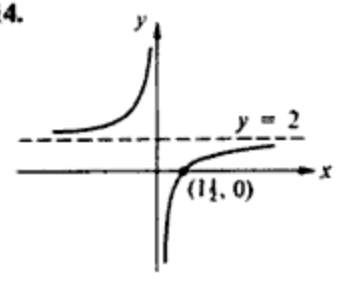
12.



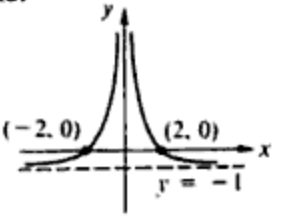
13.



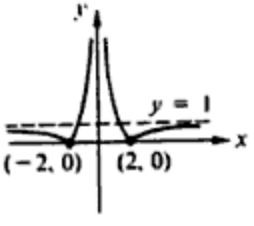
14.



15.



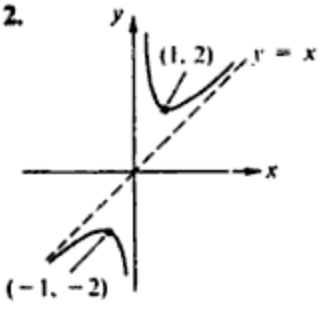
16.



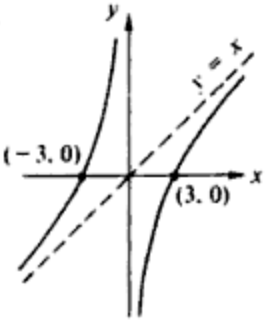
page 284 Exercise 11B

1. A(−2, 0), B(2, 0), $a = 2$; C($\frac{1}{2}$, 0), $b = 2$; D(−1, 0), $c = 1$

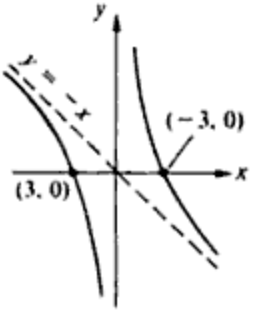
2.



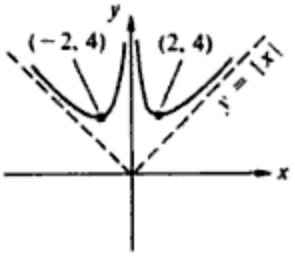
3.



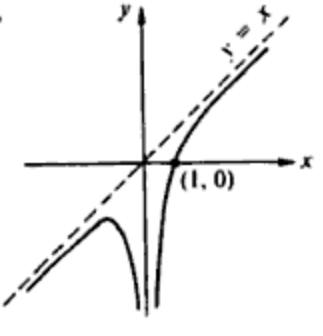
4.



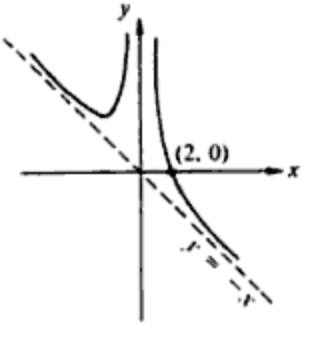
5.



6.

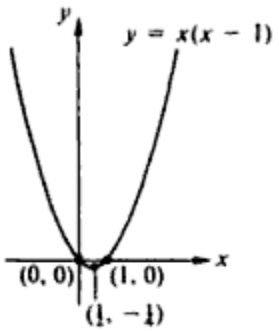


7.

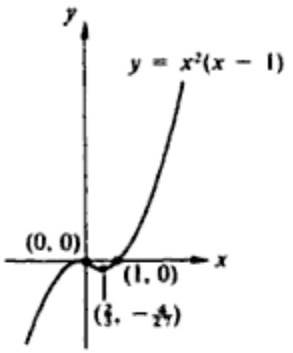


Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

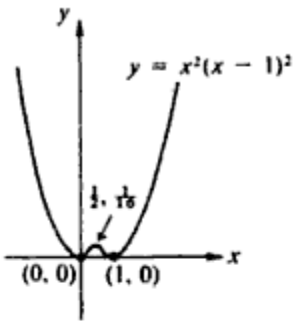
2. (a)



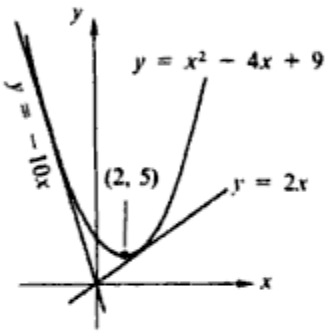
(b)



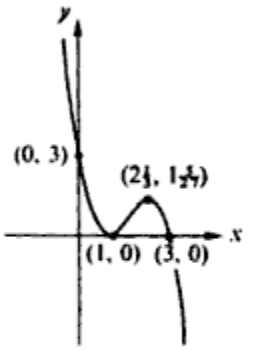
(c)



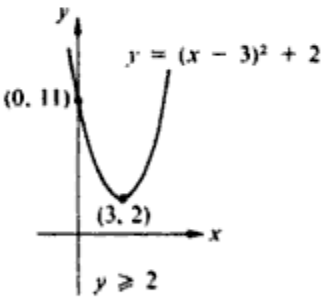
3. $m < -10$, $m > 2$



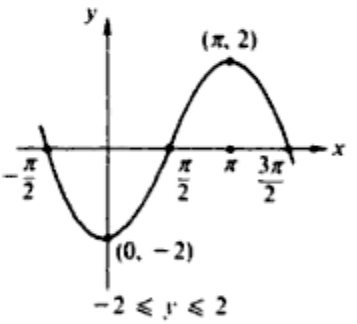
4. (i) $-1, 5, -7, 3$ (iii) $2\frac{1}{3}$
(iv)



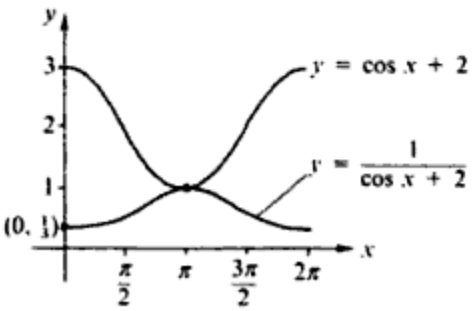
5. (i)



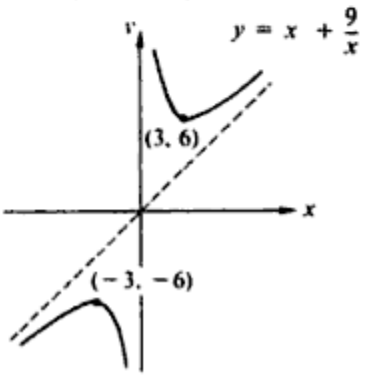
(ii)



6.



7. $1 - \dfrac{9}{x^2}$, min 6, max -6,



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 296 ***Exercise 12A***

1. (a) $x^3 + c$ (b) $x^2 + c$ (c) $\frac{1}{4}x^4 + c$ (d) $\frac{2}{5}x^5 + c$
(e) $5x + c$ (f) $\frac{1}{2}x^6 + c$ (g) $\frac{2}{3}x^{3/2} + c$ (h) $-\frac{6}{x} + c$
(i) $\frac{2}{x^2} + c$ (j) $2\sqrt{x} + c$ (k) $\frac{1}{2}x^4 + x^3 + c$ (l) $\frac{5}{2}x^2 + x + c$
(m) $x^2 + 3x^3 + c$ (n) $x^5 - 3x^2 + c$ (o) $2x^4 - 4x^3 + c$ (p) $2x^2 - x^3 + c$
(q) $x^3 - 3x^2 + c$ (r) $\frac{2}{3}x^5 - 4x^2 + c$ (s) $x^3 + x^2 - x + c$ (t) $\frac{1}{3}x^3 - 4x^2 + 12x + c$

2. (a) $2x^4 + c$ (b) $6x^2 + c$ (c) $\frac{5}{3}x^3 + c$ (d) $7x + c$ (e) $7x - x^2 + c$
(f) $-\frac{3}{x^2} + c$ (g) $\frac{3}{x^4} + c$ (h) $2x^{3/2} + c$ (i) $2x^{5/2} + c$ (j) $x^3 - \frac{6}{x} + c$
(k) $x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + c$ (l) $2x^3 - 2x^4 + c$ (m) $\frac{x^5}{5} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{3x^3} + c$

3. (a) $6x^2 + c$ (b) $\frac{1}{4}x^4 + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + c$ (c) $\frac{1}{3}x^3 + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + c$
(d) $\frac{1}{3}x^3 + x^2 - 24x + c$ (e) $-\frac{5}{3x^3} + c$ (f) $2x^5 + 2x^4 + \frac{6}{x} + c$
(g) $\frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{1}{x} + c$ (h) $2\sqrt{x} - 2x^{3/2} + c$ (i) $\frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{1}{x} + c$

4. $y = 3x^2 + 1$ **5.** $y = x^3 - 2x + 10$ **6.** $y = 8 + 2x - x^2$
7. $s = 2t^3 + 6t^2 + t - 1$ **8.** $V = 7h^2 - 4h + 1$ **9.** $A = 5p - 2p^2 + 1$
10. $y = x^3 + 8x - 1$ **11.** $y = x^2 - 3x - 10$, $(-2, 0)$ **12.** $y = x^2 - 4x + 7$
13. $y = 7 + 2x^2 - x^3$ **14.** $y = x^3 - 2x^2 + 5$ **15.** $y = 5x^3 - 6x + 4$

page 303 ***Exercise 12B***

1. (a) 24 (b) 8 (c) 15 (d) 2 (e) 4 (f) $17\frac{1}{3}$ (g) $\frac{1}{2}$ (h) 2 (i) 32 (j) $13\frac{3}{4}$
2. (a) A$(-1, 0)$, B$(0, 4)$, C$(4, 0)$, $20\frac{5}{6}$ sq. units
(b) A$(-1, 0)$, B$(0, -5)$, C$(5, 0)$, 36 sq. units
(c) A$(0, 4)$, B$(1, 0)$, C$(4, 0)$, $6\frac{1}{3}$ sq. units
3. (a) $\frac{1}{x}$ not defined for $x = 0$, (b) $\frac{1}{x^2}$ not defined for $x = 0$,
(c) $\frac{1}{x-1}$ not defined for $x = 1$, (d) $\frac{1}{x^2-1}$ not defined for $x = -1$
(e) $\sqrt{x}$ not defined for $x < 0$
4. 26 sq. units **5.** $3\frac{3}{4}$ sq. units **6.** $12\frac{2}{3}$ sq. units **7.** $31\frac{1}{2}$ sq. units
8. $10\frac{2}{3}$ sq. units **9.** 36 sq. units **10.** 3 sq. units **11.** 13 sq. units
12. $7\frac{2}{3}$ sq. units **13.** 8 sq. units **14.** $1\frac{1}{3}$ sq. units
15. (a) $5\frac{1}{3}$ sq. units (b) $25\frac{1}{4}$ sq. units (c) 2 sq. units **16.** $10\frac{2}{3}$ sq. units
17. $2\frac{2}{3}$ sq. units **18.** $\frac{1}{6}$ sq. units **19.** A$(-2, 6)$, B$(2, 10)$, $10\frac{2}{3}$ sq. units
20. A$(-4, 0)$, B$(-1, 0)$, C$(2, 0)$, D$(0, -8)$, E$(-5, -28)$, F$(3, 28)$, 64 sq. units
21. $21\frac{1}{3}$ sq. units **22.** $41\frac{2}{3}$ sq. units

page 307 ***Exercise 12C***

1. $\frac{32}{5}\pi$ cu. units **2.** $\frac{50}{3}\pi$ cu. units **3.** 13π cu. units **4.** $\frac{128}{9}\pi$ cu. units
5. $\frac{16}{3}\pi$ cu. units **6.** $\frac{40}{7}\pi$ cu. units **7.** $\frac{512}{15}\pi$ cu. units **8.** $\frac{1}{105}\pi$ cu. units
9. $\frac{3}{8}\pi$ cu. units **10.** $\frac{32}{5}\pi$ cu. units **11.** $y = \frac{rx}{h}$, $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$
12. 8π cu. units **13.** $\frac{15}{4}\pi$ cu. units **14.** $\frac{50}{3}\pi$ cu. units

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 319 ***Exercise 13A***

1. $12(3x + 2)^3$ **2.** $10(2x - 3)^4$ **3.** $-28(1 - 4x)^6$ **4.** $45(2 + 9x)^4$
5. $10x(3 + x^2)^4$ **6.** $-24x^2(1 - x^3)^7$ **7.** $48x^3(2x^4 + 1)^5$ **8.** $20x(x^2 + 5)^9$
9. $\dfrac{-9}{(1 + 3x)^4}$ **10.** $\dfrac{8x}{(1 - 4x^2)^2}$ **11.** $\dfrac{5}{2\sqrt{(5x - 3)}}$ **12.** $\dfrac{-3x}{(x^2 + 1)^{5/2}}$
13. $\dfrac{2}{(1 - 2x)^2}$ **14.** $-\dfrac{2x}{(x^2 + 3)^2}$ **15.** $\dfrac{x + 2}{\sqrt{(x^2 + 4x + 1)}}$ **16.** $-\dfrac{x}{(x^2 - 5)^{3/2}}$
17. $-\dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{x}(1 + \sqrt{x})^2}$ **18.** $40x(1 + (1 + x^2)^5)^3(1 + x^2)^4$ **19.** $\dfrac{1}{4\sqrt{x}\sqrt{(2 + \sqrt{x})}}$
20. $-\dfrac{9x}{(3x^2 + 1)^{5/2}}$ **21.** (a) $y = 12x - 23$ (b) $12y = 14 - x$
22. (a) $y = 4x - 9$ (b) $4y + x + 2 = 0$ **23.** (a) $8y = x + 3$ (b) $4y + 32x + 31 = 0$
24. (a) $3y = x + 5$ (b) $y + 3x = 15$
25. (a) Max at (0, 1) (b) Min at ($2\frac{1}{2}$, 0) (c) Infl at ($2\frac{1}{2}$, 0) (d) Max at (-2, $-\frac{1}{2}$)
26. (a) 5 m (b) 0·2 m/s (c) $-0{\cdot}008$ m/s^2

page 321 ***Exercise 13B***

1. $(4 + 3x)^8 + c$ **2.** $(2 + 7x)^6 + c$ **3.** $(3 - 2x)^7 + c$ **4.** $(x^2 + 4)^5 + c$
5. $\frac{1}{18}(2 + 3x)^6 + c$ **6.** $\frac{1}{10}(1 + 2x)^5 + c$ **7.** $-\frac{1}{24}(1 - 6x)^4 + c$ **8.** $\frac{1}{10}(3 + 4x)^5 + c$
9. $-\frac{1}{3}(1 - 2x)^5 + c$ **10.** $\frac{1}{4}(1 + x^2)^4 + c$ **11.** $\frac{1}{15}(x^3 - 1)^5 + c$ **12.** $\frac{1}{18}(x^4 + 6)^4 + c$
13. $\frac{1}{2}(x^2 + x + 3)^5 + c$ **14.** $\frac{1}{5}(x^3 - x + 4)^5 + c$ **15.** $\frac{1}{8}(4 + x + x^2)^6 + c$
16. $\frac{1}{16}(x^2 - 2x + 4)^8 + c$ **17.** 1342 **18.** -7776 **19.** 210·1
20. 1302 **21.** $121\frac{1}{3}$ **22.** 20 **23.** $221\frac{2}{3}$

page 324 ***Exercise 13C***

1. 77 **2.** $5(2t + 3)^3$ **3.** $4\pi r$ cm^2/s **4.** 40π cm^2/s **5.** $\dfrac{3}{2\pi}$ cm/s
6. 3 cm^2/s **7.** 0·1 cm/s **8.** (a) $\frac{8}{3}\pi r$ cm^2/s (b) $\frac{8}{16}\pi r^2$ cm^3/s **9.** 0·25 cm/s
10. (a) 0·01 cm/s (b) $0{\cdot}1\pi$ cm^2/s **11.** $2s(s^2 - 2)$

page 327 ***Exercise 13D***

1. $y = x^4 + 4$ **2.** $y = x^2 - 8x + 6$ **3.** $y = \dfrac{3}{x - 2}$ **4.** $x + 2y = 11$
5. $y = x^2 - 6x$ **6.** $9y = (x + 7)(x - 8)$ **7.** $y = \dfrac{x}{2x + 1}$ **8.** $x + 3y = 7xy$
9. $x^2 + 4y^2 = 4$ **10.** $x^2 = 4y^2(1 - y^2)$ **11.** $5x^2 + 5y^2 - 8xy = 9$
12. $\dfrac{1}{2}t$ **13.** $\dfrac{1}{t}$ **14.** $\dfrac{1}{2}t$ **15.** $\dfrac{1}{4t^{3/2}}$
16. $-\dfrac{1}{3t^2}$ **17.** $\dfrac{3}{2t + 3}$ **18.** $\left(\dfrac{t - 1}{t + 1}\right)^2$ **19.** $-2t(t + 1)^2$
20. (a) $y = 6x - 2$ (b) $6y + x = 99$ **21.** (a) $y + 8x = 5$ (b) $16y = 2x + 15$
22. (a) $y = x + 3$ (b) $y + x + 5 = 0$ **23.** (a) $y = 6x - 5$ (b) $6y + x = 44$
24. (49, -9) **25.** (a) 2 (b) $\dfrac{3}{16t^5}$ (c) $\dfrac{3}{4(t + 1)}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

26.

t	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3	4
x	32	18	8	2	0	2	8	18	32
y	-16	-12	-8	-4	0	4	8	12	16

27.

θ	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$	π	$\frac{7\pi}{6}$	$\frac{4\pi}{3}$	$\frac{3\pi}{2}$	$\frac{5\pi}{3}$	$\frac{11\pi}{6}$	2π
x	0	2	3·46	4	3·46	2	0	-2	$-3·46$	-4	$-3·46$	-2	0
y	1	0·87	0·5	0	$-0·5$	$-0·87$	-1	$-0·87$	$-0·5$	0	0·5	0·87	1

28.

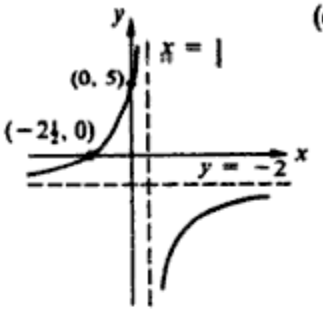
t	-2	$-1\frac{1}{2}$	-1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2
x	-12	$-3\frac{3}{4}$	0	$\frac{3}{4}$	0	$-\frac{3}{4}$	0	$3\frac{3}{4}$	12
y	16	9	4	1	0	1	4	9	16

page 330 ***Exercise 13E***

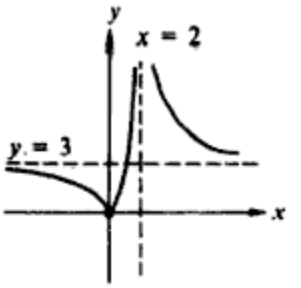
1. $(16x + 5)(2x + 5)^6$ **2.** $2x(9x + 5)(2x + 5)^6$ **3.** $3x^3(3x + 4)(x + 3)^4$
4. $2x^3(7x^2 + 6)(x^2 + 3)^4$ **5.** $x^2(9 - 23x^4)(3 - x^4)^4$
6. $2x(x^4 + 1)(5x^4 - 28x^2 + 1)$ **7.** $3(2x^2 + 1)^2(3x - 1)^6(26x^2 - 4x + 7)$
8. $3(30x + 11)(2x - 1)^5(3x + 5)^8$ **9.** $(19 - 16x)(2x + 1)^2(4 - x)^4$
10. $\dfrac{3(x + 2)}{2\sqrt{(x + 3)}}$ **11.** $\dfrac{x(5x + 12)}{2\sqrt{(x + 3)}}$ **12.** $\dfrac{3(3x + 1)(x + 3)^3}{2\sqrt{x}}$
13. $\dfrac{2(x + 3)(3x^2 + 3x + 1)}{\sqrt{(2x^2 + 1)}}$ **14.** $\dfrac{6}{(x + 3)^2}$ **15.** $-\dfrac{15}{(x - 5)^2}$
16. $\dfrac{11}{(2x + 3)^2}$ **17.** $-\dfrac{13}{(3x + 2)^2}$ **18.** $\dfrac{2(2 + x)(2 - x)}{(x^2 + 4)^2}$ **19.** $\dfrac{(x - 3)(x + 1)}{(x^2 + 3)^2}$
20. $\dfrac{(x - 8)(x + 2)}{(x^2 + 16)^2}$ **21.** $\dfrac{x^4(2x + 5)}{(x + 1)^4}$ **22.** $\dfrac{3(3x + 2)}{(2 - x)^5}$
23. $\dfrac{-6(2x + 11)(6x + 5)}{(2x - 3)^4}$ **24.** $\dfrac{4x - 7}{(2x - 1)^{3/2}}$
25. $60(2x + 3)^3(2x + 1)$ **26.** (a) $\dfrac{1}{(x + 1)^2}$ (b) 1 (c) $-\dfrac{2}{(x + 1)^3}$ (d) -2
27. $\left(\dfrac{t + 6}{2 - t}\right)^2$ **28.** $\dfrac{3(t + 1)^2}{t(t + 2)^3}$ **29.** (a) $y = 24x - 44$ (b) $24y + x = 98$
30. (a) $y = 5x - 8$ (b) $5y + x = 12$ **31.** (a) $2y = 3x - 7$ (b) $3y + 2x + 4 = 0$
32. (a) $3y = 8x - 4$ (b) $8y + 3x = 38$ **33.** Max at (1, 256), Min at (5, 0).
34. Min at (0, 0), Max at (1, 16), Min at (3, 0) **35.** Max at $(-2, \frac{1}{4})$, Min at $(4, -\frac{1}{8})$
36. Infl at (0, 0), Min at $(5, 115\frac{39}{49})$ **37.** $4\left(\dfrac{t + 1}{t - 1}\right)^3$ **38.** $\dfrac{10}{9}\left(\dfrac{t + 3}{t - 2}\right)^3$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

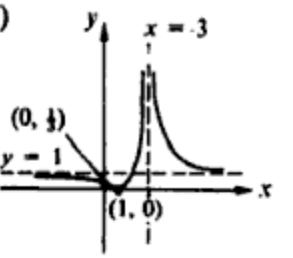
(d)



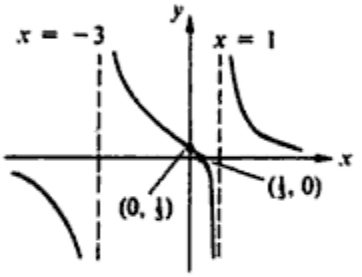
(e)



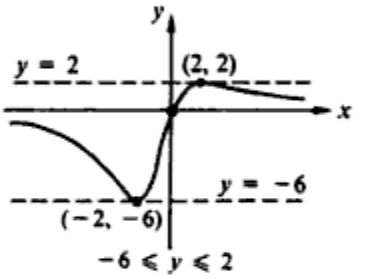
(f)



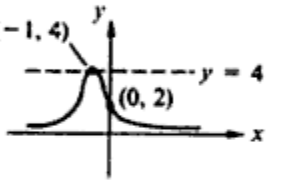
3.



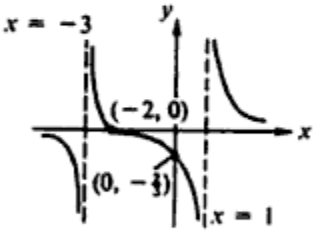
4. $-6 \leqslant y \leqslant 2$



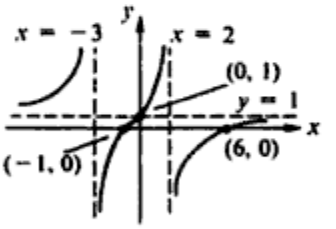
5.



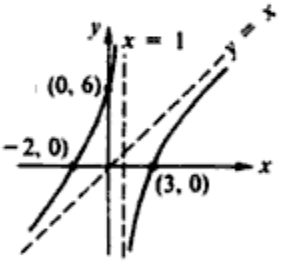
6.



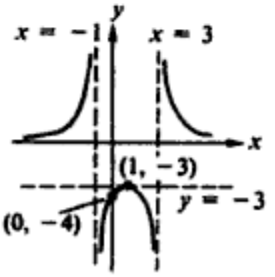
7.



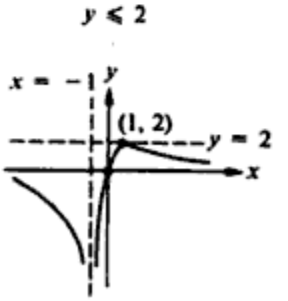
8.



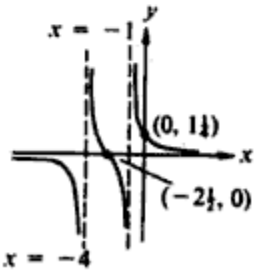
9. $y \leqslant -3, y > 0$



10. $y \leqslant 2$

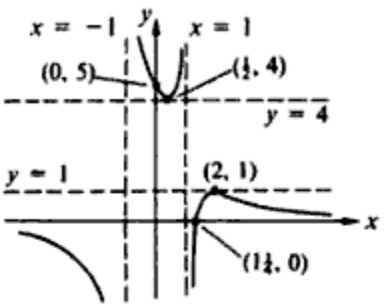


11. $y \in \mathbb{R}$

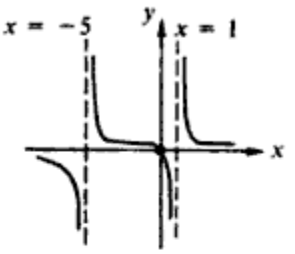


Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

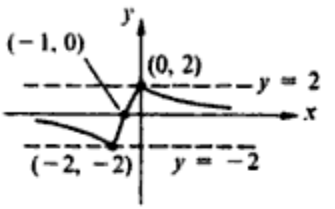
12. $y \leqslant 1, y \geqslant 4$



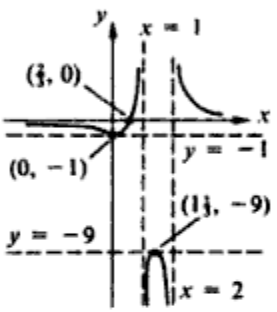
13. $y \in \mathbb{R}$



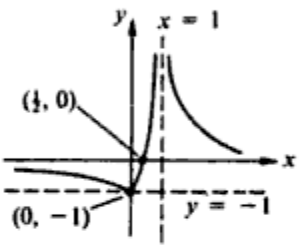
14. $-2 \leqslant y \leqslant 2$



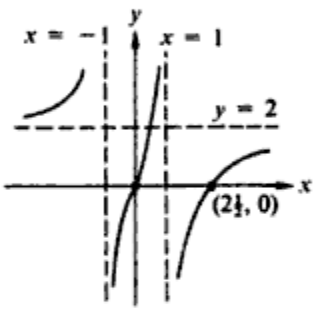
15. $y \leqslant -9, y \geqslant -1$



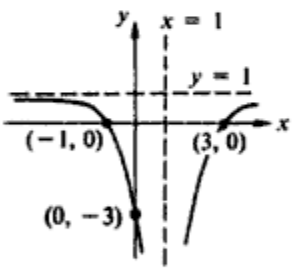
16. $y \geqslant -1$



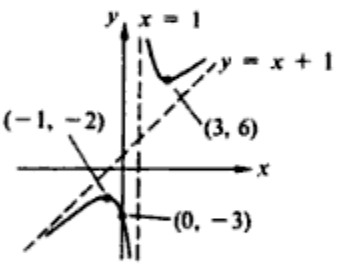
17. $y \in \mathbb{R}$



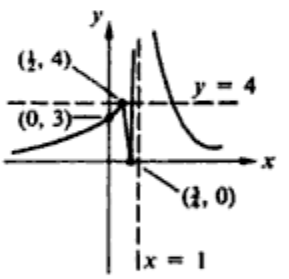
18. $y < 1$



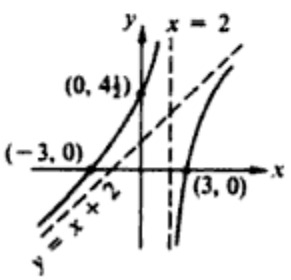
19. $y \leqslant -2, y \geqslant 6$



20. $y \geqslant 0$

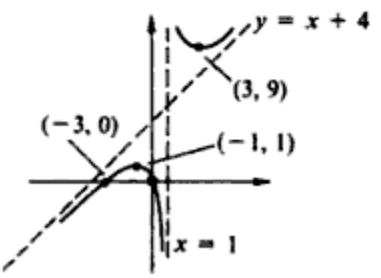


21. $k \geqslant 4$



22. $k \geqslant 2$

23. $0 \leqslant k \leqslant 3;\ f(x) \leqslant 1, f(x) \geqslant 9$



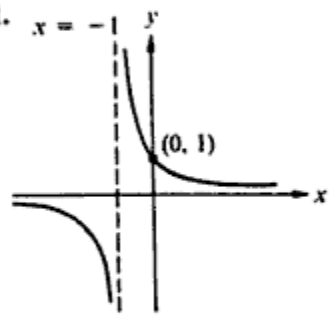
Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 348 ***Exercise 14B***

1. (a) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x < 2 \text{ or } x > 5\}$ (b) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -1 < x < 2 \text{ or } x > 3\}$ **2.** $x < 1, x > 2$
3. $-2 < x < 3$ **4.** $-5 < x < 0, x > 3$ **5.** $x < 0, 1\frac{1}{2} < x < 5$ **6.** $\frac{1}{2} < x < 4$
7. $x < -2, 2 < x < 4$ **8.** $x < -3, -1 < x < 1, x > 3$ **9.** $-2 < x < -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2} < x < 2$
10. $x < -2, x > 2$ **11.** $2 < x < 4$ **12.** $-6 < x < 2\frac{1}{2}$ **13.** $-2 < x < 1, x > 2$
14. $x < -1, 0 < x < 3$ **15.** $x > 1$ but $\neq 3$ **16.** $x > -1$ **17.** $x < -2, 0 < x < 3$
18. $-2 < x < 0, x > 3$ **19.** $x < -2, 1 < x < 5$ **20.** $x < -2, 0 < x < 4, x > 8$
21. $-10 < x < -1, x > 2$ **22.** $x < -5, -2 < x < 1$ **23.** $x < -4, -1 < x < 2, x > 6$
24. $x < -6, -1 < x < \frac{1}{2}, x > 2$ **25.** $-4 < x < 2, 5 < x < 8$ **26.** $0 < x < 2$
27. $x < 0, x > 3$
28. (a) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: -7 < x < 1\}$ (b) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x > 3\}$ (c) $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x < -2 \text{ or } x > 0\}$
29. $x < -1, x > 4$ **30.** $-2 < x < 2$ **31.** $x < -2, x > 4$ **32.** $-3 < x < -1$
33. $x < -4, x > -2$ **34.** $-1\frac{1}{2} < x < \frac{1}{2}$ **35.** $x > 1$ **36.** $-2 < x < 2$
37. $x < -6, x > -4\frac{1}{2}$ **38.** $0 < x < 1\frac{1}{2}$ **39.** $x < 2, x > 6$ **40.** $-2 < x < -\frac{2}{3}$
41. $x < 2, x > 6$ **42.** $0 < x < 2, x > 4$ **43.** $x < -4, x > 0$

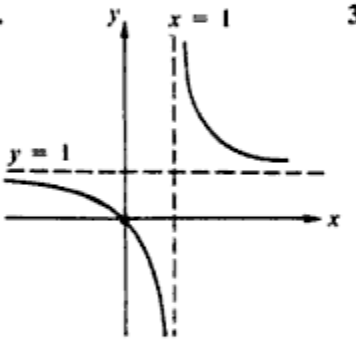
page 349 ***Exercise 14C***

1.



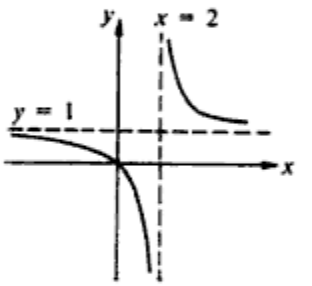
(i) $y + x = 1$,
(ii) $y + x + 3 = 0$.

2.



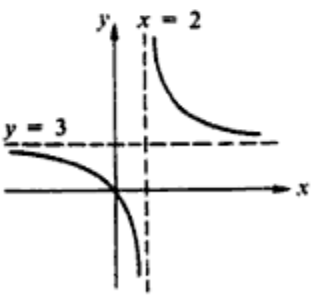
$x < \frac{1}{2}, x > 1$.

3.

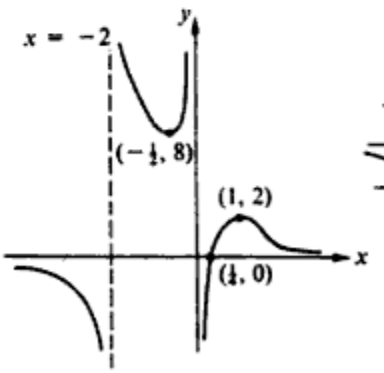


$y = \dfrac{x}{x+2}$.

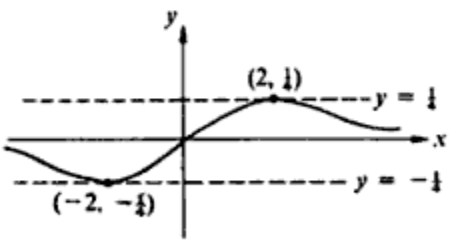
4. $x = 2, y = 3$,



5. $-\frac{1}{2}$,



6.



Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

5. (a) $\sqrt{2}$, 45° (b) 5, 53·1° (c) 17, 28·1° (d) 5, 323·1° (e) $\sqrt{13}$, 123·7° (f) $\sqrt{29}$, 21·8°

6. (a) 118·1°, 323·1° (b) −46·4°, −36·9°, 313·6°, 323·1°

7. (a) 11°, 225·2° (b) 244·1°, 352° (c) 36·9°, 270°
(d) 77·9°, 325·7° (e) 15·7°, 282·4° (f) 142·5°, 172·5°, 322·5°, 352·5°

8. (a) −50·5°, 103·6° (b) −17·6°, 130·2° (c) 24·6°, 171·7°
(d) −169·1°, 51° (e) −153·9°, 78·1° (f) ±180°, −29·6°, 0, 103·3°

page 360 *Exercise 15C*

1. (a) 0 (b) 60° (c) 30° (d) −30° (e) 120° (f) −60° (g) 60° (h) −60°

2. (a) $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (b) $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ (c) $\frac{\pi}{3}$ (d) $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ (e) $\frac{\pi}{4}$ (f) $\frac{\pi}{6}$ (g) $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ (h) $\frac{3\pi}{4}$

3.

x	0	0·25	0·5	0·75	1	1·25	1·5	1·75	2	2·25	2·5	2·75	3	3·14
y	1	0·97	0·88	0·73	0·54	0·32	0·07	−0·18	−0·42	−0·63	−0·80	−0·92	−0·99	−1

4. (a) $\frac{36}{65}$ (b) $\frac{220}{221}$ (c) $\frac{4}{5}$ (d) $-\frac{13}{85}$ (e) $\frac{287}{425}$ **5.** (a) $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (b) $\frac{\pi}{4}$

8. $\frac{1}{8}$ **9.** 0·425 **10.** $\frac{1}{3}$ **11.** $\frac{1}{8}$ **12.** $\sqrt{(6 - 4\sqrt{2})}$

page 365 *Exercise 15D*

1. $2n\pi \pm \frac{\pi}{3}$ **2.** $n\pi - \frac{\pi}{4}$ **3.** $n\pi + (-1)^{n+1}\frac{\pi}{3}$ **4.** $\frac{2n\pi}{3}$ **5.** $\frac{n\pi}{2} - \frac{\pi}{12}$

6. $\frac{n\pi}{5} + (-1)^n\frac{\pi}{30}$ **7.** $n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}, n\pi + \frac{\pi}{4}$ **8.** $n\pi + (-1)^{n+1}\frac{\pi}{6}, 2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}$

9. $\frac{n\pi}{5}, \frac{n\pi}{2}$ **10.** $\frac{n\pi}{6}$ **11.** $n\pi, (2n + 1)\frac{\pi}{8}$ **12.** $\frac{n\pi}{2}$

13. $\frac{1}{3}\left(2n\pi - \frac{\pi}{2}\right), \frac{1}{7}\left(2n\pi - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ **14.** $\frac{1}{7}\left(2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}\right), 2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}$ **15.** $n\pi - \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{n\pi}{3} - \frac{\pi}{18}$

16. $\frac{n\pi}{4} + \frac{\pi}{16}$ **17.** $180°n + (-1)^n 5{\cdot}7°$ **18.** $180°n \pm 26{\cdot}6°$

19. $360°n \pm 120°, 360°n \pm 48{\cdot}2°$ **20.** $180°n, 360°n \pm 75{\cdot}5°$

21. $360°n + 115{\cdot}3°, 360°n - 41{\cdot}6°$ **22.** $360°n + 46{\cdot}4°, 360°n - 90°$

page 366 *Exercise 15E*

1.

sin θ	cos θ	tan θ
0·1	0·995	0·1
0·0998	0·995	0·1003

sin θ	cos θ	tan θ
0·02	0·9998	0·02
0·02	0·9998	0·02

2. (a) 2 (b) 1 (c) 4 (d) 2

3. (a) $-\frac{1}{2}\theta$ (b) $\frac{1}{2\theta}$ (c) 4θ (d) $\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{2}(2 + 2\theta - \theta^2)$ (e) $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\theta - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\theta^2$ (f) $1 - 2\theta + 4\theta^2$

4. (a) 0·035 (b) 0·0035 (c) 0·999 847

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 381 ***Exercise 16A***

1. (a) $\frac{1}{3}$ (b) $\frac{3}{4}$ (c) $5\frac{1}{2}$ **2.** 26·6°, 45°, 108·4° **3.** $\frac{3}{5}$, 3 **4.** 36° **5.** 27°
6. $2y = x + 2$, $y + 2x = 16$

page 383 ***Exercise 16B***

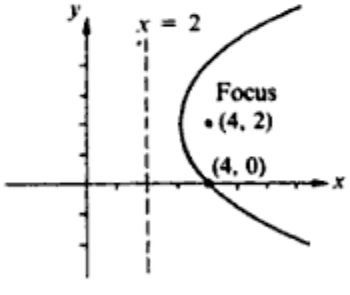
1. (a) $1\frac{3}{5}$ (b) $\frac{8}{13}$ (c) $5\sqrt{2}$ (d) $\sqrt{5}$ (e) $\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{5}$ **2.** A, C, $\frac{4}{13}\sqrt{13}$ **3.** -2, $-7\frac{1}{4}$
4. (a) $3y = 4x + 10$ (b) 5 units (c) $2\frac{1}{5}$ units (d) $5\frac{1}{2}$ sq. units
5. $x + 4y + 1 = 0$, $y = 4x + 1$
6. (a) $y = 2x + 1$, $x + 2y + 2 = 0$ (b) $x + 3y = 1$, $y = 3x + 2$
(c) $7x + 4y = 18$, $7y = 4x - 1$

page 390 ***Exercise 16C***

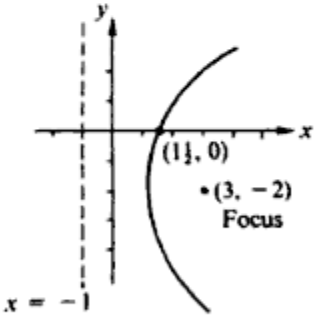
1. (b) (c) (f) **2.** (a) (0, 0), $\sqrt{10}$ (b) (3, 0), 5 (c) (2, −1), $3\sqrt{2}$
(d) (−1, 1), 2 (e) (3, −1), 4 (f) (−2, 0), $\sqrt{10}$ (g) $(-\frac{1}{2}, 0)$, 5
(h) $(\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2})$, 1 **3.** (2, 3) **8.** $4\sqrt{2}$ **9.** $\sqrt{10}$
10. (a) (i) $3y = x - 20$ (ii) $y + 3x = 0$ (b) (i) $y + 5x = 17$ (ii) $5y = x + 7$
(c) (i) $4y + 2x = 7$ (ii) $y = 2x - 2$
11. (a) $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 4y + 3 = 0$ (b) $x^2 + y^2 + 9x + y = 22$
(c) $2x^2 + 2y^2 + x - 10y + 2 = 0$
13. (a) external (b) external (c) internal (d) external **14.** $3x + y = 15$ **15.** $y = 7x - 37$
16. $(y - 3)\sin\theta + (x - 2)\cos\theta = 4$, $y\sqrt{3} + x = 10 + 3\sqrt{3}$
17. $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 22y + 115 = 0$
18. $x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 2y = 8$ **19.** $x^2 + y^2 - 8x - 4y + 15 = 0$

page 395 ***Exercise 16D***

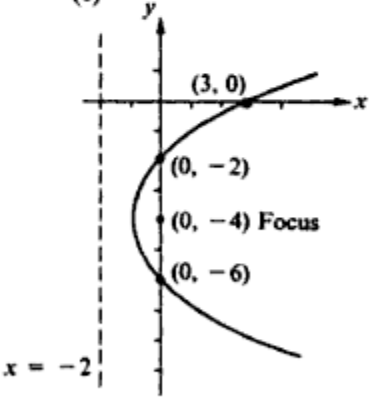
1. (a) (1, 0) (b) (−2, 0) (c) (5, 0) (d) $(2\frac{1}{4}, 0)$
2. (a) $x = -3$ (b) $x = 3$ (c) $x = -5$ (d) $x = \frac{1}{2}$
3. (a)



(b)



(c)



4. (1, 4) **5.** $(-\frac{1}{4}, -1)$ **6.** (2, 8) (18, 24) **7.** (1, −2), (9, 6), $y + x + 1 = 0$, $3y = x + 9$
8. $2y = x + 8$, $y + 2x + 1 = 0$ **9.** $2y = x + 12$, $2y + 3x + 4 = 0$
10. $yt = x + at^2$ **11.** $y + tx = 2at + at^3$; 0, ±2
12. (a) $[a(2 + p^2), 0]$ (b) $[0, ap(2 + p^2)]$ **13.** $4y^2 + 1 = 4(x + y)$
14. $y(p + q) = 2x + 2apq$ **15.** −1, 3 **19.** $y^2 = 2ax + 4a^3$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

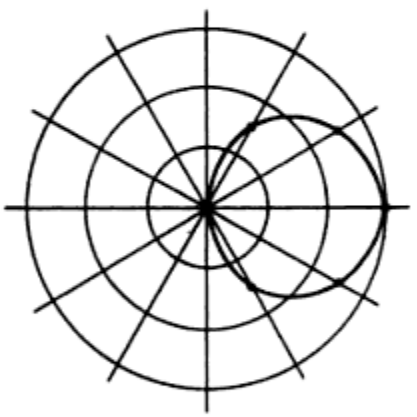
page 400 **Exercise 16E**

1. (a) $(\pm 2\sqrt{2}, 0), \frac{8}{9}$ (b) $(\pm 3, 0), \frac{9}{25}$ (c) $(\pm 2\sqrt{3}, 0), \frac{3}{4}$
2. (a) $(\pm 5, 0), \frac{25}{16}$ (b) $(\pm\sqrt{10}, 0), 10$ (c) $(\pm 2\sqrt{17}, 0), 17$
3. (a) $2y + \sqrt{3}\,x = 4$ (b) $3y = 2x + 25$ (c) $4y + 15x + 9 = 0$ (d) $y + 2\sqrt{2}\,x = 2$
(e) $y + x + 6 = 0$ (f) $y + 4x = 16$
4. $bx \cos\theta + ay \sin\theta = ab$, $(0, b \operatorname{cosec}\theta)$
5. (a) $yt_1^2 + x = 2ct_1$ (b) $yt_2 = xt_2^3 - ct_2^4 + c$
6. (a) $yt_1t_2 + x = c(t_1 + t_2)$ (b) $yt^2 + x = 2ct$

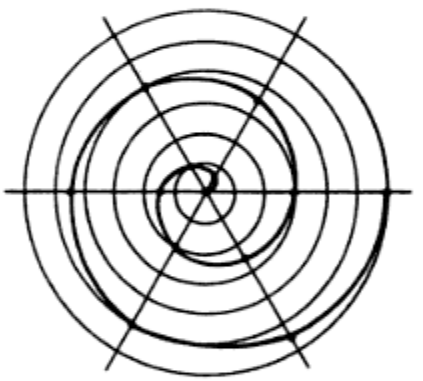
page 404 **Exercise 16F**

1. $A(2, \frac{1}{3}\pi)$, $B(3, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$, $C(1\frac{1}{2}, \frac{2}{3}\pi)$, $D(1, \pi)$, $E(3, \frac{7}{6}\pi)$, $F(2\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\pi)$, $G(1, \frac{4}{3}\pi)$, $H(2, \frac{11}{6}\pi)$
2. $P(2\sqrt{3}, 2)$, $Q(0, 5)$, $R(0, -2)$, $S(-5, 5)$, $T(-3, -3\sqrt{3})$, $U(0, -3)$
3. (a) $r = 4 \sec\theta$ (b) $r = 4 \sin\theta$ (c) $r^2 = \operatorname{cosec} 2\theta$
(d) $r = 8 \cot\theta \operatorname{cosec}\theta$ (e) $r = 2 \cos\theta$ (f) $r = 4 \cos\theta$
(g) $r^2 = 8 \sec 2\theta$ (h) $r^2 = \dfrac{4}{1 - \sin 2\theta}$
4. (a) $y = 1$ (b) $x^2 + y^2 = 9$ (c) $y = \sqrt{3}\,x$ (d) $x^2 + y^2 = y$
(e) $x^2 + y^2 = x + y$ (f) $x^2 - y^2 = 1$ (g) $x^4 + x^2y^2 = 9y^2$ (h) $x^2 = 9 + 6y$

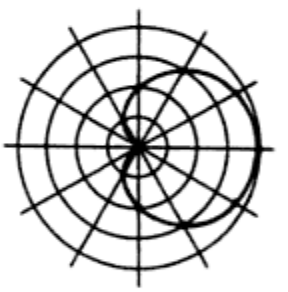
5.



6.



7.



page 405 **Exercise 16G**

1. $(1, 1\frac{1}{3})$, $(3, 0)$, $(2, \frac{2}{3})$, $78{\cdot}7°$ **2.** $3ty + 2x = t^2(2 + 3t^2)$, $\frac{1}{8}$
3. (i) $(1\frac{1}{2}, 0)$ (ii) $2\frac{1}{2}$ units (iii) $(0,2)$ $(0, -2)$, $(-1, 0)$, $(4, 0)$; $(3, 2)$, $(5\frac{2}{3}, 0)$
4. $(-1, 4\frac{1}{2})$, $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{65}$ **5.** 10 units, 26 units
6. $\frac{1}{4}(6 \pm \sqrt{6})$, $\frac{23}{25}$ **7.** $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 1$, $(x - 5)^2 + (y + 4)^2 = 25$, $(1, -1)$
8. $x^2 + y^2 = 3ax$, $y^2 = 3ax$ **9.** $(4a, 0)$, $2a$, $(2a, 0)$, $(6a, 0)$, $60°$, $\sqrt{3}\,y = \pm x$, $\frac{4}{3}a^2\sqrt{3}$
10. $(\frac{81}{4}a, -9a)$ **11.** $[apq, a(p + q)]$
12. (b) $2ay = x^2 + a^2$ **13.** (i) $4a$ (ii) $y^2 = 2ax - 8a^2$
14. $4x^2 + 4y^2 - 8x + 3 = 0$ **15.** $2m + c = 3$
16. $\dfrac{ab}{\sin 2\theta}$ **17.** $a^2 - b^2 = 2ax - 2by$ (ii) $(0, -b)$, $\left(\frac{3}{5}\sqrt{3}\,b, \frac{4}{5}b\right)$
18. $x + yt^2 = 6t$, $(-1\frac{1}{2}, -6)$, $(3\frac{3}{4}, 2\frac{2}{3})$, $\frac{21}{20}\sqrt{89}$
21. $r = 4 \cos\theta$, $(4, 0)$, $(2\sqrt{2}, \frac{1}{4}\pi)$, $\theta = -0{\cdot}142$ rads, $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ rads

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 412 Exercise 17A

1. (a) 11 (b) 7 (c) 3 (d) 12 (e) 16 (f) 81° (g) 40°

2. (a) $\sqrt{11}$ (b) $\sqrt{6}$ (c) 76° **3.** $\frac{3}{13}\mathbf{i} + \frac{4}{13}\mathbf{j} + \frac{12}{13}\mathbf{k}$ **4.** $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{4}{9} \\ \frac{4}{9} \\ -\frac{7}{9} \end{pmatrix}$

5. $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ is one example **6.** $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$ is one example

7. $\mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{d}$ **8.** $14 : -2 : 5$, $\frac{14}{15}$, $-\frac{2}{15}$, $\frac{1}{3}$ **9.** $1 : 2 : -2$

10. (a) $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$ or any multiple thereof (b) $\frac{2}{7}$, $-\frac{3}{7}$, $\frac{6}{7}$ (c) $\frac{1}{7}(2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k})$

15. 36°, 68°, 76° **17.** $4\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{c}$ **18.** $3\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} + 2\mathbf{c}$

page 414 Exercise 17B

1. (a) $3\mathbf{i} + 8t\mathbf{j}$ (b) $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 10t\mathbf{k}$ (c) $2\mathbf{j}$ (d) $6\mathbf{i} + 9t^2\mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k}$

2. (a) $\cos\theta\mathbf{i} - \sin\theta\mathbf{j}$ (b) $-2\sin\theta\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ (c) $\cos\theta\mathbf{i} + \sin\theta\mathbf{j} + 2\theta\mathbf{k}$
(d) $3\cos 3\theta\mathbf{j} + 3\cos^2\theta\sin\theta\mathbf{k}$

3. $16\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, $24\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$, $24\mathbf{i}$ **4.** $10\mathbf{i} + 28\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$ **5.** $2\pi\mathbf{i}$ m/s, 2π m/s

6. $2\mathbf{i} + (2t^2 + 1)\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$, $2t\mathbf{i} + (\frac{2}{3}t^3 + t)\mathbf{j} + (3 - 4t)\mathbf{k}$

page 420 Exercise 17C

1. $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$ **2.** $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

3. $2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$ or multiples thereof **5.** B and C **6.** F **7.** 6, 8

8. (a) $3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ (b) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k})$

9. (a) $\frac{x-2}{2} = \frac{y-3}{3} = \frac{z+1}{1}$ (b) $\frac{x-3}{3} = \frac{y+1}{2} = \frac{z-2}{-4}$ (c) $\frac{x-2}{2} = \frac{y-1}{-1} = \frac{z-1}{-1}$

10. $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$

11. (a) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k})$ (b) $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$

12. $-4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$ **13.** $\begin{pmatrix} 9 \\ 3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$

14. (a) (5, 0, 1) (b) lines do not intersect (c) (4, 5, 9) (d) (12, −3, 3)

15. (a) parallel (b) non parallel coplanar (c) skew (d) non parallel coplanar

16. 79° **17.** 69° **18.** (a) $\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 7\mathbf{k}$ (b) $-4\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ (c) $5\sqrt{5}$ units

20. (a) $\sqrt{5}$ units (b) $3\sqrt{2}$ units (c) $\sqrt{11}$ units (d) $4\sqrt{6}$ units

21. (a) $\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{21}$ units (b) $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{14}$ units

22. $\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{35}$ units **23.** (a) $\sqrt{3}$ units (b) $\frac{3}{7}\sqrt{21}$ units

page 429 Exercise 17D

4. $\mathbf{r} \cdot (\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) = 7$ **5.** $\mathbf{r} \cdot (2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) = 5$ **6.** $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k})$

7. (a) and (c) **8.** (a) and (b)

9. (a) $\mathbf{r} \cdot (4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}) = 4$ (b) $\mathbf{r} \cdot (2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}) = 5$ **10.** $x + 2y - 3z = 0$

11. $3y + z = 10$ **12.** $3x + 2y + z = 6$ **13.** $\frac{2}{3}$ units **14.** 3 units

15. 2 units **16.** $\begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$ **17.** $5\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{k}$ **20.** (1, −5, 1)

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

28. $\frac{2}{x-1} - \frac{5}{2(2x-1)} + \frac{1}{2(2x-1)^2}$

29. $1 + \frac{1}{x-3} - \frac{1}{2x+5}$

30. $2 + \frac{x-5}{x^2+4} + \frac{5}{x-3}$

31. $\frac{1}{x-3} - \frac{2}{x+7} + \frac{2}{2x-3}$

32. $\frac{2}{1+2x} + \frac{3-x}{x^2-x+2}$

33. $2 - \frac{1}{2(x+3)} - \frac{3}{2(x-1)} + \frac{12}{(x-1)^2}$

34. $\frac{2}{1+x} + \frac{3}{(1+x)^2} - \frac{5}{(1+x)^3} + \frac{1}{x-2}$

35. $\frac{6}{x} - \frac{4}{x-2} + \frac{1}{x+2}$

36. $\frac{3}{x+3} + \frac{4}{(x+3)^2} + \frac{1-2x}{x^2+4}$

page 456 ***Exercise 18B***

1. $\frac{1}{1-x} + \frac{1}{1+2x}$, $2 - x + 5x^2 - 7x^3 + \ldots + [(-2)^r + 1]\,x^r + \ldots, |x| < \frac{1}{2}$

2. $\frac{3}{1+x} - \frac{2}{1+3x}$, $1 + 3x - 15x^2 + 51x^3 - \ldots + (-1)^r 3[1 - 2\times 3^{r-1}]\,x^r + \ldots, |x| < \frac{1}{3}$

3. $\frac{1}{1-3x} - \frac{1}{1+5x}$, $8x - 16x^2 + 152x^3 - \ldots + [3^r - (-5)^r]\,x^r + \ldots, |x| < \frac{1}{5}$

4. $\frac{1}{1-x} - \frac{1}{3-x}$, $\frac{2}{3} + \frac{8x}{9} + \frac{26}{27}x^2 + \frac{80}{81}x^3 + \ldots + \left(1 - \frac{1}{3^{r+1}}\right)x^r + \ldots, |x| < 1$

5. $\frac{3}{2(3+2x)} + \frac{1}{2(2x-1)}$, $-\frac{4}{3}x - \frac{16}{9}x^2 - \frac{112}{27}x^3 - \ldots + 2^{r-1}\left(\left(\frac{-1}{3}\right)^r - 1\right)x^r + \ldots, |x| < \frac{1}{2}$

6. $\frac{3}{3+x} - \frac{1}{3+4x}$, $\frac{2}{3} + \frac{x}{9} - \frac{13}{27}x^2 + \frac{61}{81}x^3 - \ldots + \left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^r\left(1 - \frac{4^r}{3}\right)x^r + \ldots, |x| < \frac{3}{4}$

7. $\frac{2}{(1+x)^2} - \frac{1}{1+2x}$, $1 - 2x + 2x^2 - 0x^3 + \ldots + (-1)^r 2(r + 1 - 2^{r-1})\,x^r + \ldots, |x| < \frac{1}{2}$

8. $\frac{1}{1-4x} + \frac{1}{1-x} + \frac{2}{2+3x}$, $3 + \frac{7}{2}x + \frac{77}{4}x^2 + \frac{493}{8}x^3 + \ldots + \left[4^r + 1 + \left(\frac{-3}{2}\right)^r\right]x^r + \ldots, |x| < \frac{1}{4}$

9. $\frac{4}{2+x} - \frac{4}{(2+x)^2} - \frac{3}{1+x}$, $-2 + 3x - \frac{13}{4}x^2 + \frac{13}{4}x^3 - \ldots + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^r(1 - r - 3\times 2^r)x^r + \ldots, |x| < 1$

10. $\frac{x-2}{1+x^2} + \frac{5}{1-5x}$, $3 + 26x + 127x^2 + 624x^3 + \ldots, |x| < \frac{1}{5}$

11. $\frac{3x+5}{1+x+x^2} + \frac{8}{2-3x}$, $9 + 4x + 6x^2 + \frac{37}{2}x^3 + \ldots$

page 458 ***Exercise 18C***

1. $n(n+2)$ **2.** (b) $\frac{1}{3}n(n+1)(n+2)$ **3.** (a) $\frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{x+1}$ (c) $\frac{15}{16}$

4. (a) $\frac{1}{3x-1} - \frac{1}{3x+2}$ (c) $\frac{5}{32}, \frac{1}{6}$ **5.** (a) $\frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{x+2}$ (b) $\frac{3}{4}$ (c) $\frac{36}{55}$

6. (c) 1770 **7.** (a) $1 - \frac{1}{4n+1}$ (b) $\frac{1}{3} - \frac{n+1}{(2n+1)(2n+3)}$

(c) $\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2(n+1)(n+2)}$ (d) $\frac{7}{6} - \frac{3n+7}{(n+1)(n+2)(n+3)}$

8. (b) Yes, $2\frac{1}{2}$ **9.** (b) Yes, $\frac{5}{24}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 463 Exercise 18D

1. (a) 3 (b) -4 (c) $3 + 4i$ (d) 25 (e) $-7 + 24i$

2. (a) $5 + 7i$ (b) $-13 + 5i$ (c) -4 (d) 1 (e) -1 (f) 13 (g) $\frac{1}{2}$ (h) i

3. (a) $7 + i$ (b) $32 - 7i$ (c) $1 - 7i$ (d) $11 - 13i$ (e) $11 - 2i$ (f) 5 (g) 78 (h) $7 + i$

4. (a) $6 - 2i$ (b) $2 - 2i$ (c) $-1 + i$ (d) $\frac{1}{5} + \frac{2}{5}i$ (e) $2 + i$ (f) $\frac{4}{5} + \frac{3}{5}i$ (g) $-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{2}i$ (h) $\frac{1}{5} - \frac{7}{5}i$ (i) $\frac{5}{13} + \frac{12}{13}i$ (j) $\frac{6}{13} + \frac{17}{13}i$ **5.** i

6. (a) $x = \pm 5i$ (b) $x = \pm 4i$ (c) $x = \pm\frac{3i}{2}$ (d) $x = -1 \pm 2i$ (e) $x = 2 \pm i$ (f) $x = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{7}i}{4}$

7. (a) $\pm(3 + 2i)$ (b) $\pm(4 + i)$ (c) $\pm(4 - 3i)$

8. (a) $x^2 + 9 = 0$ (b) $x^2 - 2x + 5 = 0$ (c) $x^2 - 4x + 5 = 0$ (d) $x^2 - 4x + 13 = 0$ (e) $x^2 - 6x + 25 = 0$ (f) $x^2 - 6x + 34 = 0$

10. (a) $x = 1, 3 \pm 2i$ (b) $x = 2, -\frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{1}{2}i$ (c) $x = -1, -1 \pm \sqrt{2}i$ (d) $x = 1, 2, 1 \pm \frac{1}{2}i$ (e) $x = 1, -1, \frac{-4 \pm 3i}{5}$

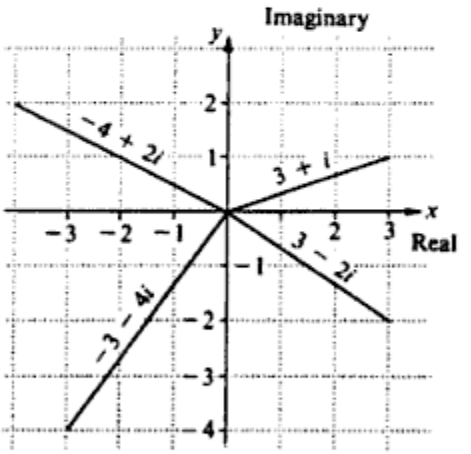
11. 5, 6, 2; $x = 2 \pm 2i, -\frac{1}{3} \pm \frac{1}{3}i$ **12.** $a = 1, b = -8, c = 27, d = -38, e = 26$

13. $a = b = c = 1, x = 1, \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{3}i}{2}$

page 467 Exercise 18E

1. $3 + 2i, -1 + 3i, -3 - 4i, 4 - i$

2.



3. $5\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{6}\right), 4\left(\cos\frac{3\pi}{4} + i\sin\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$

$3\left[\cos\left(-\frac{\pi}{3}\right) + i\sin\left(-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)\right], 3\left[\cos\left(-\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) + i\sin\left(-\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)\right]$

4. (a) $\sqrt{2}, \frac{\pi}{4}$ (b) $2\sqrt{2}, \frac{3\pi}{4}$ (c) $2, \pi$ (d) $3, -\frac{\pi}{2}$ (e) $2\sqrt{2}, -\frac{3\pi}{4}$

5. (a) $5, \frac{\pi}{2}$ (b) 7, 0 (c) $2, -\frac{\pi}{2}$ (d) $3, \pi$ (e) $2, \frac{\pi}{3}$ (f) $10, -\frac{\pi}{6}$ (g) $5, -0{\cdot}93$ (h) 13, 1·97

6. $z_1 = 5i, z_2 = 4 - 4i, z_3 = -4, z_4 = -6 + 6\sqrt{3}i, z_5 = 2 - 2\sqrt{3}i, z_6 = -6 + 6i$

7. (a) $1, -\frac{\pi}{2}$ (b) $\sqrt{2}, -\frac{3\pi}{4}$ (c) $\frac{\sqrt{10}}{5}$, 1·25 (d) $5\sqrt{2}$, 1·43

8. (b) (i) 6 (ii) $\frac{5\pi}{12}$ (iii) 9 (iv) 4 (v) $\frac{\pi}{3}$ (vi) $\frac{\pi}{2}$

9. (b) (i) $\frac{1}{3}$ (ii) $-\frac{7\pi}{12}$ (iii) 3 (iv) $\frac{7\pi}{12}$ **10.** $1 + \sqrt{3}i, -4\sqrt{2} + 4\sqrt{2}i$

12. 64 **13.** $-64i$ **14.** $1, \frac{1}{2}(-1 \pm i\sqrt{3})$ **15.** $\frac{\tan\theta(3 - \tan^2\theta)}{1 - 3\tan^2\theta}$

17. $\frac{6\tan\theta - 20\tan^3\theta + 6\tan^5\theta}{1 - 15\tan^2\theta + 15\tan^4\theta - \tan^6\theta}$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 473 ***Exercise 18G***

1. $-\frac{2}{5}, \frac{3}{5}$ **2.** $\frac{3}{1-3x} - \frac{2}{1-2x} - \frac{1}{(1-2x)^2}$, $x + 7x^2 + 33x^3$, $|x| < \frac{1}{3}$

3. $1 - x + 3x^2 - 5x^3 + 11x^4$ (a) 1·0212418 (b) 0·9902951

4. $\frac{1}{4(1-x)} + \frac{-7}{4(3+x)}$, $-\frac{1}{3}, \frac{4}{9}, \frac{5}{27}$ **5.** $\frac{1}{1-2x} + \frac{2}{2+x}$, $2 + \frac{3}{2}x + \frac{17}{4}x^2$

6. $-\frac{1}{x+1} + \frac{1}{(x+1)^2} + \frac{2}{x-1}$, $\frac{1}{x} + \frac{4}{x^2} - \frac{1}{x^3} + \frac{6}{x^4} - \frac{3}{x^5}$, $(2-n)$

7. $\frac{1}{2(r-1)} - \frac{1}{2(r+1)}$, $\frac{3}{4} - \frac{1}{2n} - \frac{1}{2(n+1)}$ **8.** $\frac{1}{4(2r-1)} - \frac{1}{4(2r+3)}$

9. $\frac{r+2}{(r+1)!}$, $1 - \frac{1}{(2n+1)!}$, $\frac{1}{(2n+1)!} - 1$ **10.** (i) $18 - \mathrm{i}$, $\frac{6}{25} + \mathrm{i}\frac{17}{25}$

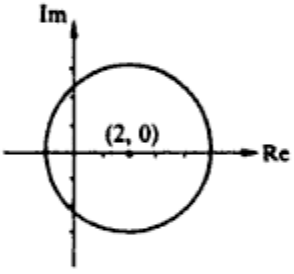
11. (a) $2 - 11\mathrm{i}$ (b) $-2 - 3\mathrm{i}$ **12.** $-4, 13$

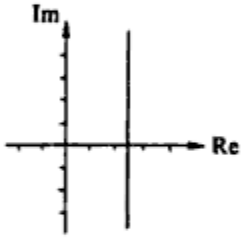
13. $2 - \mathrm{i}, -4$ **14.** $x^2 - 2x + 2$, $1 \pm \mathrm{i}$, $-1 \pm 2\mathrm{i}$

15. $\mathrm{Re}(z) = -3$, $\mathrm{Im}(z) = -1$, $\sqrt{10}$, $-2{\cdot}82$ rads

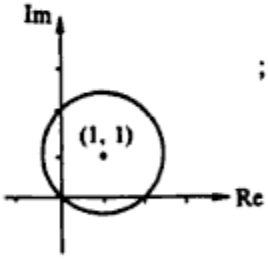
16. $1 + 6c\mathrm{i} - 15c^2 - 20c^3\mathrm{i} + 15c^4 + 6c^5\mathrm{i} - c^6$; $0, \pm\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}, \pm\sqrt{3}$

17. (a) $2 + 3\mathrm{i}$, $5 - 4\mathrm{i}$ (b) $a = 2, b = 3$; $a = -2, b = -3$; $\pm(2 + 3\mathrm{i})$
(c) (i) circle centre (2, 0) radius 3 (ii) line through $(2\frac{1}{2}, 0)$ perpendicular to real axis





18.



; $2\sqrt{2}$, 0.

20. $\pm(1 + \mathrm{i})$, $\pm(1 - \mathrm{i})$, $(x^2 - 2x + 2)(x^2 + 2x + 2)$

21. $16\cos^5\theta - 20\cos^3\theta + 5\cos\theta$

22. $0, \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}, \pi, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}, 2\pi$

page 480 ***Exercise 19A***

1. e^x **2.** $3e^{3x}$ **3.** $2e^{2x}$ **4.** $2xe^{x^2}$ **5.** $2xe^{(x^2+1)}$ **6.** $-e^{-x}$ **7.** $8e^{2x}$ **8.** $30x^2e^{2x^3}$

9. $-6e^{-2x}$ **10.** $5e^{5x+3} - 4x^{-3}$ **11.** $4xe^{x^2} + 3e^x - 4e^{-x}$ **12.** $xe^x(2 + x)$

13. $3x^2e^{2x}(3 + 2x)$ **14.** $3xe^{-x}(2 - x)$ **15.** $\frac{xe^x - 2e^x - 8}{x^3}$ **16.** $e^x + c$ **17.** $5e^x + c$

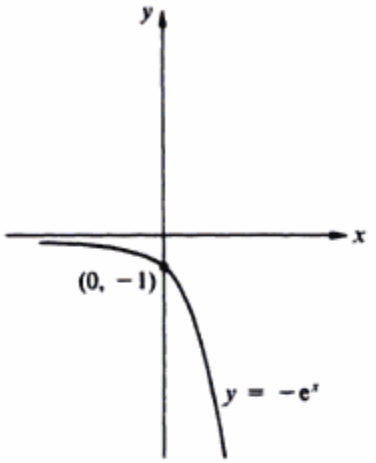
18. $e^{2x} + c$ **19.** $2e^{3x} + c$ **20.** $e^{x^2} + c$ **21.** $2e^{(x^2+1)} + c$ **22.** $2e^{-2x} + c$

23. $e^2x - 4e^{-x} + c$ **24.** $e(e^2 - 1)$ **25.** $1 - \frac{1}{e^3}$ **26.** $e^3(e^2 - 1)$ **27.** $e^3 - \frac{1}{e}$

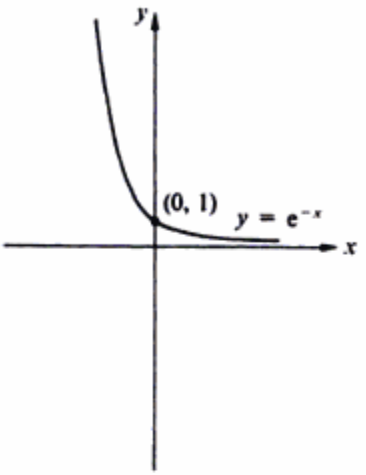
28. 4 **29.** $y = e^x + x^2 - 4$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

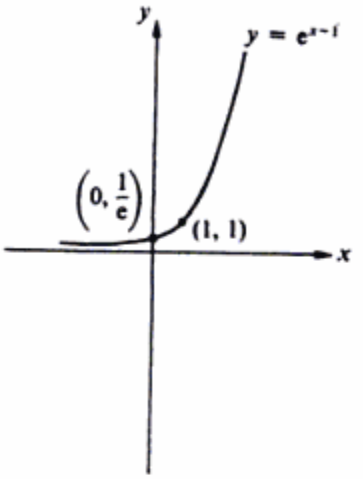
30. (a)



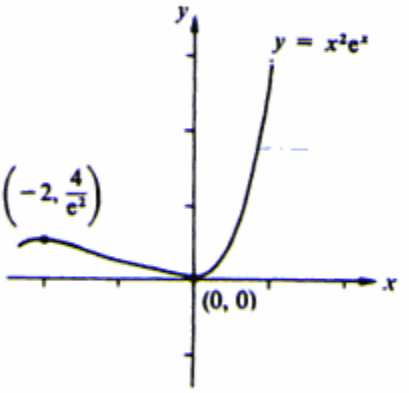
(b)



(c)



31. min at $\left(-1, -\frac{1}{e}\right)$ **32.** max at $(0, -1)$ **33.**



page 487 ***Exercise 19B***

1. $\frac{1}{x}$ **2.** $\frac{1}{x}$ **3.** $\frac{1}{x}$ **4.** $-\frac{1}{x}$ **5.** $\frac{3}{x}$ **6.** $\frac{2x}{x^2+3}$ **7.** $\frac{3}{3x-4}$ **8.** $\frac{2x+2}{x^2+2x-1}$

9. $\frac{6}{9-x^2}$ **10.** $\frac{3}{x(3-2x)}$ **11.** $\frac{3x-4}{x(3x-2)}$ **12.** $\frac{2}{1-x^2}$ **13.** $\frac{x+2}{(x+3)^2}$

14. $\frac{2x}{x^2-1} - \frac{1}{(x+4)^2}$ **15.** $\frac{1}{x \ln 10}$ **16.** $\frac{1}{x \ln 3}$ **17.** $2e^x + \frac{1}{x}$ **18.** $\frac{e^x}{x}(x \ln x + 1)$

19. $\frac{e^{x^2}}{x}(2x^2 \ln x + 1)$ **20.** $\frac{1 - 2x^2 \ln x}{xe^{x^2}}$

21. (a) $2x^x(1 + \ln x)$ (b) $x2^{x^2+1} \ln 2$ (c) $\frac{(3x+5)(x-1)}{2(x+1)^{3/2}}$ (d) $\frac{2}{(1-2x)\sqrt{(1-4x^2)}}$

22. $3 \ln 3 - 1$ **23.** 4 **24.** (a) $3^x \ln 3$ (b) $4^x \ln 4$

25. $a^x \ln a$, $\frac{a^x}{\ln a} + c$, 39·09 **26.** $\ln|x| + c$ **27.** $3 \ln|x| + c$

28. $\frac{1}{2} \ln|x| + c$ **29.** $\ln(x^2+1) + c$ **30.** $3 \ln(x^2+3) + c$

31. $3 \ln|x^2-3| + c$ **32.** $\ln|x^2+3x-1| + c$ **33.** $\frac{1}{2} \ln(x^2-4x+7) + c$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

page 492 **Exercise 19C**

1. (a) $1 - 3x + \frac{9}{2}x^2 - \frac{9}{2}x^3 + \frac{27}{8}x^4 \ldots\ldots$ (b) $1 + 2x + 2x^2 + \frac{4}{3}x^3 + \frac{2}{3}x^4 \ldots\ldots$
(c) $1 + x^2 + \frac{1}{2}x^4 \ldots\ldots$ (d) $1 + \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{8}x^2 + \frac{1}{48}x^3 + \frac{1}{384}x^4 \ldots\ldots$
(e) $1 - \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{8}x^2 - \frac{1}{48}x^3 + \frac{1}{384}x^4 \ldots\ldots$ (f) $1 + 6x + \frac{32}{2}x^2 + \frac{100}{3}x^3 + \frac{272}{8}x^4 \ldots\ldots$
(g) $1 + 2x - \frac{10}{3}x^3 - \frac{32}{3}x^4 \ldots\ldots$ (h) $1 - x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{6}x^3 + \frac{5}{24}x^4 \ldots\ldots$
(i) $1 + x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 - \frac{5}{6}x^3 + \frac{1}{24}x^4 \ldots\ldots$

2. (a) e^2 (b) e^{-3} (c) $e^{-1/2} - 1$ (d) $e - 2$ (e) $e^x - 1$ (f) e^{x^2}

3. (a) $2x - 2x^2 + \frac{8}{3}x^3 - 4x^4 \ldots\ldots, -\frac{1}{2} < x \leqslant \frac{1}{2}$
(b) $-6x - 18x^2 - 72x^3 - 324x^4 \ldots\ldots, -\frac{1}{6} \leqslant x < \frac{1}{6}$
(c) $\frac{1}{3}x - \frac{1}{18}x^2 + \frac{1}{81}x^3 - \frac{1}{324}x^4 \ldots\ldots, -3 < x \leqslant 3$
(d) $\ln 2 + \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{8}x^2 + \frac{1}{24}x^3 - \frac{1}{64}x^4 \ldots\ldots, -2 < x \leqslant 2$
(e) $\ln 3 + \frac{2}{3}x - \frac{2}{6}x^2 + \frac{8}{81}x^3 - \frac{4}{81}x^4 \ldots\ldots, -\frac{3}{2} < x \leqslant \frac{3}{2}$
(f) $-x - \frac{3}{2}x^2 - \frac{7}{3}x^3 - \frac{17}{4}x^4 \ldots\ldots, -\frac{1}{2} \leqslant x < \frac{1}{2}$
(g) $3x - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + 3x^3 - \frac{17}{4}x^4 \ldots\ldots, -\frac{1}{2} < x \leqslant \frac{1}{2}$
(h) $\ln 3 + \frac{4}{3}x - \frac{8}{6}x^2 + \frac{28}{81}x^3 - \frac{41}{162}x^4 \ldots\ldots, -1 < x \leqslant 1$
(i) $5x - \frac{15}{2}x^2 + \frac{95}{3}x^3 - \frac{255}{4}x^4 \ldots\ldots, -\frac{1}{4} < x \leqslant \frac{1}{4}$
(j) $4 \ln 2 - \frac{3}{2}x + \frac{7}{16}x^2 - \frac{11}{32}x^3 + \frac{127}{512}x^4 \ldots\ldots, -1 < x \leqslant 1$
(k) $x - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + \frac{7}{3}x^3 - \frac{17}{12}x^4 \ldots\ldots, -1 < x \leqslant 1$
(l) $6x + 24x^2 + 66x^3 + 240x^4 \ldots\ldots, -\frac{1}{3} \leqslant x < \frac{1}{3}$

4. (a) $\ln(\frac{3}{2})$ (b) $-\ln 2$ (c) $3 \ln 2$ (d) $\ln 2$

5. 1·1052, 0·9048 **6.** 0·0953, −0·1054 **7.** (i) 0·5108 (ii) 1·099

9. (a) $\frac{2^r}{r!}$ (b) $\frac{(-1)^{r+1}}{r.2^r}$ (c) $\frac{1+r}{r!}$ (d) $\frac{2}{r(r^2-1)}$

10. $-3 + x^3 + \frac{1}{2}x^4$

11. $1 - x + \frac{3}{2}x^2 - \frac{20}{6}x^3, |x| < \frac{1}{2}$

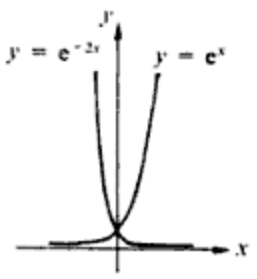
12. $\frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{4}x^2 + \frac{5}{12}x^3 - \frac{1}{3}x^4, -1 < x \leqslant 1$

13. (a) $x + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{3}x^3 + \frac{1}{4}x^5, -1 < x \leqslant 1$ (b) $2x - 4x^2 + \frac{17}{3}x^3 - 8x^4, -\frac{1}{2} < x \leqslant \frac{1}{2}$
(c) $x + \frac{23}{4}x^2 + \frac{199}{12}x^3 + \frac{1023}{32}x^4, -2 < x \leqslant 2$ (d) $-x - 2x^2 - \frac{17}{6}x^3 - 4x^4, -\frac{1}{2} \leqslant x < \frac{1}{2}$

14. 1, 2, $\frac{1}{6}$ **15.** 2, −3, −24

page 493 **Exercise 19D**

1.



, 2·08 units

2. (a) $\frac{1}{e^x x^2}(x+1)$ (b) $\frac{\cos x}{1 + \sin x}$

3. $1 + \ln x$, $x \ln x - x + c$, 0·386

4. $(\frac{1}{6} \ln 4, 8)$, minimum

5. $y = e(2x - 1)$, $ey + 1 = 0$, 80°

6. $\frac{2}{2x-1} - \frac{x}{x^2+1}$, $\ln\left[\frac{|2x-1|}{\sqrt{(x^2+1)}}\right] + c$

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material

Understanding PURE MATHEMATICS

This book covers in one volume all topics required in the pure mathematics section of single subject A-level Mathematics syllabuses. It is equally appropriate to those preparing for examinations at AS-level and it covers a significant part of the work required by those studying for Further Mathematics and A-level Pure Mathematics, or other intermediate examinations.

A key feature of the course is the coverage in the early chapters of topics formerly dealt with in pre-A-level courses. This is to bridge the gap between the new GCSE syllabuses and the starting point of a typical A-level course. The aim of the authors has been to provide a simple and direct approach to the principles involved. Answers, including sketch graphs, are given at the back of the book.

Other Advanced Level texts from Oxford:

Understanding Mechanics, 2nd edition
A Sadler and D W Thorning
Understanding Statistics
Graham Upton and Ian Cook
Problem Exercises in Applied Statistics
Julie Charlton and Roger Williamson
Introducing Statistics
Graham Upton and Ian Cook
Introducing Pure Mathematics
Robert Smedley and Garry Wiseman

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Orders and enquiries to
Customer Services:
tel. 01536 741068
fax 01536 454519

ISBN 0-19-914243-2

9 780199 142439

www.OxfordSecondary.co.uk

Urheberrechtlich geschütztes Material